EMERSON
Industrial Automation

User Guide

Powerdrive F300

Model size 3 to 11

Universal Variable Speed AC drive for induction and permanent magnet motors

Part Number: 0479-0003-02
Issue: 2

Original Instructions

For the purposes of compliance with the EU Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC:

General information

The manufacturer accepts no liability for any consequences resulting from inappropriate, negligent or incorrect installation or adjustment of the optional operating parameters of the equipment or from mismatching the variable speed drive with the motor.

The contents of this guide are believed to be correct at the time of printing. In the interests of a commitment to a policy of continuous development and improvement, the manufacturer reserves the right to change the specification of the product or its performance, or the contents of the guide, without notice.

All rights reserved. No parts of this guide may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electrical or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by an information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Drive firmware version

This product is supplied with the latest firmware version. If this drive is to be connected to an existing system or machine, all drive firmware versions should be verified to confirm the same functionality as drives of the same model already present. This may also apply to drives returned from an Emerson Industrial Automation Service Centre or Repair Centre. If there is any doubt please contact the supplier of the product.

The firmware version of the drive can be checked by looking at Pr **11.029**.

Environmental statement

Emerson Industrial Automation is committed to minimising the environmental impacts of its manufacturing operations and of its products throughout their life cycle. To this end, we operate an Environmental Management System (EMS) which is certified to the International Standard ISO 14001. Further information on the EMS, our Environmental Policy and other relevant information is available on request, or can be found at

http://www.emersonindustrial.com/en-EN/controltechniques/aboutus/environment/Pages/environment.aspx

The electronic variable-speed drives manufactured by Emerson Industrial Automation have the potential to save energy and (through increased machine/process efficiency) reduce raw material consumption and scrap throughout their long working lifetime. In typical applications, these positive environmental effects far outweigh the negative impacts of product manufacture and end-of-life disposal.

Nevertheless, when the products eventually reach the end of their useful life, they must not be discarded but should instead be recycled by a specialist recycler of electronic equipment. Recyclers will find the products easy to dismantle into their major component parts for efficient recycling. Many parts snap together and can be separated without the use of tools, while other parts are secured with conventional fasteners. Virtually all parts of the product are suitable for recycling.

Product packaging is of good quality and can be re-used. Large products are packed in wooden crates, while smaller products come in strong cardboard cartons which themselves have a high recycled fibre content. If not re-used, these containers can be recycled. Polythene, used on the protective film and bags for wrapping product, can be recycled in the same way. Emerson Industrial Automations' packaging strategy prefers easily-recyclable materials of low environmental impact, and regular reviews identify opportunities for improvement.

When preparing to recycle or dispose of any product or packaging, please observe local legislation and best practice.

REACH legislation

EC Regulation 1907/2006 on the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and restriction of Chemicals (REACH) requires the supplier of an article to inform the recipient if it contains more than a specified proportion of any substance which is considered by the European Chemicals Agency (ECHA) to be a Substance of Very High Concern (SVHC) and is therefore listed by them as a candidate for compulsory authorisation.

For current information on how this requirement applies in relation to specific Emerson Industrial Automations' products, please approach your usual contact in the first instance. Emerson Industrial Automations' position statement can be viewed at:

www.emersonindustrial.com/en-EN/controltechniques/aboutus/environment/reachregulation/Pages/reachregulation.aspx

Copyright © May 2015 Emerson Industrial Automation.
The information contained in this guide is for guidance only and does not form part of any contract. The accuracy cannot be guaranteed as Emerson have an ongoing process of development and reserve the right to change the specification of their products without notice.
Control Techniques Limited. Registered Office: The Gro, Newtown, Powys SY16 3BE. Registered in England and Wales. Company Reg. No. 01236886.
Moteurs Leroy-Somer SAS. Headquarters: Bd Marcellin Leroy, CS 10015, 16915 Angoulême Cedex 9, France. Share Capital: 65 800 512 €, RCS Angoulême 338 567 258.

Copyright © July 2015 Control Techniques Ltd

Issue Number: 2

Drive Firmware: 01.012.02.00 onwards

For patent and intellectual property related information please go to: www.ctpatents.info.

How to use this guide

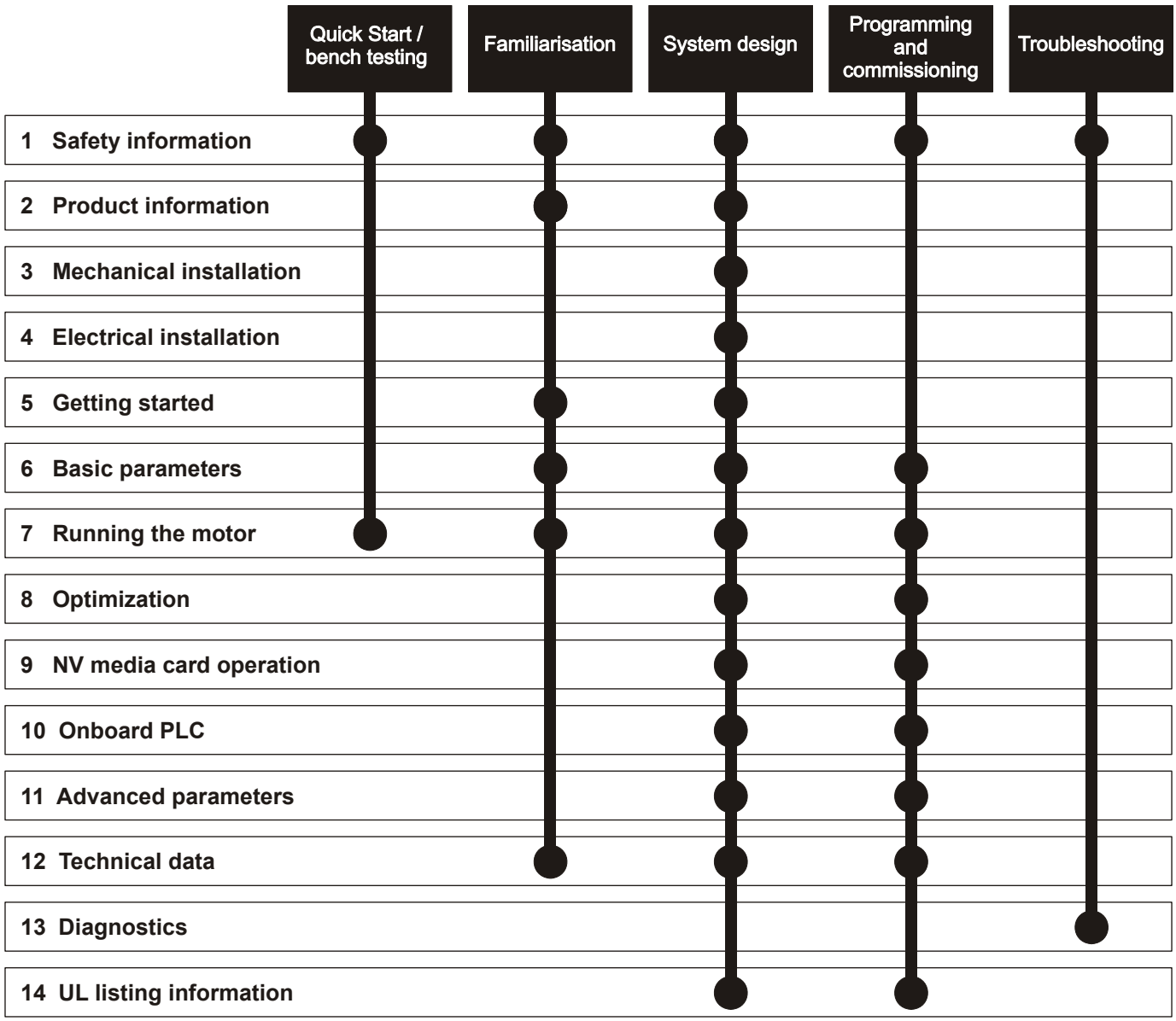
This user guide provides complete information for installing and operating the drive from start to finish.

The information is in logical order, taking the reader from receiving the drive through to fine tuning the performance.

NOTE

There are specific safety warnings throughout this guide, located in the relevant sections. In addition, Chapter 1 *Safety information* contains general safety information. It is essential that the warnings are observed and the information considered when working with or designing a system using the drive.

This map of the user guide helps to find the right sections for the task you wish to complete, but for specific information, refer to :



Contents

Declaration of Conformity

Control Techniques Ltd
The Gro
Newtown
Powys
UK
SY16 3BE

Moteurs Leroy-Somer
Usine des Agriers
Boulevard Marcellin Leroy
CS10015
16915 Angoulême Cedex 9
France

This declaration applies to Powerdrive F300 variable speed drive products, comprising models numbers as shown below:

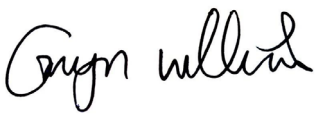
F*aaa-bbbbbbbbb* Valid characters:	
aaa	300
bbbbbbbbb	03200066A, 03200080A, 03200110A, 03200127A, 03400034A, 03400045A, 03400062A, 03400077A, 03400104A, 03400123A 04200180A, 04200250A, 04400185, 04400240A 05200300A, 05400300A, 05500039A, 05500061A, 05500100A 06200500A, 06200580A, 06400380A, 06400480A, 06400630A, 06500120A, 06500170A, 06500220A, 06500270A, 06500340A, 06500430A 07200750A, 07200940A, 07201170A, 07400790A, 07400940A, 07401120A, 07500530A, 07500730A, 07600230A, 07600300A, 07600360A, 07600460A, 07600520A, 07600730A 082001490A, 08201800A, 08401550A, 08401840A, 08500860A, 08501080A, 08600860A, 08601080A 09202160A, 09202660A, 09402210A, 09402660A, 09501250A, 09501500A, 09601250A, 09601550A 09202160E, 09202660E, 09402210E, 09402660E, 09501250E, 09501500E, 09601250E, 09601550E 10203250E, 10203600E, 10403200E, 10403610E, 10502000E, 10601720E, 10601970E 11404370E, 11404870E, 11405070E, 11502480E, 11502880E, 11503150E, 11602250E, 11602750E, 11603050E

The AC variable speed drive products listed above have been designed and manufactured in accordance with the following European harmonized standards:

EN 61800-5-1:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems - safety requirements - electrical, thermal and energy
EN 61800-3:2004	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. EMC product standard including specific test methods
EN 61000-6-2:2005	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Generic standards. Immunity standard for industrial environments
EN 61000-6-4:2007	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Generic standards. Emission standard for industrial environments
EN 61000-3-2:2006	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), Limits, Limits for harmonic current emissions (equipment input current <16 A per phase)
EN 61000-3-3:2008	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), Limits, Limitation of voltage fluctuations and flicker in low-voltage supply systems for equipment with rated current <16 A

EN 61000-3-2:2006 Applicable where input current <16 A. No limits apply for professional equipment where input power >1 kW.

These products comply with the requirements of the Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) Directive 2011/65/EU, the Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC and the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2004/108/EC



G.Williams

Control Techniques Vice President, Technology

Newtown

Date: 13th July 2015

These electronic drive products are intended to be used with appropriate motors, controllers, electrical protection components and other equipment to form complete end products or systems. Compliance with safety and EMC regulations depends upon installing and configuring drives correctly, including using the specified input filters. The drives must be installed only by professional assemblers who are familiar with requirements for safety and EMC. The assembler is responsible for ensuring that the end product or system complies with all the relevant laws in the country where it is to be used. Refer to the User Guide. An EMC Data Sheet is also available giving detailed EMC information.

Declaration of Conformity (including 2006 Machinery Directive)

Control Techniques Ltd
The Gro
Newtown
Powys
UK
SY16 3BE

This declaration applies to the Powerdrive F300 variable speed drive product range, comprising model numbers composed as shown below:

F*aaa-bbbbbbbbb* Valid characters:	
aaa	300
bbbbbbbbb	03200066A, 03200080A, 03200110A, 03200127A, 03400034A, 03400045A, 03400062A, 03400077A, 03400104A, 03400123A 04200180A, 04200250A, 04400185, 04400240A 05200300A, 05400300A, 05500039A, 05500061A, 05500100A 06200500A, 06200580A, 06400380A, 06400480A, 06400630A, 06500120A, 06500170A, 06500220A, 06500270A, 06500340A, 06500430A 07200750A, 07200940A, 07201170A, 07400790A, 07400940A, 07401120A, 07500530A, 07500730A, 07600230A, 07600300A, 07600360A, 07600460A, 07600520A, 07600730A 082001490A, 08201800A, 08401550A, 08401840A, 08500860A, 08501080A, 08600860A, 08601080A 09202160A, 09202660A, 09402210A, 09402660A, 09501250A, 09501500A, 09601250A, 09601550A 09202160E, 09202660E, 09402210E, 09402660E, 09501250E, 09501500E, 09601250E, 09601550E 10203250E, 10203600E, 10403200E, 10403610E, 10502000E, 10601720E, 10601970E 11404370E, 11404870E, 11405070E, 11502480E, 11502880E, 11503150E, 11602250E, 11602750E, 11603050E

This declaration relates to these products when used as a safety component of a machine. Only the Safe Torque Off function may be used for a safety function of a machine. None of the other functions of the drive may be used to carry out a safety function.

These products fulfil all the relevant provisions of Directives 2006/42/EC (The Machinery Directive) and 2004/108/EC (The EMC Directive).

EC type-examination has been carried out by the following notified body:

TÜV Rheinland Industrie Service GmbH

Am Grauen Stein

D-51105 Köln

Notified Body identification number: 0035

EC type-examination certificate number: 01/205/5270/14

Moteurs Leroy-Somer
Usine des Agriers
Boulevard Marcellin Leroy
CS10015
16915 Angoulême Cedex 9
France

The harmonized standards used are shown below:

EN 61800-5-1:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Safety requirements. Electrical, thermal and energy
EN 61800-5-2:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Safety requirements. Functional
EN ISO 13849-1:2008	Safety of machinery. Safety-related parts of control systems. General principles for design
EN ISO 13849-2:2008	Safety of machinery. Safety-related parts of control systems. Validation
EN 61800-3:2004	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. EMC requirements and specific test methods
EN 62061:2005	Safety of machinery. Functional safety of safety related electrical, electronic and programmable electronic control systems

Person authorised to compile the technical file:

C Hargis

Chief Engineer

Newtown, Powys. UK

G.Wiiliams
VP Technology
Date: 13th July 2015
Place: Newtown, Powys. UK

IMPORTANT NOTICE

These drive products are intended to be used with appropriate motors, sensors, electrical protection components and other equipment to form complete systems. It is the responsibility of the installer to ensure that the design of the complete machine, including its safety-related control system, is carried out in accordance with the requirements of the Machinery Directive and any other relevant legislation. The use of a safety-related drive in itself does not ensure the safety of the machine.

Compliance with safety and EMC regulations depends upon installing and configuring inverters correctly. The inverters must be installed only by professional assemblers who are familiar with requirements for safety and EMC. The assembler is responsible for ensuring that the end product or system complies with all the relevant laws in the country where it is to be used. Refer to the User Guide.

1 Safety information

1.1 Warnings, Cautions and Notes

WARNING

A Warning contains information which is essential for avoiding a safety hazard.

CAUTION

A Caution contains information which is necessary for avoiding a risk of damage to the product or other equipment.

NOTE

A Note contains information which helps to ensure correct operation of the product.

1.2 Electrical safety - general warning

The voltages used in the drive can cause severe electrical shock and/or burns, and could be lethal. Extreme care is necessary at all times when working with or adjacent to the drive.

Specific warnings are given at the relevant places in this User Guide.

1.3 System design and safety of personnel

The drive is intended as a component for professional incorporation into complete equipment or a system. If installed incorrectly, the drive may present a safety hazard.

The drive uses high voltages and currents, carries a high level of stored electrical energy, and is used to control equipment which can cause injury.

Close attention is required to the electrical installation and the system design to avoid hazards either in normal operation or in the event of equipment malfunction. System design, installation, commissioning/ start-up and maintenance must be carried out by personnel who have the necessary training and experience. They must read this safety information and this User Guide carefully.

The STOP and Safe Torque Off functions of the drive do not isolate dangerous voltages from the output of the drive or from any external option unit. The supply must be disconnected by an approved electrical isolation device before gaining access to the electrical connections.

With the sole exception of the Safe Torque Off function, none of the drive functions must be used to ensure safety of personnel, i.e. they must not be used for safety-related functions.

Careful consideration must be given to the functions of the drive which might result in a hazard, either through their intended behavior or through incorrect operation due to a fault. In any application where a malfunction of the drive or its control system could lead to or allow damage, loss or injury, a risk analysis must be carried out, and where necessary, further measures taken to reduce the risk - for example, an over-speed protection device in case of failure of the speed control, or a fail-safe mechanical brake in case of loss of motor braking.

The Safe Torque Off function may be used in a safety-related application. The system designer is responsible for ensuring that the complete system is safe and designed correctly according to the relevant safety standards.

1.4 Environmental limits

Instructions in this User Guide regarding transport, storage, installation and use of the drive must be complied with, including the specified environmental limits. Drives must not be subjected to excessive physical force.

1.5 Access

Drive access must be restricted to authorized personnel only. Safety regulations which apply at the place of use must be complied with.

1.6 Fire protection

The drive enclosure is not classified as a fire enclosure. A separate fire enclosure must be provided. For further information, refer to section 3.2.5 *Fire protection* on page 22.

1.7 Compliance with regulations

The installer is responsible for complying with all relevant regulations, such as national wiring regulations, accident prevention regulations and electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) regulations. Particular attention must be given to the cross-sectional areas of conductors, the selection of fuses or other protection, and protective ground (earth) connections.

This User Guide contains instruction for achieving compliance with specific EMC standards.

Within the European Union, all machinery in which this product is used must comply with the following directives:

2006/42/EC Safety of machinery.
2004/108/EC: Electromagnetic Compatibility.

1.8 Motor

Ensure the motor is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Ensure the motor shaft is not exposed.

Standard squirrel cage induction motors are designed for single speed operation. If it is intended to use the capability of the drive to run a motor at speeds above its designed maximum, it is strongly recommended that the manufacturer is consulted first.

Low speeds may cause the motor to overheat because the cooling fan becomes less effective. The motor should be installed with a protection thermistor. If necessary, an electric forced vent fan should be used.

The values of the motor parameters set in the drive affect the protection of the motor. The default values in the drive should not be relied upon.

It is essential that the correct value is entered in Pr **00.046** motor rated current. This affects the thermal protection of the motor.

1.9 Adjusting parameters

Some parameters have a profound effect on the operation of the drive. They must not be altered without careful consideration of the impact on the controlled system. Measures must be taken to prevent unwanted changes due to error or tampering.

1.10 Electrical installation

1.10.1 Electric shock risk

The voltages present in the following locations can cause severe electric shock and may be lethal:

AC supply cables and connections

Output cables and connections

Many internal parts of the drive, and external option units

Unless otherwise indicated, control terminals are single insulated and must not be touched.

1.10.2 Stored charge

The drive contains capacitors that remain charged to a potentially lethal voltage after the AC supply has been disconnected. If the drive has been energized, the AC supply must be isolated at least ten minutes before work may continue.

2 Product information

2.1 AC drive for fans, pumps and compressors

Powerdrive F300 is an AC drive primarily aimed at energy-saving projects in fan pump and compressor applications. Features include sensor less motor control for both induction and permanent magnet motors for best-in-class energy efficiency. Fan and pump features for easy integration and user programming for application flexibility.

Features

- Universal high performance drive for induction and sensorless permanent magnet motors
- Integrated fan and pump functionality
- Onboard IEC 61131-3 programmable automation
- Dual integrated form C relay outputs
- NV Media Card for parameter copying and data storage
- 485 serial communications interface
- Single channel Safe Torque Off (STO) input
- Fire mode

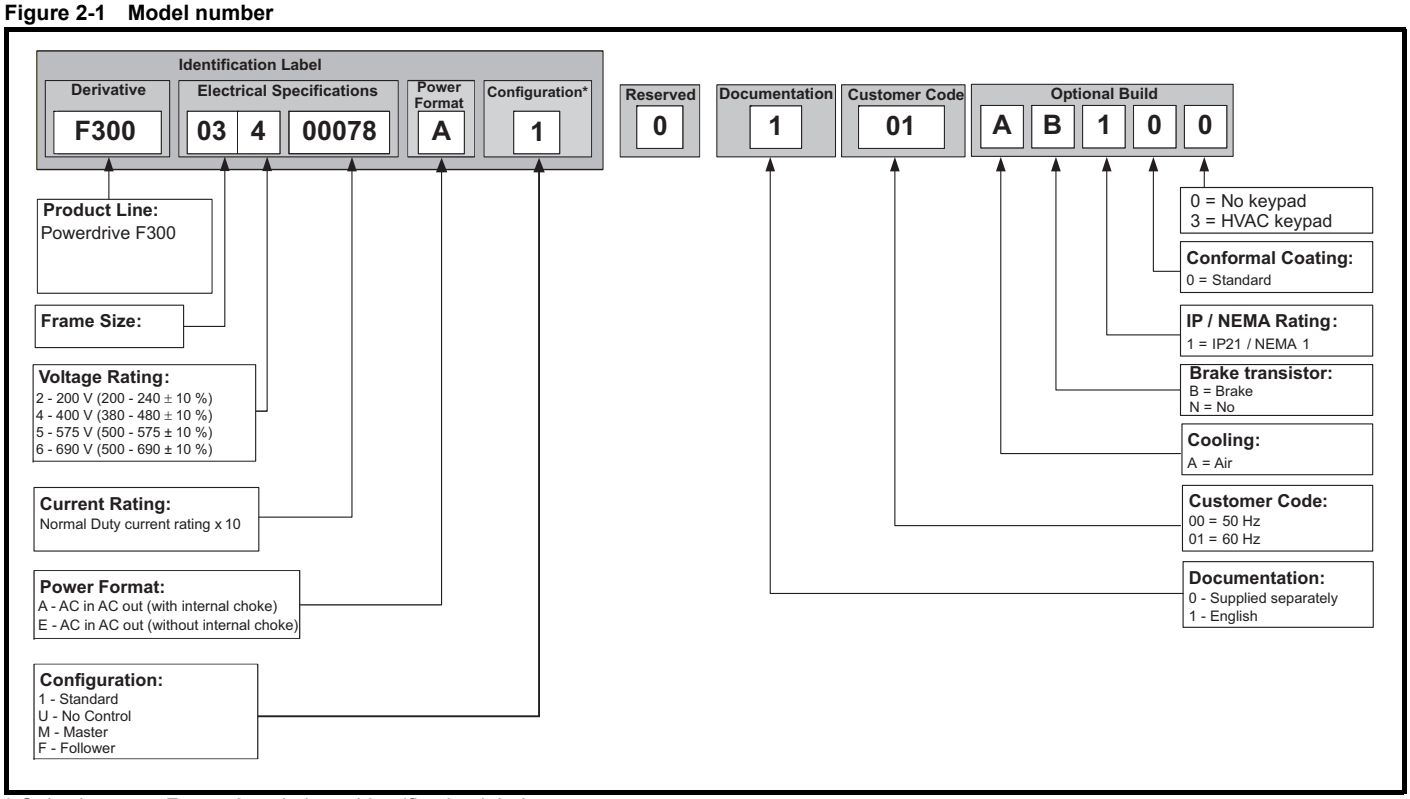
Optional features

- Select up to three option modules

2.2 Model number

The way in which the model numbers for the Powerdrive F300 range are formed is illustrated below:

Figure 2-1 Model number



* Only shown on Frame 9 and above identification label.

** For further information on the AC in AC out 12 pulse solution (MXXX -XXXXXXXXT) refer to the F300 Modular Installation Guide.

NOTE

For simplicity, a Frame 9 drive with no internal choke (i.e. model 09xxxxxE) is referred to as a Frame 9E and a Frame 9 drive with an internal choke (i.e. model 09xxxxxA) is referred to as a Frame 9A. Any reference to Frame 9 is applicable to both sizes 9E and 9A. All Frame size 10 and 11 drives are supplied with no internal choke.

2.3 Ratings

Normal Duty

The F300 is optimized for applications which use Self ventilated (TENV/TEFC) induction motors and require a low overload capability, and full torque at low speeds is not required (e.g. fans, pumps).
Self ventilated (TENV/TEFC) induction motors require increased protection against overload due to the reduced cooling effect of the fan at low speed. To provide the correct level of protection the I^2t software operates at a level which is speed dependent. This is illustrated in the graph below.

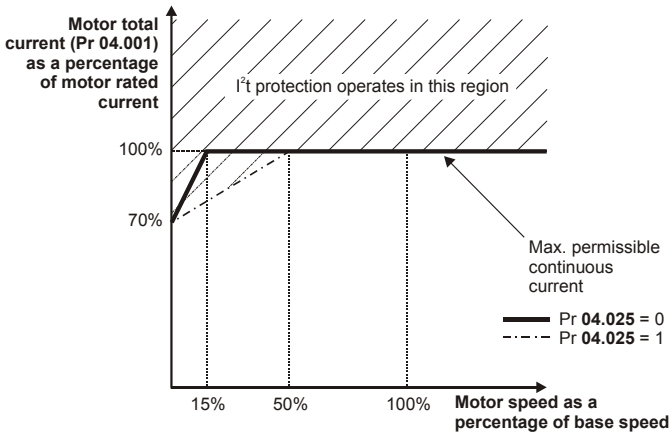
NOTE

The speed at which the low speed protection takes effect can be changed by the setting of *Low Speed Thermal Protection Mode* (04.025). The protection starts when the motor speed is below 15 % of base speed when Pr **04.025** = 0 (default) and below 50 % when Pr **04.025** = 1.

Operation of motor I^2t protection

Motor I^2t protection is fixed as shown below and is compatible with:

- Self ventilated (TENV/TEFC) induction motors



The continuous current ratings given are for maximum 40 °C (104 °F), 1000 m altitude and 3.0 kHz switching frequency. Derating is required for higher switching frequencies, ambient temperature >40 °C (104 °F) and high altitude. For further information, refer to Chapter 12 *Technical data* on page 232.

Table 2-1 200 V drive ratings (200 V to 240 V ±10 %)

Model		Normal Duty			
		Maximum continuous output current	Nominal power at 230 V	Motor power at 230 V	Peak current
		A	kW	hp	A
Frame size 3	03200066	6.6	1.1	1.5	7.2
	03200080	8	1.5	2	8.8
	03200110	11	2.2	3	12.1
	03200127	12.7	3	3	13.9
Frame size 4	04200180	18	4	5	19.8
	04200250	25	5.5	7.5	27.5
Frame size 5	05200300	30	7.5	10	33
Frame size 6	06200500	50	11	15	55
	06200580	58	15	20	63.8
Frame size 7	07200750	75	18.5	25	82.5
	07200940	94	22	30	103.4
	07201170	117	30	40	128.7
Frame size 8	08201490	149	37	50	163.9
	08201800	180	45	60	198
Frame size 9	09202160	216	55	75	237.6
	09202660	266	75	100	292.6
Frame size 10	10203250	325	90	125	357.5
	10203600	360	110	150	396

Table 2-2 400 V drive ratings (380 V to 480 V ±10 %)

Model		Normal Duty			
		Maximum continuous output current	Nominal power at 400 V	Motor power at 460 V	Peak current
		A	kW	hp	A
Frame size 3	03400034	3.4	1.1	1.5	3.7
	03400045	4.5	1.5	2.0	4.9
	03400062	6.2	2.2	3.0	6.8
	03400077	7.7	3.0	5.0	8.4
	03400104	10.4	4.0	5.0	11.4
	03400123	12.3	5.5	7.5	13.5
Frame size 4	04400185	18.5	7.5	10.0	20.3
	04400240	24.0	11.0	15.0	26.4
Frame size 5	05400300	30.0	15.0	20.0	33.0
Frame size 6	06400380	38.0	18.5	25.0	41.8
	06400480	48.0	22.0	30.0	52.8
	06400630	63.0	30.0	40.0	69.3
Frame size 7	07400790	79	37	50	86.9
	07400940	94	45	60	103.4
	07401120	112	55	75	123.2
Frame size 8	08401550	155	75	100	170.5
	08401840	184	90	125	202.4
Frame size 9	09402210	221	110	150	243.1
	09402660	266*	132	200	292.6
Frame size 10	10403200	320	160	250	352
	10403610	361	200	300	397.1
Frame size 11	11404370	437	225	350	480.7
	11404870	487*	250	400	535.7
	11405070	507*	280	450	557.7

* These ratings are for 2 kHz switching frequency. For ratings at 3 kHz switching frequency refer to section 12.1.1 *Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.

Table 2-3 575 V drive ratings (500 V to 575 V ±10 %)

Model		Normal Duty			
		Maximum continuous output current	Nominal power at 575 V	Motor power at 575 V	Peak current
		A	kW	hp	A
Frame size 5	05500039	3.9	2.2	3	4.3
	05500061	6.1	4	5	6.7
	05500100	10	5.5	7.5	11
Frame size 6	06500120	12	7.5	10	13.2
	06500170	17	11	15	18.7
	06500220	22	15	20	24.2
	06500270	27	18.5	25	29.7
	06500340	34	22	30	37.4
	06500430	43	30	40	47.3
Frame size 7	07500530	53	37	50	58.3
	07500730	73	45	60	80.3
Frame size 8	08500860	86	55	75	94.6
	08501080	108	75	100	118.8
Frame size 9	09501250	125	90	125	137.5
	09501500	150	110	150	165
Frame size 10	10502000	200	130	200	220
Frame size 11	11502480	248	185	250	272.8
	11502880	288*	225	300	316.8
	11503150	315*	250	350	346.5

* These ratings are for 2 kHz switching frequency. For ratings at 3 kHz switching frequency refer to section 12.1.1 *Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.

Table 2-4 690 V drive ratings (500 V to 690 V ±10 %)

Model		Normal Duty			
		Maximum continuous output current	Nominal power at 690 V	Motor power at 690 V	Peak current
		A	kW	hp	A
Frame size 7	07600230	23	18.5	25	25.3
	07600300	30	22	30	33
	07600360	36	30	40	39.6
	07600460	46	37	50	50.6
	07600520	52	45	60	57.2
	07600730	73	55	75	80.3
Frame size 8	08600860	86	75	100	94.6
	08601080	108	90	125	118.8
Frame size 9	09601250	125	110	150	137.5
	09601550	155	132	175	170.5
Frame size 10	10601720	172	160	200	189.2
	10601970	197	185	250	216.7
Frame size 11	11602250	225	200	250	247.5
	11602750	275*	250	300	302.5
	11603050	305*	280	400	335.5

* These ratings are for 2 kHz switching frequency. For ratings at 3 kHz switching frequency refer to section 12.1.1 *Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.

2.3.1 Typical short term overload limits

The maximum percentage overload limit changes depending on the selected motor. Variations in motor rated current, motor power factor and motor leakage inductance all result in changes in the maximum possible overload. The exact value for a specific motor can be calculated using the equations detailed in Menu 4 in the *Parameter Reference Guide*.

Typical values are shown in the table below for RFC (RFC-A or RFC-S) and open loop (OL) modes:

Table 2-5 Typical overload limits

Operating mode	RFC from cold	RFC from 100 %	Open loop from cold	Open loop from 100 %
Overload with motor rated current = drive rated current	110 % for 165 s	110 % for 9 s	110 % for 165 s	110 % for 9 s

Generally the drive rated current is higher than the matching motor rated current allowing a higher level of overload than the default setting. The time allowed in the overload region is proportionally reduced at very low output frequency on some drive ratings.

NOTE

The maximum overload level which can be attained is independent of the speed.

2.4 Operating modes

The drive is designed to operate in any of the following modes:

Open loop mode

- Open loop vector mode
- Fixed V/F mode (V/Hz)
- Quadratic V/F mode (V/Hz)

RFC - A

- Without position feedback sensor (Sensorless)

RFC - S

- Without position feedback sensor (Sensorless)

2.4.1 Open loop mode

The drive applies power to the motor at frequencies varied by the user. The motor speed is a result of the output frequency of the drive and slip due to the mechanical load. The drive can improve the speed control of the motor by applying slip compensation. The performance at low speed depends on whether V/F mode or open loop vector mode is selected.

Open loop vector mode

The voltage applied to the motor is directly proportional to the frequency except at low speed where the drive uses motor parameters to apply the correct voltage to keep the flux constant under varying load conditions.

Typically 100 % torque is available down to 1 Hz for a 50 Hz motor.

Fixed V/F mode

The voltage applied to the motor is directly proportional to the frequency except at low speed where a voltage boost is provided which is set by the user. This mode can be used for multi-motor applications.

Typically 100 % torque is available down to 4 Hz for a 50 Hz motor.

Quadratic V/F mode

The voltage applied to the motor is directly proportional to the square of the frequency except at low speed where a voltage boost is provided which is set by the user. This mode can be used for running fan or pump applications with quadratic load characteristics or for multi-motor applications. This mode is not suitable for applications requiring a high starting torque.

2.4.2 RFC-A mode

Rotor **F**lux **C**ontrol for Asynchronous (induction) motors (**RFC-A**) encompasses closed loop vector control without a position feedback device.

Sensorless mode provides closed loop control without the need for position feedback by using current, voltages and key operating motor parameters to estimate the motor speed. It can eliminate instability traditionally associated with open loop control such as operating large motors with light loads at low frequencies.

2.4.3 RFC- S

Rotor **F**lux **C**ontrol for Synchronous (permanent magnet brushless) motors (**RFC-S**) provides closed loop control without a position feedback device.

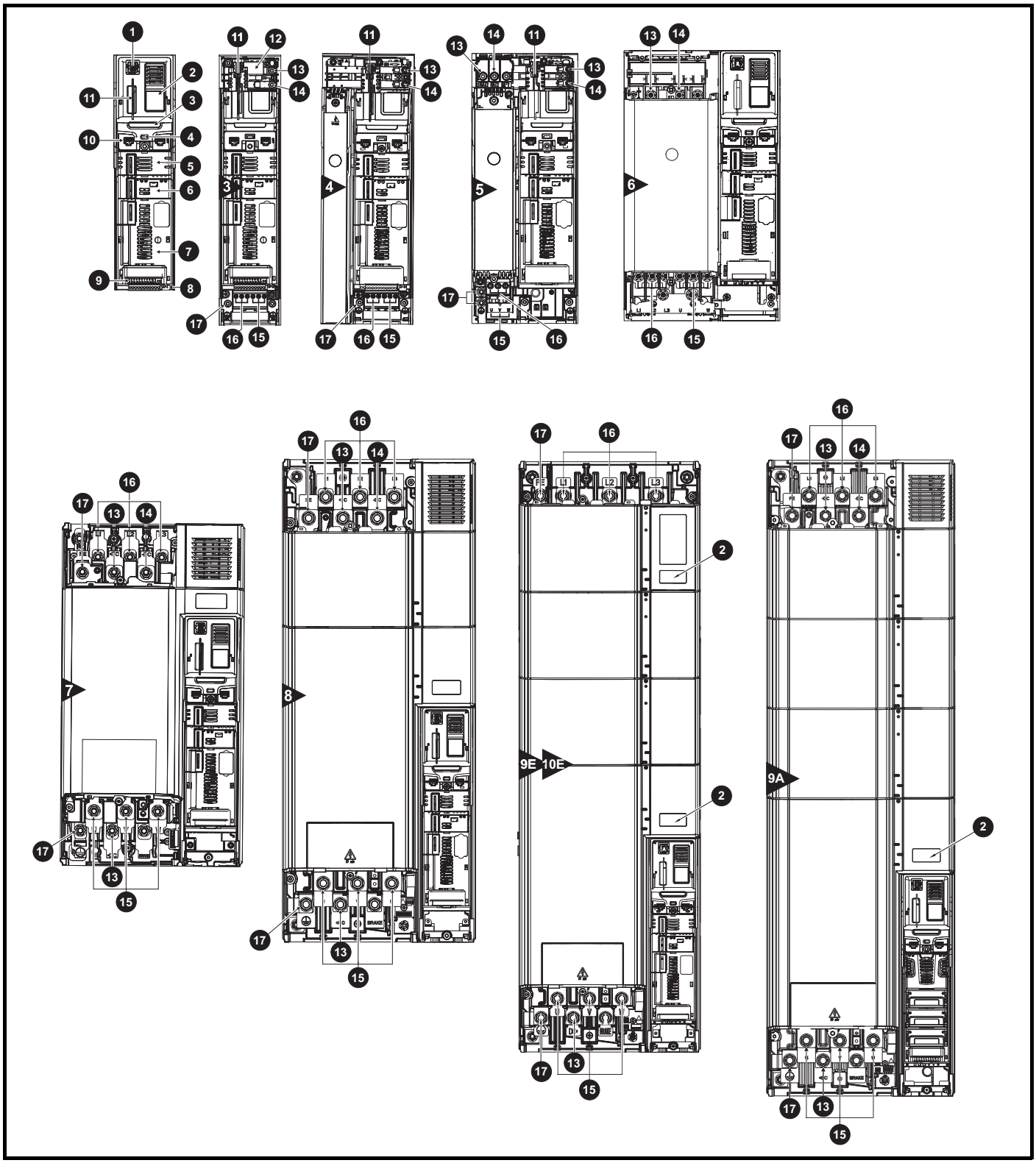
For use with permanent magnet brushless motors without a feedback device installed.

Flux control is not required because the motor is self excited by the permanent magnets which form part of the rotor.

Full torque is available all the way down to zero speed, with salient motors.

2.5 Drive features

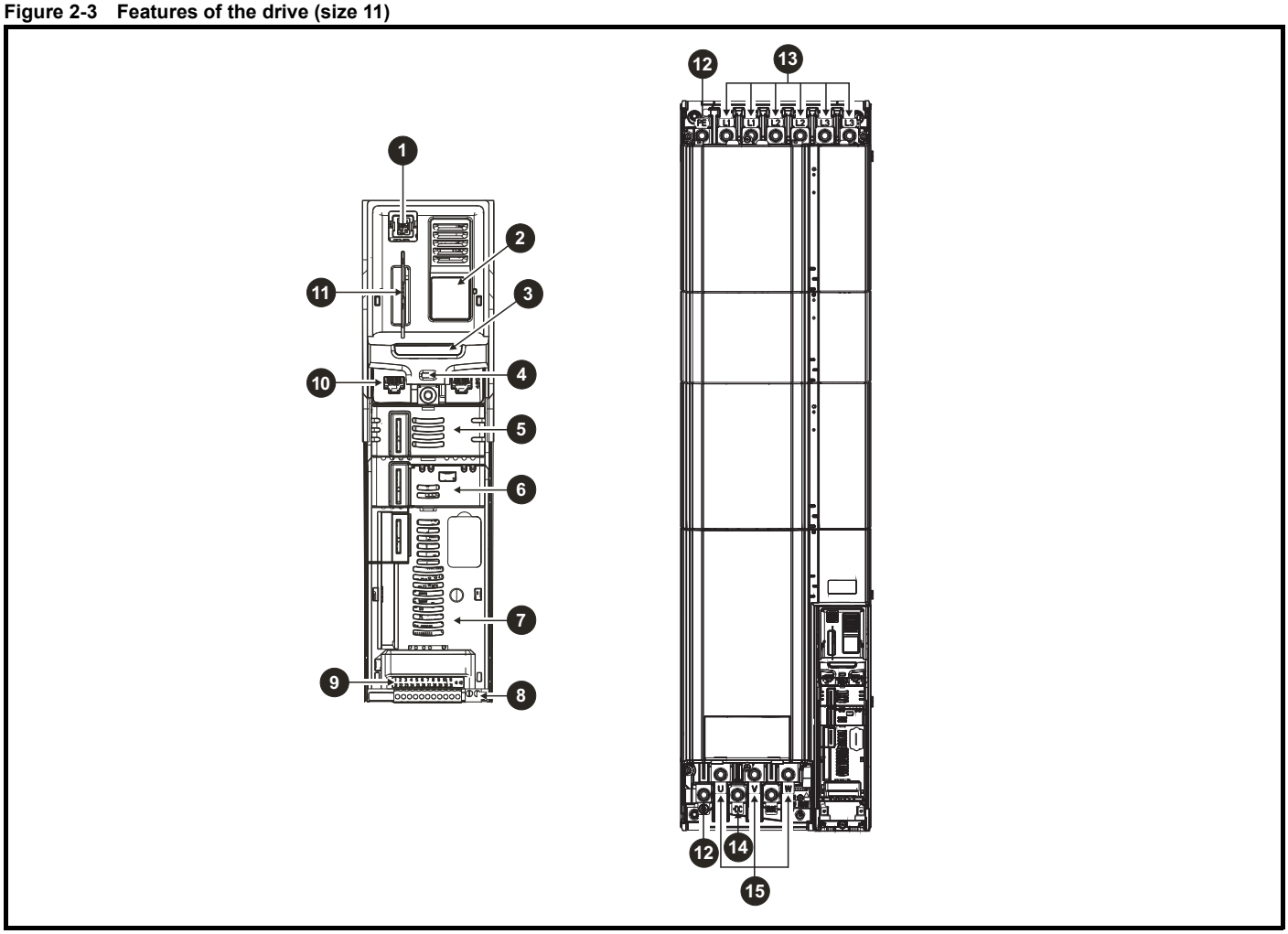
Figure 2-2 Features of the drive (size 3 to 10)



Key

1. Keypad connection
2. Rating label
3. Identification label
4. Status LED
5. Option module slot 1
6. Option module slot 2
7. Option module slot 3
8. Relay connections
9. Control connections
10. Communications port
11. NV media card slot
12. Internal EMC filter
13. DC bus +
14. DC bus -
15. Motor connections
16. AC supply connections
17. Ground connections

Figure 2-3 Features of the drive (size 11)



Key

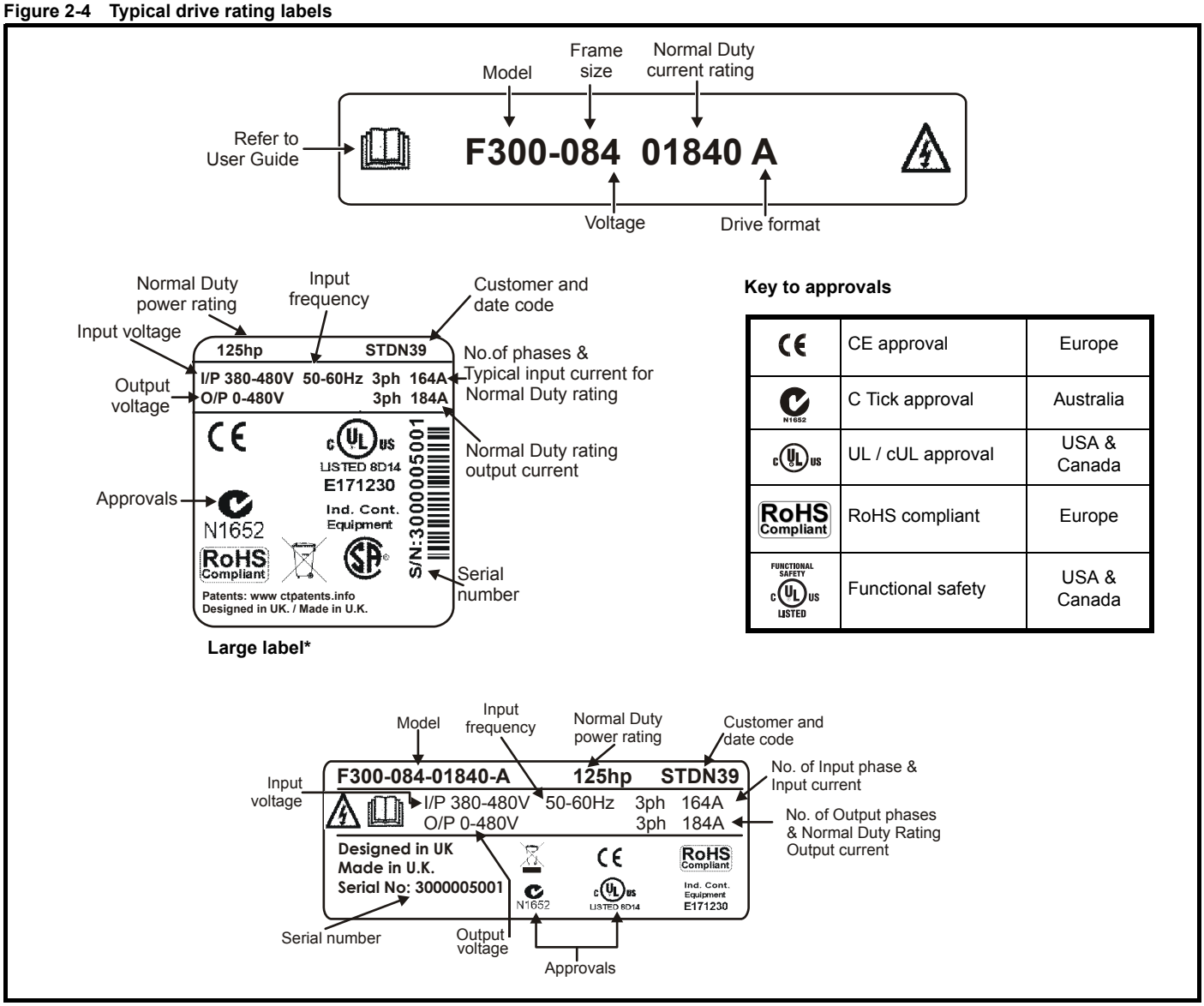
1. Keypad connection
2. Rating label
3. Identification label
4. Status LED
5. Option module slot 1
6. Option module slot 2
7. Option module slot 3
8. Relay connections
9. Control connections
10. Communications port
11. NV media card slot
12. Ground connections
13. AC supply connections*
14. DC bus +
15. Motor connections

* Common AC supply connections are internally linked on 6 pulse drives.

2.6 Nameplate description

See Figure 2-2 and Figure 2-3 for location of rating labels.

Figure 2-4 Typical drive rating labels



* This label is only applicable to Size 7 and above.

Refer to Figure 2-1 *Model number* on page 10 for further information relating to the labels.

NOTE

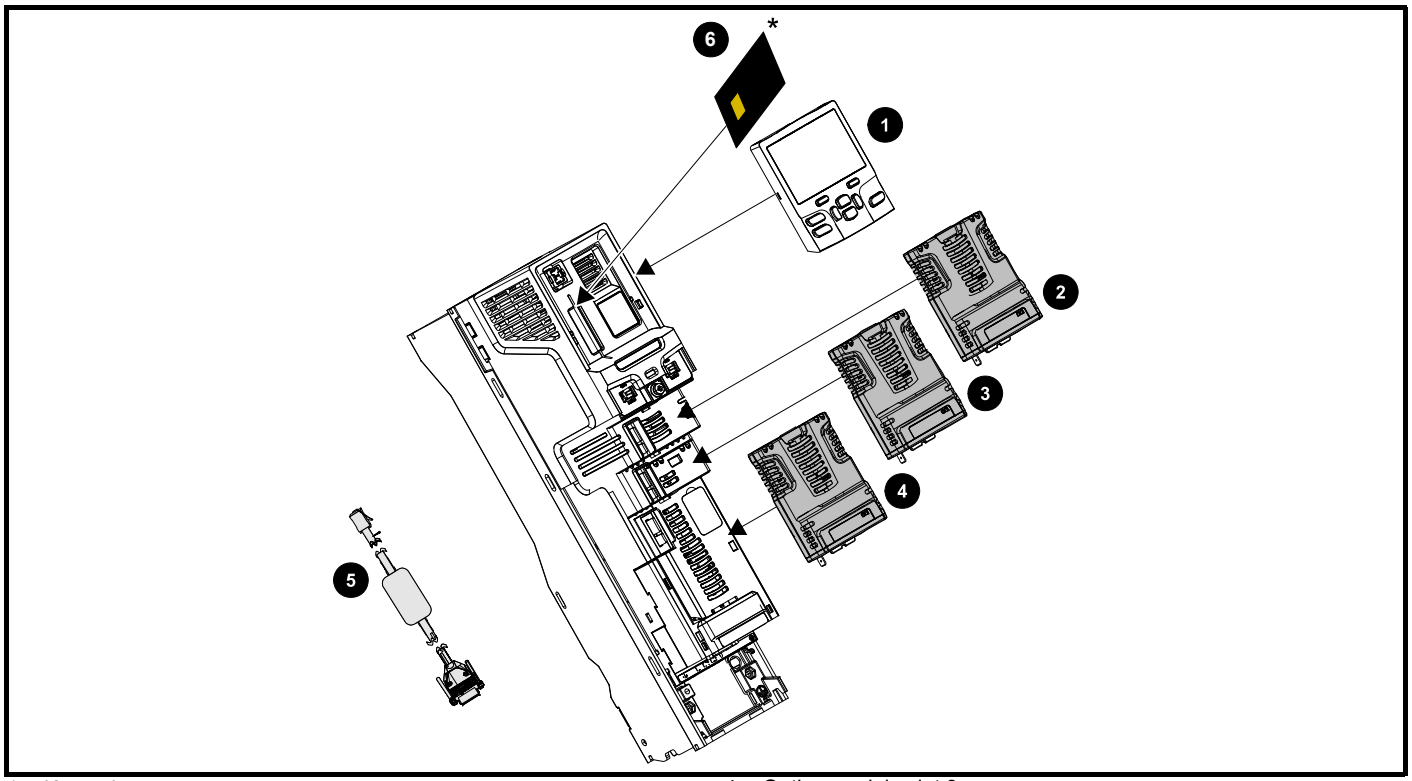
Date code format

The date code is split into two sections: a letter followed by a number. The letter indicates the year, and the number indicates the week number (within the year) in which the option module was built. The letters go in alphabetical order, starting with A in 1990 (B in 1991, C in 1992 etc).

Example:
A date code of **W28** would correspond to week 28 of year 2013.

2.7 Options

Figure 2-5 Options available with the drive



1. Keypad
2. Option module slot 1
3. Option module slot 2
4. Option module slot 3
5. CT Comms cable
6. NV media card

WARNING

Be aware of possible live terminals when inserting or removing the NV media card.

All standard option modules are color-coded in order to make identification easy. All modules have an identification label on top of the module. Standard option modules can be installed to any of the available option slots on the drive. The following tables shows the color-code key and gives further details on their function.

Table 2-6 Option module identification

Type	Option module	Color	Name	Further Details
Fieldbus		N/A	KI-485 Adaptor	**485 Comms Adaptor** 485 Comms adaptor provides 485 communication interface. This adaptor supports 115 k Baud, node addresses between 1 to 16 and 8 1 NP M serial mode.
		Purple	SI-PROFIBUS	**Profibus option** PROFIBUS adapter for communications with the drive
		Medium Grey	SI-DeviceNet	**DeviceNet option** DeviceNet adapter for communications with the drive
		Light Grey	SI-CANopen	**CANopen option** CANopen adapter for communications with the drive
		Beige	SI-Ethernet	External Ethernet module that supports EtherNet/IP, Modbus TCP/IP and RTMoE. The module can be used to provide high speed drive access, global connectivity and integration with IT network technologies, such as wireless networking
		Yellow Green	SI-PROFINET SI-PROFINET V2	**PROFINET option** PROFINET adapter for communications with the drive
Automation (I/O expansion)		Orange	SI-I/O	**Extended I/O** Increases the I/O capability by adding the following combinations: • Digital I/O • Digital Inputs • Analog Inputs (differential or single ended) • Analog Output • Relays

Table 2-7 Keypad identification

Type	Keypad	Name	Further Details
Keypad		KI-HOA Keypad RTC	**LCD keypad option** Keypad with a LCD display and Hand / Off / Auto buttons and RTC

Table 2-8 Additional options

Type	Option	Name	Further Details
Back-up		SD Card Adaptor	**SD Card Adaptor** Allows the drive to use an SD card for drive back-up
		SMARTCARD	**SMARTCARD** Used for parameter back-up with the drive

2.8 Items supplied with the drive

The drive is supplied with a copy of the *Getting Started Guide*, a safety information booklet, the Certificate of Quality and an accessory kit box including the items shown in Table 2-9.

Table 2-9 Parts supplied with the drive

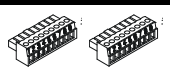
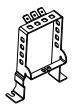
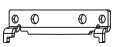
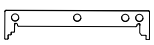
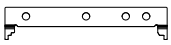
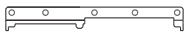
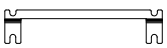
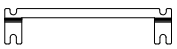
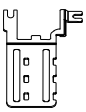
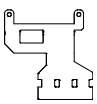
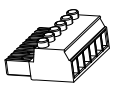
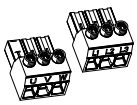
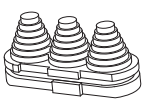
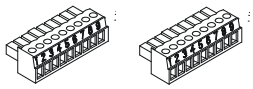
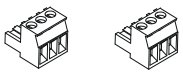
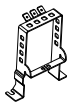
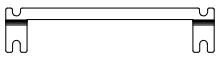
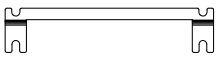
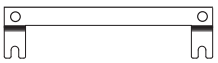
Description	Size 3	Size 4	Size 5	Size 6	Size 7	Size 8
Control connectors	 x 1 x 1					
Relay connector	 x 1 x 1					
24 V power supply connector				 x 1		
Grounding bracket	 x 1					
Surface mounting brackets	 x 2	 x 2	 x 2	 x 2	 x 2	 x 2
Grounding clamp	 x 1		 x 1	 x 1		
DC terminal cover grommets	 x 2					
Terminal nuts				 M6 x 11	 M8 x 12	 M10 x 12
Supply and motor connector	 x 1		 x 1 x 1			
Finger guard grommets			 x 3	 x 2		

Table 2-10 Parts supplied with the drive (size 9A, 9E, 10E and 11E)

Description	Size 9A/9E	Size 10E	Size 11E
Control connectors		 x 1 x 1	
Relay connector		 x 1 x 1	
24 V power supply connector		 x 1	
Grounding bracket		 x 1	
Fan power supply connector	 x 1		
Surface mounting brackets	 x 1		 x 1  x 1

3 Mechanical installation

This chapter describes how to use all mechanical details to install the drive. The drive is intended to be installed in an enclosure. Key features of this chapter include:

- Through-hole mounting
- High IP as standard or through-panel mounting
- Enclosure sizing and layout
- Option module installing
- Terminal location and torque settings

3.1 Safety information

WARNING

Follow the instructions
The mechanical and electrical installation instructions must be adhered to. Any questions or doubt should be referred to the supplier of the equipment. It is the responsibility of the owner or user to ensure that the installation of the drive and any external option unit, and the way in which they are operated and maintained, comply with the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act in the United Kingdom or applicable legislation and regulations and codes of practice in the country in which the equipment is used.

WARNING

Competence of the installer
The drive must be installed by professional assemblers who are familiar with the requirements for safety and EMC. The assembler is responsible for ensuring that the end product or system complies with all the relevant laws in the country where it is to be used.

WARNING

Enclosure
The drive is intended to be mounted in an enclosure which prevents access except by trained and authorized personnel, and which prevents the ingress of contamination. It is designed for use in an environment classified as pollution degree 2 in accordance with IEC 60664-1. This means that only dry, non-conducting contamination is acceptable.

3.2 Planning the installation

The following considerations must be made when planning the installation:

3.2.1 Access

Access must be restricted to authorized personnel only. Safety regulations which apply at the place of use must be complied with.

The IP (Ingress Protection) rating of the drive is installation dependent. For further information, refer to section 3.9 *Enclosing standard drive for high environmental protection* on page 50.

3.2.2 Environmental protection

The drive must be protected from:

- Moisture, including dripping water or spraying water and condensation. An anti-condensation heater may be required, which must be switched off when the drive is running.
- Contamination with electrically conductive material
- Contamination with any form of dust which may restrict the fan, or impair airflow over various components
- Temperature beyond the specified operating and storage ranges
- Corrosive gasses

NOTE

During installation it is recommended that the vents on the drive are covered to prevent debris (e.g. wire off-cuts) from entering the drive.

3.2.3 Cooling

The heat produced by the drive must be removed without its specified operating temperature being exceeded. Note that a sealed enclosure gives much reduced cooling compared with a ventilated one, and may need to be larger and/or use internal air circulating fans.

For further information, refer to section 3.6 *Enclosure for standard drives* on page 46.

3.2.4 Electrical safety

The installation must be safe under normal and fault conditions. Electrical installation instructions are given in Chapter 4 *Electrical installation on page 68*.

3.2.5 Fire protection

The drive enclosure is not classified as a fire enclosure. A separate fire enclosure must be provided.

For installation in the USA, a NEMA 12 enclosure is suitable.

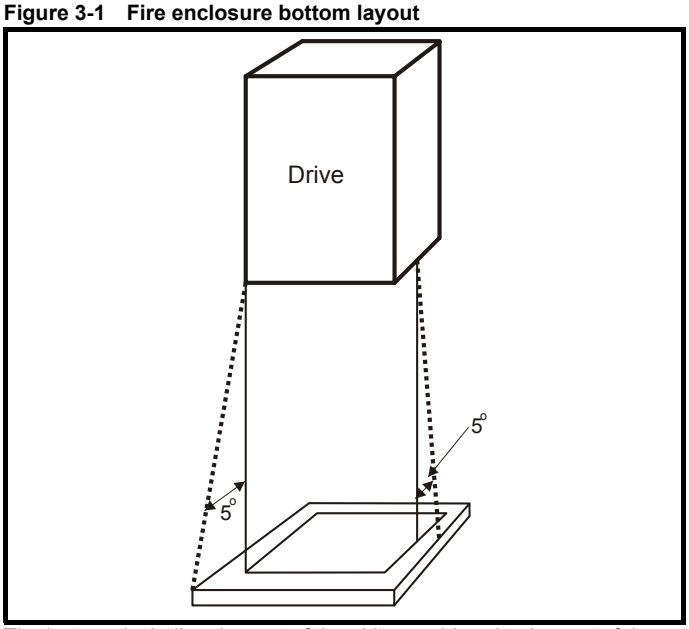
For installation outside the USA, the following (based on IEC 62109-1, standard for PV inverters) is recommended.

Enclosure can be metal and/or polymeric, polymer must meet requirements which can be summarized for larger enclosures as using materials meeting at least UL 94 class 5VB at the point of minimum thickness.

Air filter assemblies to be at least class V-2.

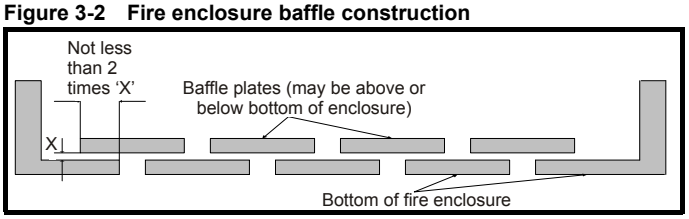
The location and size of the bottom shall cover the area shown in Figure 3-1. Any part of the side which is within the area traced out by the 5° angle is also considered to be part of the bottom of the fire enclosure.

Figure 3-1 Fire enclosure bottom layout



The bottom, including the part of the side considered to be part of the bottom, must be designed to prevent escape of burning material - either by having no openings or by having a baffle construction. This means that openings for cables etc. must be sealed with materials meeting the 5VB requirement, or else have a baffle above. See Figure 3-2 for acceptable baffle construction. This does not apply for mounting in an enclosed electrical operating area (restricted access) with concrete floor.

Figure 3-2 Fire enclosure baffle construction



3.2.6 Electromagnetic compatibility

Variable speed drives are powerful electronic circuits which can cause electromagnetic interference if not installed correctly with careful attention to the layout of the wiring.

Some simple routine precautions can prevent disturbance to typical industrial control equipment.

If it is necessary to meet strict emission limits, or if it is known that electromagnetically sensitive equipment is located nearby, then full precautions must be observed. In-built into the drive, is an internal EMC filter, which reduces emissions under certain conditions. If these conditions are exceeded, then the use of an external EMC filter may be required at the drive inputs, which must be located very close to the drives. Space must be made available for the filters and allowance made for carefully segregated wiring. Both levels of precautions are covered in section 4.10 *EMC (Electromagnetic compatibility) on page 88*.

3.2.7 Hazardous areas

The drive must not be located in a classified hazardous area unless it is installed in an approved enclosure and the installation is certified.

3.3 Terminal cover removal

Isolation device
The AC and / or DC power supply must be disconnected from the drive using an approved isolation device before any cover is removed from the drive or before any servicing work is performed.

Stored charge
The drive contains capacitors that remain charged to a potentially lethal voltage after the AC and / or DC power supply has been disconnected. If the drive has been energized, the power supply must be isolated at least ten minutes before work may continue.

Normally, the capacitors are discharged by an internal resistor. Under certain, unusual fault conditions, it is possible that the capacitors may fail to discharge, or be prevented from being discharged by a voltage applied to the output terminals. If the drive has failed in a manner that causes the display to go blank immediately, it is possible the capacitors will not be discharged. In this case, consult Control Techniques or their authorized distributor.

3.3.1 Removing the terminal covers

Figure 3-3 Location and identification of terminal covers (size 3 to 10)

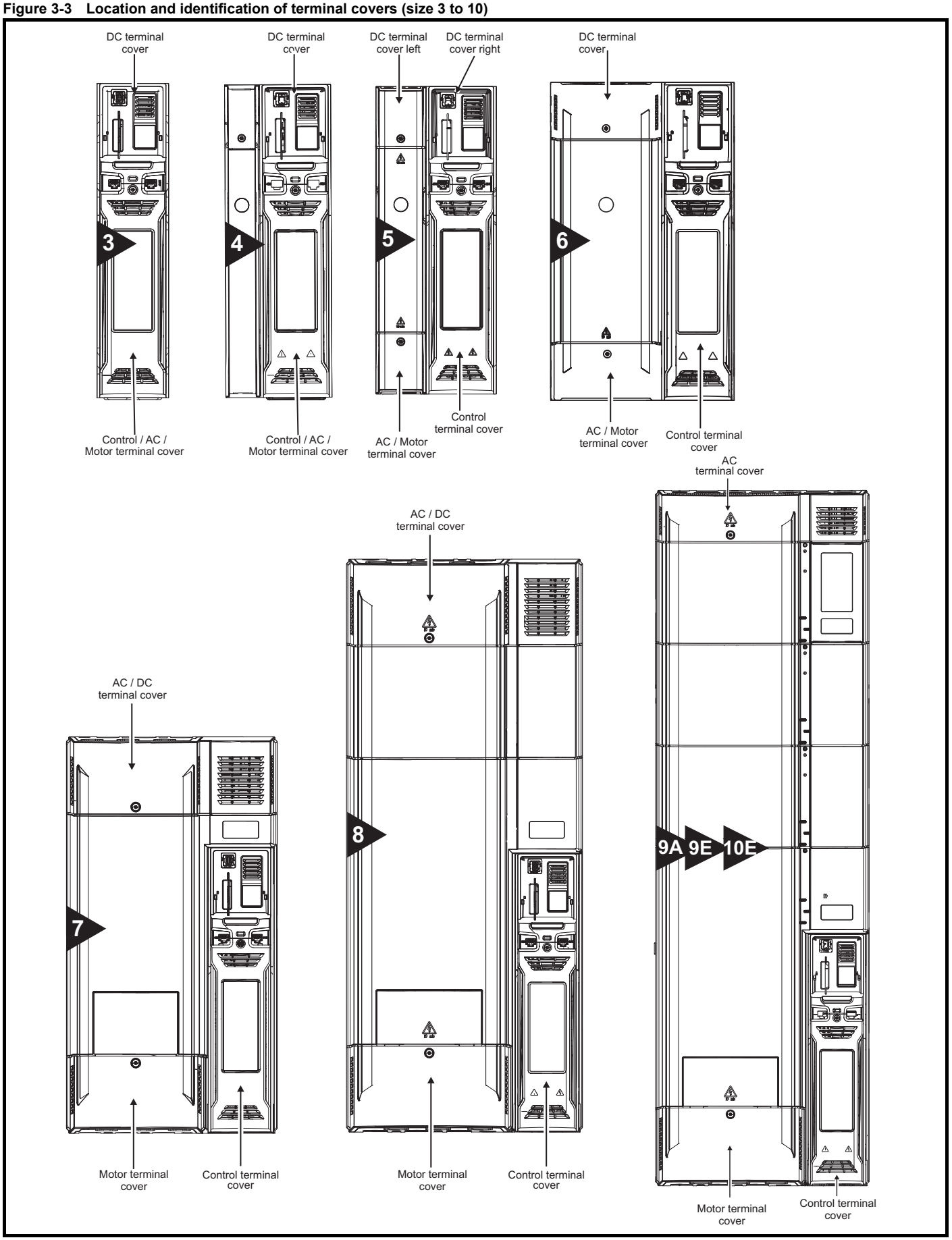


Figure 3-4 Location and identification of terminal covers (size 11)

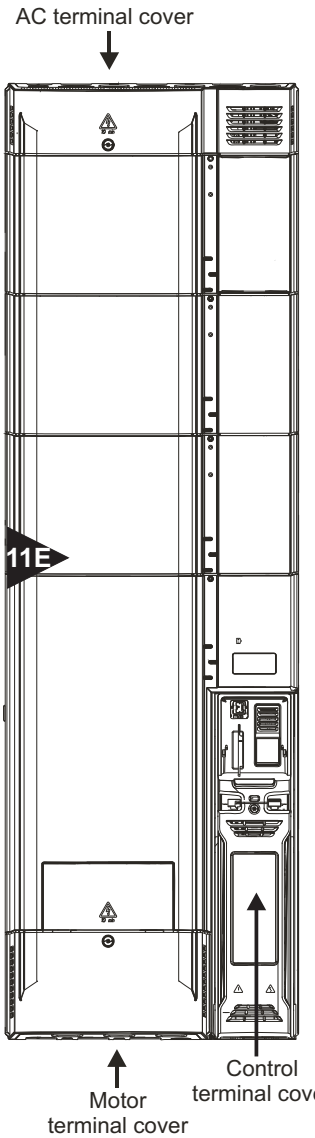
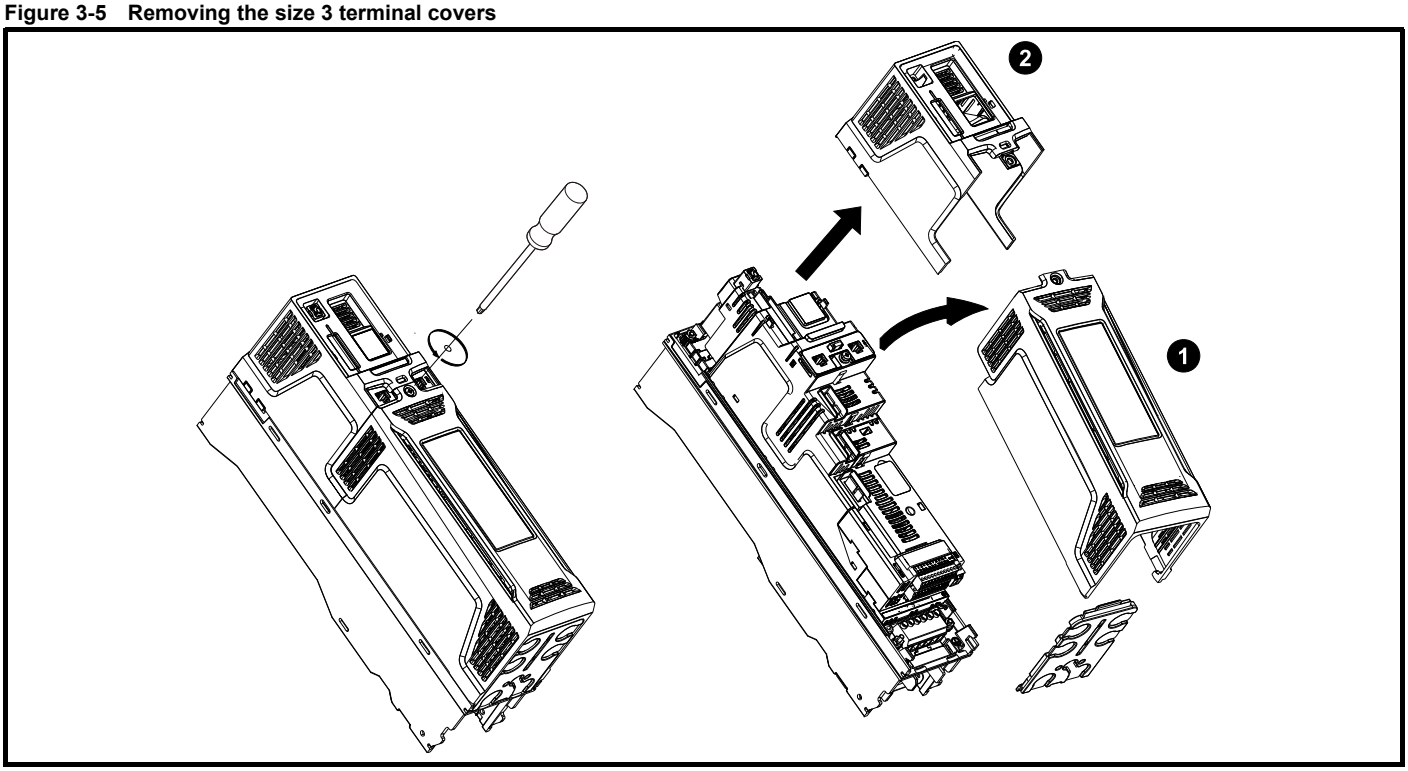


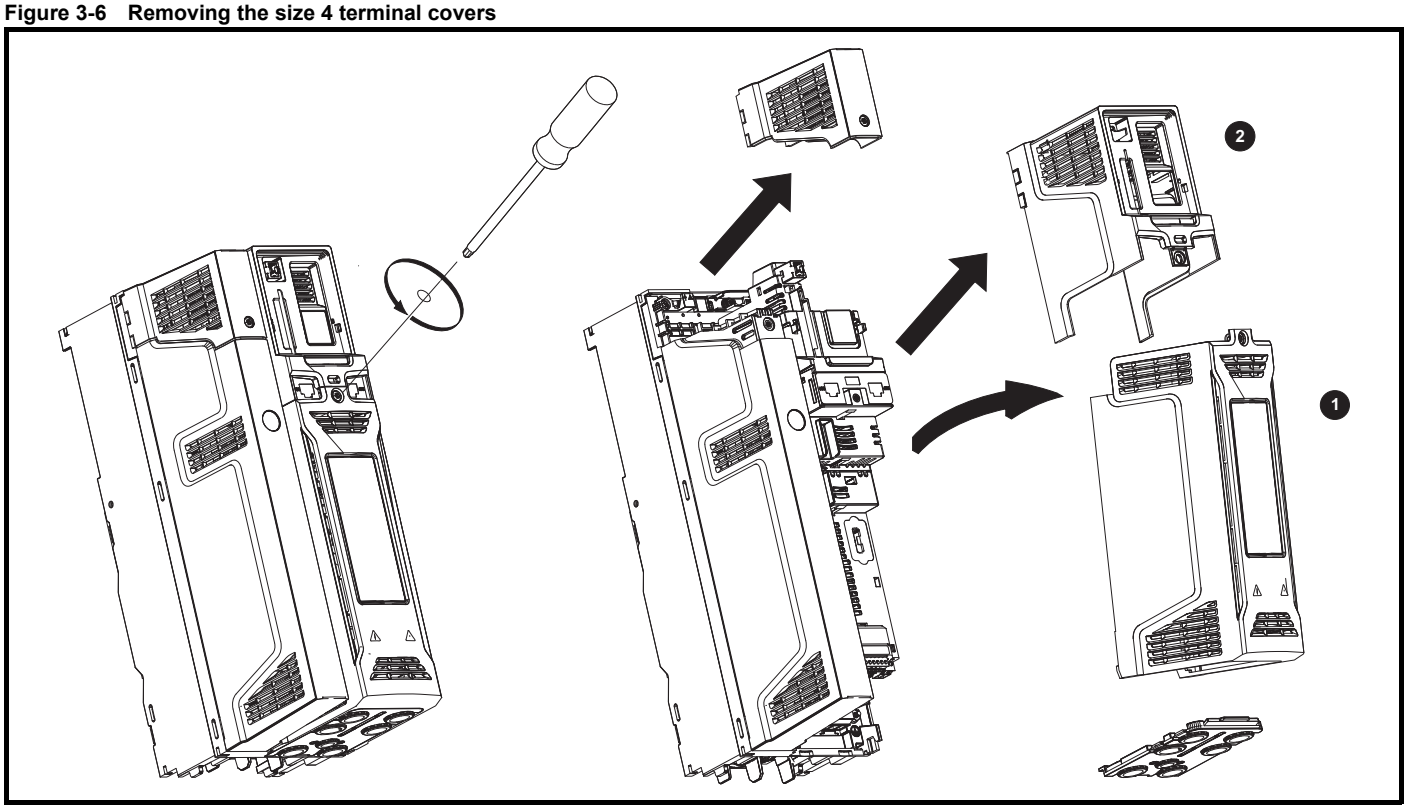
Figure 3-5 Removing the size 3 terminal covers



1. Control / AC / Motor terminal cover
2. DC cover

On size 3 drives, the Control / AC / Motor terminal cover must be removed before removal of the DC / Terminal cover. When replacing the terminal covers, the screws should be tightened to a maximum torque of 1 N m (0.7 lb ft).

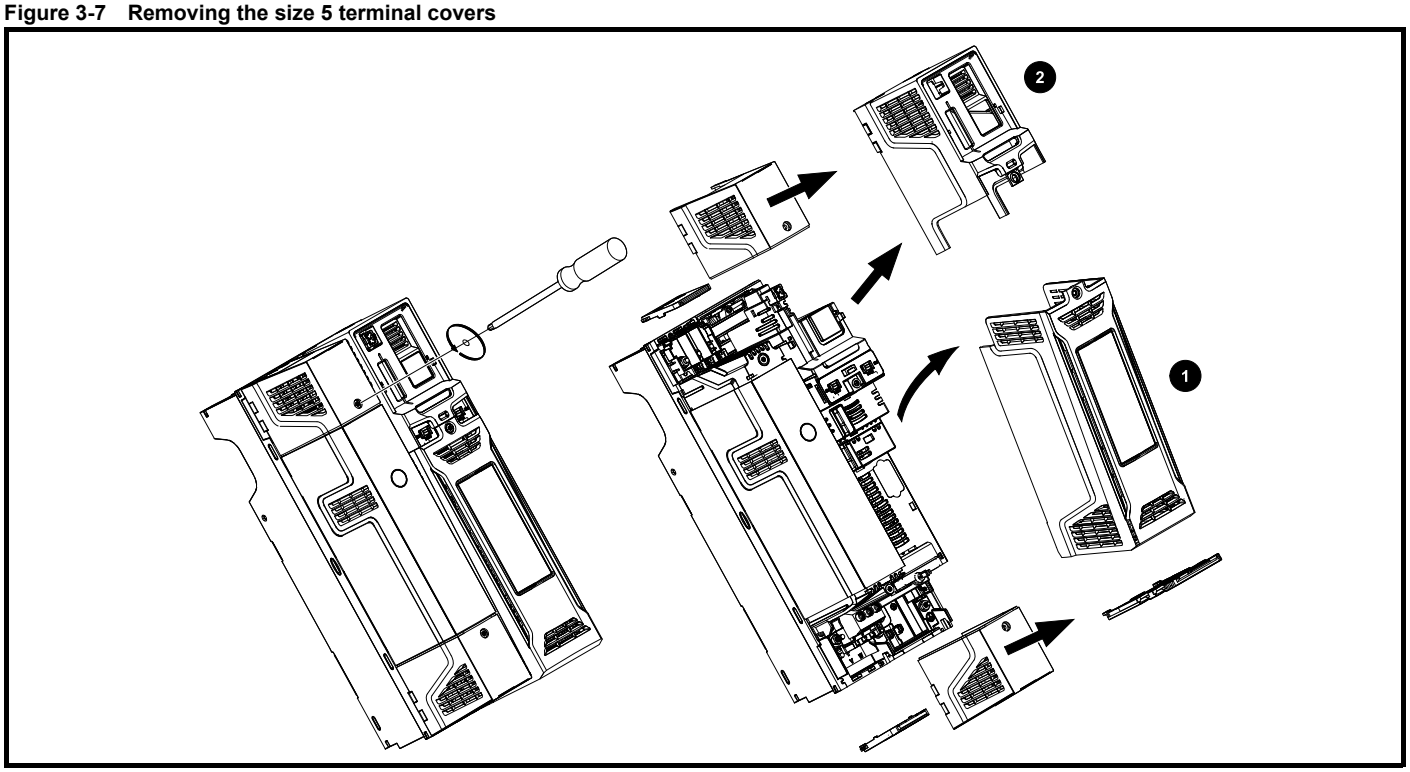
Figure 3-6 Removing the size 4 terminal covers



1. Control / AC / Motor terminal cover
2. DC cover

On size 4 drives, the Control / AC / Motor terminal cover must be removed before removal of the DC / Terminal cover. When replacing the terminal covers, the screws should be tightened to a maximum torque of 1 N m (0.7 lb ft).

Figure 3-7 Removing the size 5 terminal covers



1. Control terminal cover
2. DC cover

On size 5 drives, the Control terminal cover must be removed before removal of the DC / Terminal cover right. When replacing the terminal covers, the screws should be tightened to a maximum torque of 1 N m (0.7 lb ft).

Figure 3-8 Removing the size 6 terminal covers

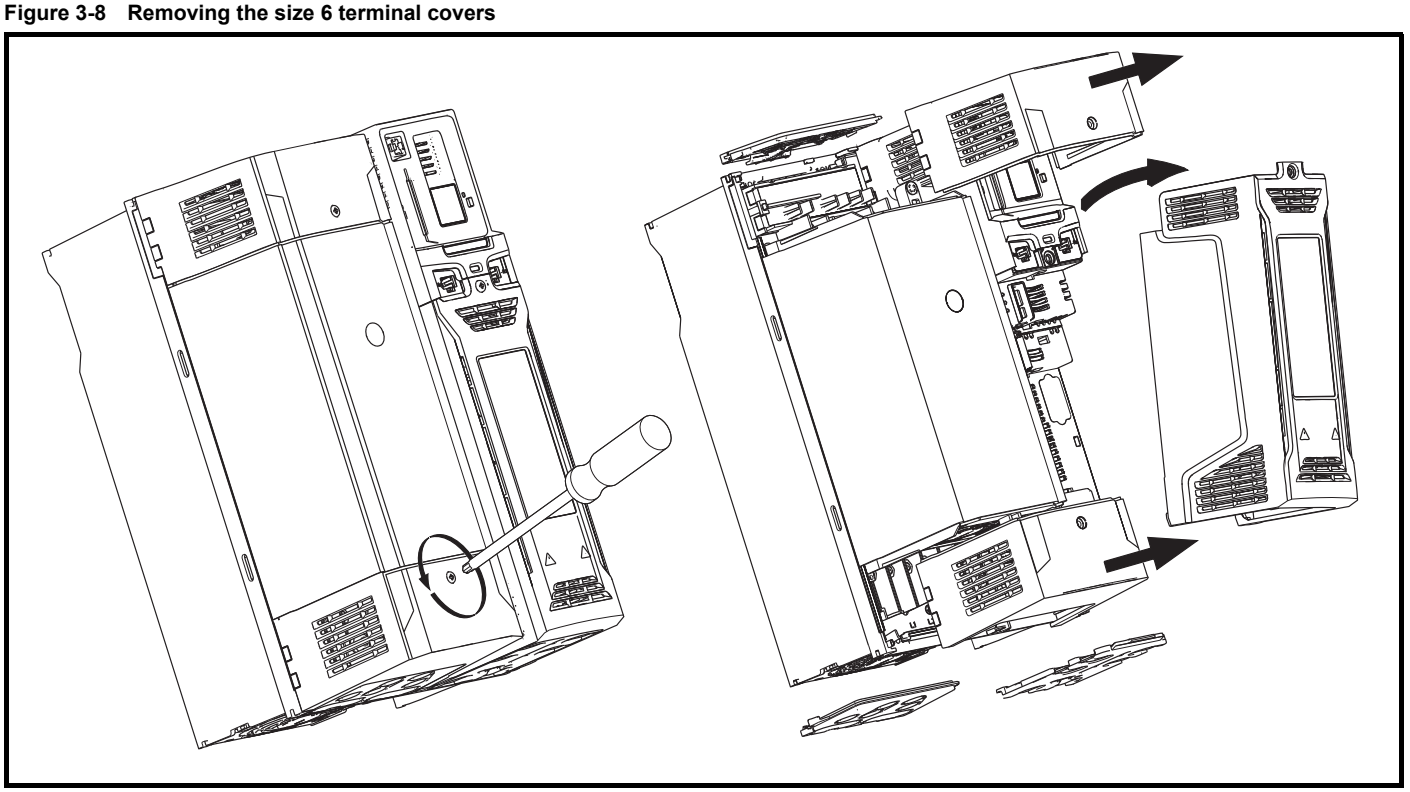
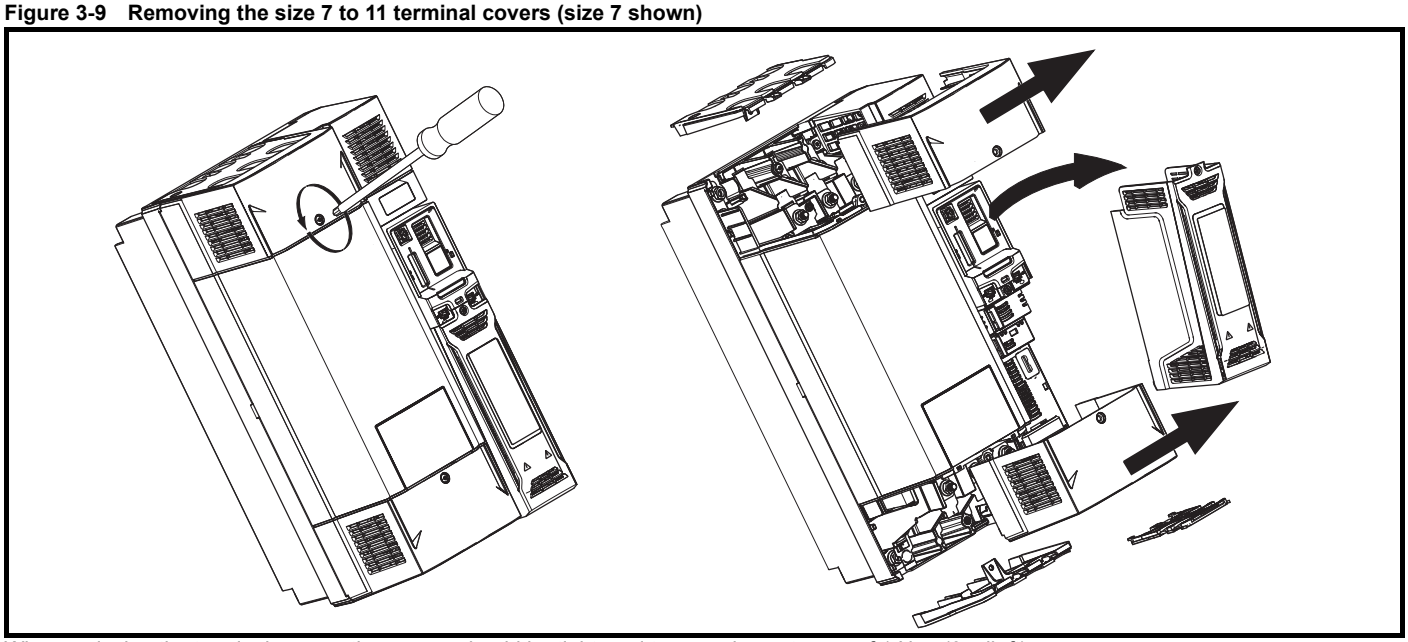


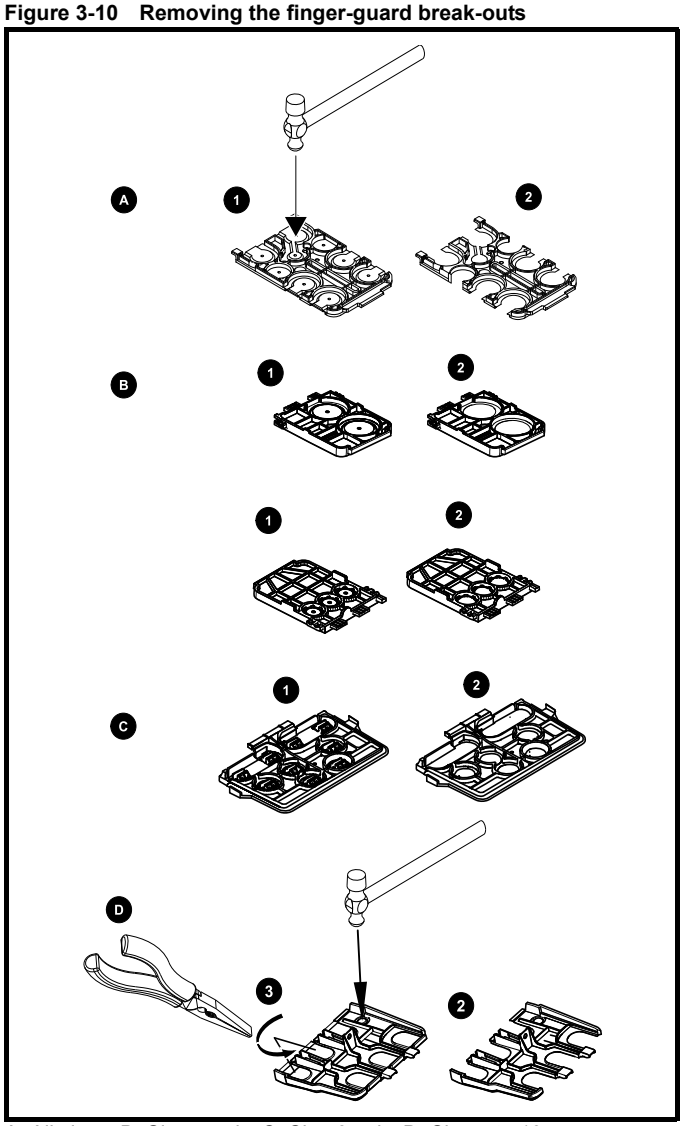
Figure 3-9 Removing the size 7 to 11 terminal covers (size 7 shown)



When replacing the terminal covers, the screws should be tightened to a maximum torque of 1 N m (0.7 lb ft).

3.3.2 Removing the finger-guard and DC terminal cover break-outs

Figure 3-10 Removing the finger-guard break-outs



A: All sizes. B: Size 5 only. C: Size 6 only. D: Size 7 to 10.

Place finger-guard on a flat solid surface and hit relevant break-outs with hammer as shown (1). Continue until all required break-outs are removed (2). Remove any flash / sharp edges once the break-outs are removed.

Grommet kits are available for size 7 to 10 finger guards. For size 8 to 10, two versions are available allowing for either single or double cable entries.

Table 3-1 Grommet kits

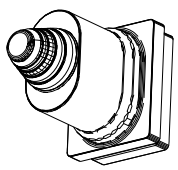
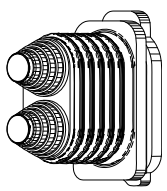
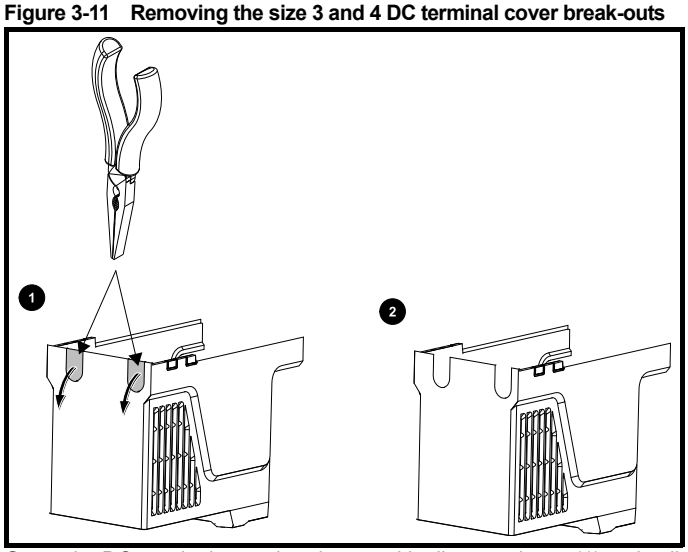
Drive size	Quantity of kits	Part number	Picture
Size 7 - Kit of 8 x single entry grommets	1	3470-0086-00	
Size 8 - Kit of 8 x single entry grommets	1	3470-0089-00	
Size 8 - Kit of 8 x double entry grommets	1	3470-0090-00	
Size 9E and 10E - Kit of 8 x double entry grommets	1	3470-0107-00	
Size 11E- Kit of 8 x double entry grommets	2		

Figure 3-11 Removing the size 3 and 4 DC terminal cover break-outs



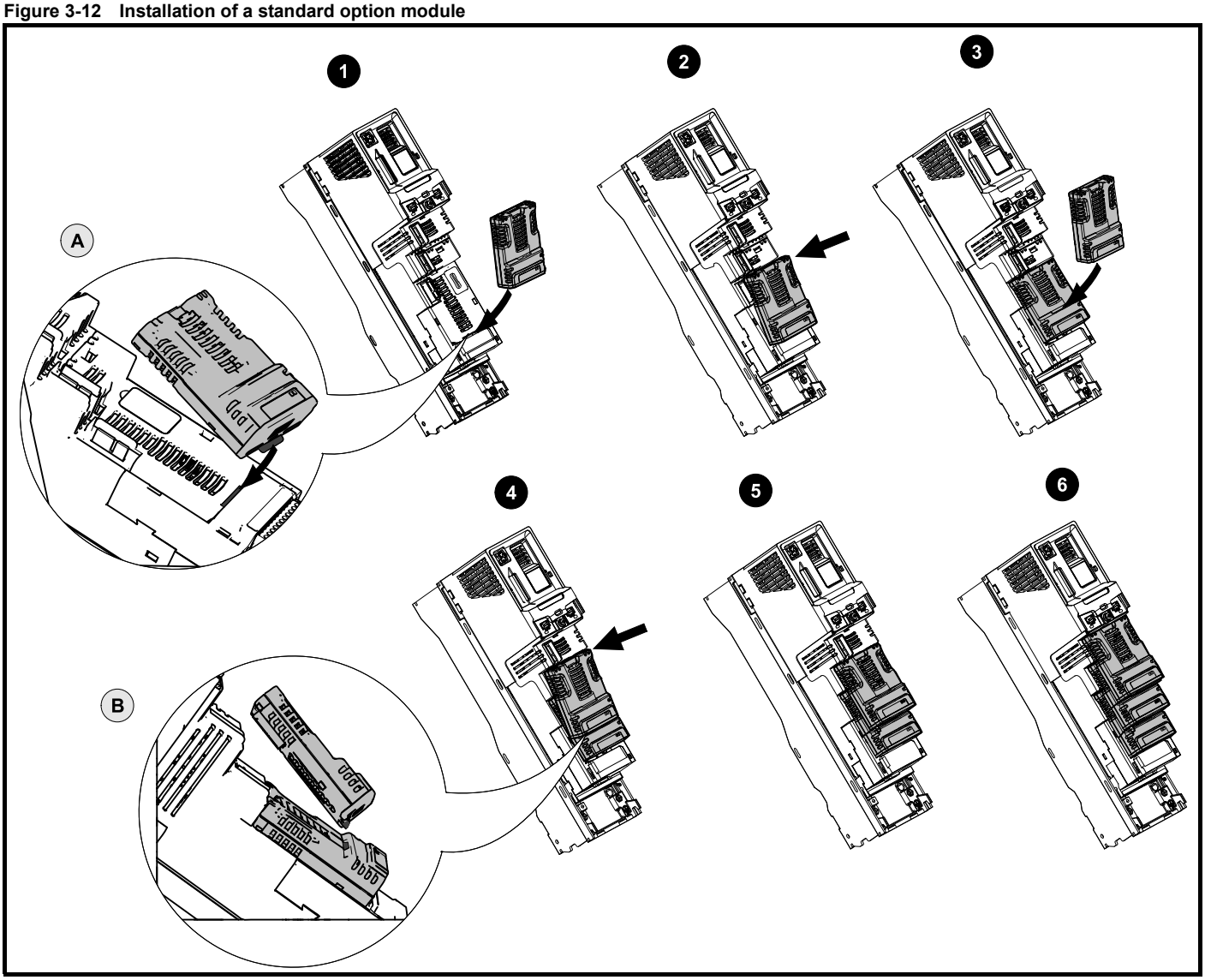
Grasp the DC terminal cover break-outs with pliers as shown (1) and pull down in the direction shown to remove. Continue until all required break-outs are removed (2). Remove any flash / sharp edges once the break-outs are removed. Use the DC terminal cover grommets supplied in the accessory box (Table 2-9 on page 20) to maintain the seal at the top of the drive.

3.4 Installing / removing option modules and keypads

CAUTION

Power down the drive before installing / removing the option module. Failure to do so may result in damage to the product.

Figure 3-12 Installation of a standard option module



Installing the first option module

NOTE

Option module slots must be used in the following order: slot 3, slot 2 and slot 1 (refer to Figure 2-2 *Features of the drive (size 3 to 10)* on page 15 for slot numbers).

- Move the option module in direction shown (1).
- Align and insert the option module tab in to the slot provided (2), this is highlighted in the detailed view (A).
- Press down on the option module until it clicks into place.

Installing the second option module

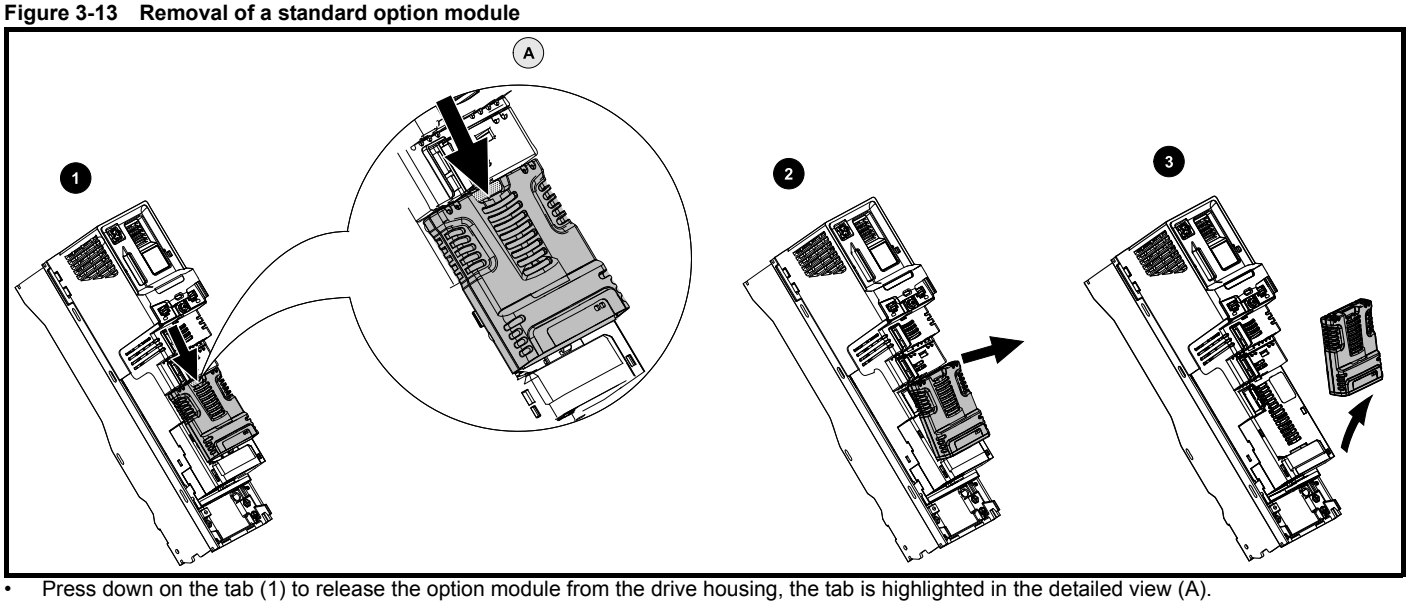
- Move the option module in direction shown (3).
- Align and insert the option module tab in to the slot provided on the already installed option module (4), this is highlighted in the detailed view (B).
- Press down on the option module until it clicks into place. Image (5) shows two option modules fully installed.

Installing the third option module

- Repeat the above process.

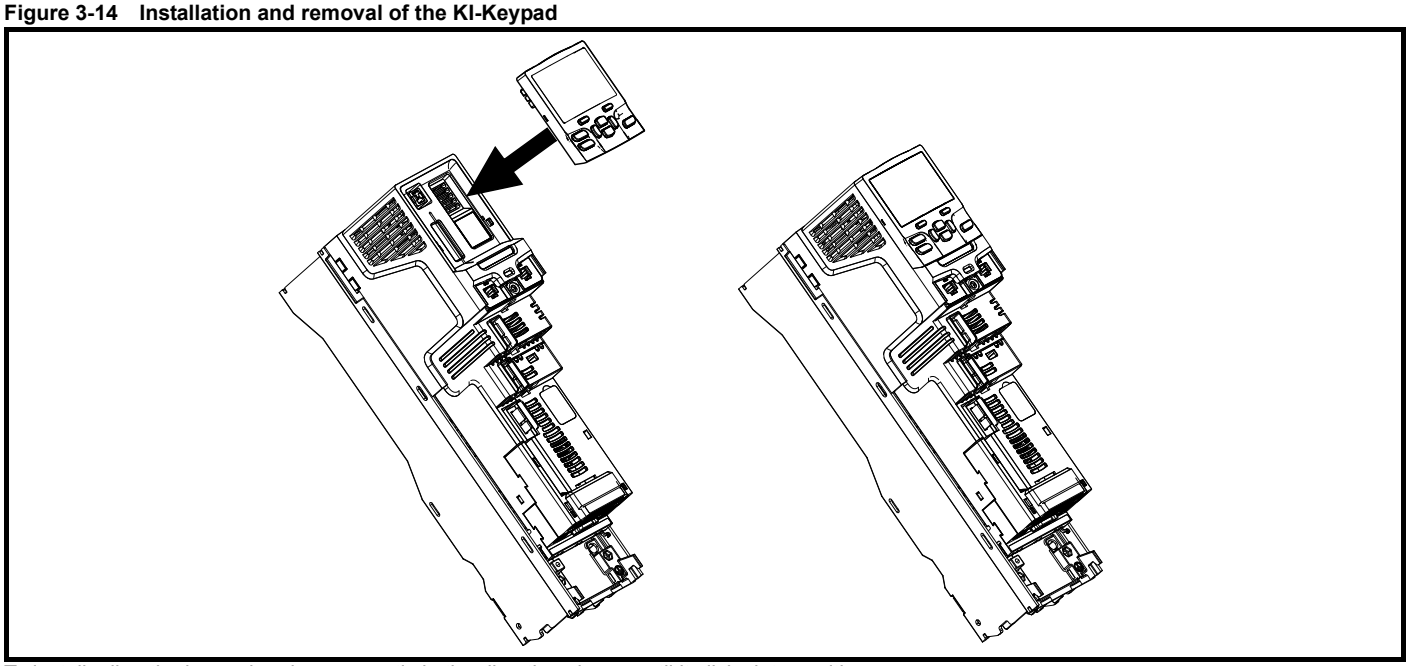
The drive has the facility for all three option module slots to be used at the same time, image (6) shows the three option modules installed.

Figure 3-13 Removal of a standard option module



- Press down on the tab (1) to release the option module from the drive housing, the tab is highlighted in the detailed view (A).
- Tilt the option module towards you as shown (2).
- Totally remove the option module in direction shown (3).

Figure 3-14 Installation and removal of the KI-Keypad



To install, align the keypad and press gently in the direction shown until it clicks into position.

To remove, reverse the installation instructions.

NOTE

The keypad can be installed / removed while the drive is powered up and running a motor, providing that the drive is not operating in keypad mode.

3.5 Dimensions and mounting methods

The drive can be either surface or through-panel mounted using the appropriate brackets. The following drawings show the dimensions of the drive and mounting holes for each method to allow a back plate to be prepared.

The Through-panel mounting kit is not supplied with the drive and can be purchased separately, below are the relevant part numbers:

Size	CT part number
3	3470-0053
4	3470-0056
5	3470-0067
6	3470-0055
7	3470-0079
8	3470-0083
9A	3470-0119
9E/10E	3470-0105
11E	3470-0126

WARNING

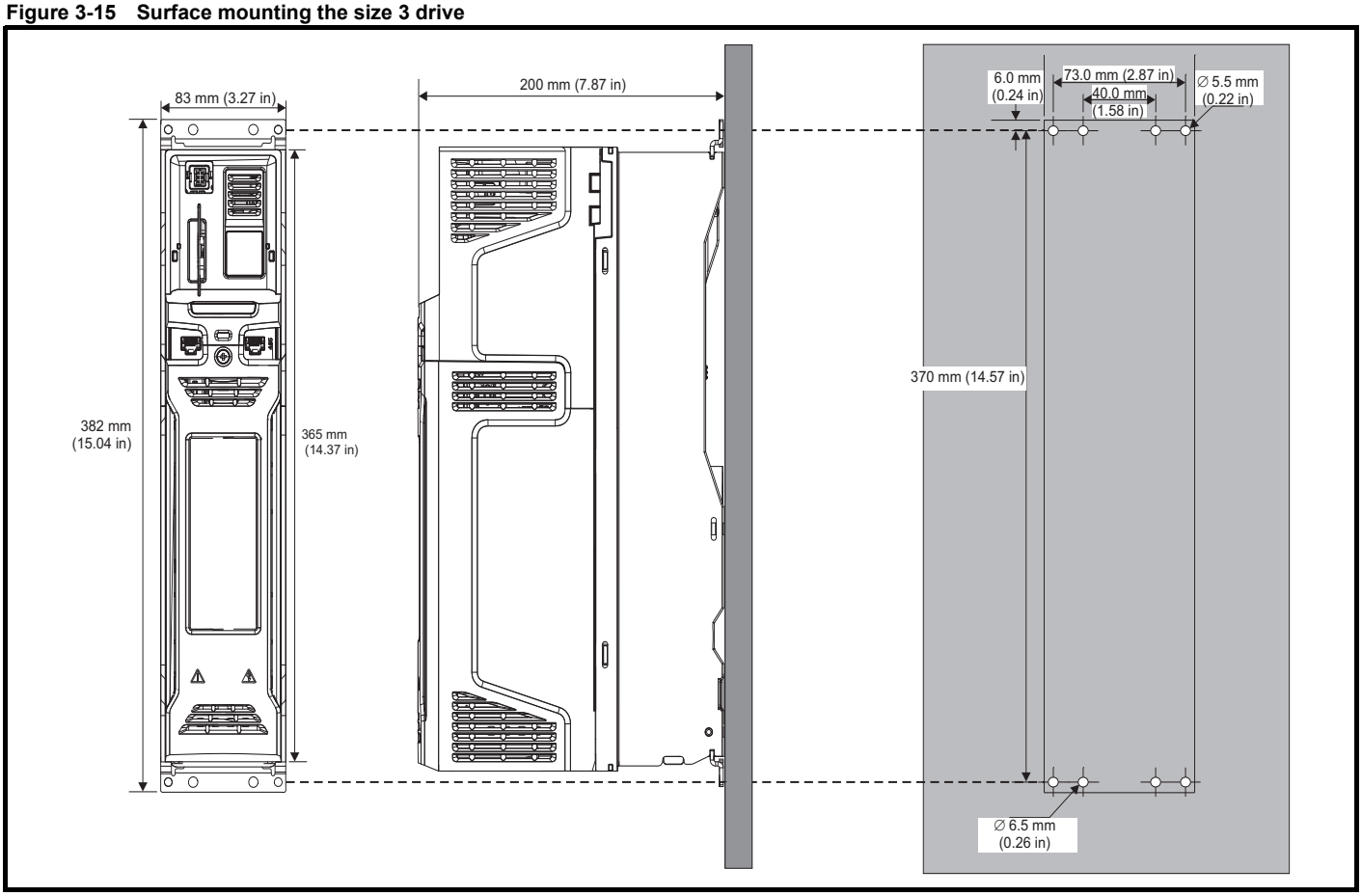
If the drive has been used at high load levels for a period of time, the heatsink can reach temperatures in excess of 70 °C (158 °F). Human contact with the heatsink should be prevented.

WARNING

Many of the drives in this product range weigh in excess of 15 kg (33 lb). Use appropriate safeguards when lifting these models. A full list of drive weights can be found in section 12.1.19 *Weights* on page 244.

3.5.1 Surface mounting

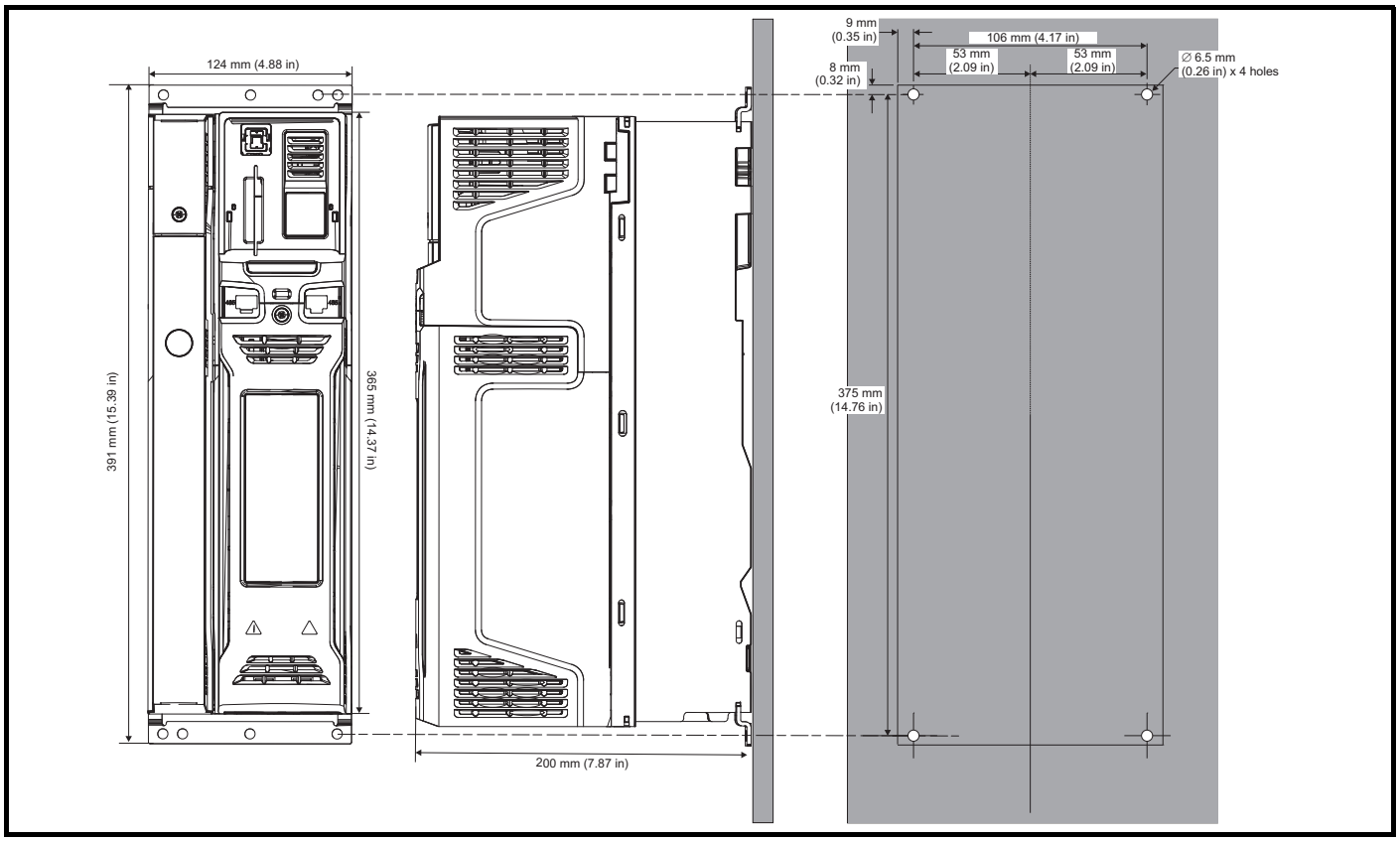
Figure 3-15 Surface mounting the size 3 drive



NOTE

Each mounting bracket contains 4 mounting holes, the outer holes (5.5 mm) x 2 should be used for mounting the drive to the backplate as this allows the heatsink fan to be replaced without removing the drive from the backplate. The inner holes (6.5 mm) x 2 are used for Unidrive SP size 1 retrofit applications. See Table 3-2 for further information.

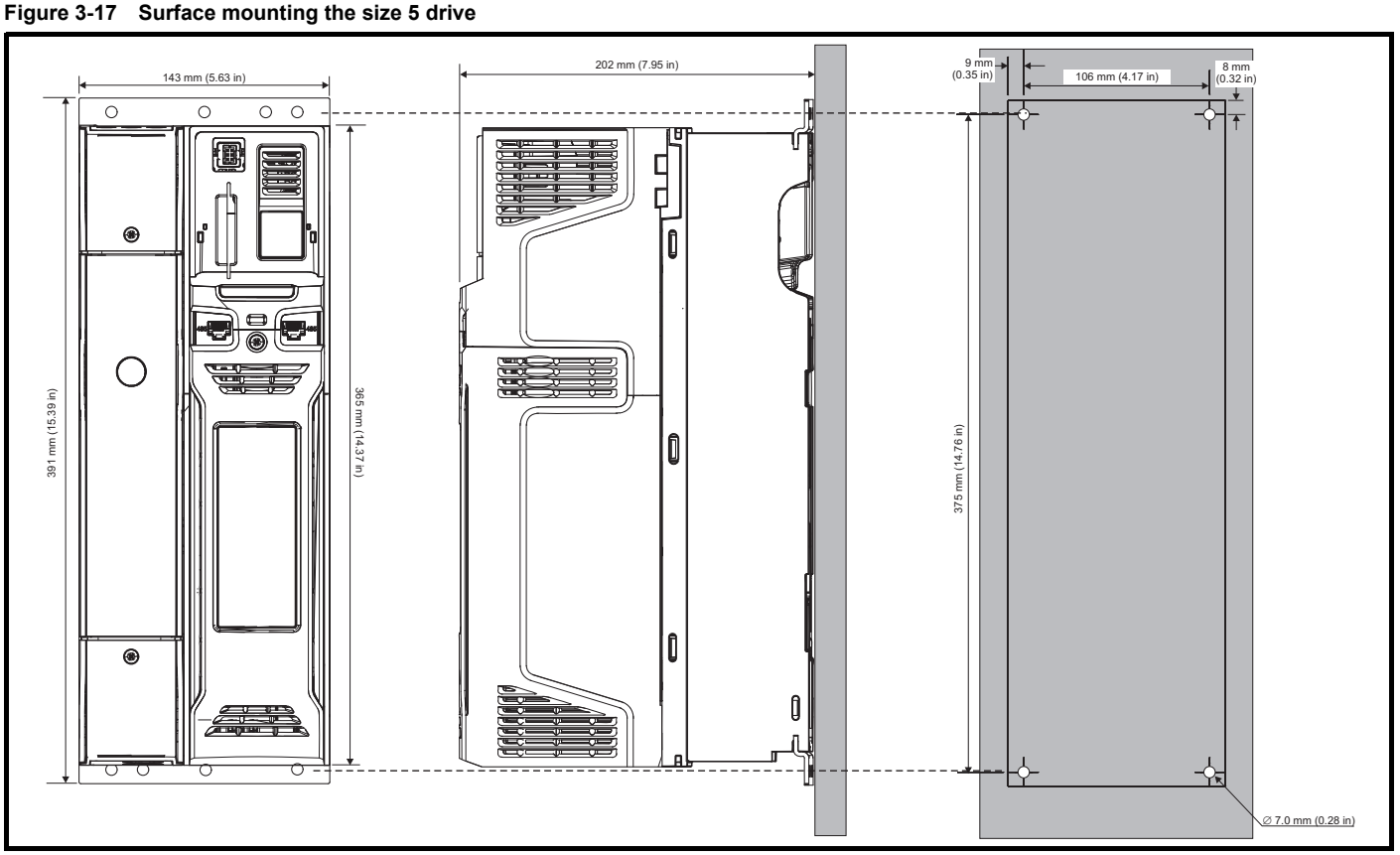
Figure 3-16 Surface mounting the size 4 drive



NOTE

The outer holes in the mounting bracket are to be used for surface mounting. See Table 3-2 for further information.

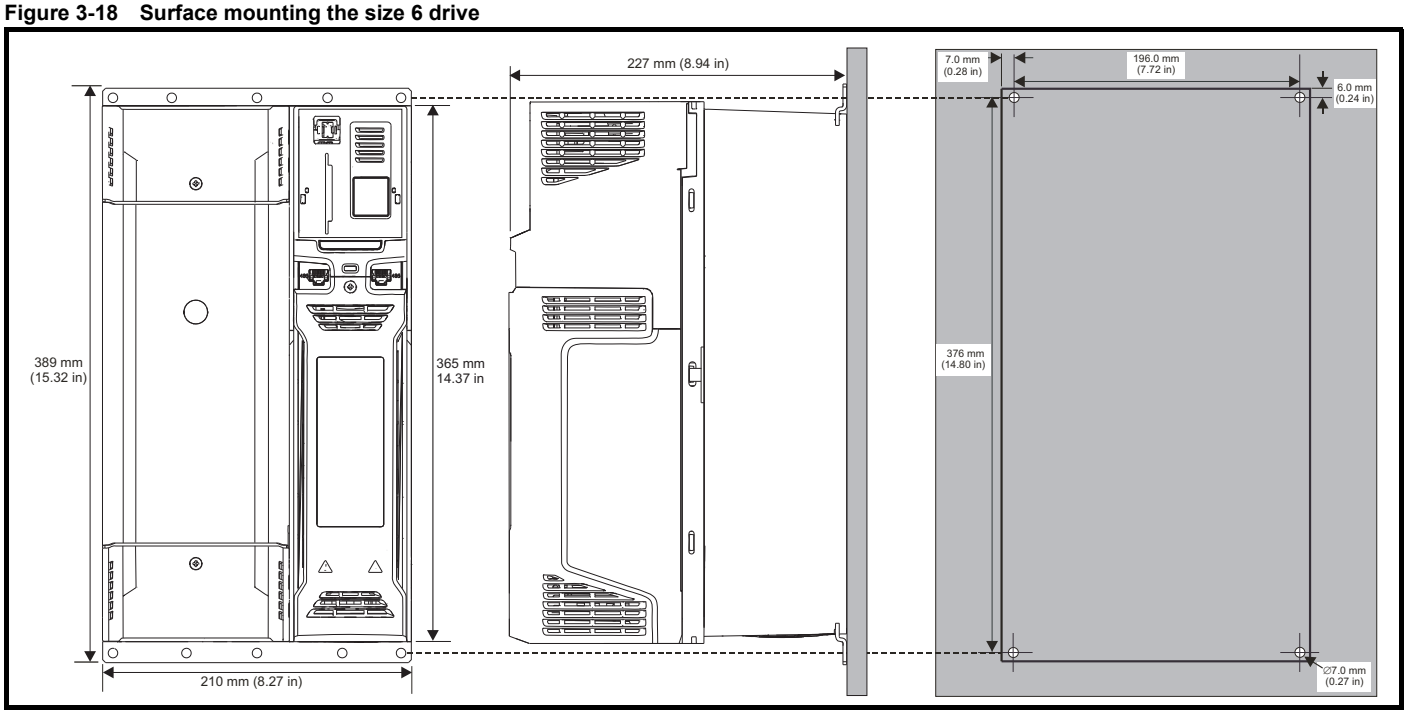
Figure 3-17 Surface mounting the size 5 drive



NOTE

The outer holes in the mounting bracket are to be used for surface mounting. See Table 3-2 for further information.

Figure 3-18 Surface mounting the size 6 drive



NOTE

The outer holes in the mounting bracket are to be used for surface mounting. See Table 3-2 for further information.

Figure 3-19 Surface mounting the size 7 drive

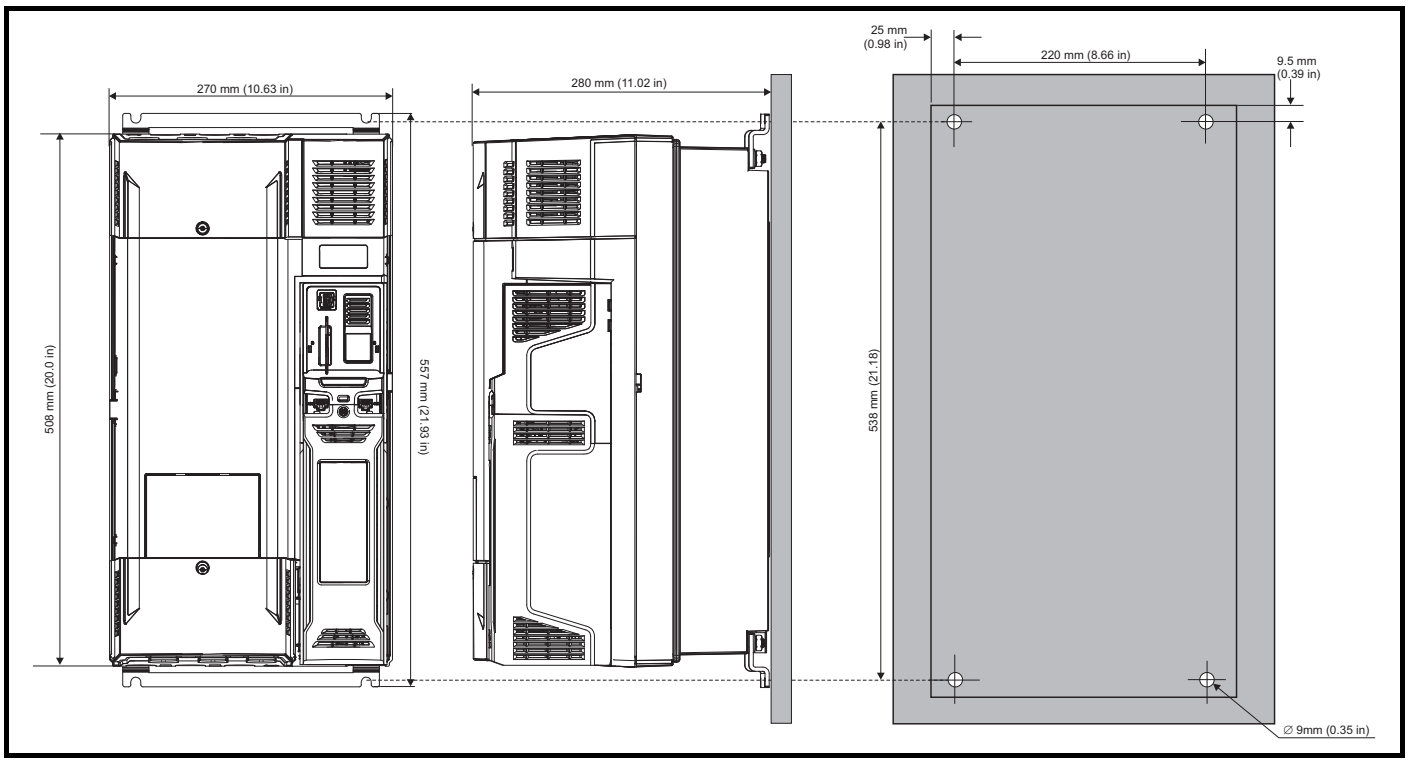


Figure 3-20 Surface mounting the size 8 drive

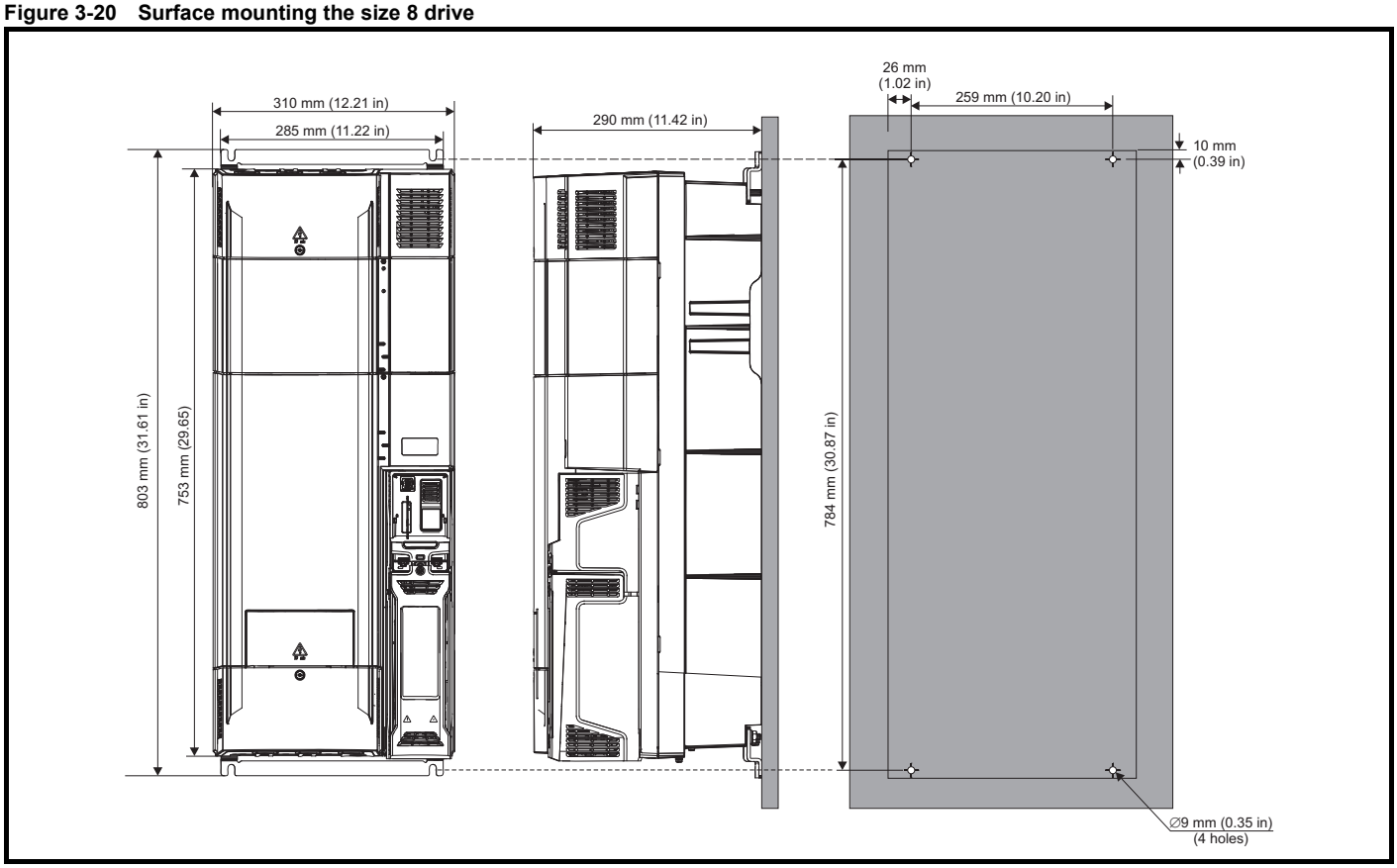


Figure 3-21 Surface mounting the size 9A drive

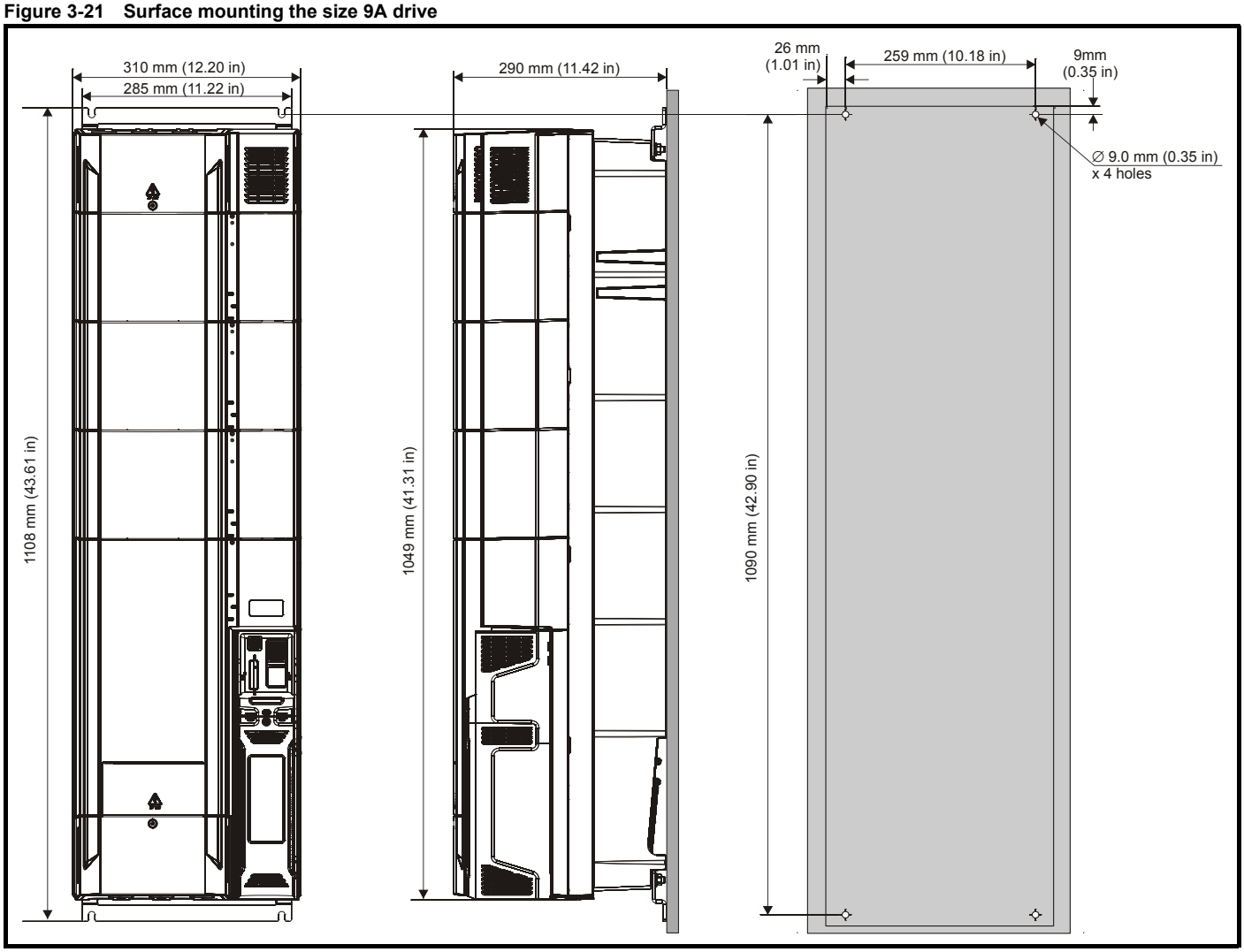


Figure 3-22 Surface mounting the size 9E and 10

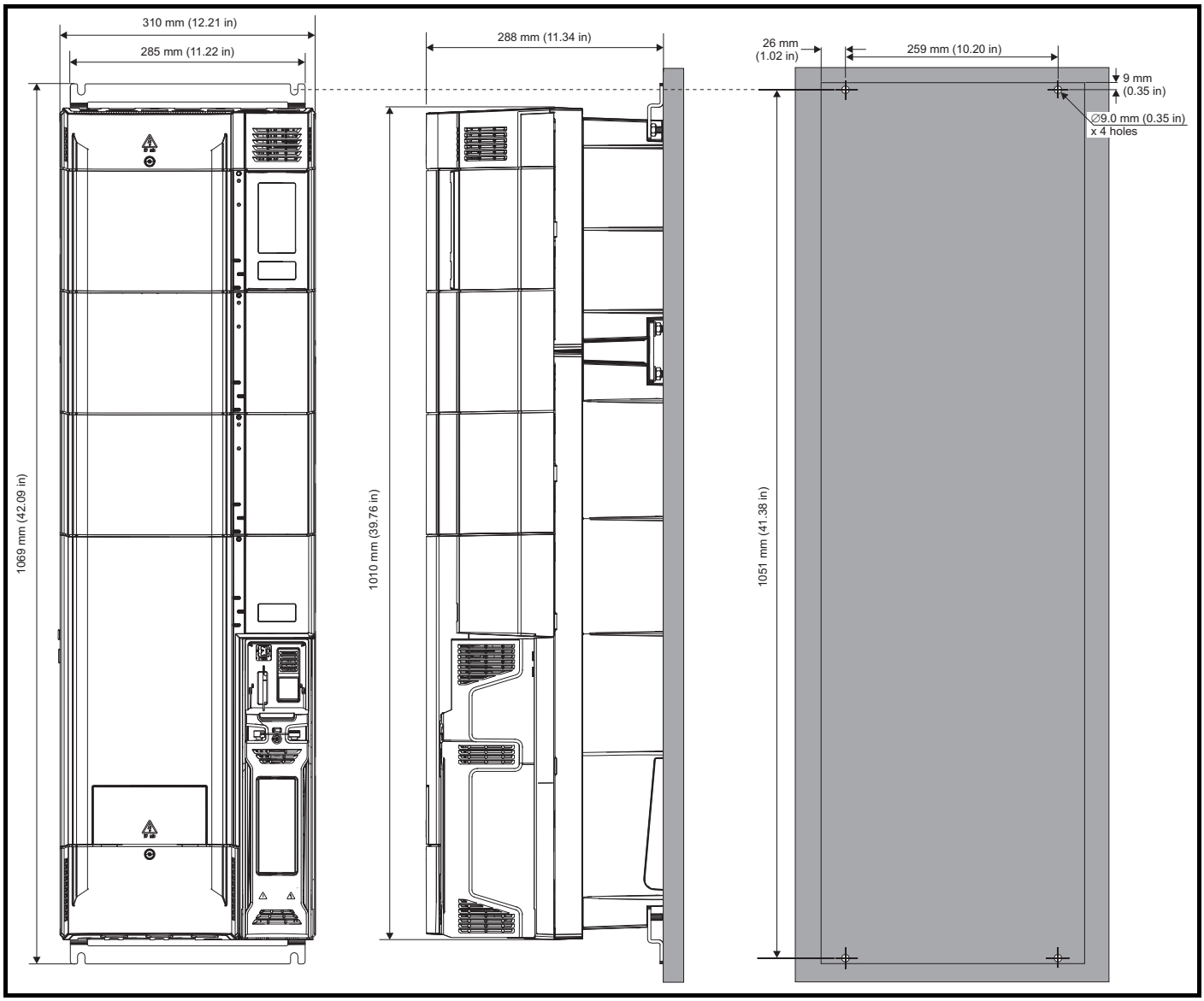
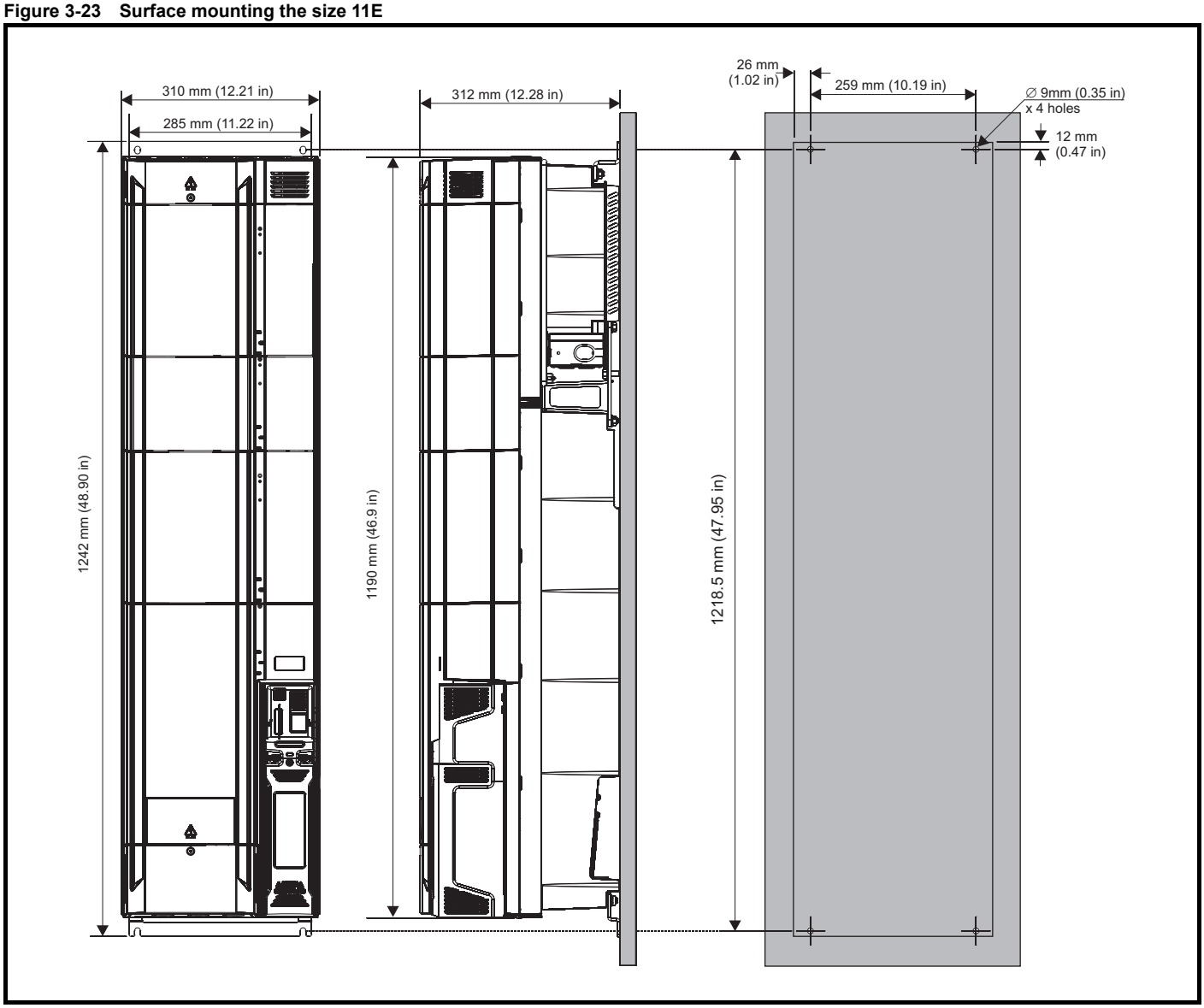


Figure 3-23 Surface mounting the size 11E



3.5.2 Through-panel mounting

Figure 3-24 Through-panel mounting the size 3 drive

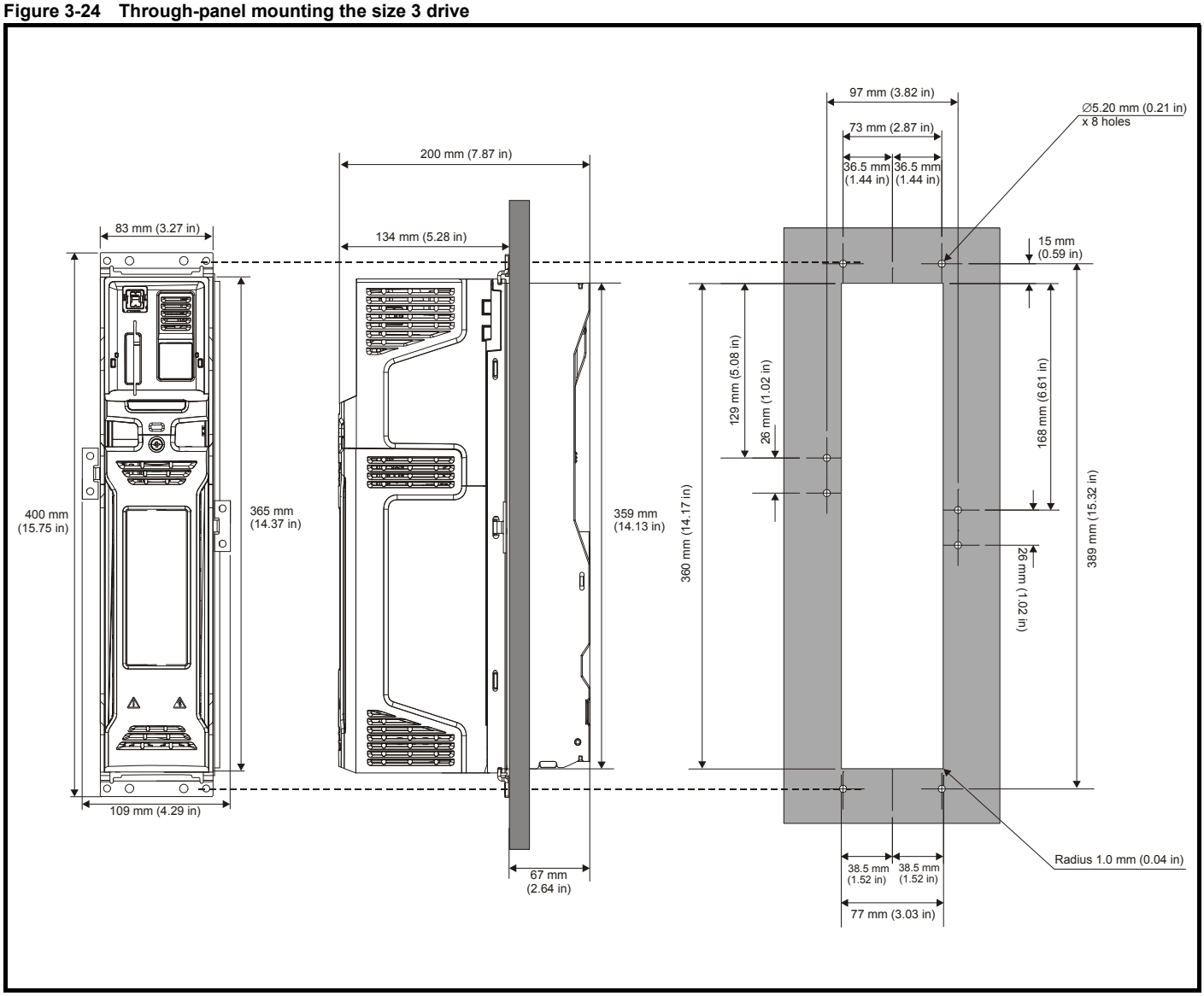


Figure 3-25 Through panel mounting the size 4 drive

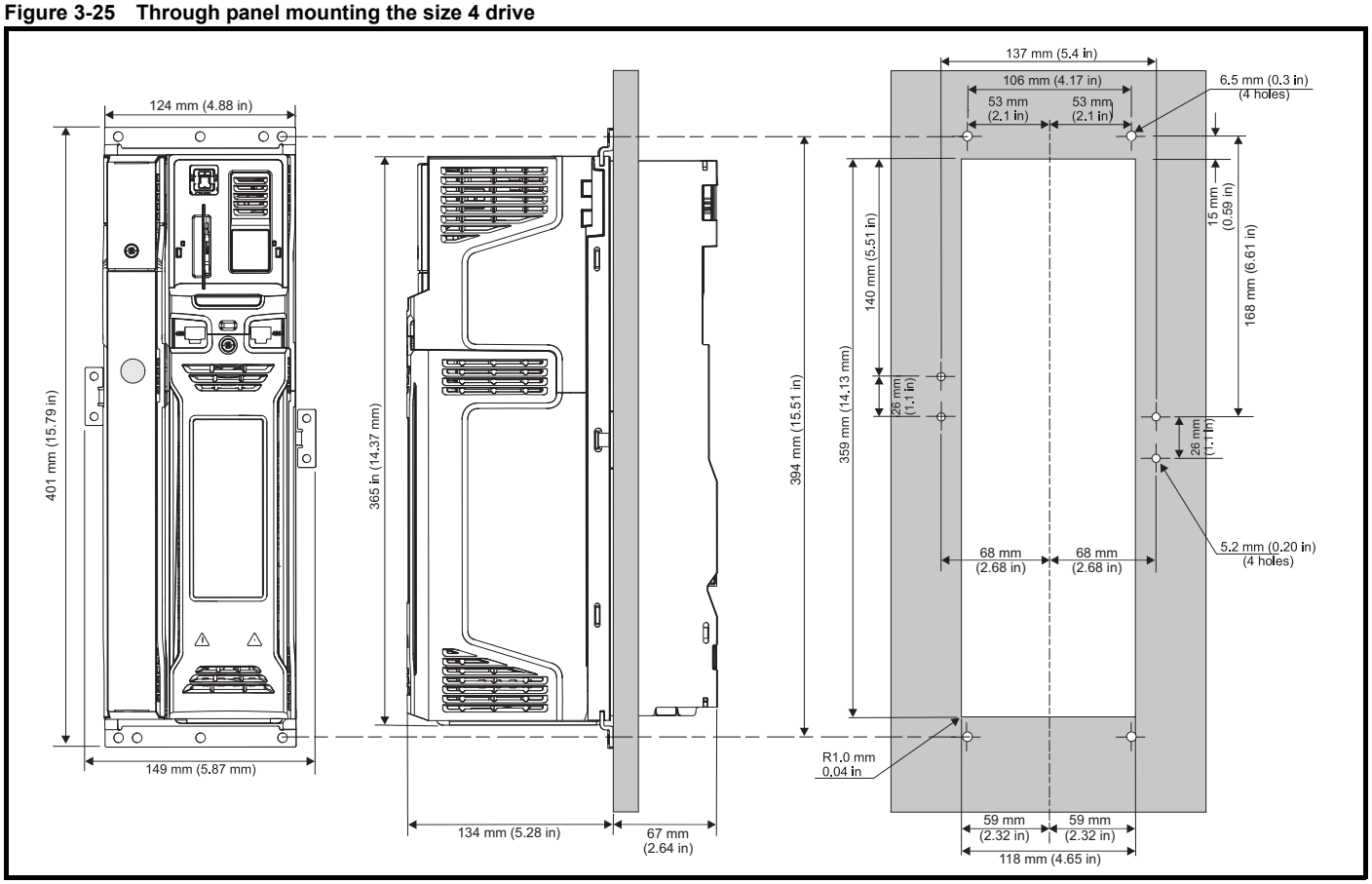


Figure 3-26 Through panel mounting the size 5 drive

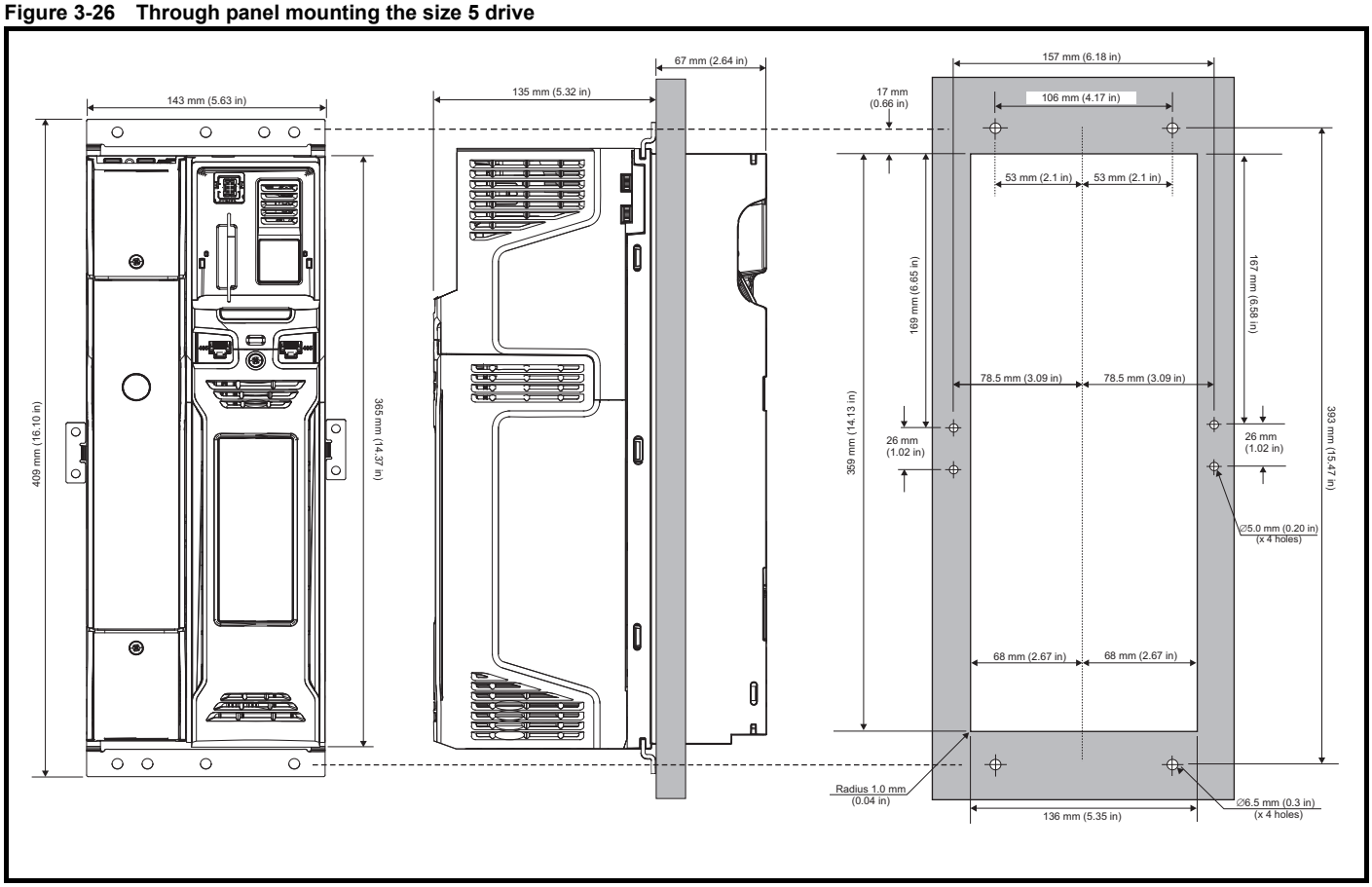
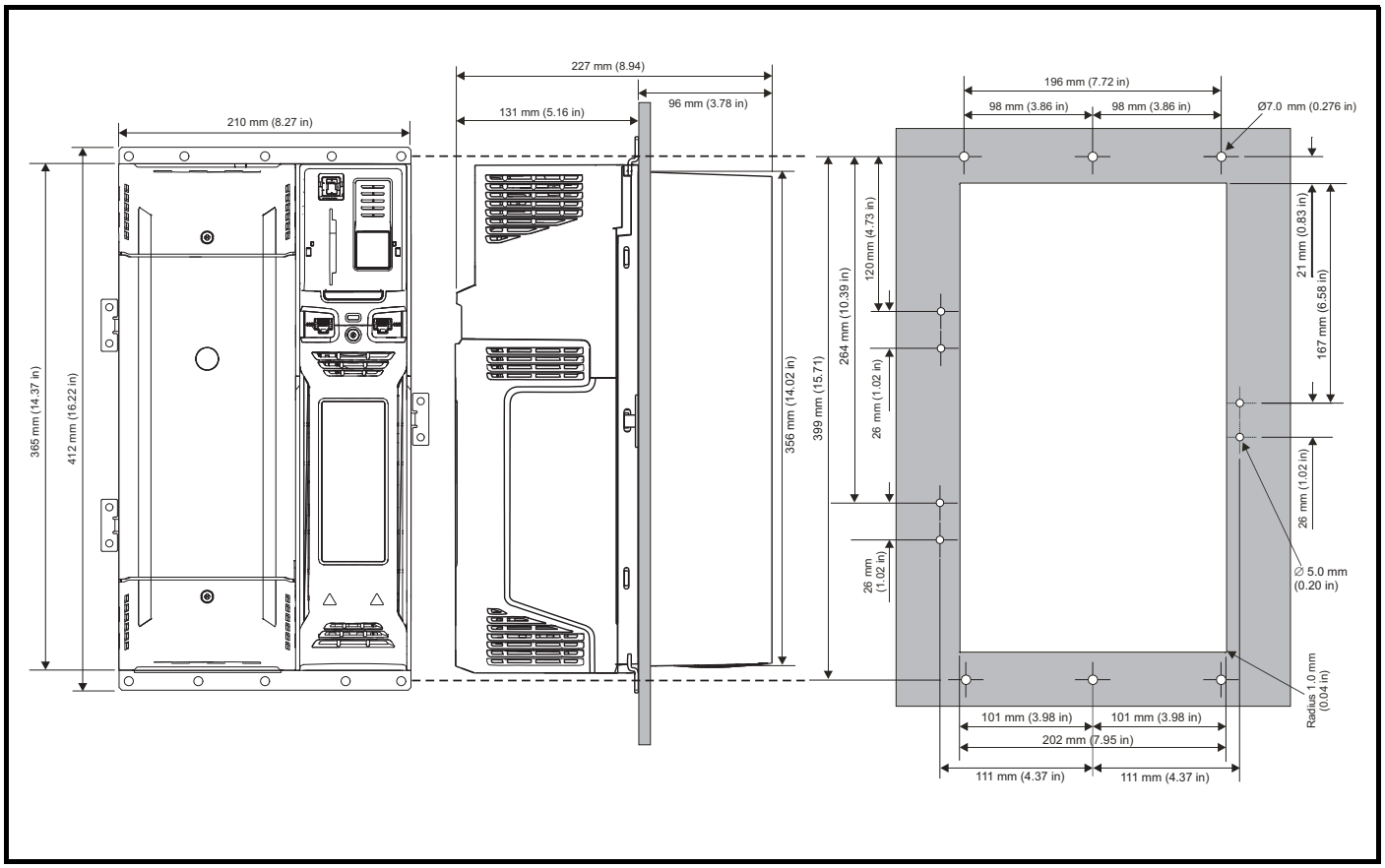


Figure 3-27 Through panel mounting the size 6 drive



NOTE

The outer holes plus the hole located in the center of the bracket are to be used for through panel mounting.

Figure 3-28 Through panel mounting the size 7 drive

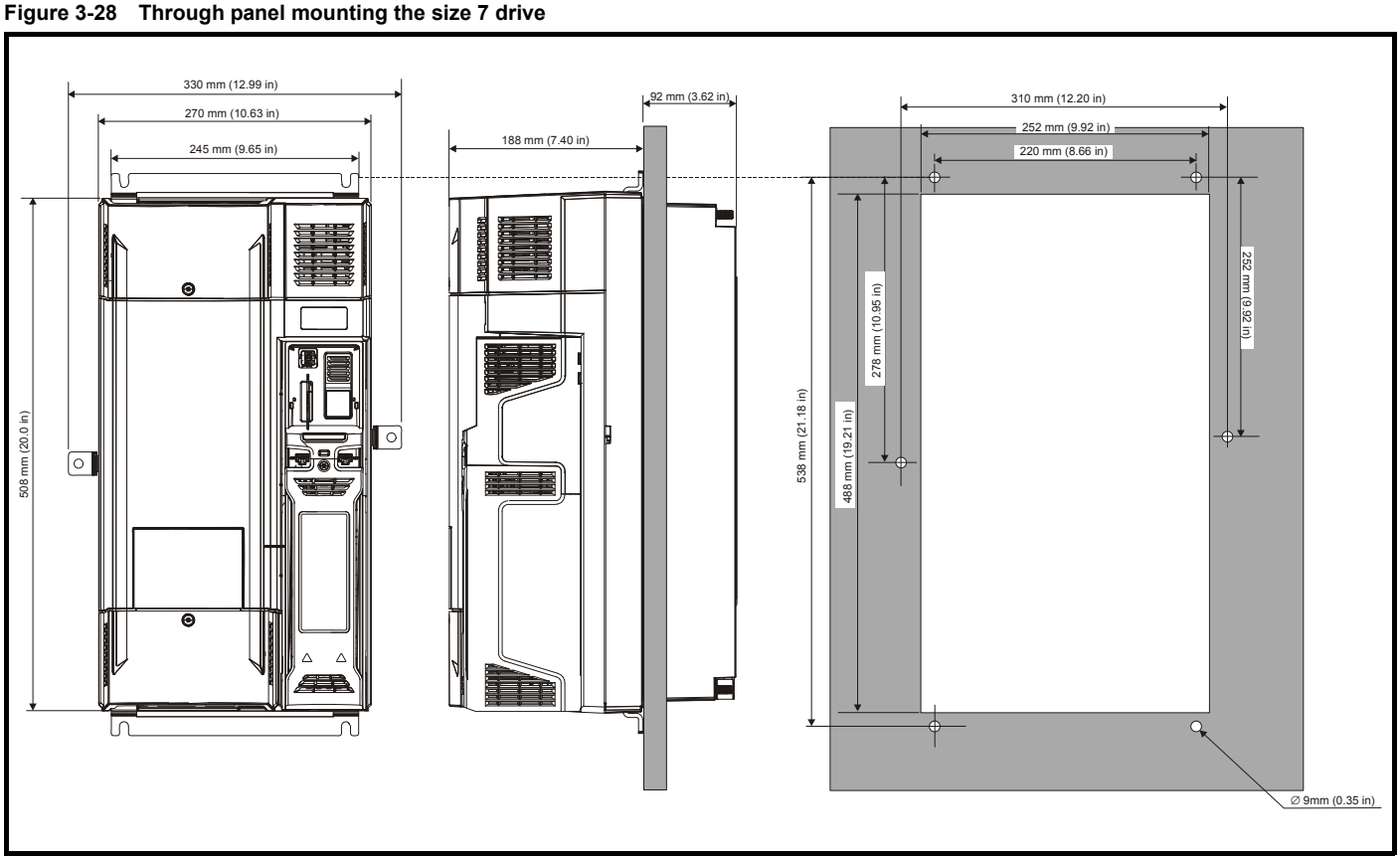


Figure 3-29 Through panel mounting the size 8 drive

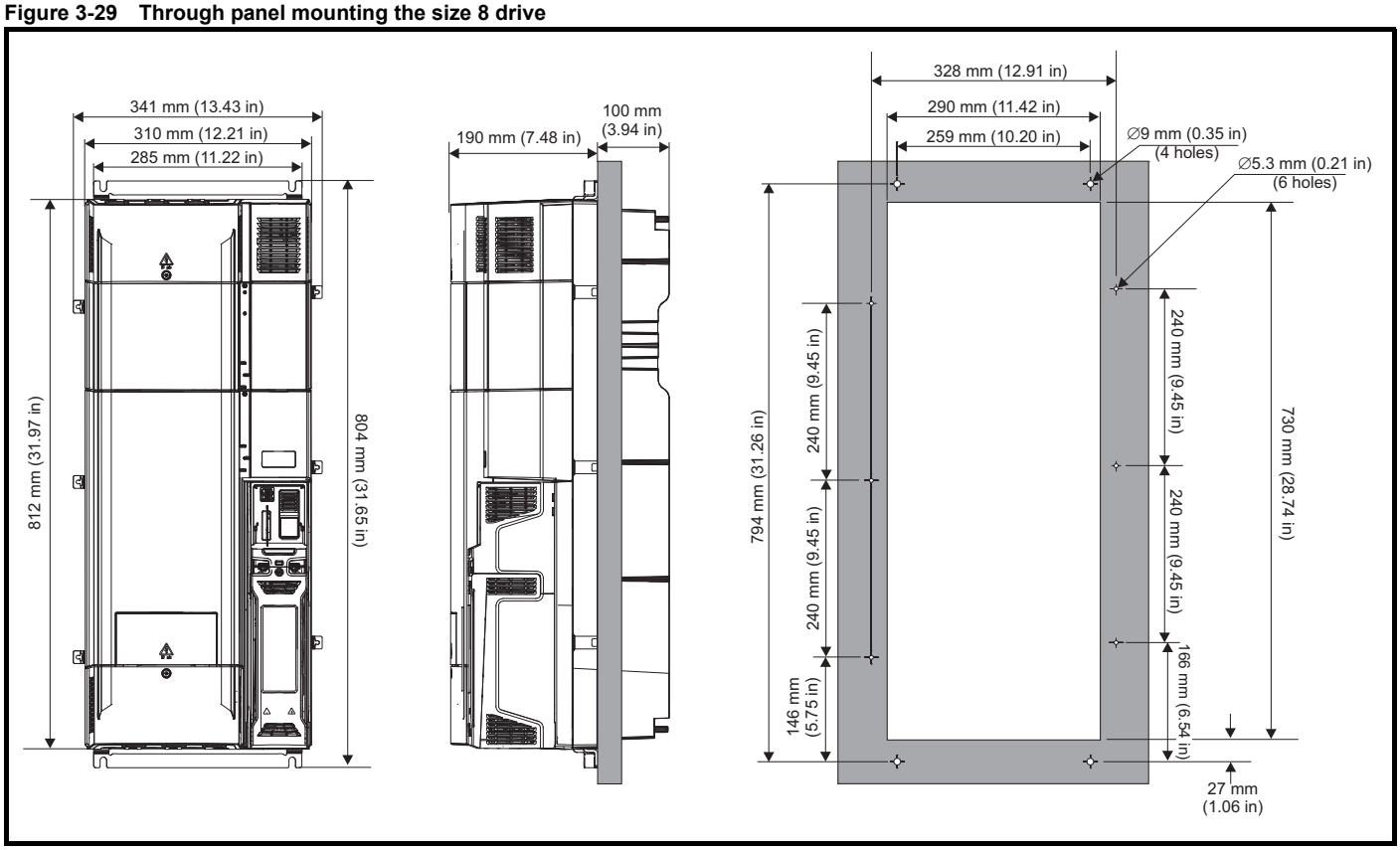


Figure 3-30 Through-panel mounting the size 9A

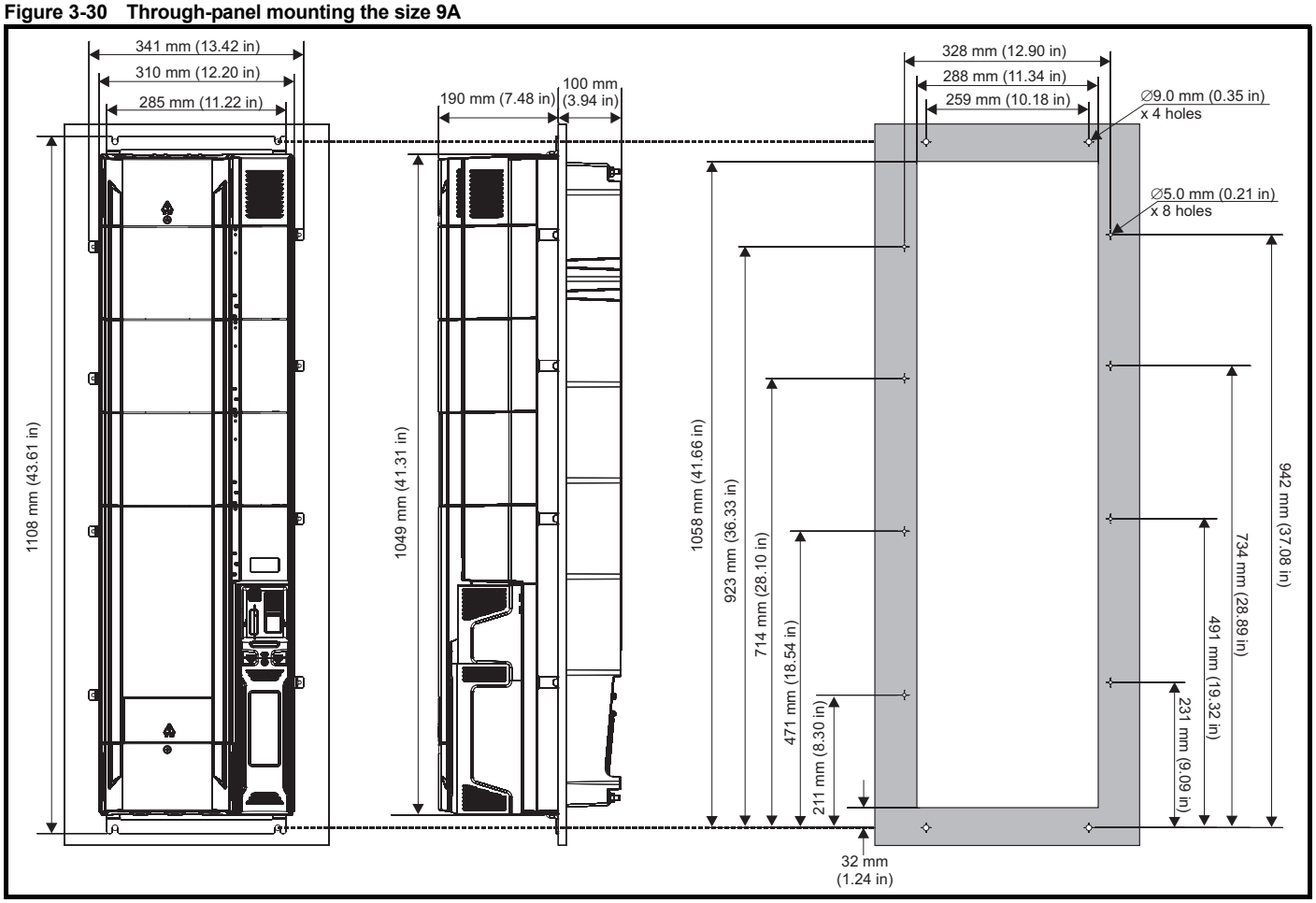


Figure 3-31 Through-panel mounting the size 9E and 10

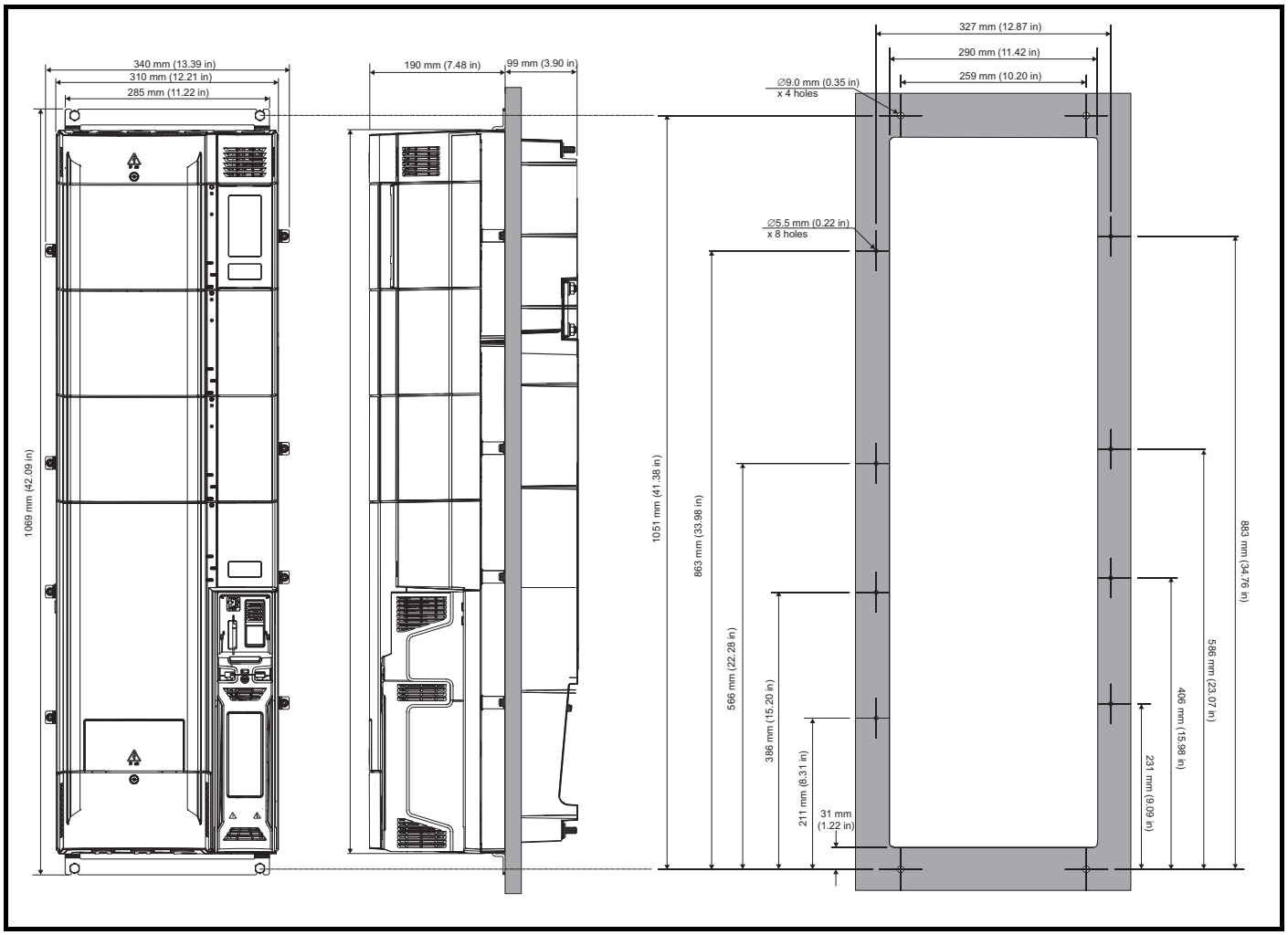
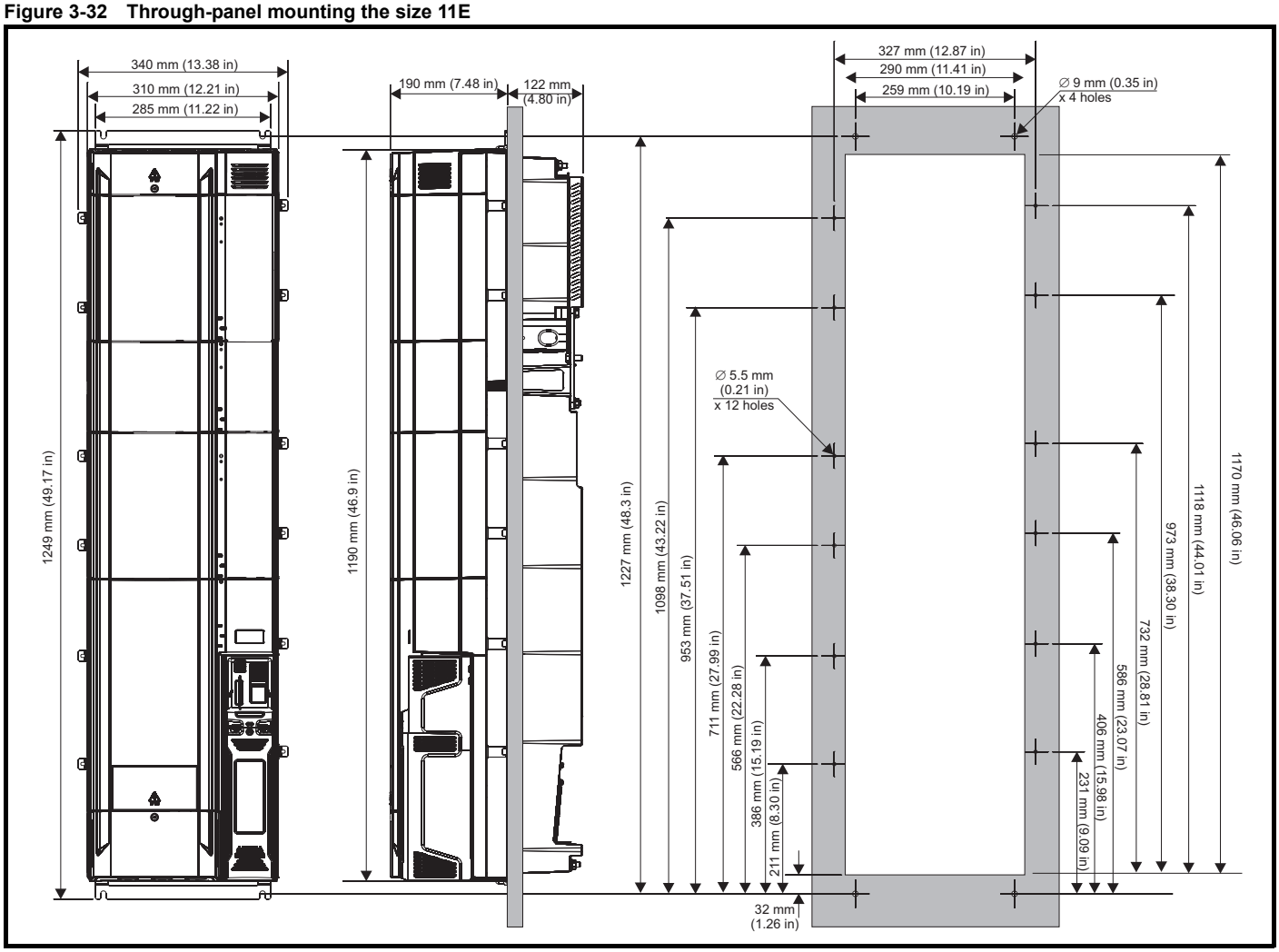


Figure 3-32 Through-panel mounting the size 11E



3.5.3 Mounting brackets

Table 3-2 Mounting brackets (size 3 to 10)

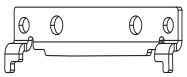
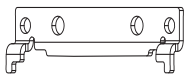
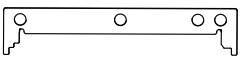
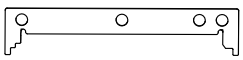
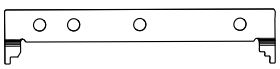
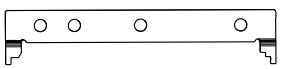
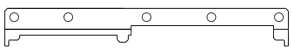
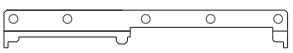
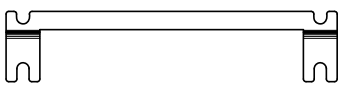
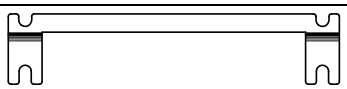
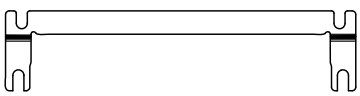
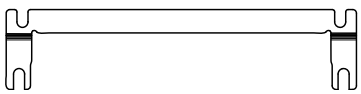
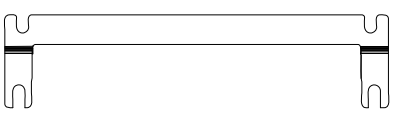
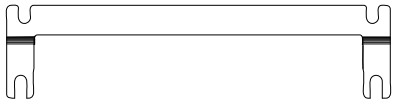
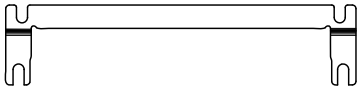
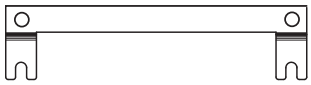
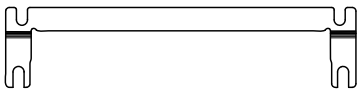
Frame size	Surface	Qty	Through-panel	Qty
3	 Inner hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in) Outer hole size: 5.5 mm (0.22 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.5 mm (0.22 in)	x 2
			 Inner hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in) Outer hole size: 5.5 mm (0.22 in)	x 2
4	 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.2 mm (0.21 in)	x 3
			 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2
5	 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.2 mm (0.21 in)	x 2
			 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2
6	 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.2 mm (0.21 in)	x 3
			 Hole size: 6.5 mm (0.26 in)	x 2
7	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2
			 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2
8	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.3 mm (0.21 in)	x 6
			 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2
9A, 9E and 10E	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2	 Hole size: 5.5 mm (0.22 in)	x 8
			 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2

Table 3-3 Mounting brackets (size 11)

Frame size	Surface	Qty	Through-panel	Qty
11E	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 1		x 12
	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 1	 Hole size: 9 mm (0.35 in)	x 2

3.6 Enclosure for standard drives

3.6.1 Recommended spacing between the drives

Figure 3-33 Recommended spacing between the drives

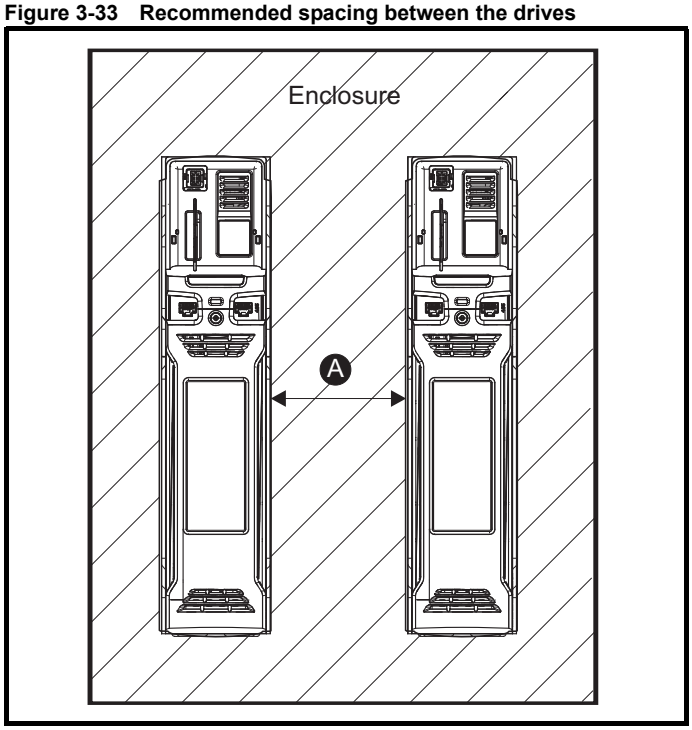


Table 3-4 Spacing required between the drives (without high IP bung)

Drive Size	Spacing (A)	
	40°C	50°C*
3	0 mm (0.00 in)	
4	0 mm (0.00 in)	
5	0 mm (0.00 in)	30 mm (1.18 in)
6	0 mm (0.00 in)	
7	30 mm (1.18 in)	
8	30 mm (1.18 in)	
9A/9E	60 mm (2.37 in)	
10E/11E		

* 50°C derating applies, refer to Table 12-3 *Maximum permissible continuous output current @ 50 °C (122 °F)* on page 235.

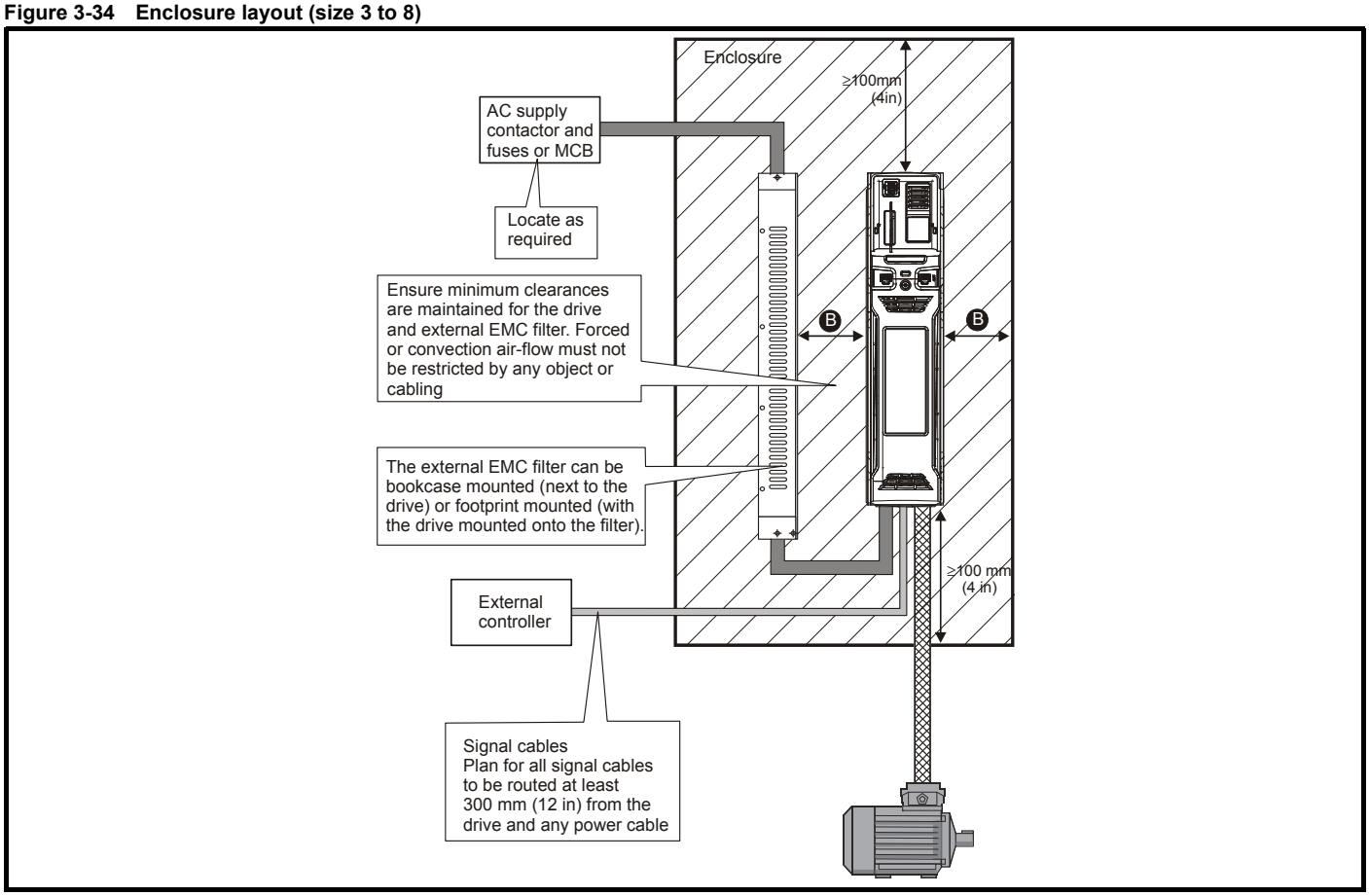
NOTE

When through-panel mounted, ideally drives should be spaced 45 mm (1.77 in) to maximize panel stiffness.

3.6.2 Enclosure layout

Please observe the clearances in the diagram below taking into account any appropriate notes for other devices / auxiliary equipment when planning the installation.

Figure 3-34 Enclosure layout (size 3 to 8)



NOTE

For EMC compliance:

1. When using an external EMC filter, one filter is required for each drive.
2. Power cabling must be at least 100 mm (4 in) from the drive in all directions

Table 3-5 Spacing required between drive / enclosure and drive / EMC filter (size 3 to 8)

Drive Size	Spacing (B)
3	0 mm (0.00 in)
4	30 mm (1.18 in)
5	
6	
7	
8	

Figure 3-35 Enclosure layout (size 9 to 11)

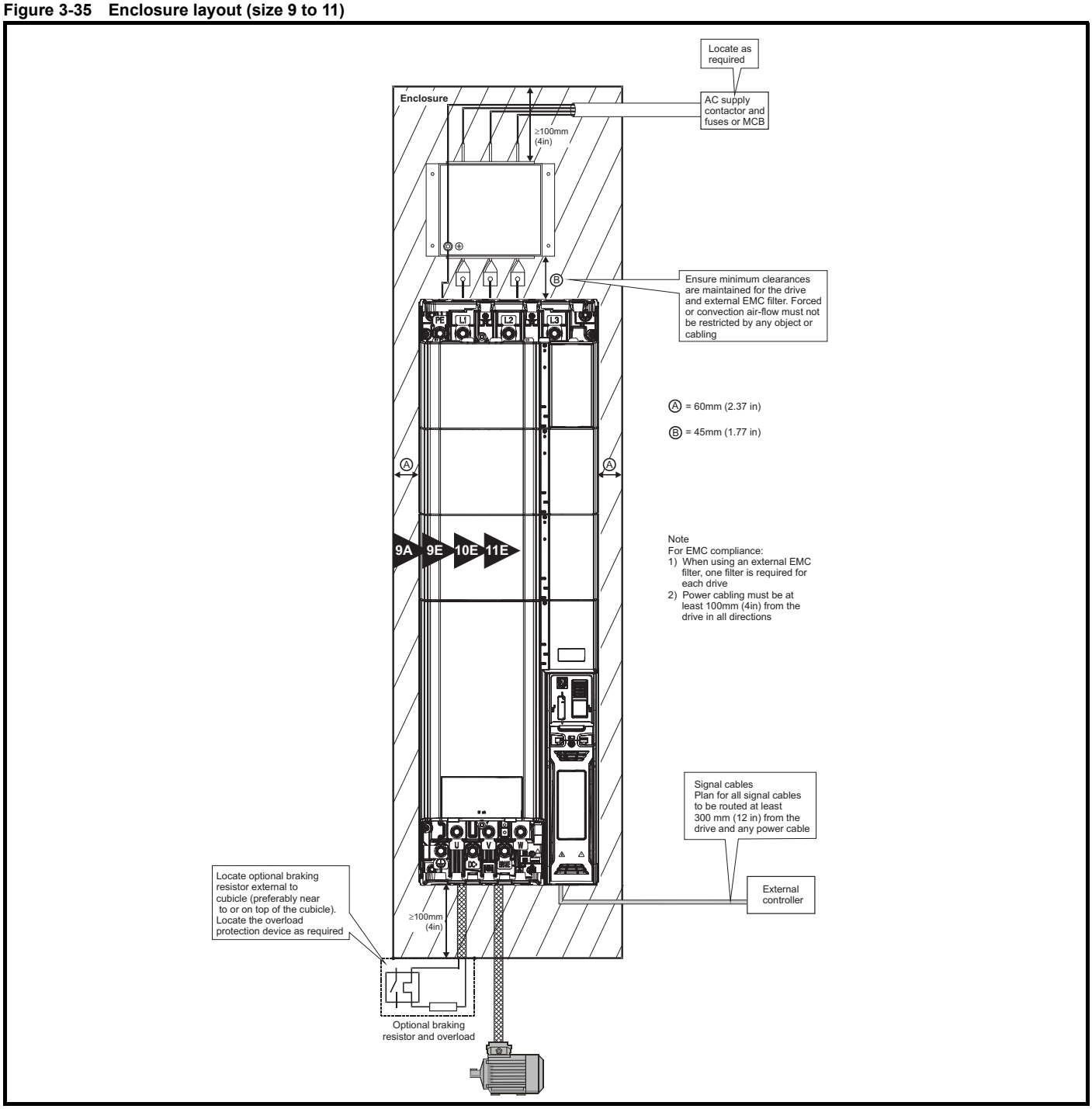


Table 3-6 Spacing required between drive / enclosure and drive / EMC filter (size 9 to 11)

Drive Size	Spacing (B)
9A/9E	45 mm (1.77 in)
10E/11E	

3.6.3 Enclosure sizing

1. Add the dissipation figures from section 12.1.2 *Power dissipation* on page 237 for each drive that is to be installed in the enclosure.
2. If an external EMC filter is to be used with each drive, add the dissipation figures from section 12.2.1 *EMC filter ratings* on page 258 for each external EMC filter that is to be installed in the enclosure.
3. If the braking resistor is to be mounted inside the enclosure, add the average power figures from for each braking resistor that is to be installed in the enclosure.
4. Calculate the total heat dissipation (in Watts) of any other equipment to be installed in the enclosure.
5. Add the heat dissipation figures obtained above. This gives a figure in Watts for the total heat that will be dissipated inside the enclosure.

Calculating the size of a sealed enclosure

The enclosure transfers internally generated heat into the surrounding air by natural convection (or external forced air flow); the greater the surface area of the enclosure walls, the better is the dissipation capability. Only the surfaces of the enclosure that are unobstructed (not in contact with a wall or floor) can dissipate heat.

Calculate the minimum required unobstructed surface area $\mathbf{A_e}$ for the enclosure from:

$$\mathbf{A_e} = \frac{\mathbf{P}}{\mathbf{k}(\mathbf{T_{int}} - \mathbf{T_{ext}})}$$

Where:

- $\mathbf{A_e}$ Unobstructed surface area in m^2 (1 m^2 = 10.9 ft^2)
- $\mathbf{T_{ext}}$ Maximum expected temperature in ^oC *outside* the enclosure
- $\mathbf{T_{int}}$ Maximum permissible temperature in ^oC *inside* the enclosure
- **P** Power in Watts dissipated by *all* heat sources in the enclosure
- **k** Heat transmission coefficient of the enclosure material in $W/m^2/^oC$

Example

To calculate the size of an enclosure for the following:

- Two drives operating at the Normal Duty rating
- External EMC filter for each drive
- Braking resistors are to be mounted outside the enclosure
- Maximum ambient temperature inside the enclosure: 40°C
- Maximum ambient temperature outside the enclosure: 30°C

For example, if the power dissipation from each drive is 187 W and the power dissipation from each external EMC filter is 9.2 W.

Total dissipation: 2 x (187 + 9.2) =392.4 W

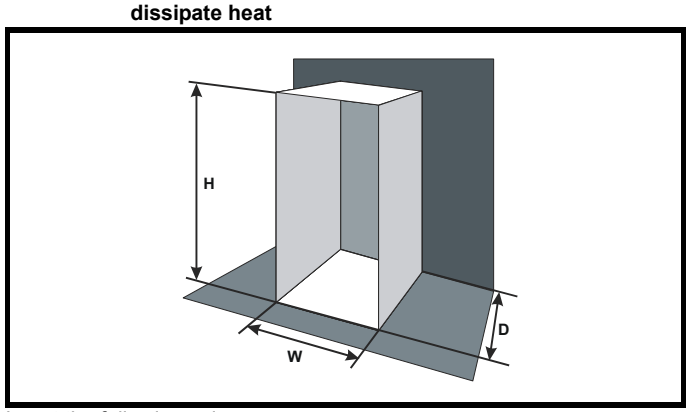
NOTE

Power dissipation for the drives and the external EMC filters can be obtained from Chapter 12 *Technical data* on page 232.

The enclosure is to be made from painted 2 mm (0.079 in) sheet steel having a heat transmission coefficient of 5.5 $W/m^2/^oC$. Only the top, front, and two sides of the enclosure are free to dissipate heat.

The value of 5.5 $W/m^2/^oC$ can generally be used with a sheet steel enclosure (exact values can be obtained by the supplier of the material). If in any doubt, allow for a greater margin in the temperature rise.

Figure 3-36 Enclosure having front, sides and top panels free to dissipate heat



Insert the following values:

- $\mathbf{T_{int}}$ 40 °C
- $\mathbf{T_{ext}}$ 30 °C
- **k** 5.5
- **P** 392.4 W

The minimum required heat conducting area is then:

$$\mathbf{A_e} = \frac{\mathbf{392.4}}{\mathbf{5.5(40-30)}}$$

= 7.135 m^2 (77.8 ft^2) (1 m^2 = 10.9 ft^2)

Estimate two of the enclosure dimensions - the height (H) and depth (D), for instance. Calculate the width (W) from:

$$\mathbf{W} = \frac{\mathbf{A_e - 2HD}}{\mathbf{H + D}}$$

Inserting **H** = 2m and **D** = 0.6 m, obtain the minimum width:

$$\mathbf{W} = \frac{\mathbf{7.135 - (2 \times 2 \times 0.6)}}{\mathbf{2 + 0.6}}$$

=1.821 m (71.7 in)

If the enclosure is too large for the space available, it can be made smaller only by attending to one or all of the following:

- Using a lower PWM switching frequency to reduce the dissipation in the drives
- Reducing the ambient temperature outside the enclosure, and/or applying forced-air cooling to the outside of the enclosure
- Reducing the number of drives in the enclosure
- Removing other heat-generating equipment

Calculating the air-flow in a ventilated enclosure

The dimensions of the enclosure are required only for accommodating the equipment. The equipment is cooled by the forced air flow.

Calculate the minimum required volume of ventilating air from:

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{3kP}}{\mathbf{T_{int} - T_{ext}}}$$

Where:

- **V** Air-flow in m^3 per hour (1 m^3/hr = 0.59 ft^3/min)
- $\mathbf{T_{ext}}$ Maximum expected temperature in °C *outside* the enclosure
- $\mathbf{T_{int}}$ Maximum permissible temperature in °C *inside* the enclosure
- **P** Power in Watts dissipated by *all* heat sources in the enclosure
- **k** Ratio of $\frac{\mathbf{P_o}}{\mathbf{P_l}}$

  Where:

  $\mathbf{P_0}$ is the air pressure at sea level

  $\mathbf{P_l}$ is the air pressure at the installation

  Typically use a factor of 1.2 to 1.3, to allow also for pressure-drops in dirty air-filters.

Example

To calculate the size of an enclosure for the following:

- Three drives operating at the Normal Duty rating
- External EMC filter for each drive
- Braking resistors are to be mounted outside the enclosure
- Maximum ambient temperature inside the enclosure: 40 °C
- Maximum ambient temperature outside the enclosure: 30 °C

For example, dissipation of each drive: 101 W and dissipation of each external EMC filter: 6.9 W (max).

Total dissipation: 3 x (101 + 6.9) = 323.7 W

Insert the following values:

T_{int} 40 °C
T_{ext} 30 °C
k 1.3
P 323.7 W

Then:

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{3 \times 1.3 \times 323.7}}{\mathbf{40 - 30}}$$

= 126.2 m^3/hr (74.5 ft^3 /min) (1 m^3/ hr = 0.59 ft^3/min)

3.7 Enclosure design and drive ambient temperature

Drive derating is required for operation in high ambient temperatures

Totally enclosing or through panel mounting the drive in either a sealed cabinet (no airflow) or in a well ventilated cabinet makes a significant difference on drive cooling.

The chosen method affects the ambient temperature value (T_{rate}) which should be used for any necessary derating to ensure sufficient cooling for the whole of the drive.

The ambient temperature for the four different combinations is defined below:

1. Totally enclosed with no air flow (<2 m/s) over the drive
   $T_{rate} = T_{int} + 5$ °C
2. Totally enclosed with air flow (>2 m/s) over the drive
   $T_{rate} = T_{int}$
3. Through panel mounted with no airflow (<2 m/s) over the drive
   T_{rate} = the greater of T_{ext} +5 °C, or T_{int}
4. Through panel mounted with air flow (>2 m/s) over the drive
   T_{rate} = the greater of T_{ext} or T_{int}

Where:

T_{ext} = Temperature outside the cabinet
T_{int} = Temperature inside the cabinet
T_{rate} = Temperature used to select current rating from tables in Chapter 12 *Technical data* on page 232.

3.8 Heatsink fan operation

The drive is ventilated by an internal heatsink mounted fan. The fan housing forms a baffle plate, channelling the air through the heatsink chamber. Thus, regardless of mounting method (surface mounting or through-panel mounting), the installing of additional baffle plates is not required.

Ensure the minimum clearances around the drive are maintained to allow air to flow freely.

The heatsink fan on all sizes is a variable speed fan. The drive controls the speed at which the fan runs based on the temperature of the heatsink and the drive's thermal model system. The maximum speed at which the fan operates can be limited in Pr **06.045**. This could incur an output current derating. Refer to section 3.13.2 *Fan removal procedure* on page 67 for information on fan removal. Size 6 to 11 are also installed with a variable speed fan to ventilate the capacitor bank.

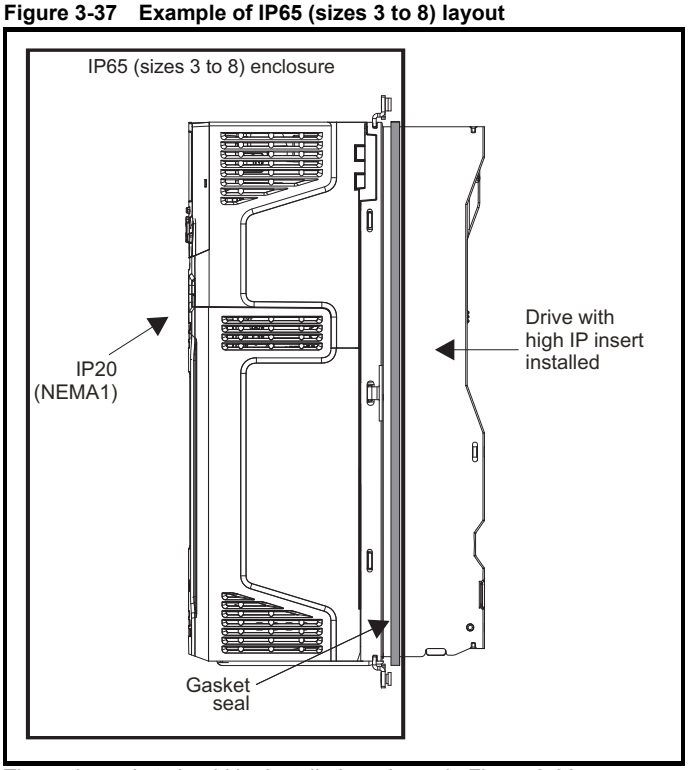
3.9 Enclosing standard drive for high environmental protection

An explanation of environmental protection rating is provided in section 12.1.9 *IP / UL Rating* .

The standard drive is rated to IP20 pollution degree 2 (dry, non-conductive contamination only) (NEMA 1). However, it is possible to configure the drive to achieve IP65 rating (sizes 3 to 8) or IP54 (size 9, 10 and 11) (NEMA 12) at the rear of the heatsink for through-panel mounting (some current derating is required). Refer to section 12.1.1 *Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.

This allows the front of the drive, along with various switchgear, to be housed in a high IP enclosure with the heatsink protruding through the panel to the external environment. Thus, the majority of the heat generated by the drive is dissipated outside the enclosure maintaining a reduced temperature inside the enclosure. This also relies on a good seal being made between the heatsink and the rear of the enclosure using the gaskets provided.

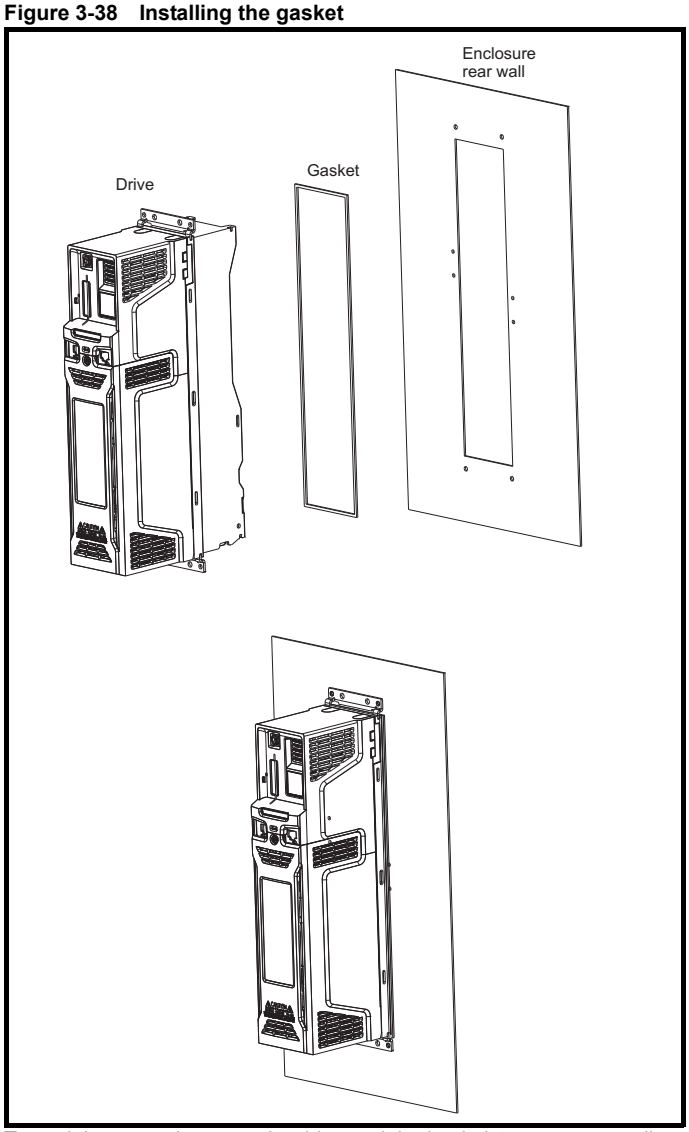
Figure 3-37 Example of IP65 (sizes 3 to 8) layout



The main gasket should be installed as shown in Figure 3-38.

On drive sizes 3, 4 and 5, in order to achieve the high IP rating at the rear of the heatsink it is necessary to seal a heatsink vent by installing the high IP insert as shown in Figure 3-40, Figure 3-41 and Figure 3-42.

Figure 3-38 Installing the gasket



To seal the space between the drive and the backplate, use two sealing brackets as shown in Figure 3-39.

Figure 3-39 Through panel mounting

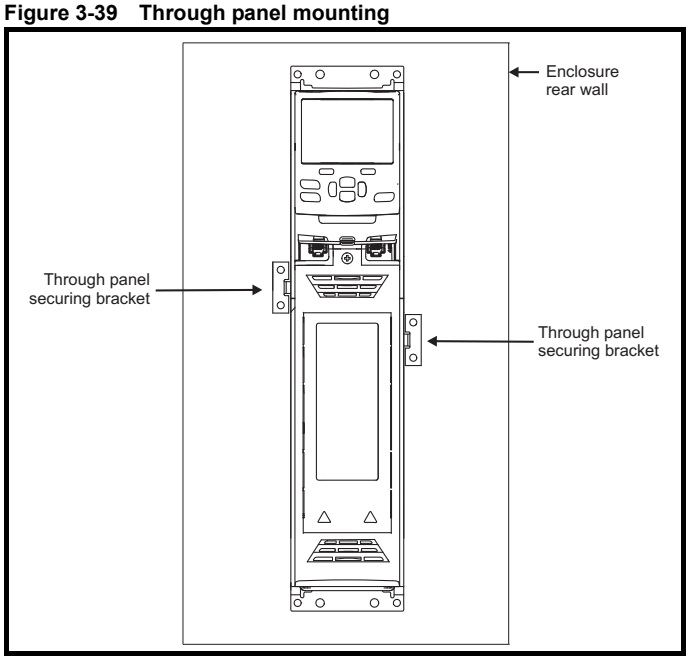
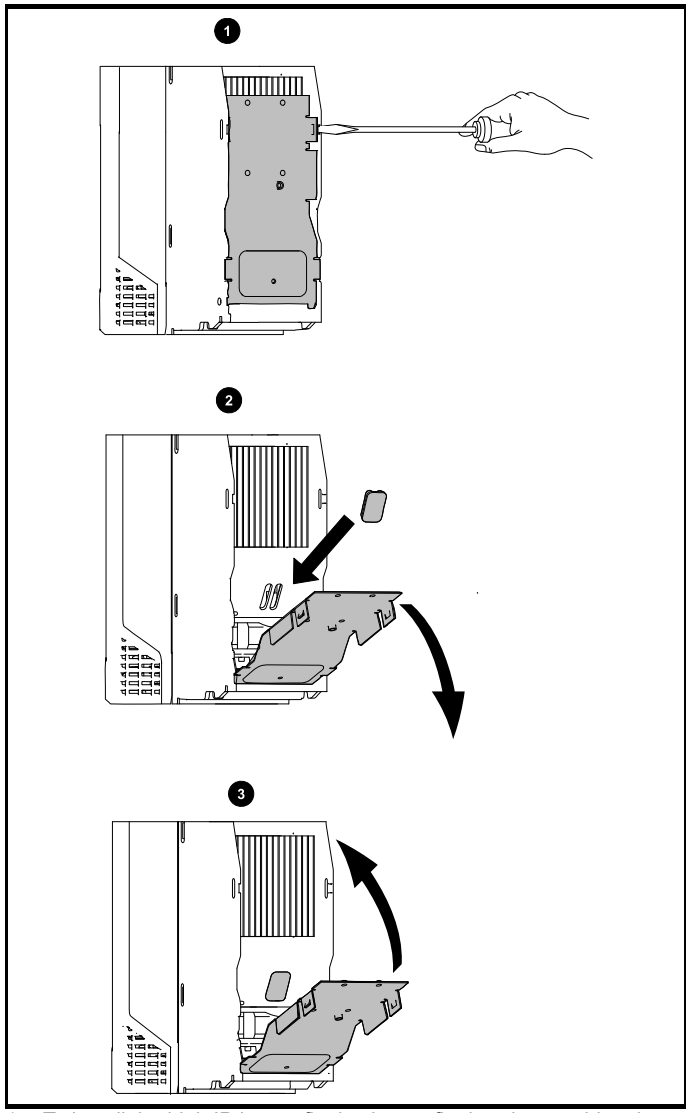


Figure 3-40 Installation of high IP insert for size 3

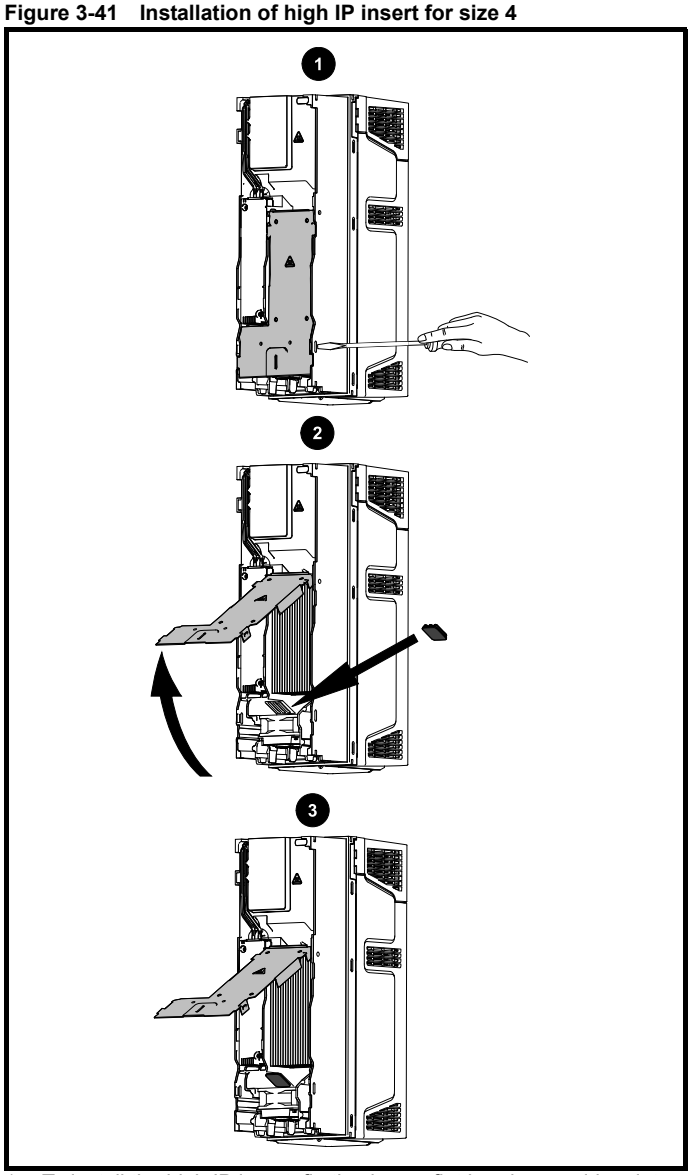


1. To install the high IP insert, firstly place a flat head screwdriver into the slot highlighted (1).
2. Pull the hinged baffle down to expose the ventilation hole, install the high IP insert into the ventilation hole in the heatsink (2). Ensure the high IP insert is securely installed by firmly pressing it into place (3).
3. Close the hinged baffle as shown (1).

To remove the high IP insert, reverse the above instructions.

The guidelines in Table 3-7 should be followed.

Figure 3-41 Installation of high IP insert for size 4

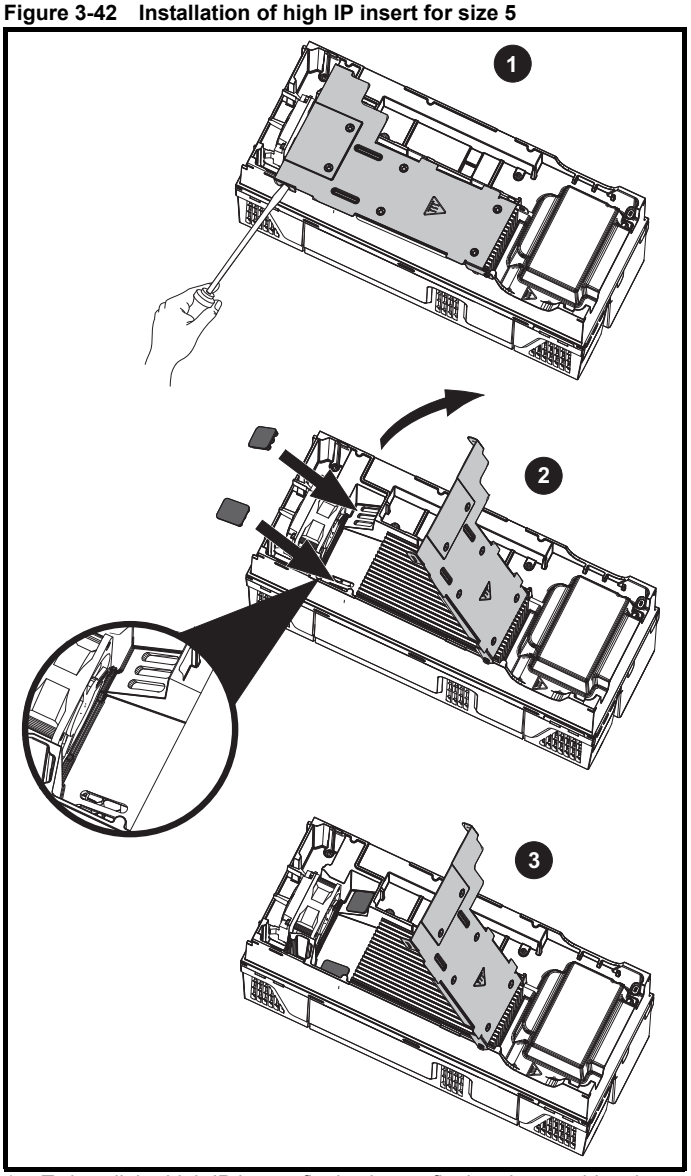


1. To install the high IP insert, firstly place a flat head screwdriver into the slot highlighted (1).
2. Pull the hinged baffle up to expose the ventilation hole, install the high IP insert into the ventilation hole in the heatsink (2).
3. Ensure the high IP insert is securely installed by firmly pressing it into place (3).
4. Close the hinged baffle as shown (1).

To remove the high IP insert, reverse the above instructions.

The guidelines in Table 3-7 should be followed.

Figure 3-42 Installation of high IP insert for size 5



1. To install the high IP insert, firstly place a flat head screwdriver into the slot highlighted (1).
2. Pull the hinged baffle up to expose the ventilation holes, install the high IP inserts into the ventilation holes in the heatsink (2).
3. Ensure the high IP inserts are securely installed by firmly pressing them into place (3).
4. Close the hinged baffle as shown (1).

To remove the high IP insert, reverse the above instructions.

The guidelines in Table 3-7 should be followed.

Table 3-7 Environment considerations

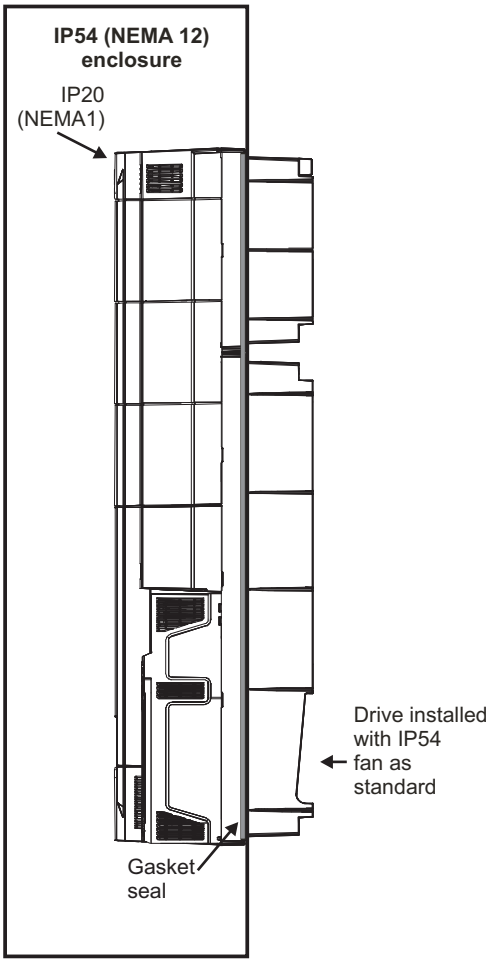
Environment	High IP insert	Comments
Clean	Not installed	
Dry, dusty (non-conductive)	Installed	Regular cleaning recommended
Dry, dusty (conductive)	Installed	
IP65 compliance	Installed	

NOTE

A current derating must be applied to the drive if the high IP insert is installed. Derating information is provided in section 12.1.1 *Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.

Failure to do so may result in nuisance tripping.

Figure 3-43 Example of IP54 (NEMA 12) size 9 to 11 through-panel layout



The main gasket should be installed as shown in Figure 3-38. Any screws / bolts that are used for mounting should be installed with M8 flat nylon washers to maintain a seal around the screw hole. See Figure 3-44 for details regarding IP54 protection.

It may be necessary to improve the rigidity of the through panel mounting surface due to the larger distance between the top and bottom mounting brackets and the need to maintain compression on the gasket.

When the drive is mounted, if the gap between the drive flange (which the gasket rests on) and the rear wall of the enclosure is ≥6 mm at any point around the drive then the following methods can be used to compress the gasket further:

1. Use a thicker panel for the mounting wall of the enclosure through which the drive is mounted.
2. Use an internal backplate to pull the rear wall of the enclosure up to the drive gasket. See Figure 3-44 for details. (M8 flat nylon washers must be installed to the standard drive for sealing off any nut and bolt mountings that exit through the rear wall of the panel).
3. If an internal backplate is not available a separate clamp can be used to simulate option 2. See Figure 3-45 on page 55. 4 off sealing clamps are supplied in the through panel mounting kit.

Figure 3-44 Option 2 for achieving IP54 (NEMA 12) size 9 to 11 through-panel mounting

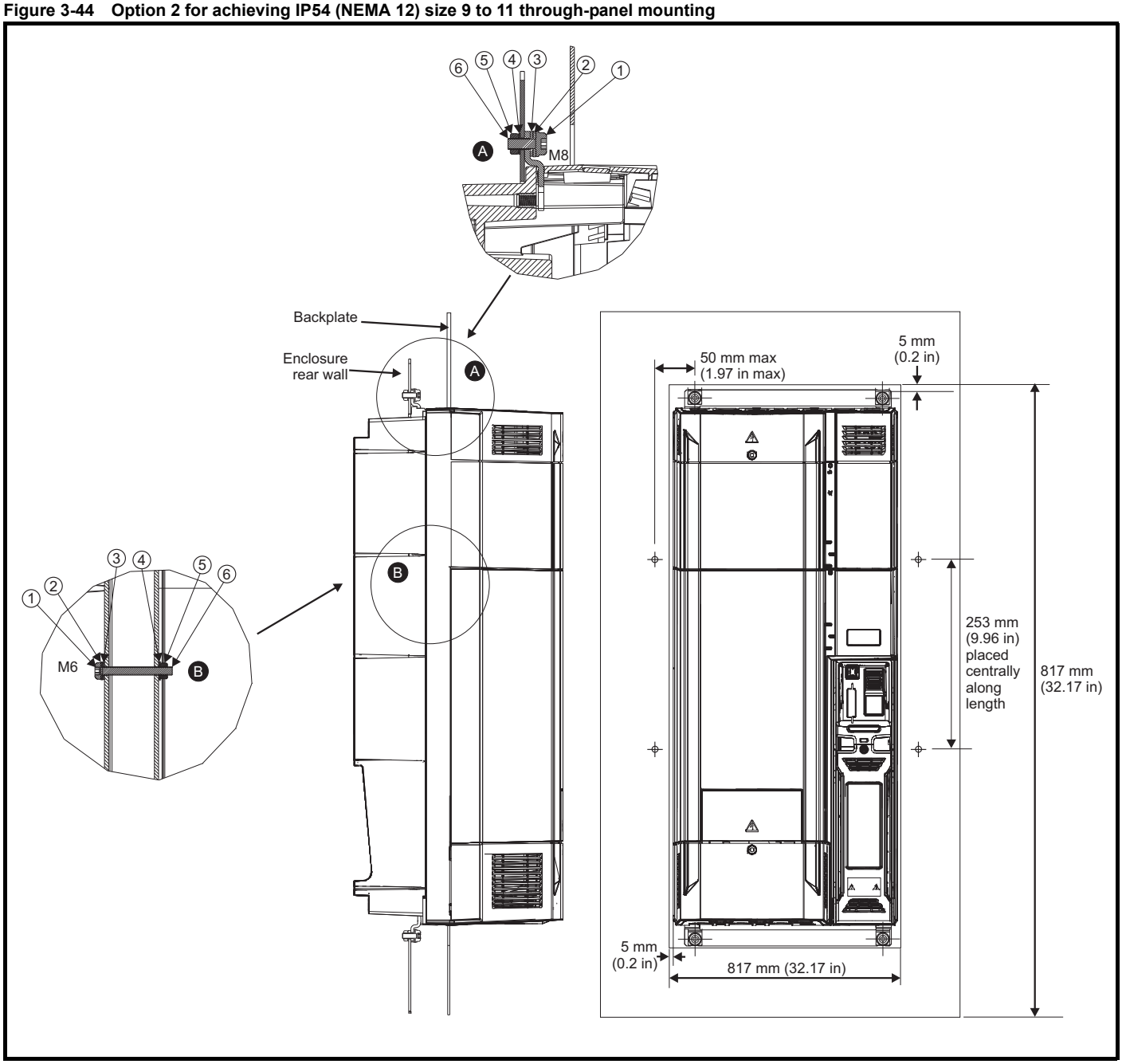
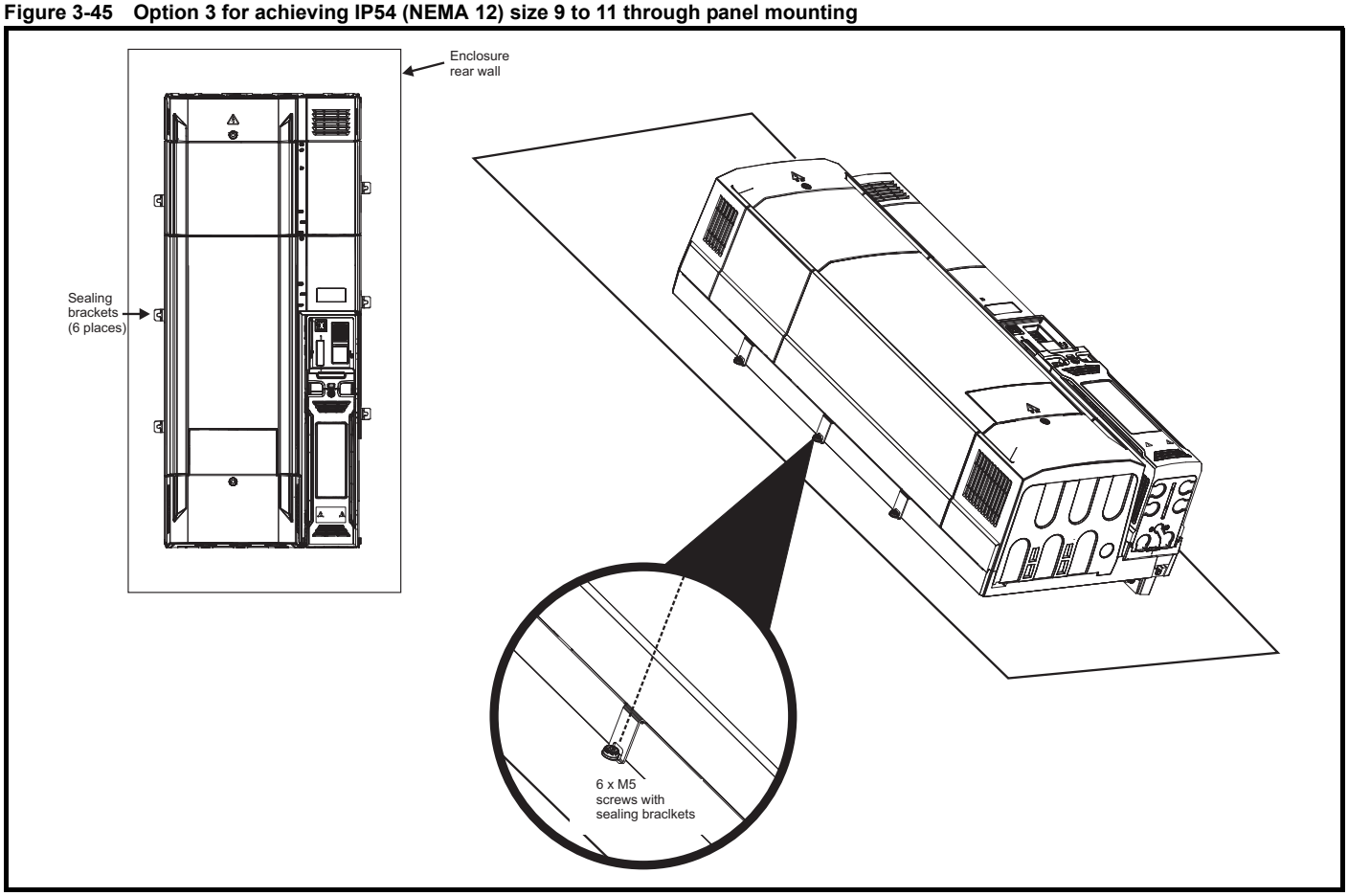


Table 3-8 Description of fixings

Item	Description
1	Bolt
2	Flat washer
3	Nylon washer
4	Flat washer
5	Spring washer
6	Nut

Figure 3-45 Option 3 for achieving IP54 (NEMA 12) size 9 to 11 through panel mounting



The guidelines in Table 3-9 should be followed.

NOTE

For detailed information regarding IP54 (NEMA 12) Through Panel Mounting see Figure 3-30 *Through-panel mounting the size 9A* on page 42, Figure 3-31 *Through-panel mounting the size 9E and 10* on page 43 and Figure 3-32 *Through-panel mounting the size 11E* on page 44.

Table 3-9 Environmental considerations

Environment	Fan	Comments
Clean	Standard	
Dry, dusty (non-conductive)	Standard	Regular cleaning recommended. Fan lifetime may be reduced.
Dry, dusty (conductive)	Standard / IP54	Regular cleaning recommended. Fan lifetime may be reduced.
IP54 compliance	IP54	Regular cleaning recommended.

NOTE

When designing an IP65 (NEMA 12) enclosure (Figure 3-37 *Example of IP65 (sizes 3 to 8) layout* on page 50), consideration should be made to the dissipation from the front of the drive.

Table 3-10 Power losses from the front of the drive when through-panel mounted

Frame size	Power loss
3	≤ 50 W
4	≤ 75 W
5	≤ 100 W
6	≤ 100 W
7	≤ 204 W
8	≤ 347 W
9A/9E/10E/11E	≤ 480 W

3.10 External EMC filter

The external EMCfilter details for each drive rating are provided in the table below.

Table 3-11 External EMC filter data

Model	CT part number	Weight	
		kg	lb
200 V			
03200066 to 03200127	4200-3230	1.9	4.20
04200180 to 04200250	4200-0272	4.0	8.82
05200300	4200-0312	5.5	12.13
06200500 to 06200580	4200-2300	6.5	14.3
07200750 to 07201170	4200-1132	6.9	15.2
08201490 to 08201800	4200-1972	9.6	21.1
09202160 to 09202660 (9A)	4200-3021		
09202160 to 09202660 (9E)	4200-4460		
10203250 to 10203600	4200-4460	12	26.46
400 V			
03400034 to 03400123	4200-3480	2.0	4.40
04400185 to 04400240	4200-0252	4.1	9.04
05400300	4200-0402	5.5	12.13
06400380 to 06400630	4200-4800	6.7	14.8
07400790 to 07401120	4200-1132	6.9	15.2
08401550 to 08401840	4200-1972	9.6	21.1
09402210 to 09402660 (9A)	4200-3021		
09402210 to 09402660 (9E)	4200-4460		
10403200 to 10403610	4200-4460		
11404370 to 11405070	4200-0400		
575 V			
05500039 to 05500100	4200-0122	7.0	15.4
06500120 to 06500430	4200-3690	7.0	15.4
07500530 to 07500730	4200-0672		
08500860 to 08501080	4200-1662	9.35	9.35
09501250 to 09501500 (9A)	4200-1660		
09501250 to 09501500 (9E)	4200-2210		
10502000	4200-2210		
11502480 to 11503150	4200-0690		
690 V			
07600230 to 07600730	4200-0672		
08600860 to 08601080	4200-1662	9.35	9.35
09601250 to 09601550 (9A)	4200-1660		
09601250 to 09601550 (9E)	4200-2210		
10601720 to 10601970	4200-2210		
11602250 to 11603050	4200-0690		

The external EMC filters for sizes 0 to 6 can be footprint mounted or bookcase mounted as shown in Figure 3-46 and Figure 3-47. The external EMC filters for sizes 7 to 10, are designed to be mounted above the drive as shown in Figure 3-48.

Mount the external EMC filter following the guidelines in section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* on page 94.

Figure 3-46
Footprint mounting the EMC filter

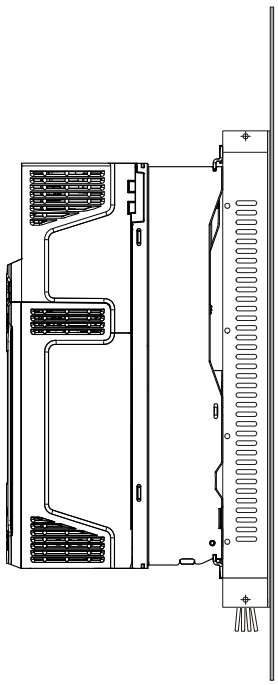


Figure 3-47
Bookcase mounting the EMC filter

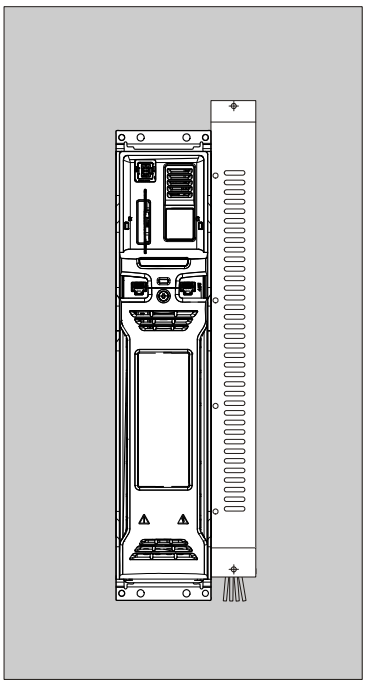


Figure 3-48
Size 7 to 10 mounting of the EMC filter

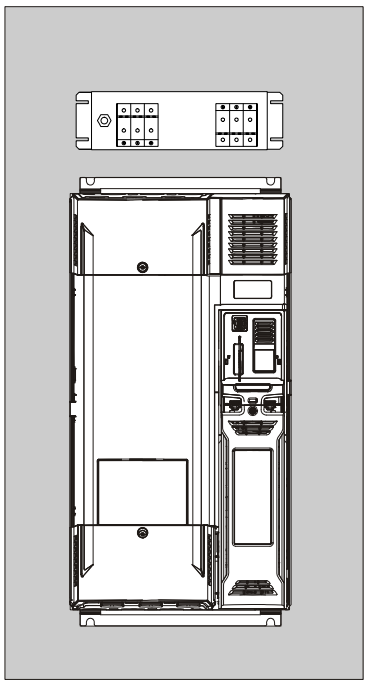
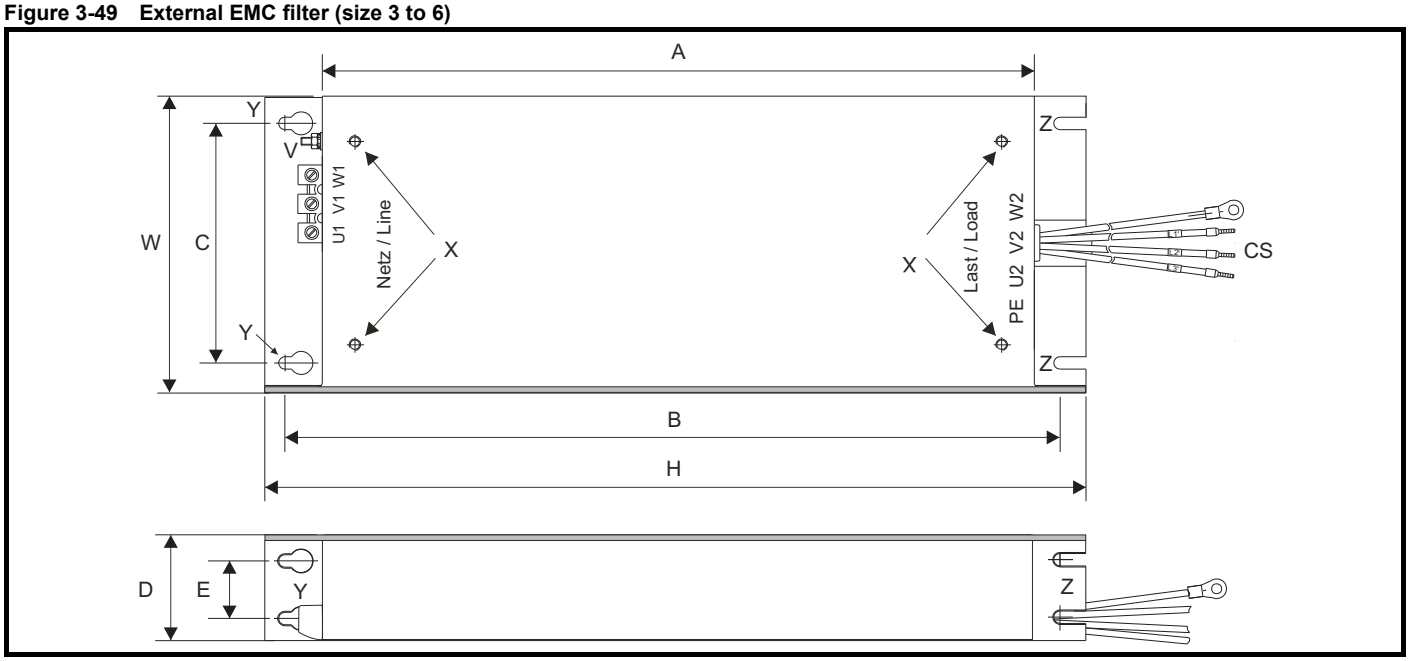


Figure 3-49 External EMC filter (size 3 to 6)



V: Ground stud
X: Threaded holes for footprint mounting of the drive
Y: Footprint mounting hole diameter
Z: Bookcase mounting slot diameter.
CS: Cable size

Table 3-12 Size 3 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	H	W	V	X	Y	Z	CS
4200-3230 4200-3480	384 mm (15.12 in)	414 mm (16.30 in)	56 mm (2.21 in)	41 mm (1.61 in)		426 mm (16.77 in)	83 mm (3.27 in)	M5	M5	5.5 mm (0.22 in)	5.5 mm (0.22 in)	2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)

Table 3-13 Size 4 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	H	W	V	X	Y	Z	CS
4200-0272 4200-0252	395 mm (15.55 in)	425 mm (16.73 in)	100 mm (3.94 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	33 mm (1.30 in)	437 mm (17.2 in)	123 mm (4.84 in)	M6	M6	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	6 mm^2 (10 AWG)

Table 3-14 Size 5 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	H	W	V	X	Y	Z	CS
4200-0312	395 mm (15.55 in)	425 mm (16.73 in)	106 mm (4.17 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	33 mm (1.30 in)	437 mm (17.2 in)	143 mm (5.63 in)	M6	M6	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	10 mm^2 (8 AWG)
4200-0402												
4200-0122												2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)

Table 3-15 Size 6 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	H	W	V	X	Y	Z	CS
4200-2300 4200-4800 4200-3690	392 mm (15.43 in)	420 mm (16.54 in)	180 mm (7.09 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	33 mm (1.30 in)	434 mm (17.09 in)	210 mm (8.27 in)	M6	M6	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	6.5 mm (0.26 in)	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)

Figure 3-50 External EMC filter (size 7 to 8)

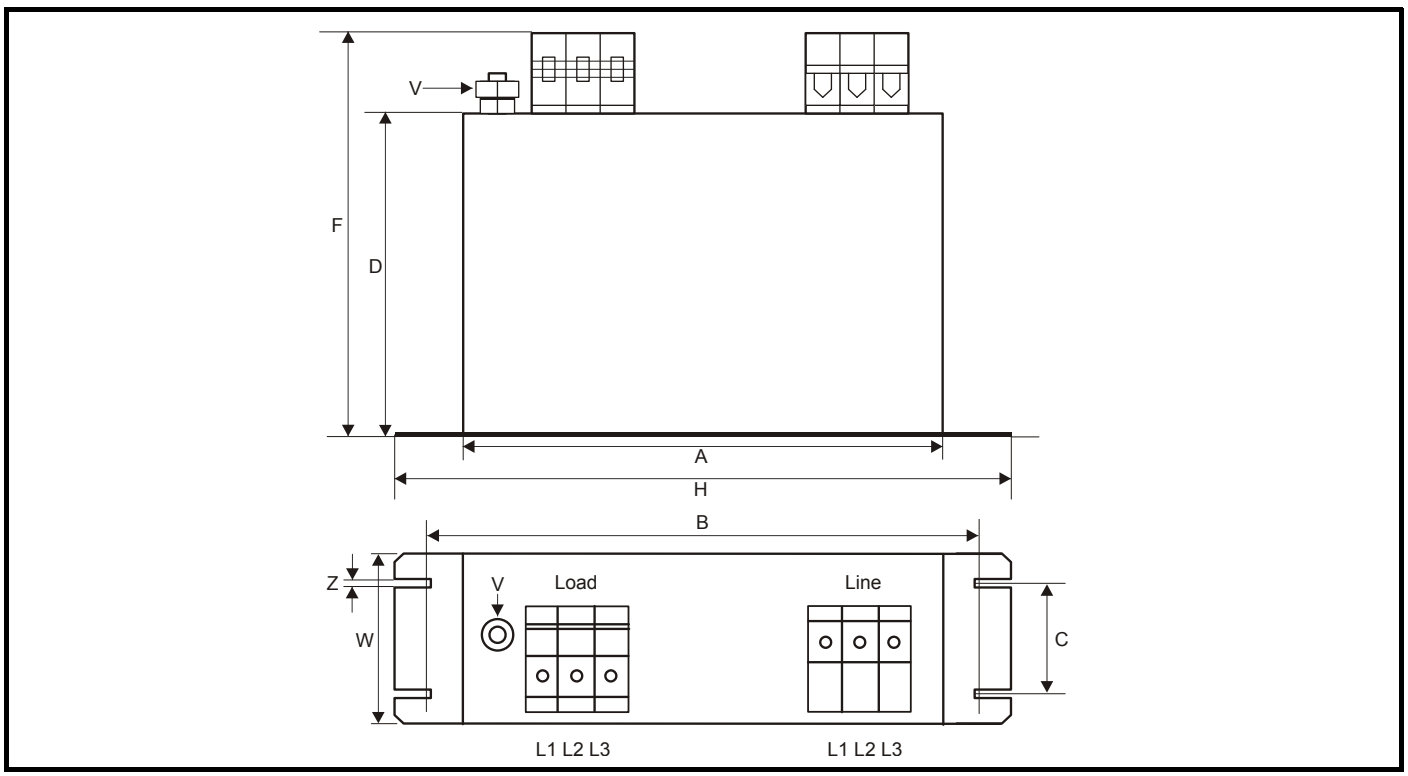


Table 3-16 Size 7 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	F	H	W	V	X	Y	Z
4200-1132 4200-0672	240 mm (9.45 in)	255 mm (10.04 in)	55 mm (2.17 in)	150 mm (5.90 in)		205 mm (8.07 in)	270 mm (10.63 in)	90 mm (3.54 in)	M10			6.5 mm (0.26 in)

Table 3-17 Size 8 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	F	H	W	V	X	Y	Z
4200-1972 4200-1662	240 mm (9.45 in)	255 mm (10.04 in)	55 mm (2.17 in)	150 mm (5.90 in)		205 mm (8.07 in)	270 mm (10.63 in)	90 mm (3.54 in)	M10			6.5 mm (10.26 in)

Figure 3-51 External EMC filter (size 9A)

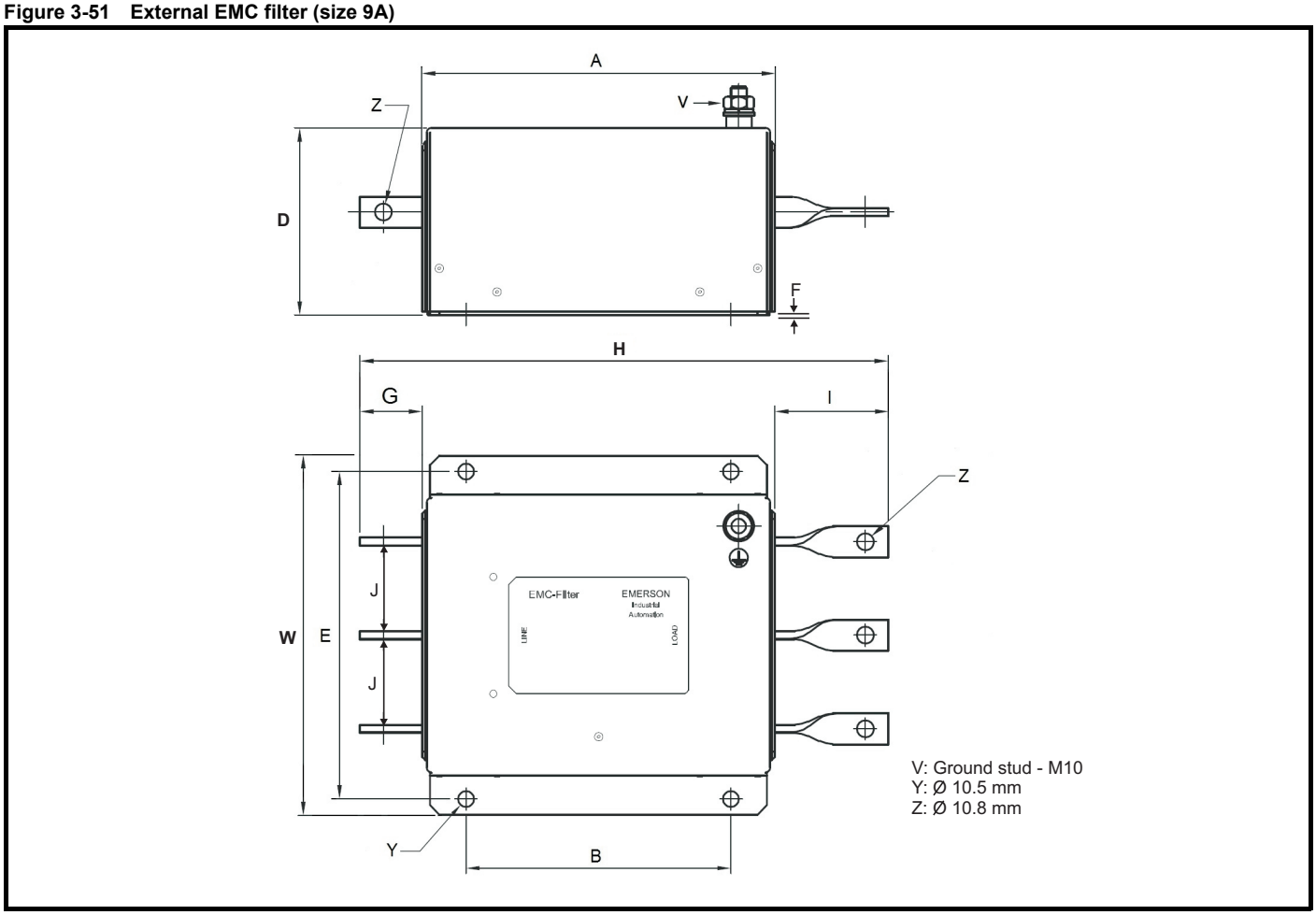


Table 3-18 Size 9A external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	W
4200-3021 4200-1660	220 mm (8.66 in)	170 mm (6.70 in)	120 mm (4.72 in)	210 mm (8.27 in)	2 mm (0.08 in)	40 mm (1.57 in)	339 mm (13.34)	73 mm (2.87 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	230 mm (9.06 in)

Figure 3-52 External EMC filter (size 9E and 10)

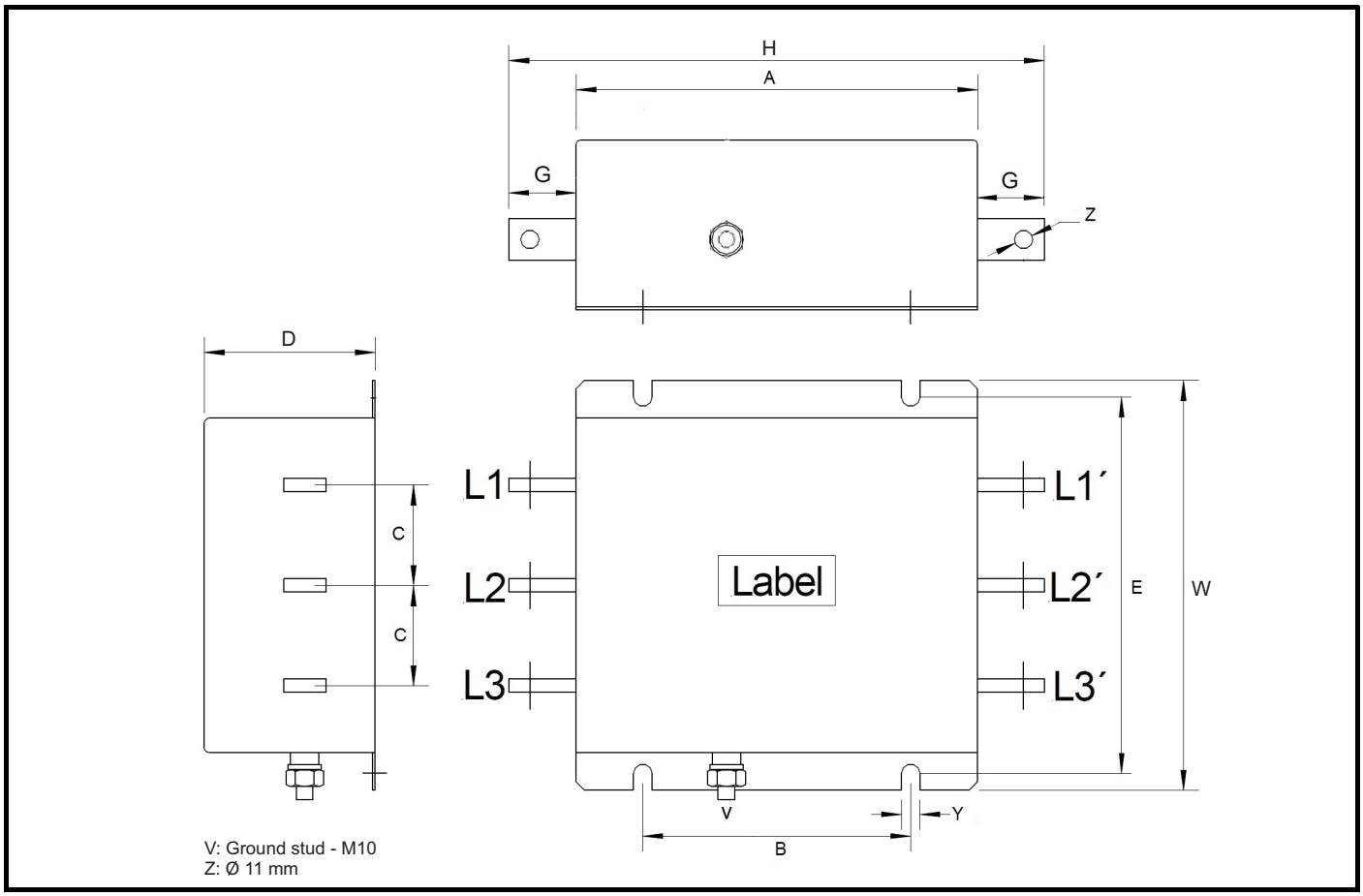


Table 3-19 Size 9E and 10 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	G	H	W	Y
4200-4460	240 mm (9.45 in)	160 mm (6.30 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	102 mm (4.02 in)	225 mm (8.86 in)	40 mm (1.57 in)	320 mm (12.6 in)	245 mm (9.65 in)	11 mm (0.43 in)
4200-2210	280 mm (11.02)	180 mm (7.09)	57 mm (2.24 mm)	105 mm (4.13 in)	225 mm (8.86 in)	40 mm (1.57 in)	360 mm (14.7 in)	245 mm (9.65 in)	11 mm (0.43 in)

Figure 3-53 External EMC filter (size 11)

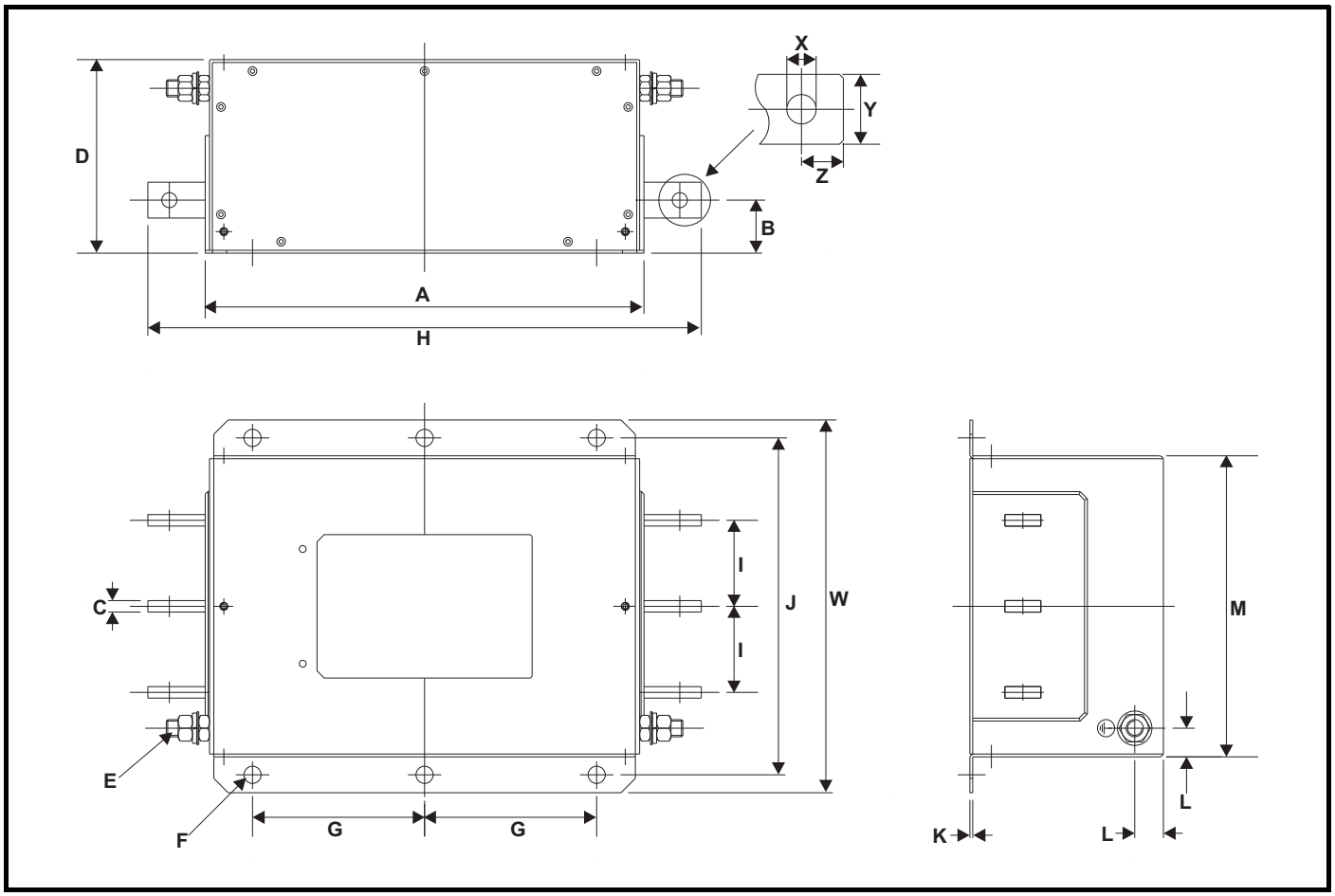


Table 3-20 Size 11 external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	W	X	Y	Z
4200-0400 4200-0690	306 mm (12.05 in)	37 mm (1.46 in)	8 mm (0.32 in)	135 mm (5.32 in)	M12	12 mm (0.47 in)	120 mm (4.72 in)	386 mm (15.20 in)	60 mm (2.36 in)	235 mm (9.25 in)	2 mm (0.08 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	210 mm (8.27 in)	260 mm (10.2 in)	10.5 mm (0.41 in)	25 mm (0.98 in)	15 mm (0.59 in)

3.11 Line reactor mounting dimensions for size 9E, 10E and 11E

Figure 3-54 Input line reactor (INLX0X) for size 9 and 10

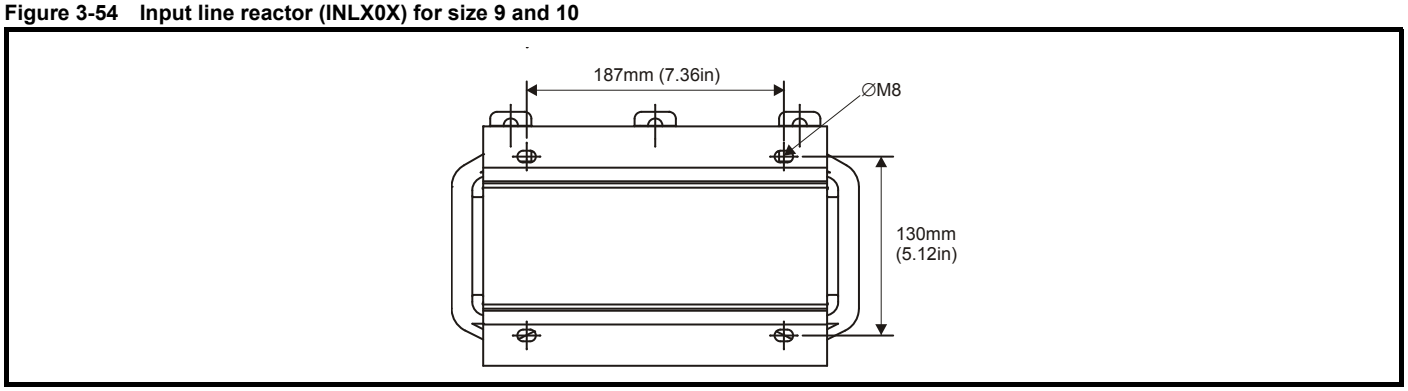


Figure 3-55 Input line reactor force cooled (INLX0XW)

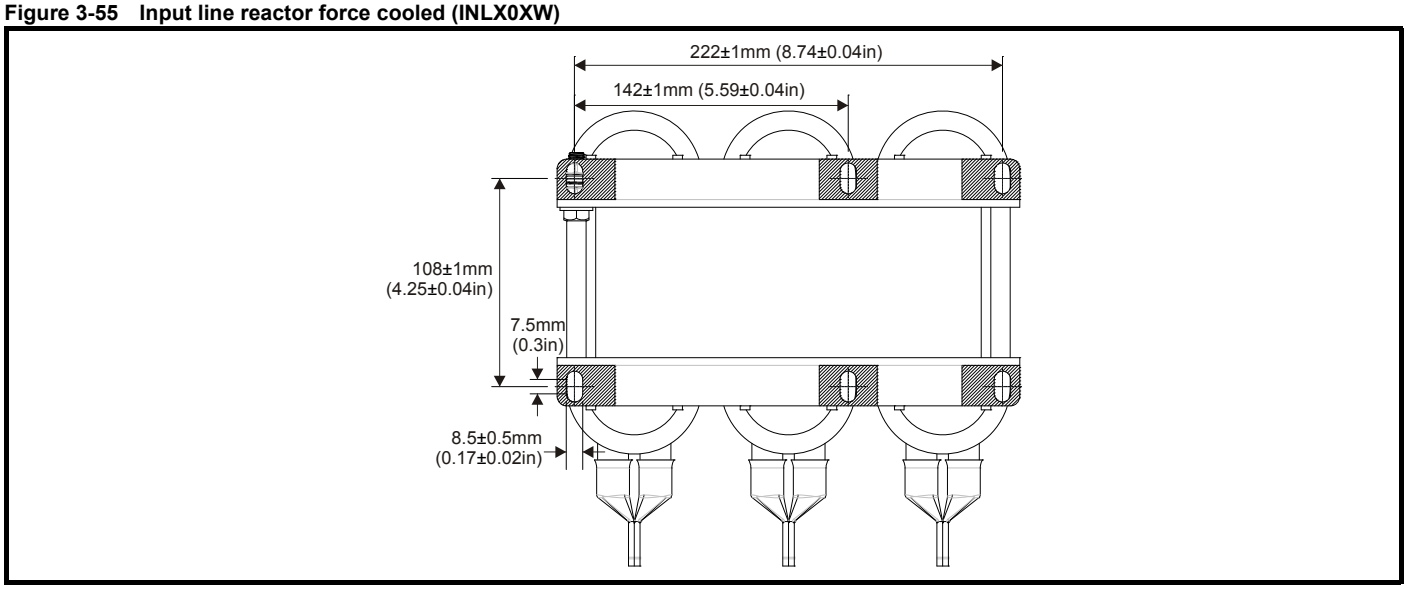
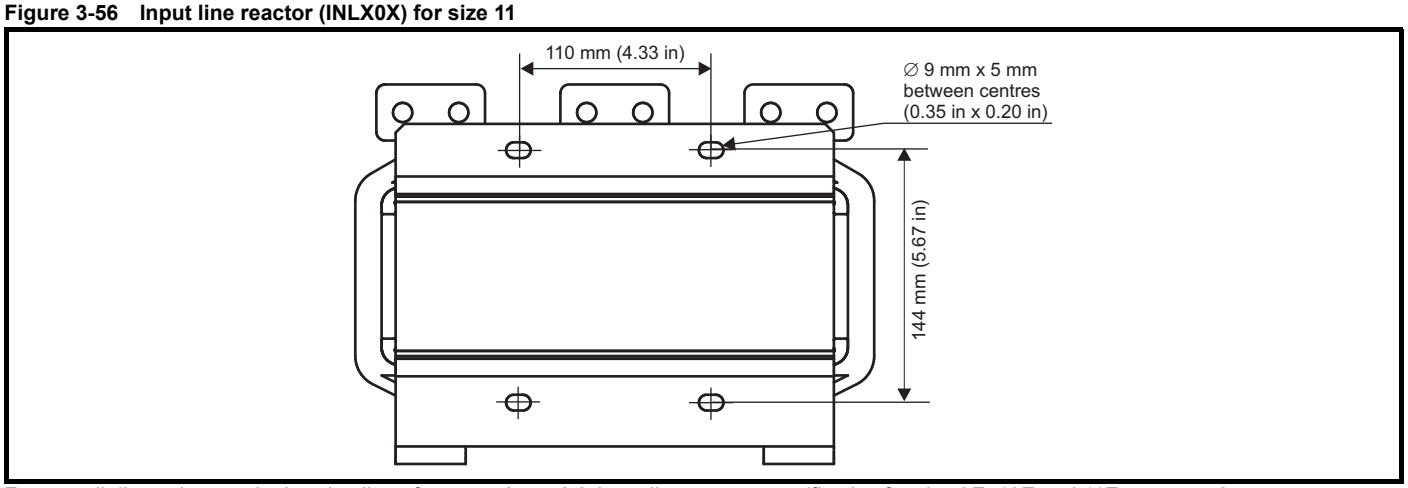


Figure 3-56 Input line reactor (INLX0X) for size 11

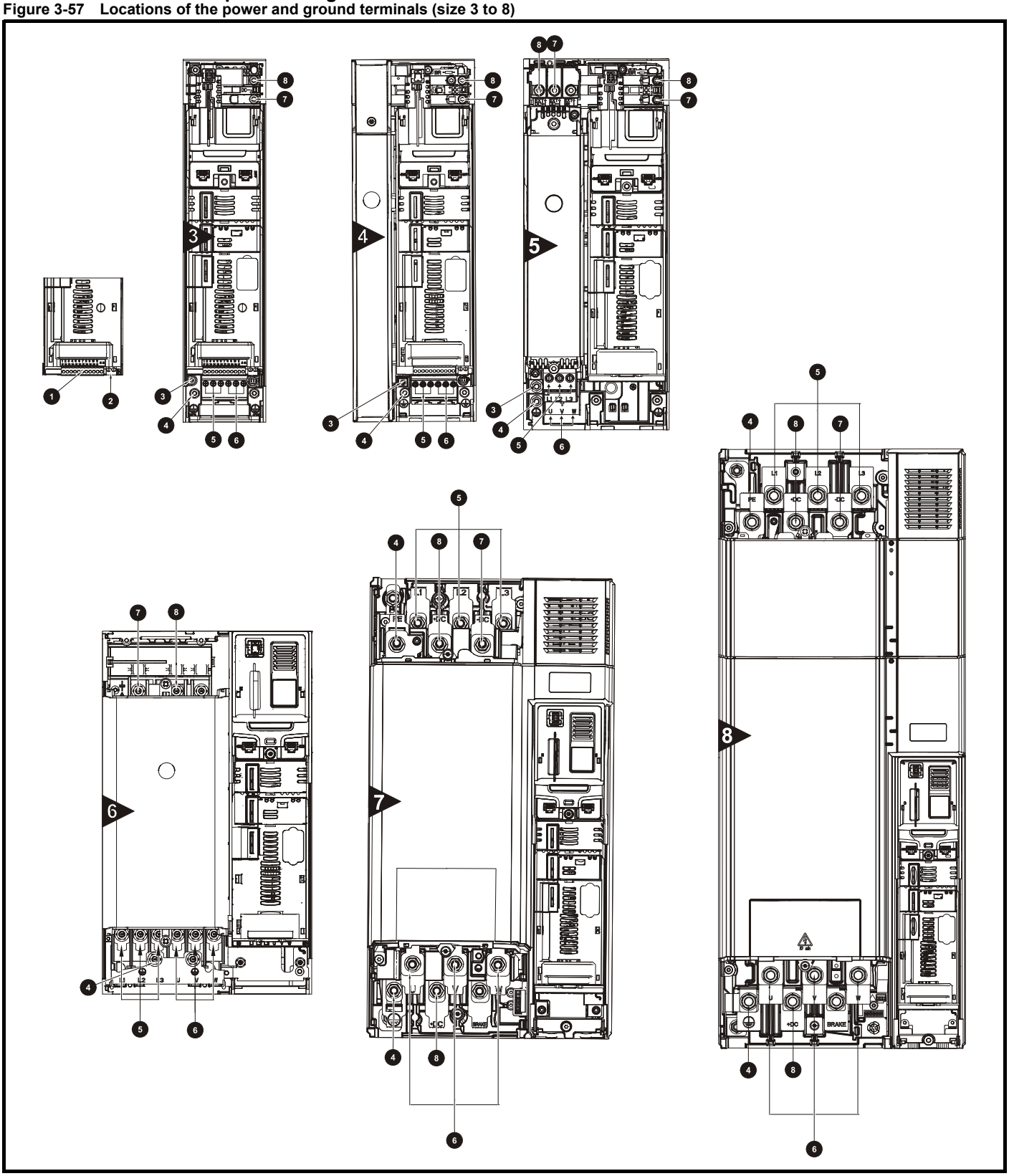


For overall dimensions and other details, refer to section 4.2.3 *Input line reactor specification for size 9E, 10E and 11E* on page 78.

3.12 Electrical terminals

3.12.1 Location of the power and ground terminals

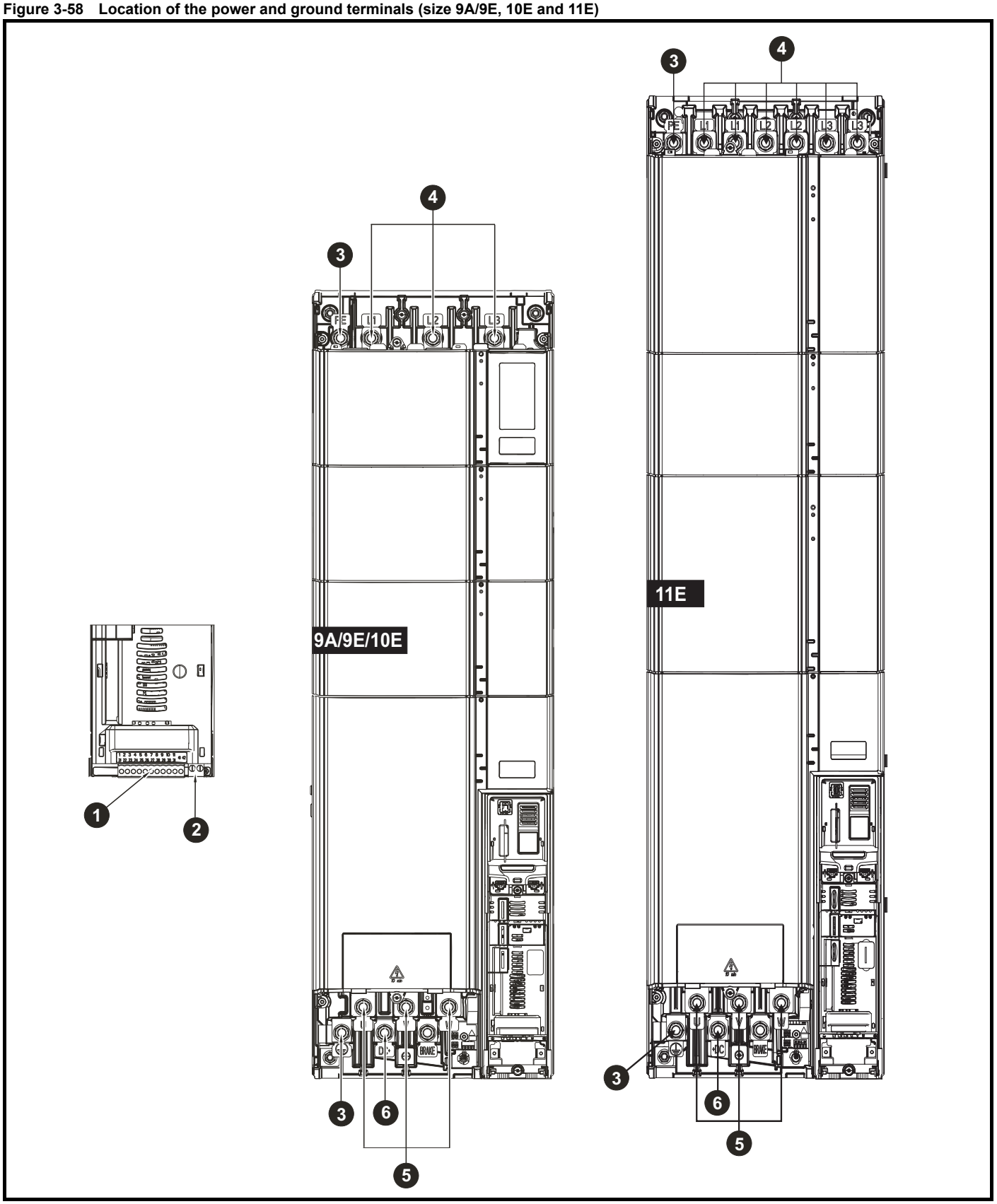
Figure 3-57 Locations of the power and ground terminals (size 3 to 8)



Key

1. Control terminals
2. Relay terminals
3. Additional ground connection
4. Ground connections
5. AC power terminals
6. Motor terminals
7. DC bus -
8. DC bus +

Figure 3-58 Location of the power and ground terminals (size 9A/9E, 10E and 11E)



Key

1. Control terminals
2. Relay terminals
3. Ground connections
4. AC power terminals
5. Motor terminals
6. DC bus +

3.12.2 Terminal sizes and torque settings

WARNING

To avoid a fire hazard and maintain validity of the UL listing, adhere to the specified tightening torques for the power and ground terminals. Refer to the following tables.

Table 3-21 Drive power terminal data

Powerdrive F300 frame size	AC and motor terminals		DC and braking		Ground terminal	
	Recommended	Maximum	Recommended	Maximum	Recommended	Maximum
3 and 4	Plug-in terminal block		T20 Torx (M4)		T20 Torx (M4) / M4 Nut (7 mm AF)	
	0.7 N m (0.5 lb ft)	0.8 N m (0.6 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)
5	Plug-in terminal block		T20 Torx (M4) / M4 Nut (7 mm AF)		M5 Nut (8 mm AF)	
	1.5 N m (1.1 lb ft)	1.8 N m (1.3 lb ft)	1.5 N m (1.1 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
6	M6 Nut (10 mm AF)		M6 Nut (10 mm AF)		M6 Nut (10 mm AF)	
	6.0 N m(4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)	6.0 N m(4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)	6.0 N m(4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)
7	M8 Nut (13 mm AF)		M8 Nut (13 mm AF)		M8 Nut (13 mm AF)	
	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)
8 to 11	M10 Nut (17 mm AF)		M10 Nut (17 mm AF)		M10 Nut (17 mm AF)	
	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)

Table 3-22 Drive control and relay terminal data

Model	Connection type	Torque setting
All	Plug-in terminal block	0.5 N m (0.4 lb ft)

Table 3-23 Plug-in terminal block maximum cable sizes

Model size	Terminal block description	Max cable size
All	11 way control connectors	1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
	2 way relay connector	2.5 mm^2 (12 AWG)
3	6 way AC power connector	6 mm^2 (10 AWG)
4		
5	3 way AC power connector 3 way motor connector	8 mm^2 (8 AWG)
6	2 way low voltage power 24 V supply connector	1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
7		
8		
9A/9E		
10E/11E		

Table 3-24 External EMC filter terminal data

CT part number	Power connections		Ground connections	
	Max cable size	Max torque	Ground stud size	Max torque
4200-1132	50 mm^2 (1/0 AWG)	8.0 N m (6.0lb ft)	M10	18 N m (13.3 lb ft)
4200-0672				
4200-1972	95 mm^2 (3/0 AWG)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)		
4200-1662				
4200-0122	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.7 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-0252		1.8 N m (1.4 lb ft)		
4200-0272				
4200-0312				
4200-0402				
4200-3230	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)
4200-3480	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	
4200-2300	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.70 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-4800				
4200-3690				
4200-3021	TBC	TBC	M10	TBC
4200-4460	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-1660	TBC	TBC		TBC
4200-2210	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-0400	TBC	TBC	M12	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)
4200-0690	TBC	TBC		

3.13 Routine maintenance

The drive should be installed in a cool, clean, well ventilated location. Contact of moisture and dust with the drive should be prevented.

Regular checks of the following should be carried out to ensure drive / installation reliability are maximized:

Environment	
Ambient temperature	Ensure the enclosure temperature remains at or below maximum specified
Dust	Ensure the drive remains dust free – check that the heatsink and drive fan are not gathering dust. The lifetime of the fan is reduced in dusty environments.
Moisture	Ensure the drive enclosure shows no signs of condensation
Enclosure	
Enclosure door filters	Ensure filters are not blocked and that air is free to flow
Electrical	
Screw connections	Ensure all screw terminals remain tight
Crimp terminals	Ensure all crimp terminals remains tight – check for any discoloration which could indicate overheating
Cables	Check all cables for signs of damage

3.13.1 Real time clock battery replacement

Those keypads which have the real time clock feature contain a battery to ensure the clock works when the drive is powered down. The battery has a long life time but if the battery needs to be replaced or removed, follow the instructions below.

Low battery voltage is indicated by low battery symbol on the keypad display.

Figure 3-59 KI-HOA keypad RTC (rear view)

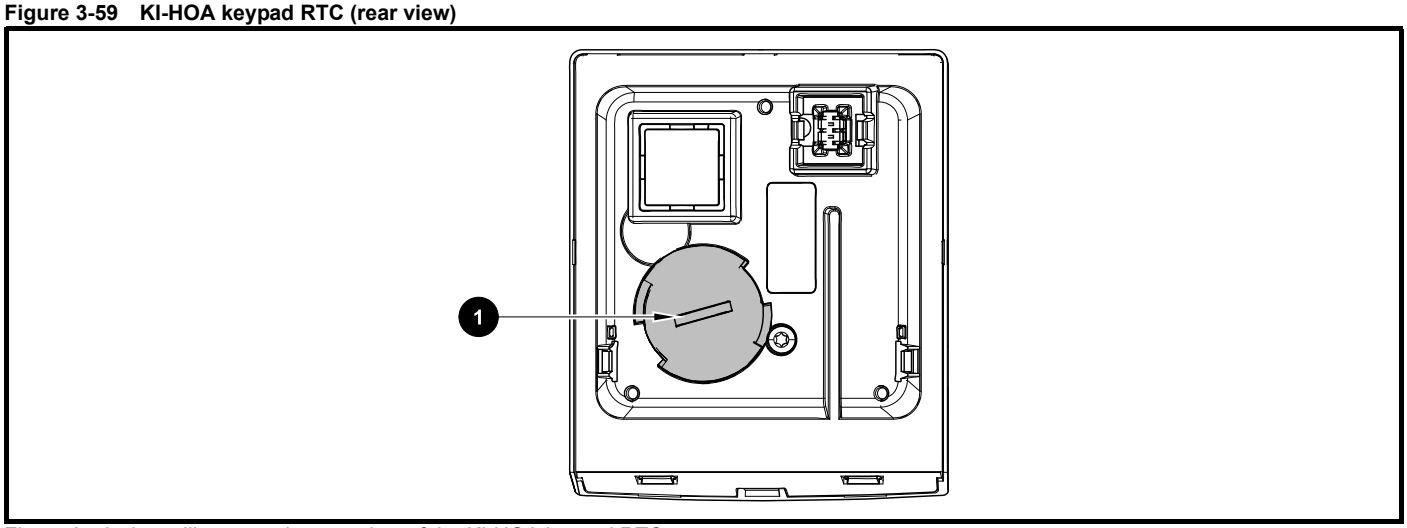


Figure 3-59 above illustrates the rear view of the KI-HOA keypad RTC.

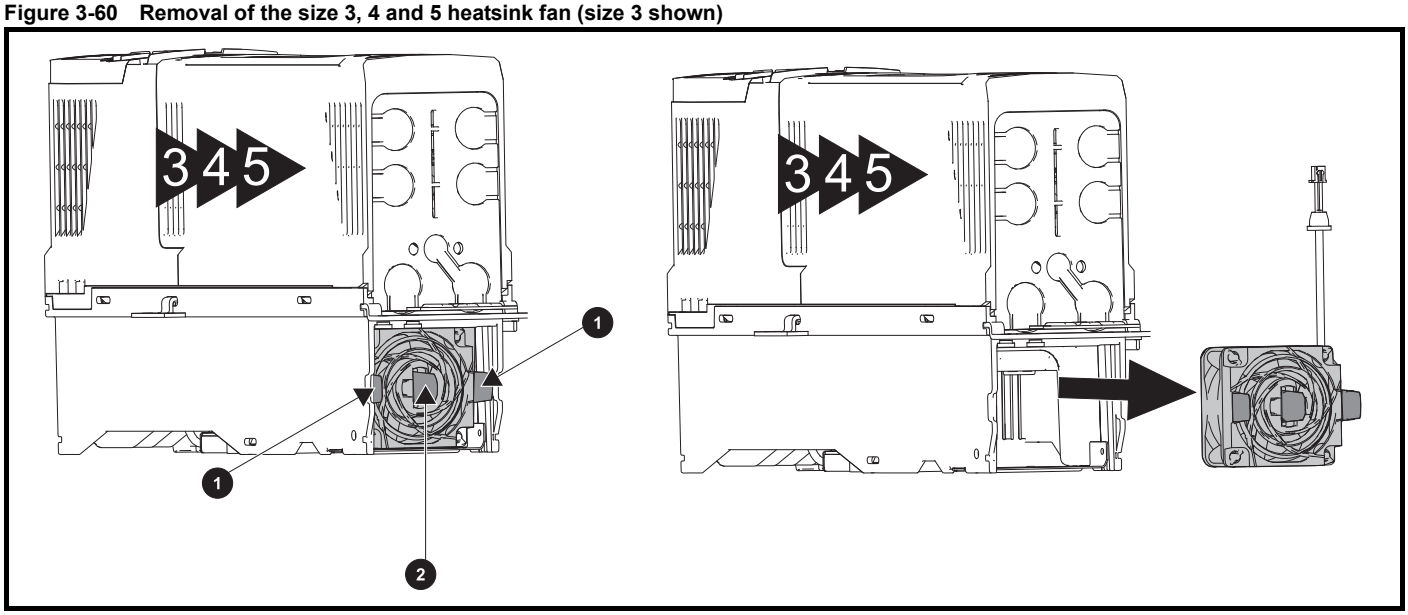
1. To remove the battery cover insert a flat head screwdriver into the slot as shown (1), push and turn anti-clockwise until the battery cover is released.
2. Replace the battery (the battery type is: CR2032).
3. Reverse point 1 above to replace battery cover.

NOTE

Ensure the battery is disposed of correctly.

3.13.2 Fan removal procedure

Figure 3-60 Removal of the size 3, 4 and 5 heatsink fan (size 3 shown)



Ensure the fan cable is disconnected from the drive prior to attempting fan removal.

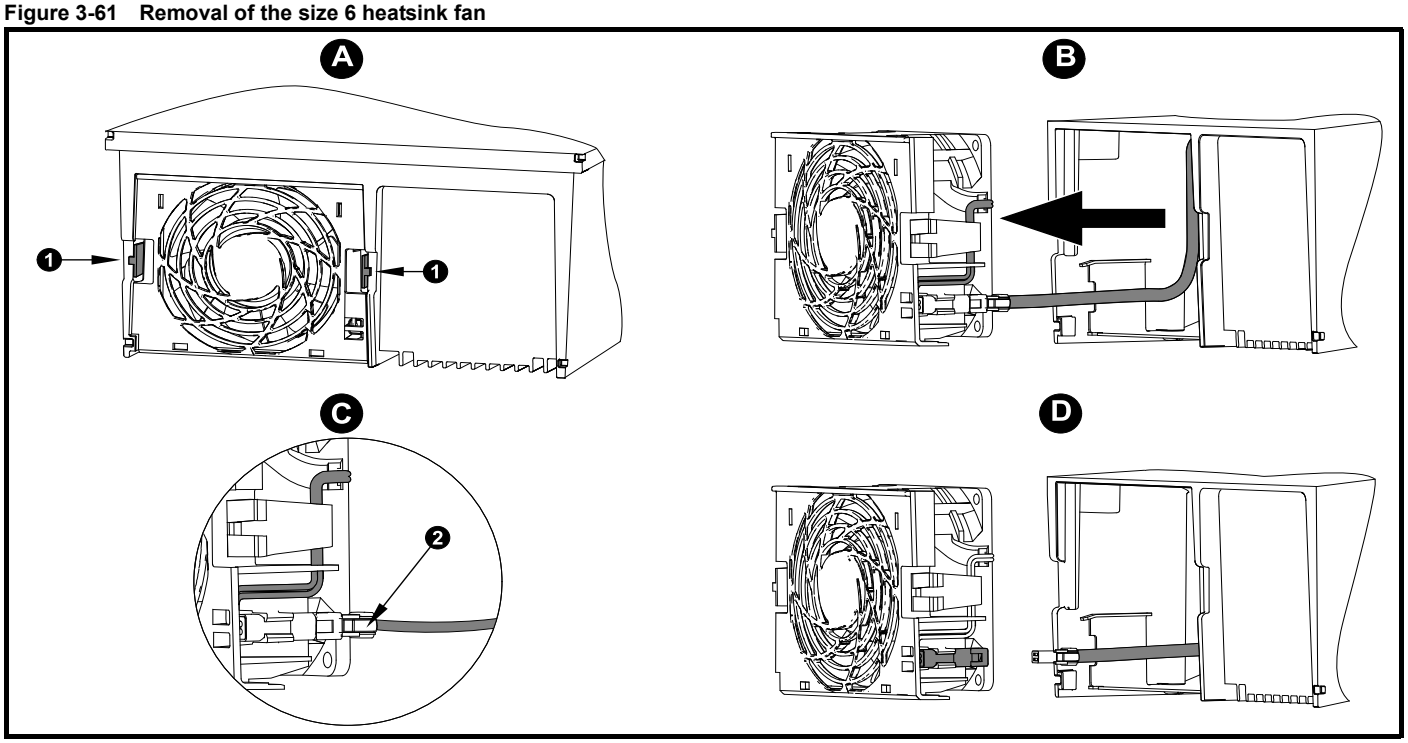
1. Press the two tabs inwards to release the fan from the drive frame.
2. Using the central fan tab, withdraw the fan assembly from the drive housing.

Replace the fan by reversing the above instructions.

NOTE

If the drive is surface mounted using the outer holes on the mounting bracket, then the heatsink fan can be replaced without removing the drive from the backplate.

Figure 3-61 Removal of the size 6 heatsink fan



A: Press the tabs (1) inwards to release the fan assembly from the underside of the drive.

B: Use the tabs (1) to withdraw the fan by pulling it away from the drive.

C: Depress and hold the locking release on the fan cable lead as shown (2).

D: With the locking release depressed (2), take hold of the fan supply cable and carefully pull to separate the connectors.

4 Electrical installation

Many cable management features have been incorporated into the product and accessories, this chapter shows how to optimize them. Key features include:

- Safe Torque Off function
- Internal EMC filter
- EMC compliance with shielding / grounding accessories
- Product rating, fusing and cabling information

Electric shock risk
The voltages present in the following locations can cause severe electric shock and may be lethal:

- AC supply cables and connections
- DC cables and connections
- Output cables and connections
- Many internal parts of the drive, and external option units

Unless otherwise indicated, control terminals are single insulated and must not be touched.

Isolation device
The AC and / or DC power supply must be disconnected from the drive using an approved isolation device before any cover is removed from the drive or before any servicing work is performed.

STOP function
The STOP function does not remove dangerous voltages from the drive, the motor or any external option units.

Safe Torque Off function
The Safe Torque Off function does not remove dangerous voltages from the drive, the motor or any external option units.

Stored charge
The drive contains capacitors that remain charged to a potentially lethal voltage after the AC and / or DC power supply has been disconnected. If the drive has been energized, the AC and / or DC power supply must be isolated at least ten minutes before work may continue.
Normally, the capacitors are discharged by an internal resistor. Under certain, unusual fault conditions, it is possible that the capacitors may fail to discharge,
or be prevented from being discharged by a voltage applied to the output terminals. If the drive has failed in a manner that causes the display to go blank immediately, it is possible the capacitors will not be discharged. In this case, consult Control Techniques or their authorized distributor.

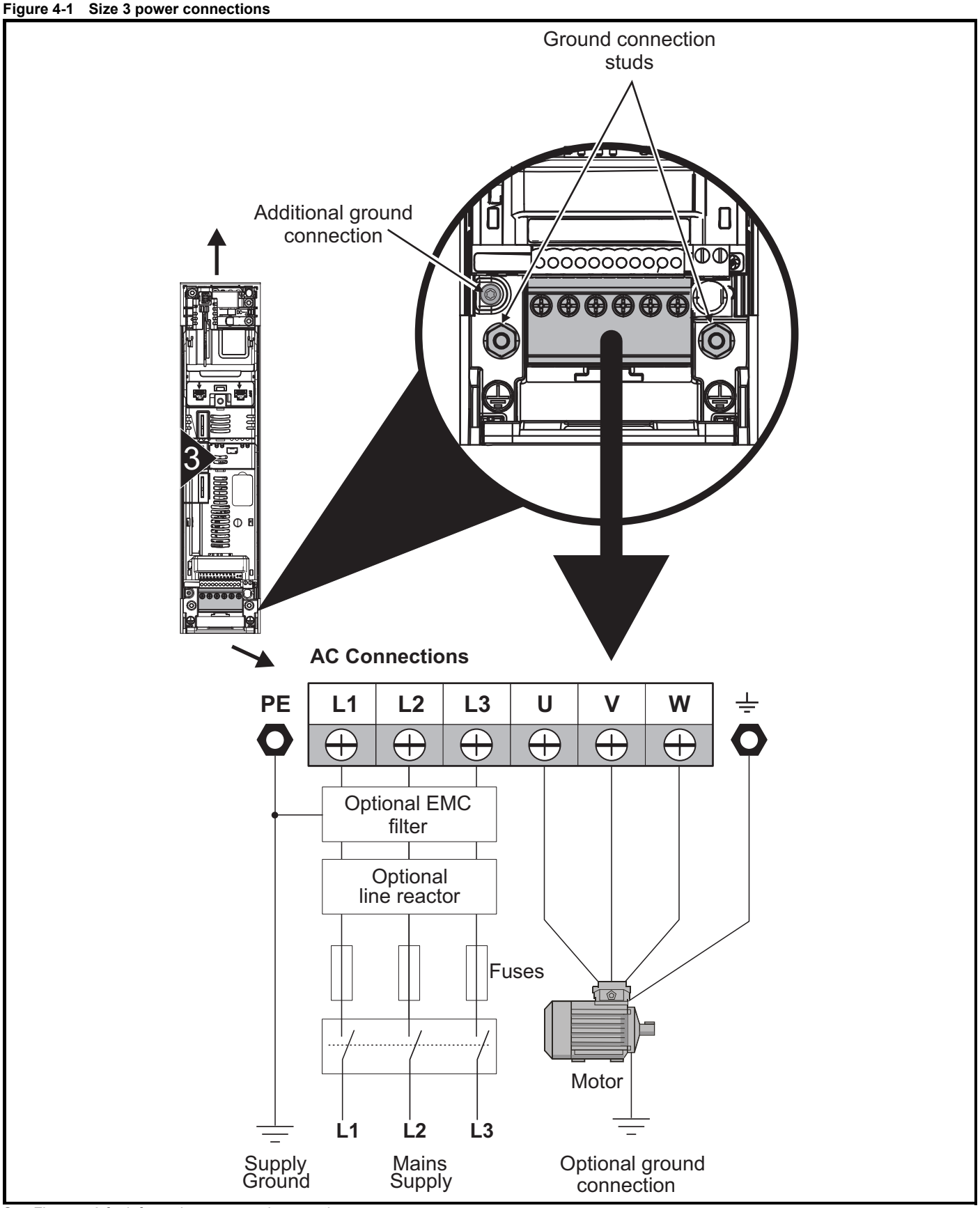
Equipment supplied by plug and socket
Special attention must be given if the drive is installed in equipment which is connected to the AC supply by a plug and socket. The AC supply terminals of the drive are connected to the internal capacitors through rectifier diodes which are not intended to give safety isolation. If the plug terminals can be touched when the plug is disconnected from the socket, a means of automatically isolating the plug from the drive must be used (e.g. a latching relay).

Permanent magnet motors
Permanent magnet motors generate electrical power if they are rotated, even when the supply to the drive is disconnected. If that happens then the drive will become energized through its motor terminals.
If the motor load is capable of rotating the motor when the supply is disconnected, then the motor must be isolated from the drive before gaining access to any live parts.

4.1 Power connections

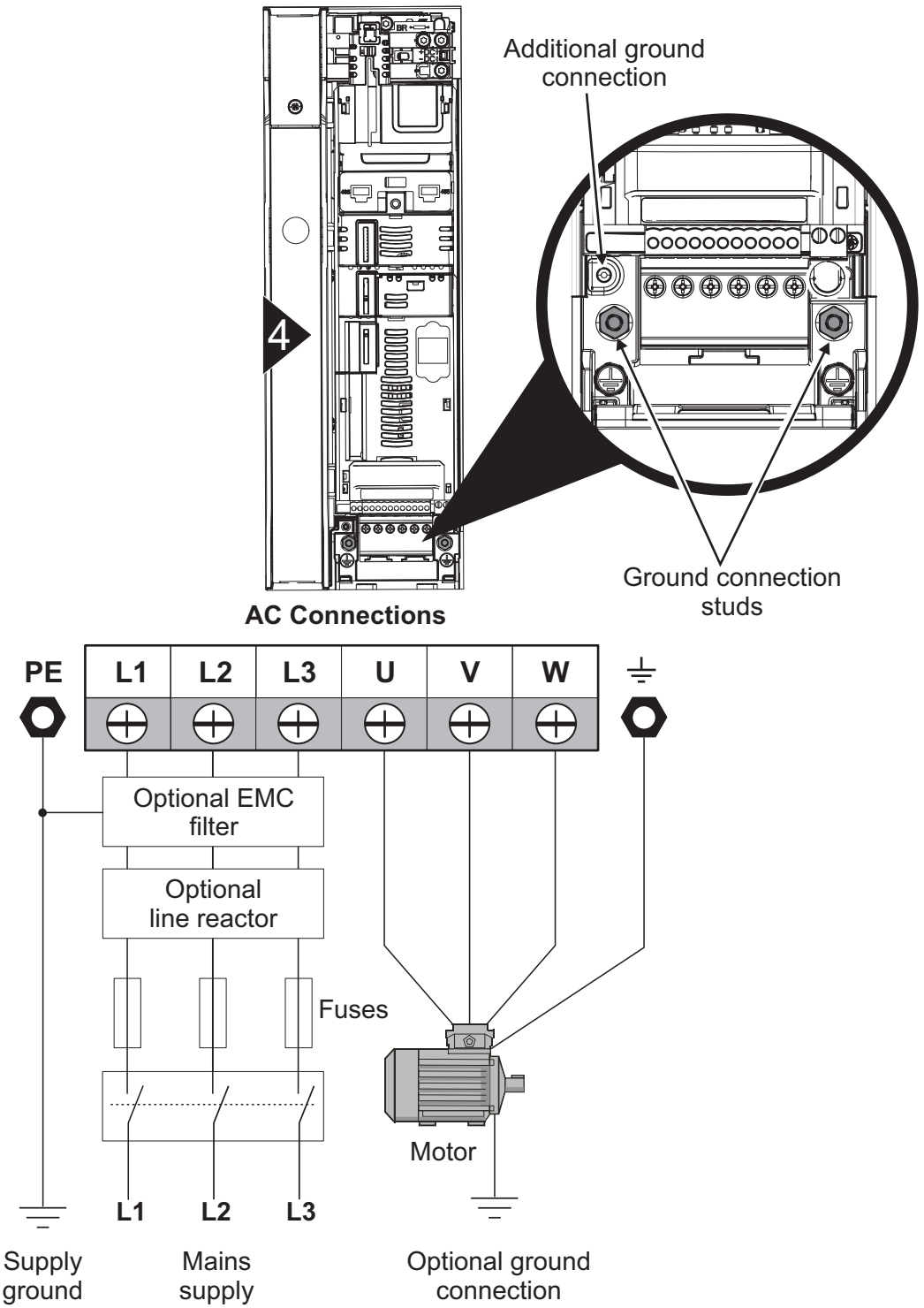
4.1.1 AC and DC connections

Figure 4-1 Size 3 power connections



See Figure 4-9 for information on ground connections.

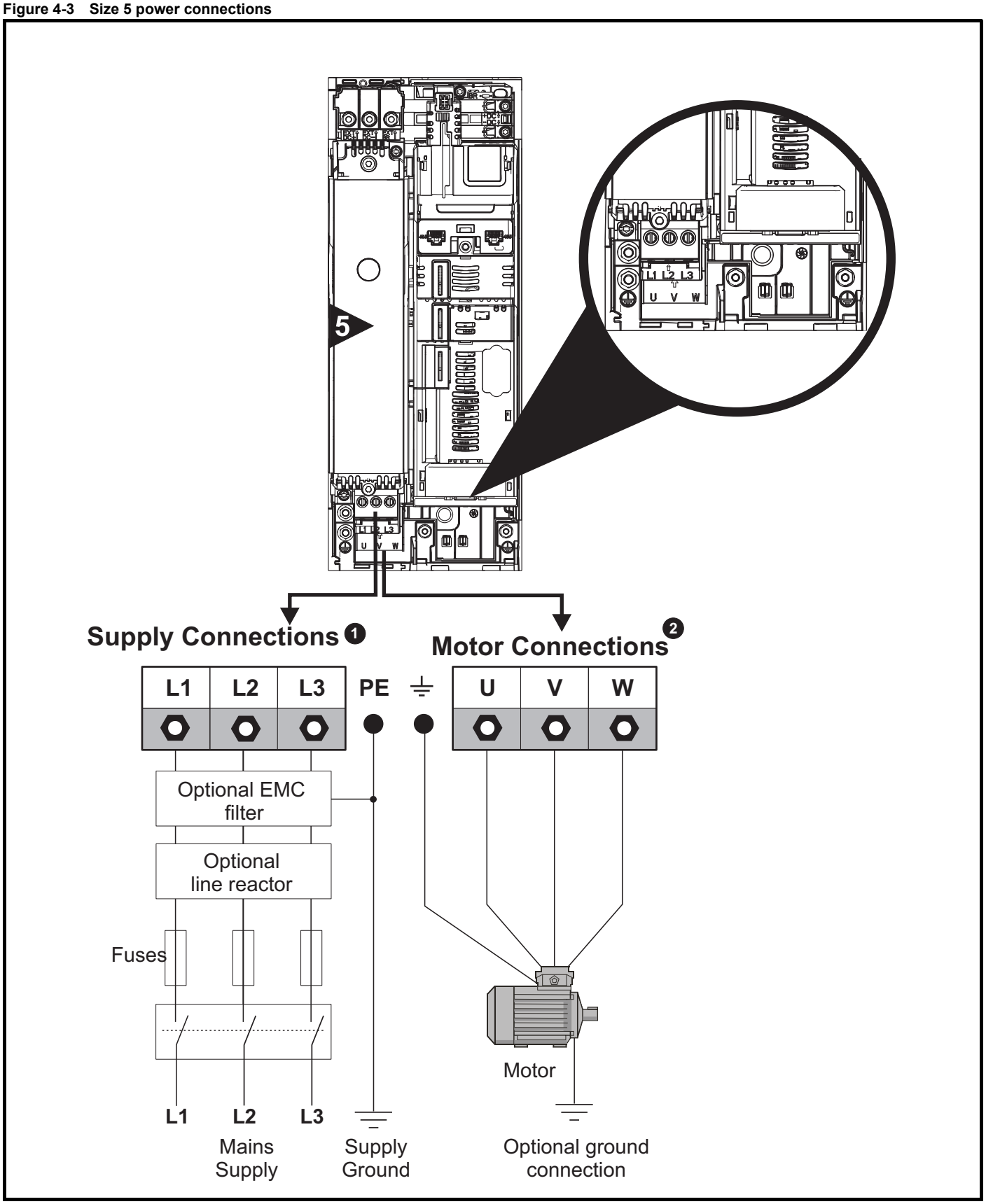
Figure 4-2 Size 4 power connections



If the heatsink mounted resistor is used, an overload protection device is not required. The resistor is designed to fail safely under fault conditions.

See Figure 4-9 for information on ground connections.

Figure 4-3 Size 5 power connections



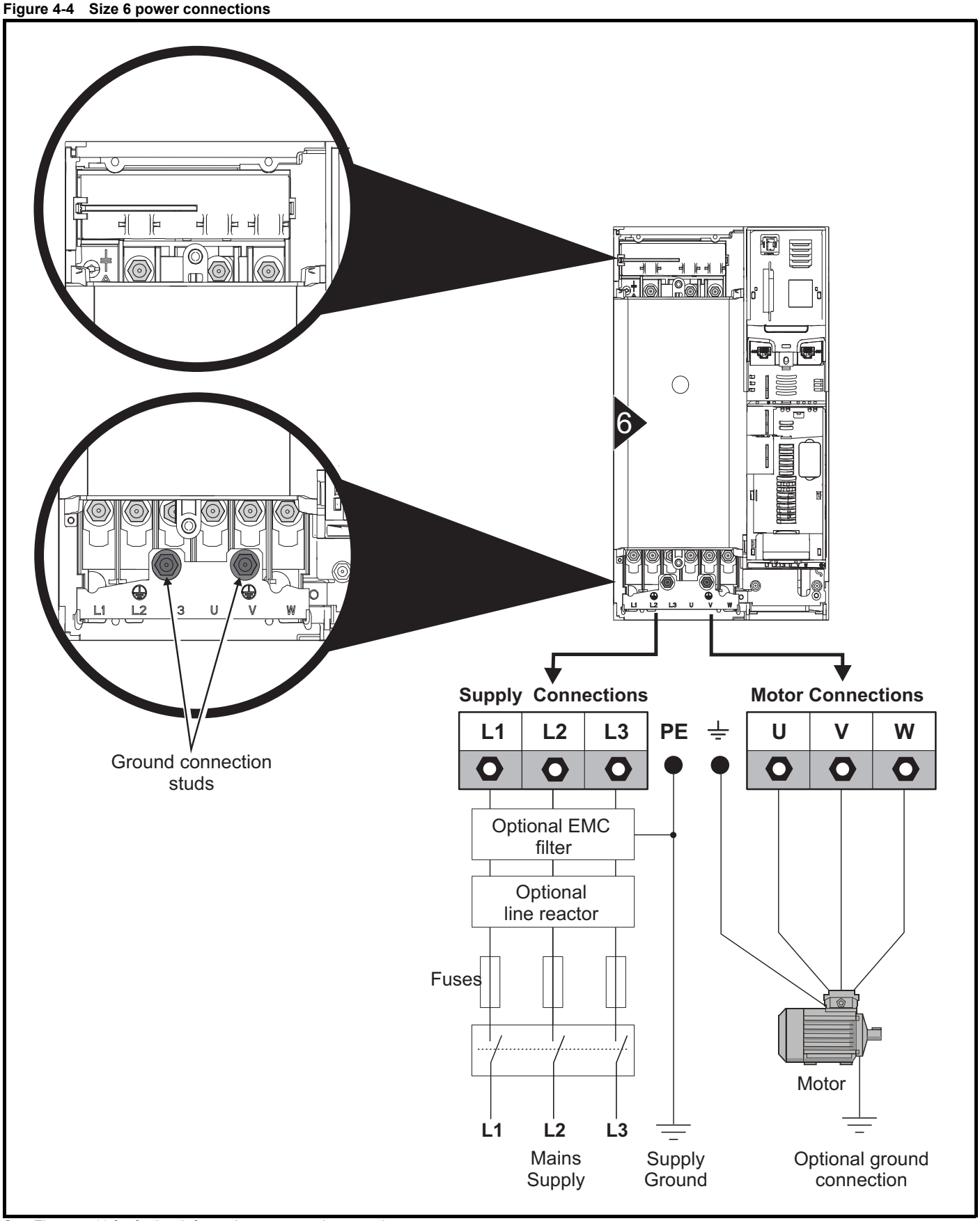
The upper terminal block (1) is used for AC supply connection.

The lower terminal block (2) is used for Motor connection.

If the heatsink mounted resistor is used, an overload protection device is not required. The resistor is designed to fail safely under fault conditions.

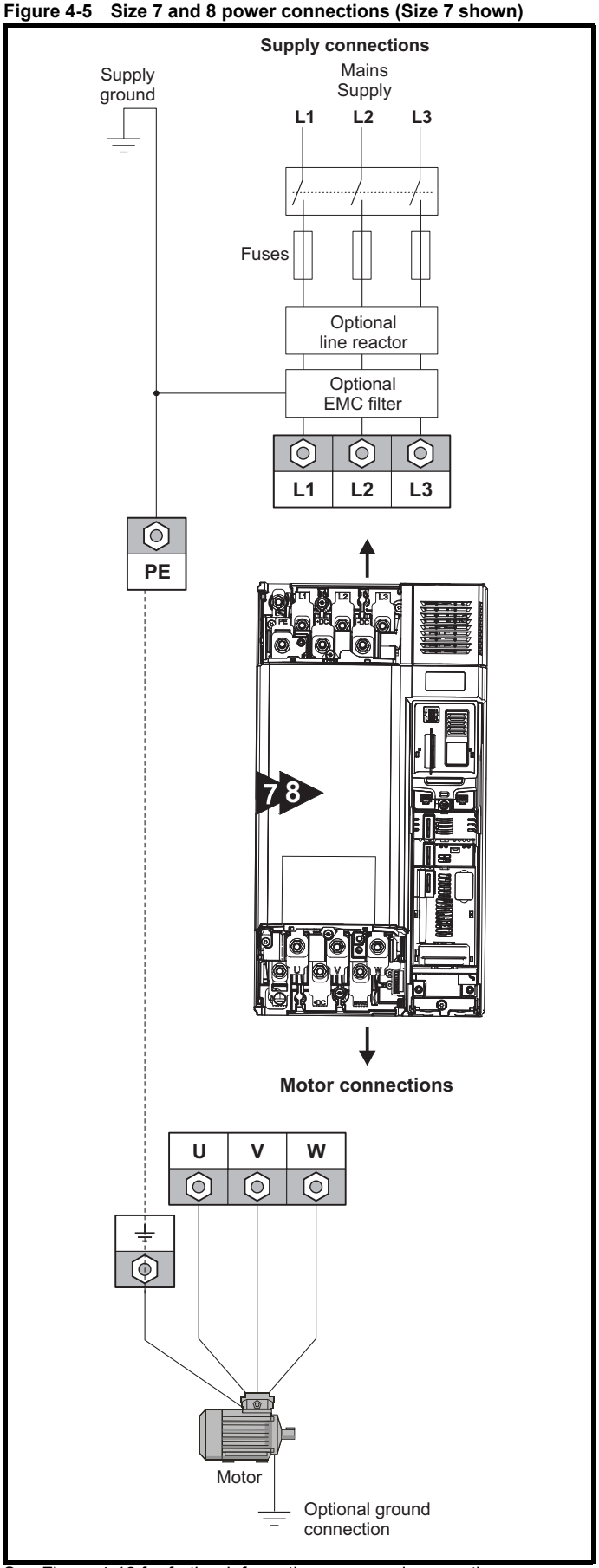
See Figure 4-10 for further information on ground connections.

Figure 4-4 Size 6 power connections



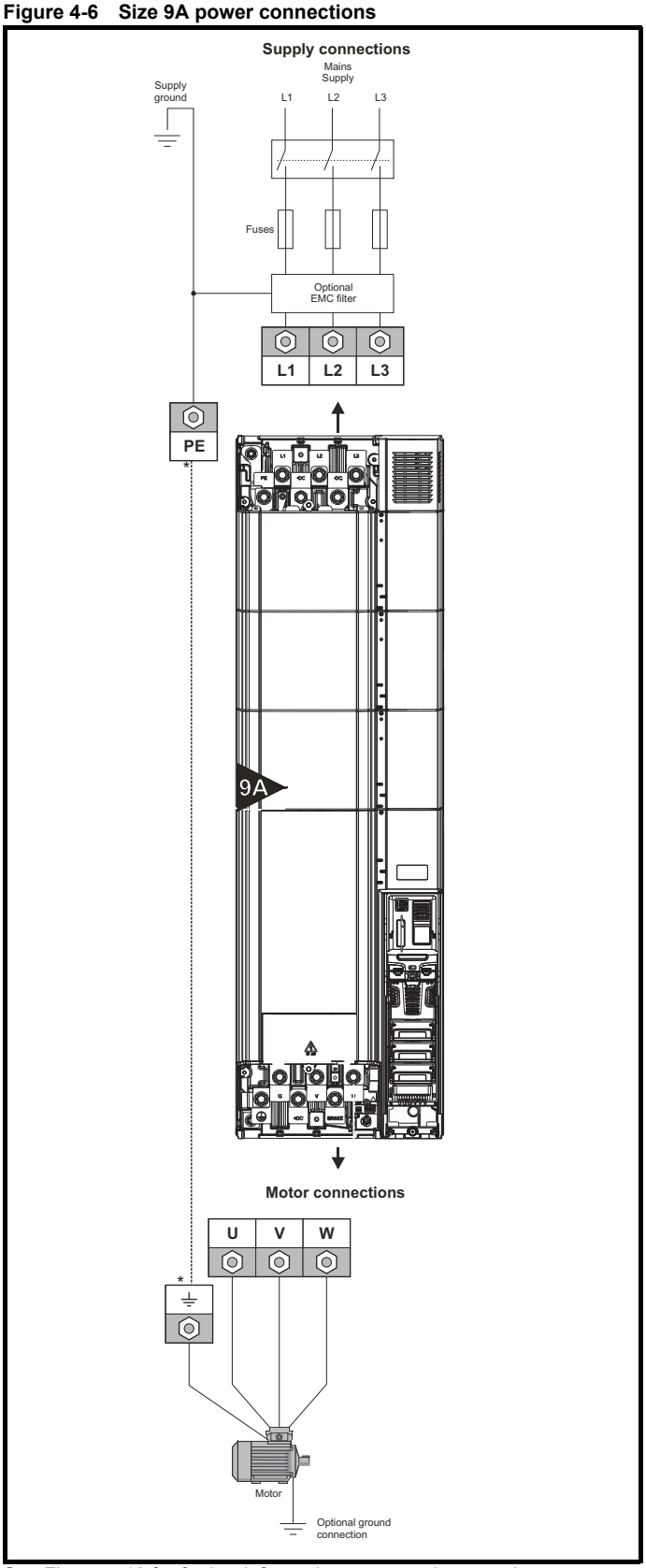
See Figure 4-11 for further information on ground connections.

Figure 4-5 Size 7 and 8 power connections (Size 7 shown)



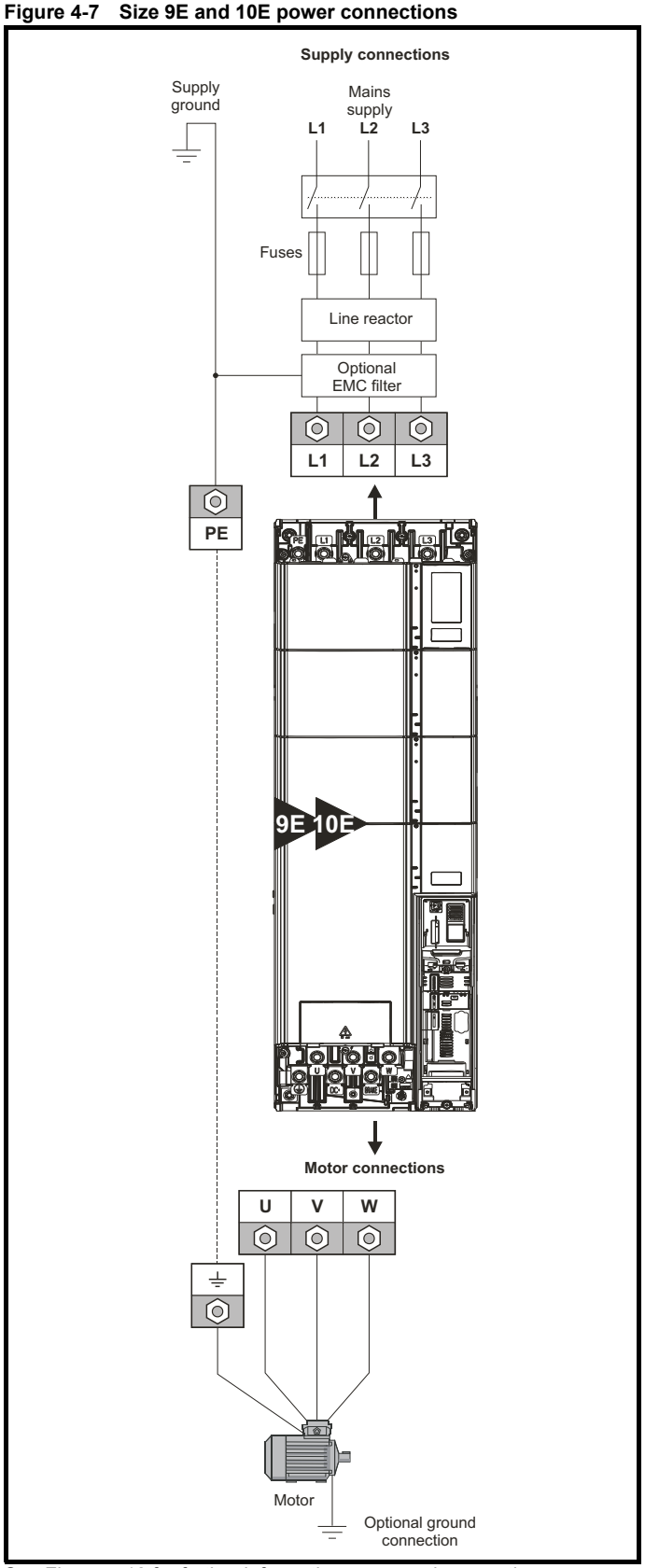
See Figure 4-12 for further information on ground connections.

Figure 4-6 Size 9A power connections



See Figure 4-12 for further information on ground connections.

Figure 4-7 Size 9E and 10E power connections

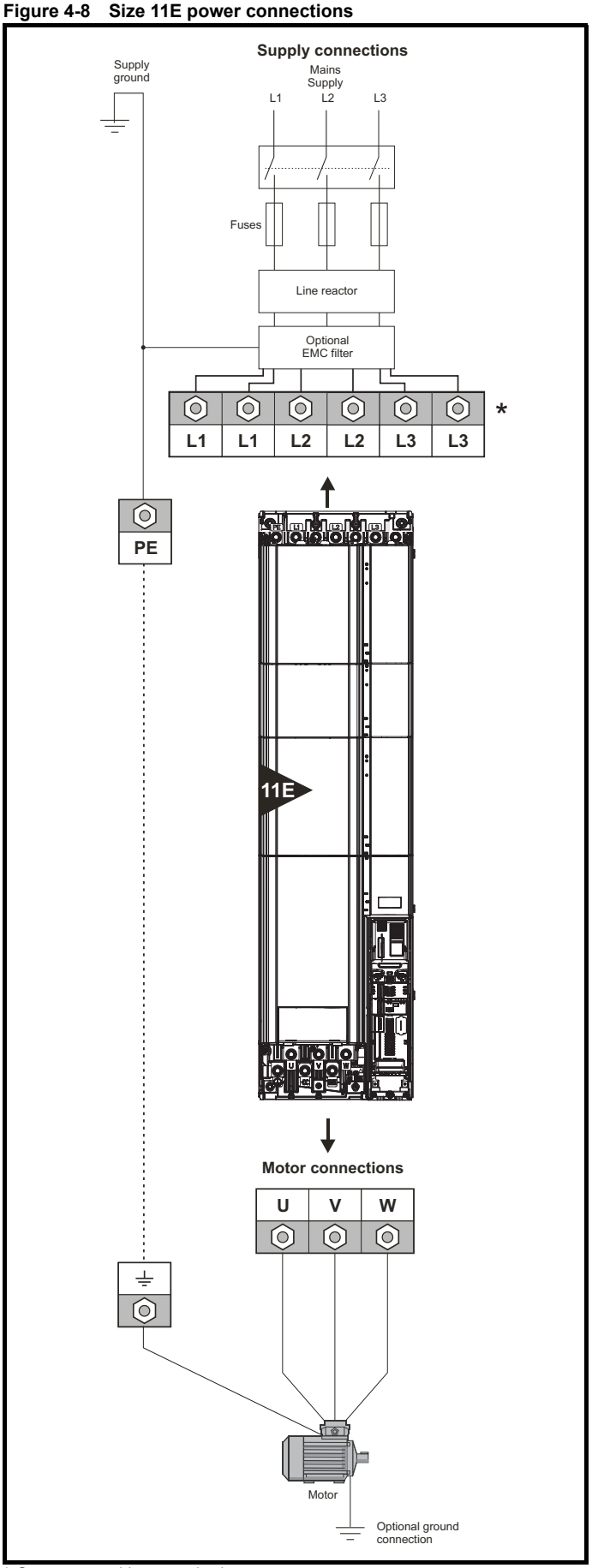


See Figure 4-12 for further information on ground connections.

CAUTION

A separate line reactor (INLXXX) of at least the value shown in Table 4-3 and Table 4-2 on page 78 must be used with size 9E and10E. Failure to provide sufficient reactance could damage or reduce the service life of the drive.

Figure 4-8 Size 11E power connections



* Connect to either terminal.

4.1.2 Ground connections

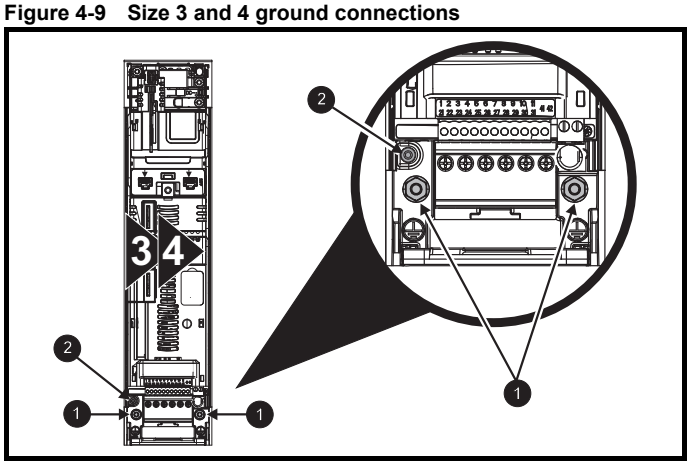
Electrochemical corrosion of grounding terminals
Ensure that grounding terminals are protected against corrosion i.e. as could be caused by condensation.

WARNING

Size 3 and 4

On sizes 3 and 4, the supply and motor ground connections are made using the M4 studs located either side of the drive near the plug-in power connector. Refer to Figure 4-9 for additional ground connection.

Figure 4-9 Size 3 and 4 ground connections

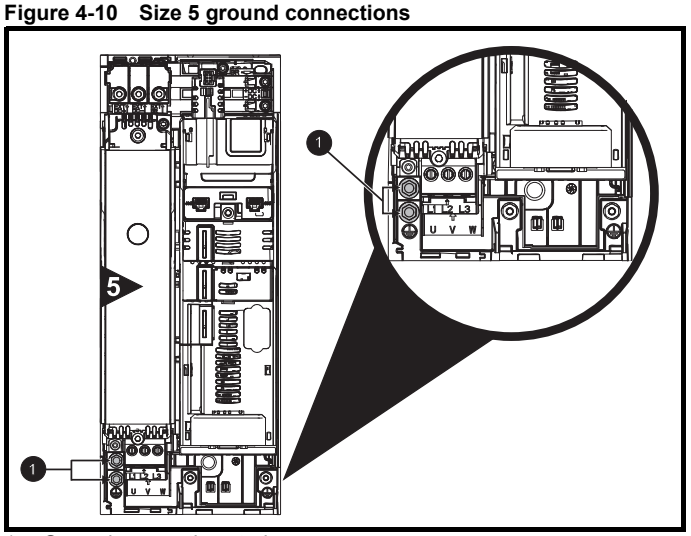


1. Ground connection studs.
2. Additional ground connection.

Size 5

On size 5, the supply and motor ground connections are made using the M5 studs located near the plug-in power connector. Refer to Figure 4-10 for additional ground connection.

Figure 4-10 Size 5 ground connections

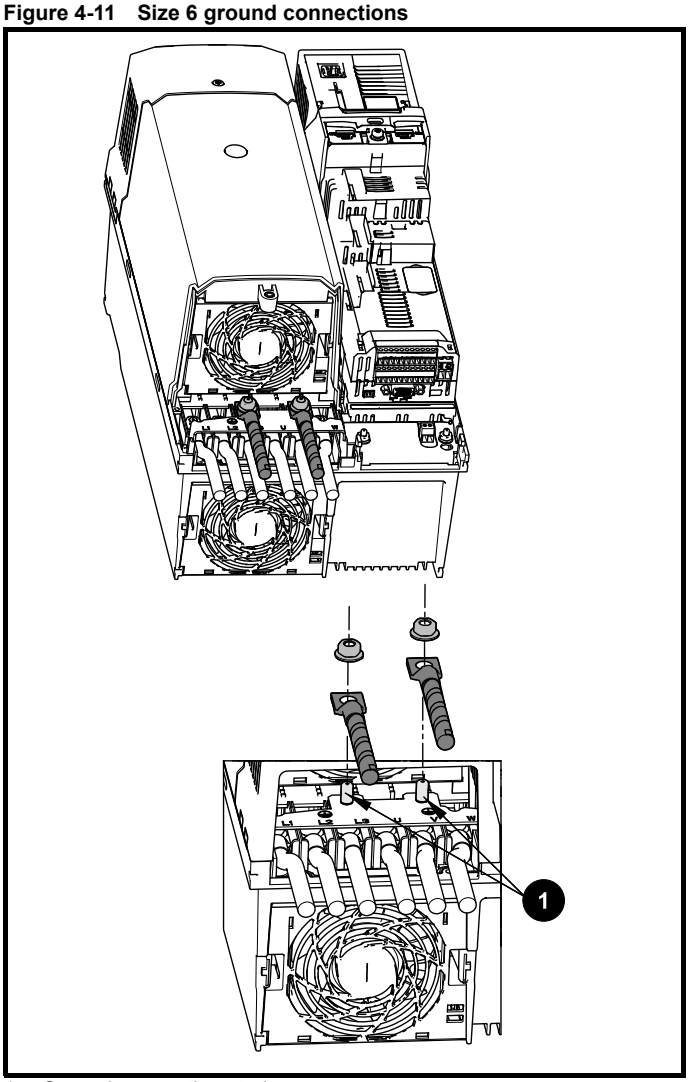


1. Ground connection studs.

Size 6

On a size 6, the supply and motor ground connections are made using the M6 studs located above the supply and motor terminals. Refer to Figure 4-11 below.

Figure 4-11 Size 6 ground connections



1. Ground connection studs

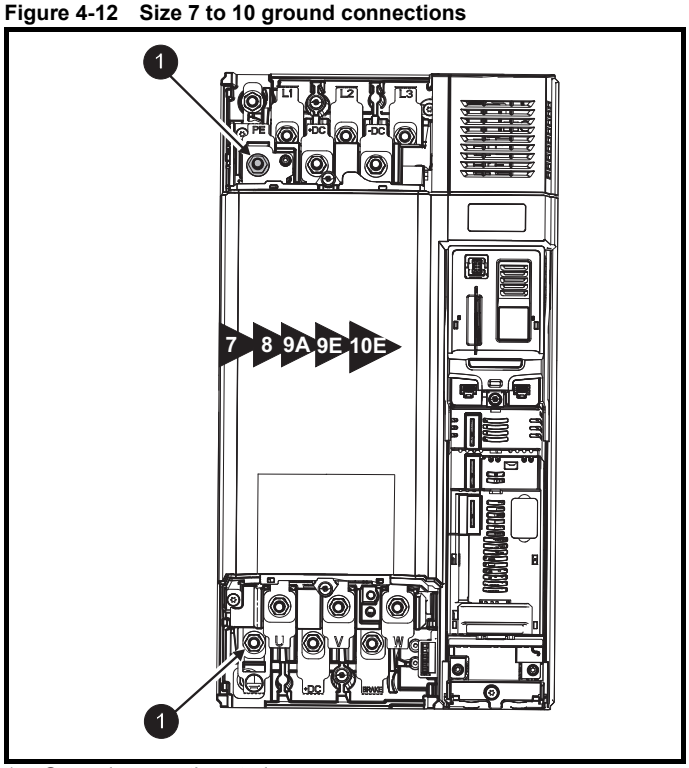
Size 7

On size 7, the supply and motor ground connections are made using the M8 studs located by the supply and motor connection terminals.

Size 8 to 11

On size 8 to 11, the supply and motor ground connections are made using the M10 studs located by the supply and motor connection terminals.

Figure 4-12 Size 7 to 10 ground connections



1. Ground connection studs.

WARNING

The ground loop impedance must conform to the requirements of local safety regulations.

The drive must be grounded by a connection capable of carrying the prospective fault current until the protective device (fuse, etc.) disconnects the AC supply.

The ground connections must be inspected and tested at appropriate intervals.

Figure 4-13 Size 11E ground connections

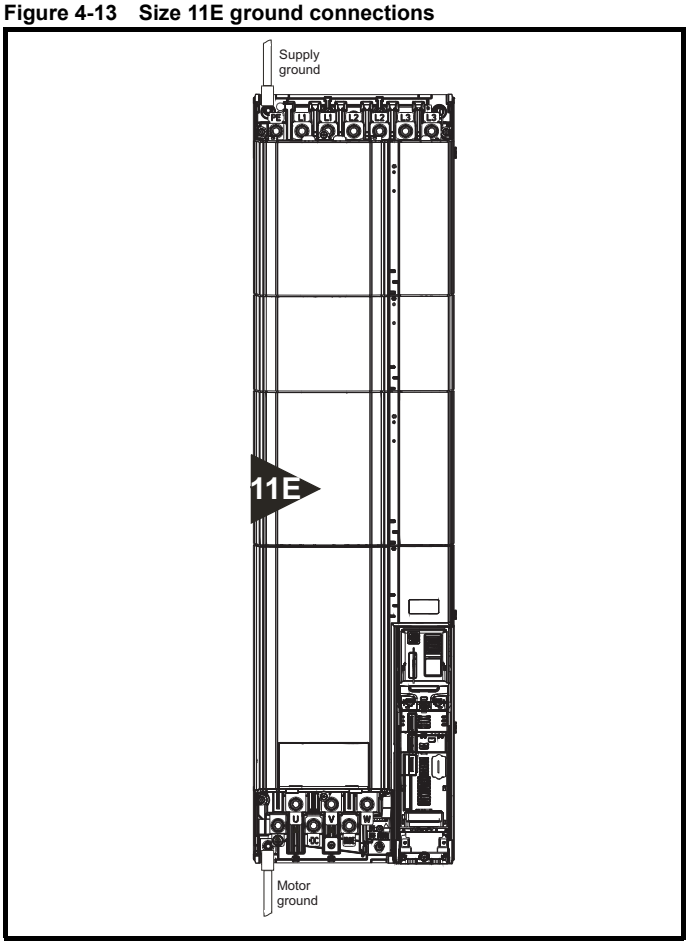


Table 4-1 Protective ground cable ratings

Input phase conductor size	Minimum ground conductor size
≤ 10 mm^2	Either 10 mm^2 or two conductors of the same cross-sectional area as the input phase conductor.
> 10 mm^2 and ≤ 16 mm^2	The same cross-sectional area as the input phase conductor
> 16 mm^2 and ≤ 35 mm^2	16 mm^2
> 35 mm^2	Half of the cross-sectional area of the input phase conductor

4.2 AC supply requirements

Voltage:

200 V drive: 200 V to 240 V ±10 %
400 V drive: 380 V to 480 V ±10 %
575 V drive: 500 V to 575 V ±10 %
690 V drive: 500 V to 690 V ±10 %

Number of phases: 3

Maximum supply imbalance: 2 % negative phase sequence (equivalent to 3 % voltage imbalance between phases).

Frequency range: 45 to 66 Hz

For UL compliance only, the maximum supply symmetrical fault current must be limited to 100 kA

4.2.1 Supply types

All drives are suitable for use on any supply type i.e TN-S, TN-C-S, TT and IT.

- Supplies with voltage up to 600 V may have grounding at any potential, i.e. neutral, centre or corner (“grounded delta”)
- Supplies with voltage above 600 V may not have corner grounding

Drives are suitable for use on supplies of installation category III and lower, according to IEC60664-1. This means they may be connected permanently to the supply at its origin in a building, but for outdoor installation additional over-voltage suppression (transient voltage surge suppression) must be provided to reduce category IV to category III.

Operation with IT (ungrounded) supplies:
Special attention is required when using internal or external EMC filters with ungrounded supplies, because in the event of a ground (earth) fault in the motor circuit the drive may not trip and the filter could be over-stressed. In this case, either the filter must not be used (removed) or additional independent motor ground fault protection must be provided.
For instructions on removal, refer to section 4.10.2 *Internal EMC filter* on page 90. For details of ground fault protection contact the supplier of the drive.

A ground fault in the supply has no effect in any case. If the motor must continue to run with a ground fault in its own circuit then an input isolating transformer must be provided and if an EMC filter is required it must be located in the primary circuit.

Unusual hazards can occur on ungrounded supplies with more than one source, for example on ships. Contact the supplier of the drive for more information.

4.2.2 Supplies requiring line reactors

Input line reactors reduce the risk of damage to the drive resulting from poor phase balance or severe disturbances on the supply network.

Where line reactors are to be used, reactance values of approximately 2 % are recommended. Higher values may be used if necessary, but may result in a loss of drive output (reduced torque at high speed) because of the voltage drop.

For all drive ratings, 2 % line reactors permit drives to be used with a supply unbalance of up to 3.5 % negative phase sequence (equivalent to 5% voltage imbalance between phases).

Severe disturbances may be caused by the following factors, for example:

- Power factor correction equipment connected close to the drive.
- Large DC drives having no or inadequate line reactors connected to the supply.
- Across the line (DOL) started motor(s) connected to the supply such that when any of these motors are started, the voltage dip exceeds 20 %.

Such disturbances may cause excessive peak currents to flow in the input power circuit of the drive. This may cause nuisance tripping, or in extreme cases, failure of the drive.

Drives of low power rating may also be susceptible to disturbance when connected to supplies with a high rated capacity.

Line reactors are particularly recommended for use with the following drive models when one of the above factors exists, or when the supply capacity exceeds 175 kVA:

03200066, 03200080, 03200110, 03200127,

03400034, 03400045, 03400062, 03400077

Model sizes 03400104 to 07600730 have an internal DC choke and model sizes 08201490 to 0801080 and frame 9A have internal AC line chokes so they do not require AC line reactors except for cases of excessive phase unbalance or extreme supply conditions. Drive sizes 9E,10E and 11E do not have internal input line reactors hence an external input line reactor must be used. For more information refer to section 4.2.3 *Input line reactor specification for size 9E, 10E and 11E* on page 78.

When required, each drive must have its own reactor(s). Three individual reactors or a single three-phase reactor should be used.

Reactor current ratings

The current rating of the line reactors should be as follows:

Continuous current rating:

Not less than the continuous input current rating of the drive

Repetitive peak current rating:

Not less than twice the continuous input current rating of the drive

4.2.3 Input line reactor specification for size 9E, 10E and 11E

CAUTION

A separate line reactor (INLXXX) of at least the value shown in Table 4-3 and Table 4-2 must be used with size 9E, 10E and 11E. Failure to provide sufficient reactance could damage or reduce the service life of the drive.

Table 4-2 Size 9E, 10E and 11E Model and Line reactor part number

Size	Drive model	Inductor model	Line reactor part number
9E	09202160, 09202660, 09402210, 09402660	INL 401	4401-0181
		INL 401W**	4401-0208
	09501250, 09501500, 09601720, 09601970	INL 601	4401-0183
10E	10203250, 10203600, 10403200, 10403610	INL 402	4401-0182
		INL 402W**	4401-0209
	10502000, 10601720, 10601970	INL 602	4401-0184
11E	11404370	INL 403L***	4401-0274
	11404370, 11404870, 11405070	INL 403*	4401-0259
	11502480, 11502880, 11503150, 11602250, 11602750, 11603050	INL 603*	4401-0261

* Natural cooling.

** May represent a more economic solution where operating temperature and cooling requirements are observed.

*** May represent a more economic solution when operating below 420 A.

Figure 4-14 Input line reactor dimensions

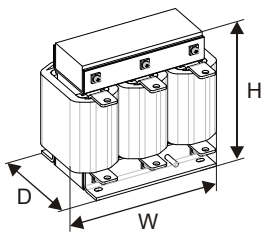


Table 4-3 Input line reactor ratings

Part number	Model	Current	Inductance	Overall width (W)	Overall depth (D)	Overall height (H)	Weight	Max ambient temp	Min airflow	Maximum losses	Quantity required
		A	µH	mm	mm	mm	kg	°C	m/s	W	
4401-0181	INL 401	245	63	240	190	225	32	50	1	148	1
4401-0182	INL 402	339	44	276	200	225	36	50	1	205	1
4401-0208	INL 401W**	245	63	255	235	200	27	40	3		1
4401-0209	INL 402W**	339	44	255	235	200	27	40	3		1
4401-0274	INL 403L*	420	30	300	216	264	57	40	0		1
4401-0259	INL403*	557	30	300	216	264	57	40	0		1
4401-0183	INL 601	145	178	240	190	225	33	50	1	88	1
4401-0184	INL 602	192	133	276	200	225	36	50	1	116	1
4401-0261	INL 603*	331	93	300	216	264	58	40	0		1

* Natural cooling.

** May represent a more economic solution where operating temperature and cooling requirements are observed.

NOTE

If symmetrical fault current exceeds 38 kA then a line reactor with a higher inductance must be used, consult the supplier of the drive.

4.2.4 Input inductor calculation

To calculate the inductance required (at **Y**%), use the following equation:

$$\mathbf{L} = \frac{\mathbf{Y}}{\mathbf{100}} \times \frac{\mathbf{V}}{\sqrt{\mathbf{3}}} \times \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{2\pi f I}}$$

Where:

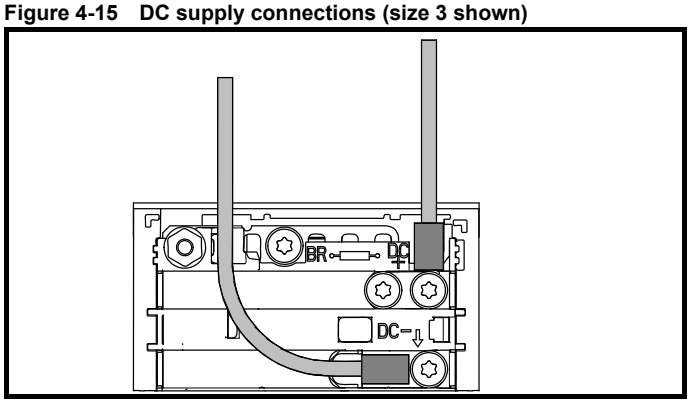
I = drive rated input current (A)
L = inductance (H)
f = supply frequency (Hz)
V = voltage between lines

4.3 Supplying the drive with DC

All drive sizes have the option to be powered from an external DC power supply. Refer to section 3.12 *Electrical terminals* on page 63 to identify the location of DC supply connections.

The DC supply connections for size 3 and 4 are located under the DC / Terminal cover. Figure 4-15 below shows DC supply connections and cable routing.

Figure 4-15 DC supply connections (size 3 shown)



NOTE

The Internal EMC filter and plastics have been removed from the above Figure 4-15 to demonstrate the routing of the DC cables.

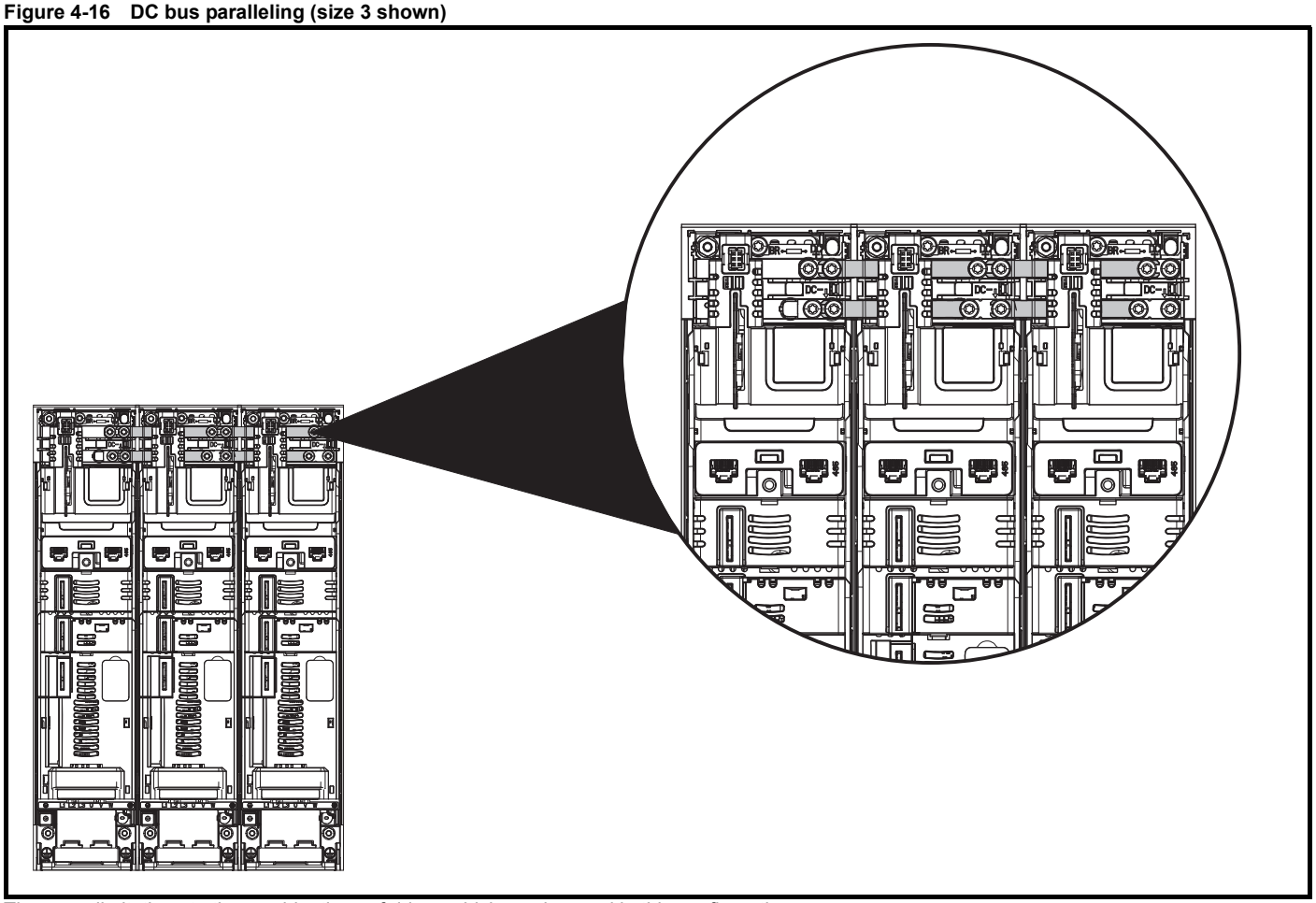
4.4 DC bus paralleling

DC bus paralleling using standard cable / busbars is supported by all frame sizes.

On frame sizes 3, 4, 5 and 6, terminal and enclosure design enables the DC bus of a number of drives to be connected together using pre-made busbars. The diagram below shows how the busbar links connect the DC bus of several drives together.

The connecting of the DC bus between several drives is typically used to return energy from a drive which is being overhauled by the load to a second motoring drive.

Figure 4-16 DC bus paralleling (size 3 shown)



There are limitations to the combinations of drives which can be used in this configuration.

For application data, contact the supplier of the drive.

NOTE

The DC bus paralleling kit is not supplied with the drive but available to order.

Table 4-4 DC bus paralleling kit part numbers

Size	CT part number
3	3470-0048-00
4	3470-0061-00
5	3470-0068-00
6	3470-0063-00

4.5 24 Vdc supply

The 24 Vdc supply connected to control terminals 1 & 2 provides the following functions:

- It can be used to supplement the drive's own internal 24 V supply when multiple option modules are being used and the current drawn by these module is greater than the drive can supply.
- It can be used as a back-up power supply to keep the control circuits of the drive powered up when the line power supply is removed. This allows any fieldbus modules, application modules, or serial communications to continue to operate.
- It can be used to commission the drive when the line power supply is not available, as the display operates correctly. However, the drive will be in the Under voltage trip state unless either line power supply or low voltage DC operation is enabled, therefore diagnostics may not be possible. (Power down save parameters are not saved when using the 24 V back-up power supply input).
- If the DC bus voltage is too low to run the main SMPS in the drive, then the 24 V supply can be used to supply all the low voltage power requirements of the drive. *Low Under Voltage Threshold Select* (06.067) must also be enabled for this to happen.

NOTE

On size 6 and larger, the power 24 Vdc supply (terminals 51, 52) must be connected to enable the 24 Vdc supply to be used as a backup supply, when the line power supply is removed. If the power 24 Vdc supply is not connected none of the above mentioned functions can be used, "Waiting For Power Systems" will be displayed on the keypad and no drive operations are possible. The location of the power 24 Vdc can be identified from Figure 4-17 *Location of the 24 Vdc power supply connection on size 6* on page 80.

Table 4-5 24 Vdc Supply connections

Function	Sizes 3-5	Sizes 6-11
Supplement the drive's internal supply	Terminal 1, 2	Terminal 1, 2
Back-up supply for the control circuit	Terminal 1, 2	Terminal 1, 2 51, 52

The working voltage range of the control 24 V power supply is as follows:

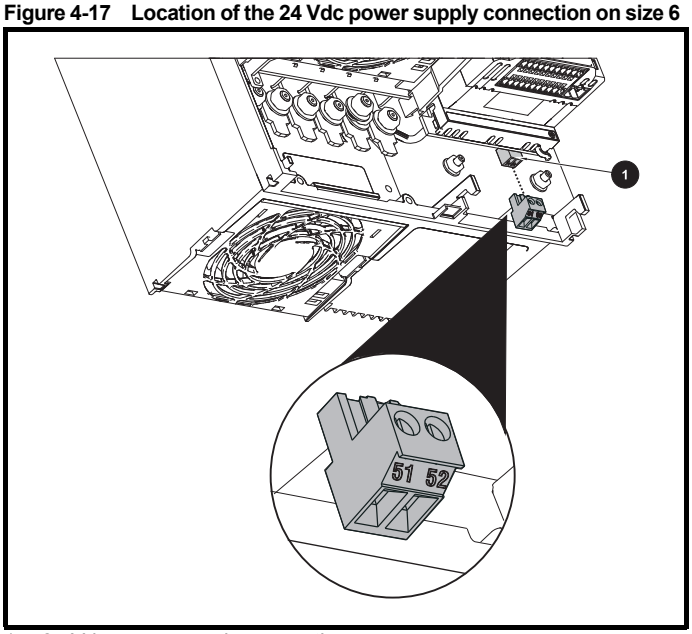
1	**0 V**
2	**+24 Vdc**
Nominal operating voltage	24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	19.2 V
Maximum continuous operating voltage	28.0 V
Minimum start up voltage	21.6 V
Maximum power supply requirement at 24 V	40 W
Recommended fuse	3 A, 50 Vdc

Minimum and maximum voltage values include ripple and noise. Ripple and noise values must not exceed 5 %.

The working range of the 24 V power supply is as follows:

51	**0 V**
52	**+24 Vdc**
Size 6	
Nominal operating voltage	24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	18.6 Vdc
Maximum continuous operating voltage	28.0 Vdc
Minimum startup voltage	18.4 Vdc
Maximum power supply requirement	40 W
Recommended fuse	4 A @ 50 Vdc
Size 7 to 11	
Nominal operating voltage	24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	19.2 Vdc
Maximum continuous operating voltage	30 Vdc (IEC), 26 Vdc (UL)
Minimum startup voltage	21.6 Vdc
Maximum power supply requirement	60 W
Recommended fuse	4 A @ 50 Vdc

Figure 4-17 Location of the 24 Vdc power supply connection on size 6



1. 24 Vdc power supply connection

Figure 4-18 Location of the 24 Vdc power supply connection on size 7

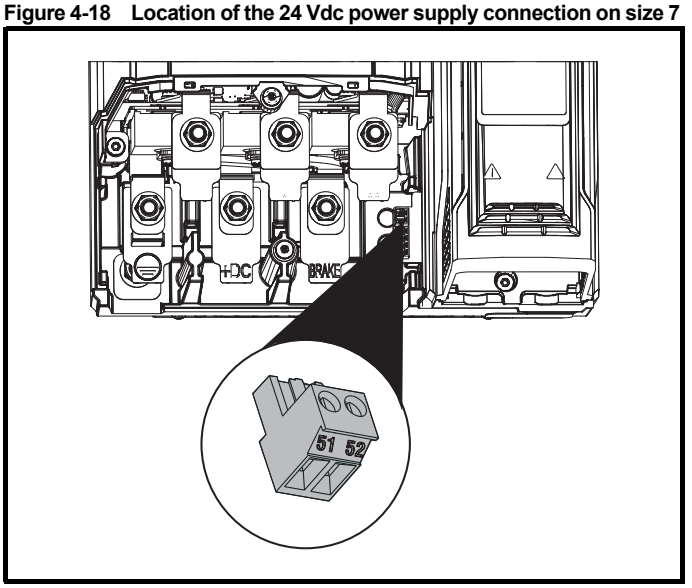
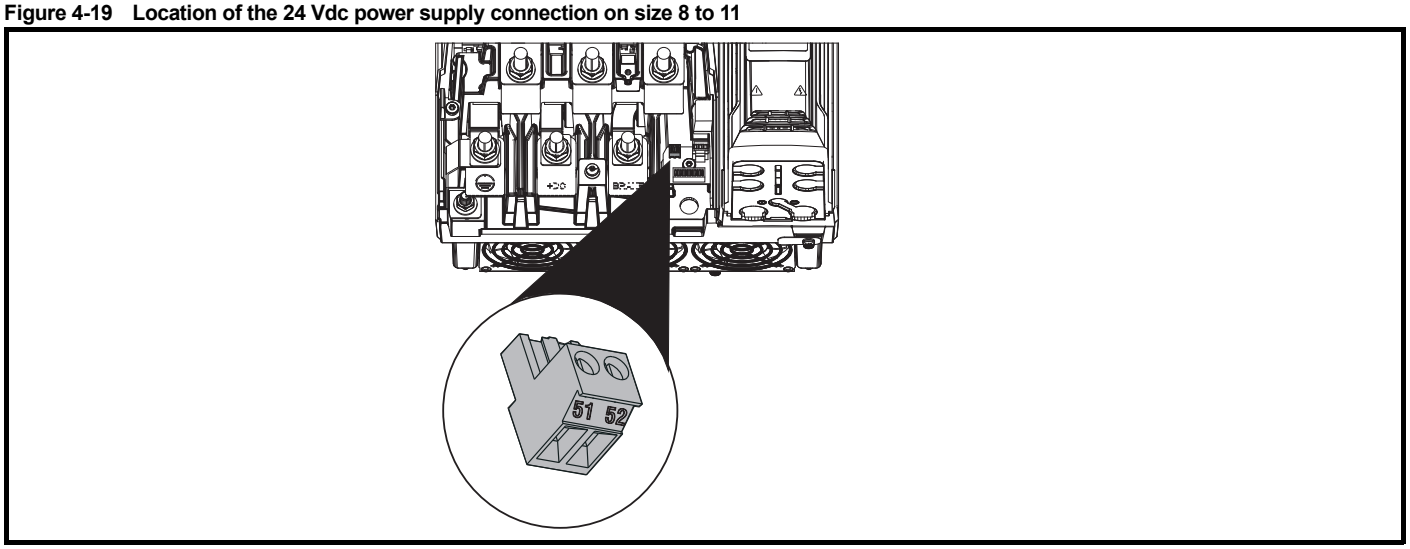


Figure 4-19 Location of the 24 Vdc power supply connection on size 8 to 11



4.6 Heatsink fan supply

The heatsink fan on all drive sizes is supplied internally by the drive.

4.7 Ratings

The input current is affected by the supply voltage and impedance.

Typical input current
The values of typical input current are given to aid calculations for power flow and power loss.

The values of typical input current are stated for a balanced supply.

Maximum continuous input current
The values of maximum continuous input current are given to aid the selection of cables and fuses. These values are stated for the worst case condition with the unusual combination of stiff supply with bad balance. The value stated for the maximum continuous input current would only be seen in one of the input phases. The current in the other two phases would be significantly lower.

The values of maximum input current are stated for a supply with a 2 % negative phase-sequence imbalance and rated at the supply fault current given in Table 4-6.

Table 4-6 Supply fault current used to calculate maximum input currents

Model	Symmetrical fault level (kA)
All	100

WARNING

Fuses

The AC supply to the drive must be installed with suitable protection against overload and short-circuits. Table 4-7 shows recommended fuse ratings. Failure to observe this requirement will cause risk of fire.

Table 4-7 AC Input current and fuse ratings (200 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
03200066	8.2	10.4	15.8	16	25	gG	20	25	CC, J or T**
03200080	9.9	12.6	20.9	20					
03200110	14	17	25				25		
03200127	16	20	34	25					
04200180	17	20	30	25	25	gG	25	25	CC, J or T**
04200250	23	28	41	32	32		30	30	
05200300	24	31	52	40	40	gG	40	40	CC, J or T**
06200500	42	48	64	63	63	gG	60	60	CC, J or T**
06200580	49	56	85				60		
07200750	58	67	109	80	80	gG	80	80	CC, J or T**
07200940	73	84	135	100	100		100	100	
07201170	91	105	149	125	125		125	125	
08201490	123	137	213	200	200	gR	200	200	HSJ
08201800	149	166	243				225	225	
09202160	172	205	270	250	250	gR	250	250	HSJ
09202660	228	260	319	315	315		300	300	
10203250	277	305	421	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
10203600	333	361	494	450	450		450	450	

** These fuses are fast acting.

Table 4-8 AC Input current and fuse ratings (400 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
03400034	5	5	7	10	10	gG	10	10	CC, J or T**
03400045	6	7	9						
03400062	8	9	13						
03400077	11	13	21	20	20		20	20	
03400104	12		20						
03400123	14	16	25						
04400185	17	19	30	25	25	gG	25	25	CC, J or T**
04400240	22	24	35	32	32		30	30	
05400300	26	29	52	40	40	gG	35	35	CC, J or T**
06400380	32	36	67	63	63	gG	40	60	CC, J or T**
06400480	41	46	80				50		
06400630	54	60	90				60		
07400790	67	74	124	100	100	gG	80	80	CC, J or T**
07400940	80	88	145				100	100	
07401120	96	105	188	125	125		125	125	
08401550	137	155	267	250	250	gR	225	225	HSJ
08401840	164	177	303						
09402210	211	232	306	315	315	gR	300	300	HSJ
09402660	245	267	359				350	350	
10403200	306	332	445	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
10403610	370	397	523	450	450		450	450	
11404370	424	499	579	500	500	gR	600	600	HSJ
11404870	455	492	613						
11405070	502	539	752	550	550				

** These fuses are fast acting.

Table 4-9 AC Input current and fuse ratings (575 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
05500039	4	4	7	10	20	gG	10	10	CC, J or T**
05500061	6	7	9						
05500100	9	11	15	20			20	20	
06500120	12	13	22	20	40	gG	20	30	CC, J or T**
06500170	17	19	33	32			25		
06500220	22	24	41	40			30		
06500270	26	29	50	50	63		35	50	
06500340	33	37	63				40		
06500430	41	47	76	63			50		
07500530	41	45	75	50	50	gG	50	50	CC, J or T**
07500730	57	62	94	80	80		80	80	
08500860	74	83	121	125	125	gR	100	100	HSJ
08501080	92	104	165	160	160		150	150	
09501250	145	166	190	150	150	gR	150	150	HSJ
09501500	145	166	221	200	200		175	175	
10502000	177	197	266	250	250	gR	250	250	HSJ
11502480	240	265	327	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
11502880	285	310	395						
11503150	313	338	473						

** These fuses are fast acting.

Table 4-10 AC Input current and fuse ratings (690 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
07600230	18	20	32	25	50	gG	25	50	CC, J or T**
07600300	23	26	41	32			30		
07600360	28	31	49	40			35		
07600460	36	39	65	50	80		50	80	
07600520	40	44	75						
07600730	57	62	92	80			80		
08600860	74	83	121	125	125	gR	100	100	HSJ
08601080	92	104	165	160	160		150	150	
09601250	124	149	194	150	150	gR	150	150	HSJ
09601550	145	171	226	200	200		200	200	
10601720	180	202	268	225	225	gR	250	250	HSJ
10601970	202	225	313	250	250	aR*	250	250	
11602250	225	256	379	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
11602750	217	302	425						
11603050	298	329	465						

* Class aR fuses do not provide branch circuit protection. Ensure that the input cables are suitably protected using HRC fuses or breaker.

** These fuses are fast acting.

NOTE

Ensure cables used suit local wiring regulations.

CAUTION

The nominal cable sizes below are only a guide. The mounting and grouping of cables affects their current-carrying capacity, in some cases smaller cables may be acceptable but in other cases a larger cable is required to avoid excessive temperature or voltage drop. Refer to local wiring regulations for the correct size of cables.

Table 4-11 Cable ratings (200 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
03200066	1.5	4	B2	1.5	4	B2	14	10	14	10
03200080										
03200110	4			4			12		12	
03200127										
04200180	6	8	B2	6	8	B2	10	8	10	8
04200250	8			8			8		8	
05200300	10	10	B2	10	10	B2	8	8	8	8
06200500	16	25	B2	16	25	B2	4	3	4	3
06200580	25			25			3		3	
07200750	35	70	B2	35	70	B2	2	1/0	2	1/0
07200940							1		1	
07201170	70			70			1/0		1/0	
08201490	95	2 x 70	B2	95	2 x 70	B2	3/0	2 x 1	3/0	2 x 1
08201800	2 x 70			2 x 70			2 x 1		2 x 1	
09202160	2 x 70		B1	2 x 95		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 2/0	
09202660	2 x 95			2 x 120			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
10203250	2 x 120		B1	2 x 120		C	2 x 250		2 x 250	
10203600	2 x 150		C	2 x 120			2 x 300		2 x 250	

Table 4-12 Cable ratings (400 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
03400034	1.5	4	B2	1.5	4	B2	18	10	18	10
03400045							16		16	
03400062							14		14	
03400077	2.5			2.5						
03400104										
03400123							12		12	
04400185	4	6	B2	4	6	B2	10	8	10	8
04400240	6			6			8		8	
05400300	6	6	B2	6	6	B2	8	8	8	8
06400380	10	25	B2	10	25	B2	6	3	6	3
06400480	16			16			4		4	
06400630	25			25			3		3	
07400790	35	70	B2	35	70	B2	1	1/0	1	1/0
07400940	50			50			2		2	
07401120	70			70			1/0		1/0	
08401550	2 x 50	2 x 70	B2	2 x 50	2 x 70	B2	2 x 1	2 x 1/0	2 x 1	2 x 1/0
08401840	2 x 70			2 x 70			2 x 1/0		2 x 1/0	
09402210	2 x 70		B1	2 x 95		B2	2 x 3/0		2 x 2/0	
09402660	2 x 95			2 x 120			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
10403200	2 x 120		C	2 x 120		B2	2 x 300		2 x 250	
10403610	2 x 150			2 x 150			2 x 350		2 x 300	
11404370	4 x 95		C	2 x 185		C	4 x 3/0		2 x 400	
11404870				2 x 240			4 x 4/0			
11405070										

Table 4-13 Cable ratings (575 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
05500039	0.75	1.5	B2	0.75	1.5	B2	16	16	16	16
05500061	1			1			14		14	
05500100	1.5			1.5			14		14	
06500120	2.5	25	B2	2.5	25	B2	14	3	14	3
06500170	4			4			10		10	
06500220	6			6			10		10	
06500270	10			10			8		8	
06500340							6		6	
06500430	16						6		6	
07500530	16	25	B2	16	25	B2	4	3	4	3
07500730	25			25			3		3	
08500860	35	50	B2	35	50	B2	1	1	1	1
08501080	50			50						
09501250	2 x 70		B2	2 x 35		B2	2 x 1		2 x 3	
09501500				2 x 50					2 x 1	
10502000	2 x 70		B2	2 x 70		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 2/0	
11502480	2 x 70		C	2 x 70		C	2 x 3/0		2 x 3/0	
11502880	2 x 95			2 x 95			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
11503150	2 x 120			2 x 120			2 x 250		2 x 250	

Table 4-14 Cable ratings (690 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
07600230	10	25	B2	10	25	B2	8	3	8	3
07600300							6		6	
07600360							6		6	
07600460	16			16			4		4	
07600520	16			16			4		4	
07600730	25			25			3		3	
08600860	50	70	B2	50	70	B2	2	1/0	2	1/0
08601080	70			70			1/0		1/0	
09601250	2 x 50		B2	2 x 35		B2	2 x 1		2 x 3	
09601550	2 x 70			2 x 50			2 x 1/0		2 x 1	
10601720	2 x 70		B2	2 x 70		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 1/0	
10601970	2 x 95						2 x 3/0		2 x 2/0	
11602250	2 x 70		C	2 x 70		C	2 x 3/0		2 x 3/0	
11602750	2 x 95			2 x 95			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
11603050				2 x 95			2 x 250		2 x 250	

NOTE
PVC insulated cable should be used.

NOTE
Cable sizes are from IEC60364-5-52:2001 table A.52.C with correction factor for 40°C ambient of 0.87 (from table A52.14) for cable installation method as specified.

Installation class (ref: IEC60364-5-52:2001)
B1 - Separate cables in conduit.
B2 - Multicore cable in conduit.
C - Multicore cable in free air.

Cable size may be reduced if a different installation method is used, or if the ambient temperature is lower.

NOTE
The nominal output cable sizes assume that the motor maximum current matches that of the drive. Where a motor of reduced rating is used the cable rating may be chosen to match that of the motor. To ensure that the motor and cable are protected against overload, the drive must be programmed with the correct motor rated current.
A fuse or other protection must be included in all live connections to the AC supply.

Fuse types
The fuse voltage rating must be suitable for the drive supply voltage.

Ground connections
The drive must be connected to the system ground of the AC supply. The ground wiring must conform to local regulations and codes of practice.

NOTE

For information on ground cable sizes, refer to Table 4-1 *Protective ground cable ratings* on page 76.

4.7.1 Main AC supply contactor
The recommended AC supply contactor type is AC1.

4.8 Output circuit and motor protection
The output circuit has fast-acting electronic short-circuit protection which limits the fault current to typically no more than five times the rated output current, and interrupts the current in approximately 20 µs. No additional short-circuit protection devices are required.

The drive provides overload protection for the motor and its cable. For this to be effective, *Rated Current* (**00.046**) must be set to suit the motor.

WARNING

Rated Current (**00.046**) must be set correctly to avoid a risk of fire in the event of motor overload.

There is also provision for the use of a motor thermistor to prevent over-heating of the motor, e.g. due to loss of cooling.

4.8.1 Cable types and lengths
Since capacitance in the motor cable causes loading on the output of the drive, ensure the cable length does not exceed the values given in Table 4-15 to Table 4-18.

Use 105 °C (221 °F) (UL 60/75 °C temp rise) PVC-insulated cable with copper conductors having a suitable voltage rating, for the following power connections:

- AC supply to external EMC filter (when used)
- AC supply (or external EMC filter) to drive
- Drive to motor
- Drive to braking resistor

Table 4-15 Maximum motor cable lengths (200 V drives)

200 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
03200066	65 m (210 ft)					50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
03200080	100 m (330 ft)				75 m (245 ft)		
03200110	130 m (425 ft)			100 m (330 ft)			
03200127	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)				
04200180	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
04200250							
05200300	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
06200500	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06200580							
07200750	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07200940							
07201170							
08201490	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08201800							
09202160	250 m (820 ft)						
09202660							
10203250	250 m (820 ft)						
10203600							

Table 4-16 Maximum motor cable lengths (400 V drives)

400 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
03400034	65 m (210 ft)					50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
03400045	100 m (330 ft)				75 m (245 ft)		
03400062	130 m (425 ft)			100 m (330 ft)			
03400077	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)				
03400104							
03400123							
04400185	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
04400240							
05400300	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
06400380	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06400480							
06400630							
07400790	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07400940							
07401120							
08401550	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08401840							
09402210	250 m (820 ft)						
09402660							
10403200	250 m (820 ft)						
10403610							
11404370	250 m (820 ft)						
11404870							
11405070							

Table 4-17 Maximum motor cable lengths (575 V drives)

575 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
05500039	200 m (660 ft)						
05500061							
05500100							
06500120	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06500170							
06500220							
06500270							
06500340							
06500430							
07500530	200 m (660 ft)						
07500730							
08500860	250 m (820 ft)						
08501080							
09501250	250 m (820 ft)						
09501500							
10502000	250 m (820 ft)						
11502480	250 m (820 ft)						
11502880							
11503150							

Table 4-18 Maximum motor cable lengths (690 V drives)

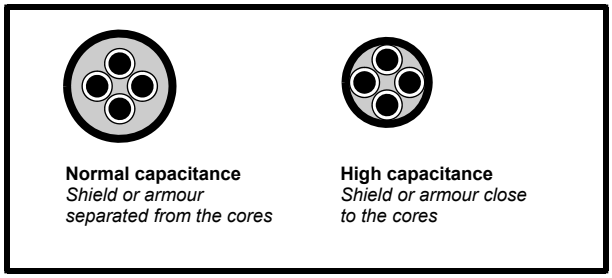
690 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
07600230	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07600300							
07600360							
07600460							
07600520							
07600730							
08600860	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08601080							
09601250	250 m (820 ft)						
09601550							
10601720	250 m (820 ft)						
10601970							
11602250	250 m (820 ft)						
11602750							
11603050							

4.8.2 High-capacitance / reduced diameter cables

The maximum cable length is reduced from that shown in Section 4.8.1 *Cable types and lengths* if high capacitance or reduced diameter motor cables are used.For further information, refer to section 4.8.2 *High-capacitance / reduced diameter cables* on page 87.

Most cables have an insulating jacket between the cores and the armor or shield; these cables have a low capacitance and are recommended. Cables that do not have an insulating jacket tend to have high capacitance; if a cable of this type is used, the maximum cable length is half that quoted in the tables, (Figure 4-20 shows how to identify the two types).

Figure 4-20 Cable construction influencing the capacitance



The maximum motor cable lengths specified in Section 4.8.1 *Cable types and lengths* is shielded and contains four cores. Typical capacitance for this type of cable is 130 pF/m (i.e. from one core to all others and the shield connected together).

4.8.3 Motor winding voltage

The PWM output voltage can adversely affect the inter-turn insulation in the motor. This is because of the high rate of change of voltage, in conjunction with the impedance of the motor cable and the distributed nature of the motor winding.

For normal operation with AC supplies up to 500 Vac and a standard motor with a good quality insulation system, there is no need for any special precautions. In case of doubt the motor supplier should be consulted. Special precautions are recommended under the following conditions, but only if the motor cable length exceeds 10 m:

- AC supply voltage exceeds 500 V
- DC supply voltage exceeds 670 V
- Operation of 400 V drive with continuous or very frequent sustained braking
- Multiple motors connected to a single drive

For multiple motors, the precautions given in section 4.8.4 *Multiple motors* on page 87 should be followed.

For the other cases listed, it is recommended that an inverter-rated motor be used taking into account the voltage rating of the inverter. This has a reinforced insulation system intended by the manufacturer for repetitive fast-rising pulsed voltage operation.

Users of 575 V NEMA rated motors should note that the specification for inverter-rated motors given in NEMA MG1 section 31 is sufficient for motoring operation but not where the motor spends significant periods braking. In that case an insulation peak voltage rating of 2.2 kV is recommended.

If it is not practical to use an inverter-rated motor, an output choke (inductor) should be used. The recommended type is a simple iron-cored component with a reactance of about 2 %. The exact value is not critical. This operates in conjunction with the capacitance of the motor cable to increase the rise-time of the motor terminal voltage and prevent excessive electrical stress.

4.8.4 Multiple motors

Open-loop only

If the drive is to control more than one motor, one of the fixed V/F modes should be selected (Pr **05.014** = Fixed or Squared). Make the motor connections as shown in Figure 4-21 and Figure 4-22. The maximum motor cable lengths specified in section 4.8.1 *Cable types and lengths* on page 86 apply to the sum of the total cable lengths from the drive to each motor.

It is recommended that each motor is connected through a protection relay since the drive cannot protect each motor individually. For ⅄ connection, a sinusoidal filter or an output inductor must be connected as shown in Figure 4-22, even when the cable lengths are less than the maximum permissible. For details of inductor sizes refer to the supplier of the drive.

Figure 4-21 Preferred chain connection for multiple motors

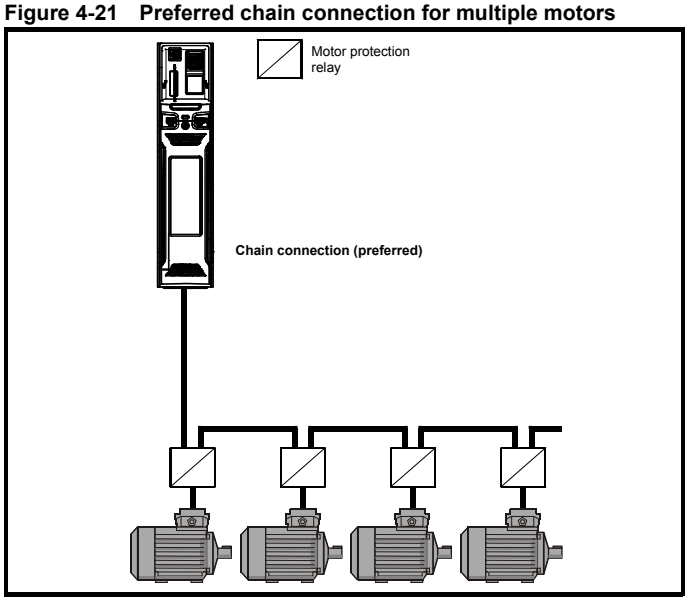
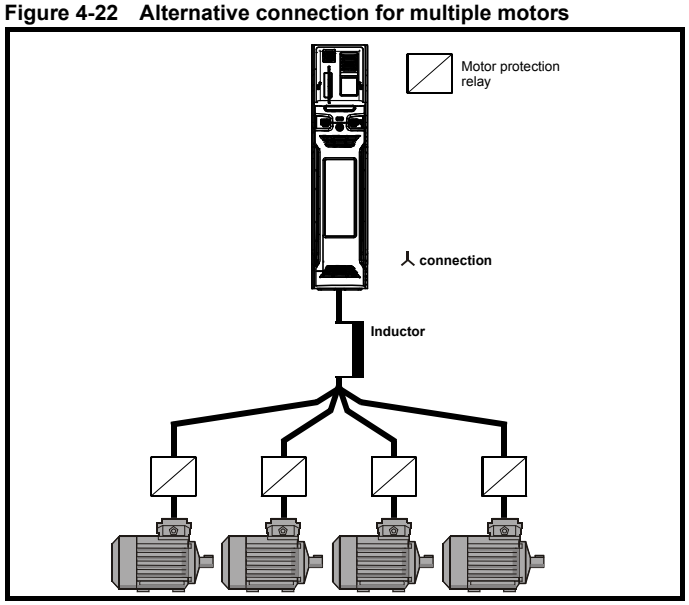


Figure 4-22 Alternative connection for multiple motors



4.8.5 ⅄ / Δ motor operation

The voltage rating for ⅄ and Δ connections of the motor should always be checked before attempting to run the motor.

The default setting of the motor rated voltage parameter is the same as the drive rated voltage, i.e.

400 V drive 400 V rated voltage
230 V drive 230 V rated voltage

A typical 3 phase motor would be connected in ⅄ for 400 V operation or Δ for 230 V operation, however, variations on this are common e.g. ⅄ 690 V Δ 400 V.

Incorrect connection of the windings will cause severe under or over fluxing of the motor, leading to a very poor output torque or motor saturation and overheating respectively.

4.8.6 Output contactor

WARNING

If the cable between the drive and the motor is to be interrupted by a contactor or circuit breaker, ensure that the drive is disabled before the contactor or circuit breaker is opened or closed. Severe arcing may occur if this circuit is interrupted with the motor running at high current and low speed.

A contactor is sometimes required to be installed between the drive and motor for safety purposes.

The recommended motor contactor is the AC3 type.

Switching of an output contactor should only occur when the output of the drive is disabled.

Opening or closing of the contactor with the drive enabled will lead to:

1. OI ac trips (which cannot be reset for 10 seconds)
2. High levels of radio frequency noise emission
3. Increased contactor wear and tear

The Drive Enable terminal (T31) when opened provides a Safe Torque Off function. This can in many cases replace output contactors.

For further information see section 4.13 *Safe Torque Off (STO)* on page 102.

4.9 Ground leakage

The ground leakage current depends upon whether the internal EMC filter is installed or not. The drive is supplied with the filter installed. Instructions for removing the internal filter are given in section 4.10.2 *Internal EMC filter* on page 90.

With internal filter installed:

Size 3 to 5: 28 mA* AC at 400 V 50 Hz
30 µA DC with a 600 V DC bus (10 MΩ)

Size 7 to 11: 56 mA* AC at 400 V 50 Hz
18 µA DC with a 600 V DC bus (33 MΩ)

* Proportional to the supply voltage and frequency.

With internal filter removed:

<1 mA

WARNING

When the internal filter is installed the leakage current is high. In this case a permanent fixed ground connection must be provided, or other suitable measures taken to prevent a safety hazard occurring if the connection is lost.

4.9.1 Use of residual current device (RCD)

There are three common types of ELCB / RCD:

1. AC - detects AC fault currents
2. A - detects AC and pulsating DC fault currents (provided the DC current reaches zero at least once every half cycle)
3. B - detects AC, pulsating DC and smooth DC fault currents
   - Type AC should never be used with drives.
   - Type A can only be used with single phase drives
   - Type B must be used with three phase drives

WARNING

Only type B ELCB / RCD are suitable for use with 3 phase inverter drives.

If an external EMC filter is used, a delay of at least 50 ms should be incorporated to ensure spurious trips are not seen. The leakage current is likely to exceed the trip level if all of the phases are not energized simultaneously.

4.10 EMC (Electromagnetic compatibility)

The requirements for EMC are divided into three levels in the following three sections:

Section 4.10.3, General requirements for all applications, to ensure reliable operation of the drive and minimise the risk of disturbing nearby equipment. The immunity standards specified in Chapter 12 *Technical data* on page 232 will be met, but no specific emission standards are applied. Note also the special requirements given in *Surge immunity of control circuits - long cables and connections outside a building* on page 96 for increased surge immunity of control circuits where control wiring is extended.

Section 4.10.5, Requirements for meeting the EMC standard for power drive systems, IEC61800-3 (EN 61800-3:2004).

Section 4.10.6, Requirements for meeting the generic emission standards for the industrial environment, IEC61000-6-4, EN 61000-6-4:2007.

The recommendations of section 4.10.4 will usually be sufficient to avoid causing disturbance to adjacent equipment of industrial quality. If particularly sensitive equipment is to be used nearby, or in a non-industrial environment, then the recommendations of section 4.10.5 or section 4.10.6 should be followed to give reduced radio-frequency emission.

In order to ensure the installation meets the various emission standards described in:

- The EMC data sheet available from the supplier of the drive
- The Declaration of Conformity at the front of this manual
- Chapter 12 *Technical data* on page 232

The correct external EMC filter must be used and all of the guidelines in section 4.10.4 *General requirements for EMC* on page 93 and section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* on page 94 must be followed.

Table 4-19 Drive and EMC filter cross reference

Model	CT part number
200 V	
09202160 to 09202660 (9A)	4200-3021
09202160 to 09202660 (9E)	4200-4460
10203250 to 10203600	4200-4460
400 V	
09402210 to 09402660 (9A)	4200-3021
09402210 to 09402660 (9E)	4200-4460
10403200 to 10403610	4200-4460
11404370 to 11405070	4200-0400
575 V	
09501250 to 09501500 (9A)	4200-1660
09501250 to 09501500 (9E)	4200-2210
10502000	4200-2210
11502480 to 11503150	4200-0690
690 V	
09601250 to 09601550 (9A)	4200-1660
09601250 to 09601550 (9E)	4200-2210
10601720 to 10601970	4200-2210
11602250 to 11603050	4200-0690

WARNING

High ground leakage current
When an EMC filter is used, a permanent fixed ground connection must be provided which does not pass through a connector or flexible power cord. This includes the internal EMC filter.

NOTE

The installer of the drive is responsible for ensuring compliance with the EMC regulations that apply in the country in which the drive is to be used.

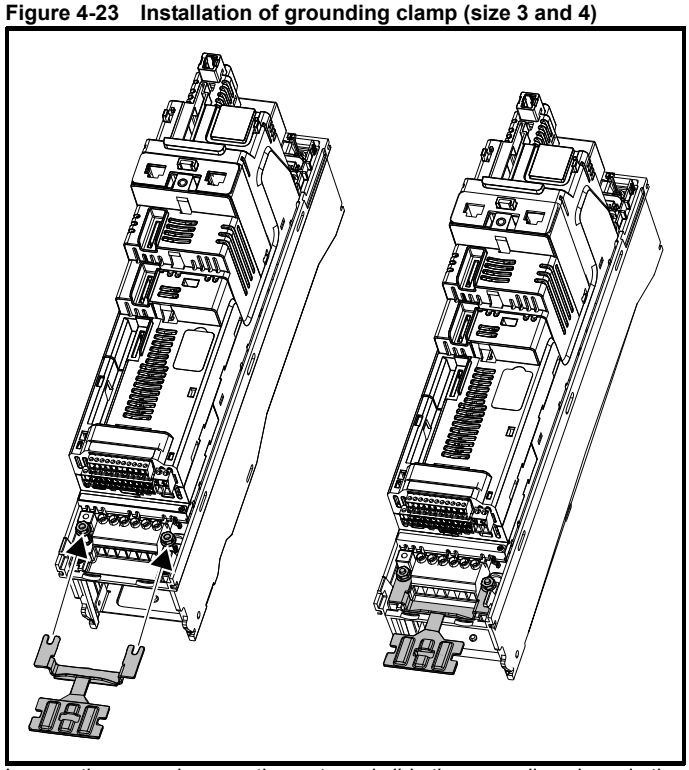
4.10.1 Grounding hardware

The drive is supplied with a grounding bracket and grounding clamp to facilitate EMC compliance. They provide a convenient method for direct grounding of cable shields without the use of "pig-tails". Cable shields can be bared and clamped to the grounding bracket using metal clips or clamps[1] (not supplied) or cable ties. Note that the shield must in all cases be continued through the clamp to the intended terminal on the drive, in accordance with the connection details for the specific signal.

[1] A suitable clamp is the Phoenix DIN rail mounted SK14 cable clamp (for cables with a maximum outer diameter of 14 mm).

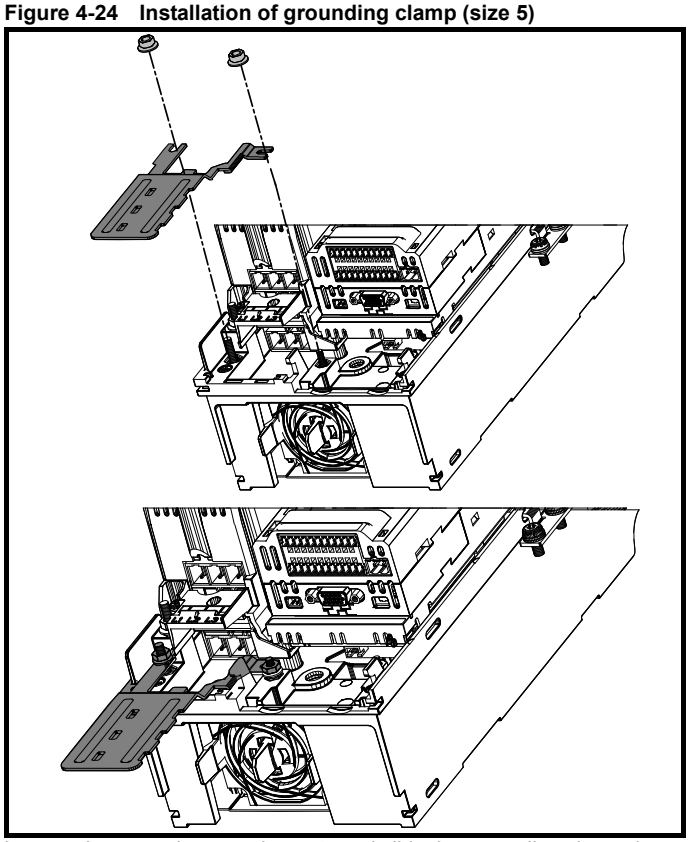
- See Figure 4-23, Figure 4-24 and Figure 4-25 for details on installing the grounding clamp.
- See Figure 4-26 for details on installing the grounding bracket.

Figure 4-23 Installation of grounding clamp (size 3 and 4)



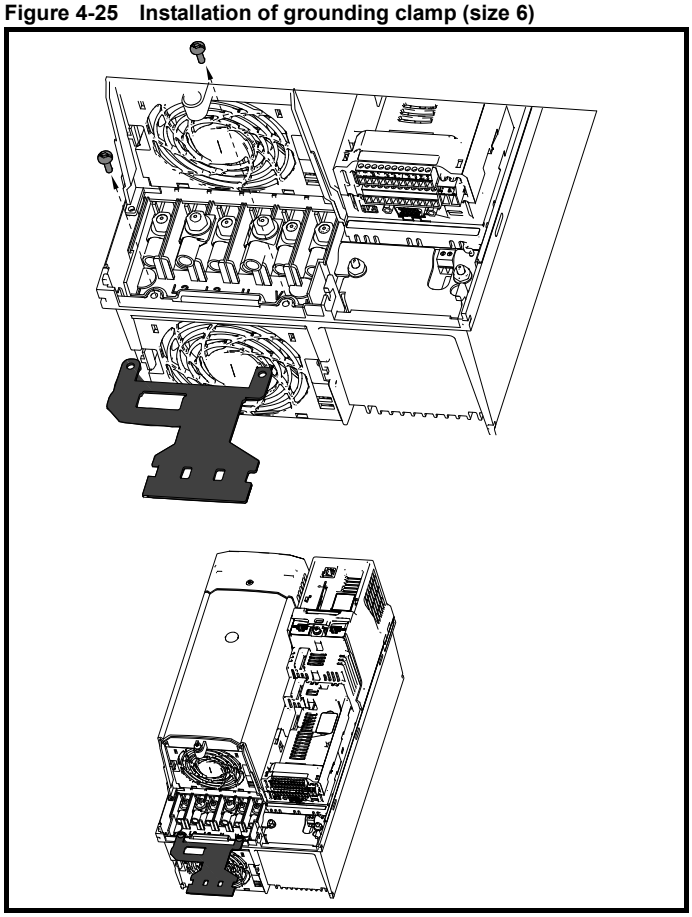
Loosen the ground connection nuts and slide the grounding clamp in the direction shown. Once in place, the ground connection nuts should be tightened with a maximum torque of 2 N m (1.47 lb ft).

Figure 4-24 Installation of grounding clamp (size 5)



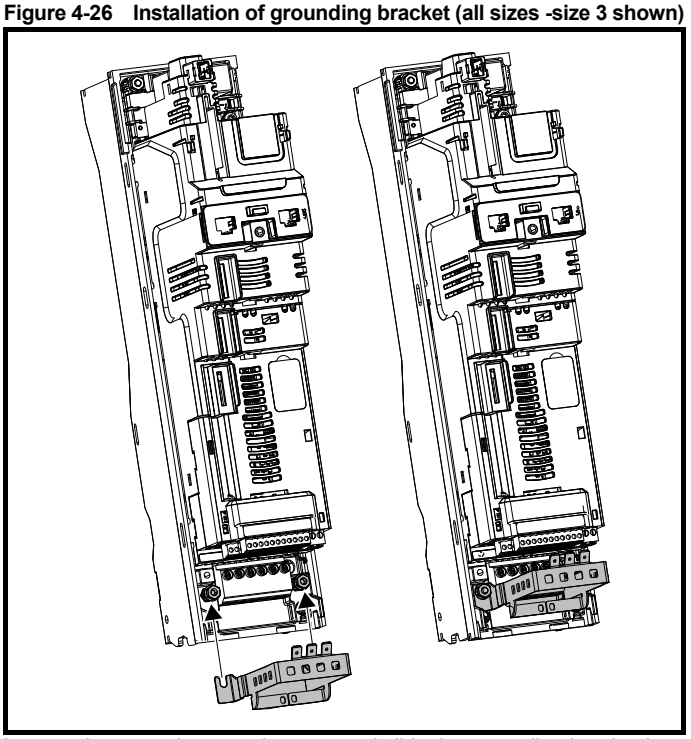
Loosen the ground connection nuts and slide the grounding clamp down onto the pillars in the direction shown. Once in place, the ground connection nuts should be tightened with a maximum torque of 2 N m (1.47 lb ft).

Figure 4-25 Installation of grounding clamp (size 6)



The grounding clamp is secured using the provided 2 x M4 x 10 mm fasteners. The fasteners should be tightened with the maximum torque of 2 N m (1.47 lb ft).

Figure 4-26 Installation of grounding bracket (all sizes -size 3 shown)



Loosen the ground connection nuts and slide the grounding bracket in the direction shown. Once in place, the ground connection nuts should be tightened with a maximum torque of 2 N m (1.47 lb ft).

WARNING

On size 3 the grounding bracket is secured using the power ground terminal of the drive. Ensure that the supply ground connection is secure after installing / removing the grounding bracket. Failure to do so will result in the drive not being grounded.

A faston tab is located on the grounding bracket for the purpose of connecting the drive 0 V to ground should the user require to do so.

4.10.2 Internal EMC filter

It is recommended that the internal EMC filter be kept in place unless there is a specific reason for removing it.

WARNING

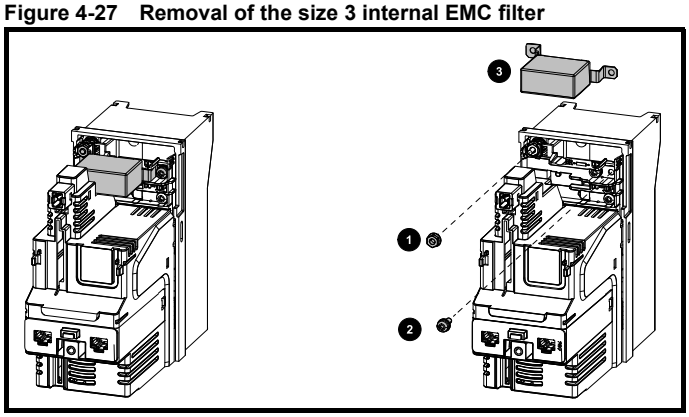
If the drive is used with ungrounded (IT) supplies, the internal EMC filter must be removed unless additional motor ground fault protection is installed.
For instructions on removal refer to section 4.10.2.
For details of ground fault protection contact the supplier of the drive.

The internal EMC filter reduces radio-frequency emission into the line power supply. Where the motor cable is short, it permits the requirements of EN 61800-3:2004 to be met for the second environment - see section 4.10.5 *Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004 (standard for Power Drive Systems)* on page 94 and section 12.1.26 *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)* on page 255. For longer motor cables the filter continues to provide a useful reduction in emission levels, and when used with any length of shielded motor cable up to the limit for the drive, it is unlikely that nearby industrial equipment will be disturbed. It is recommended that the filter be used in all applications unless the instructions given above require it to be removed, or where the ground leakage current of 28 mA for size 3 is unacceptable. See section 4.10.2 for details of removing and installing the internal EMC filter.

WARNING

The supply must be disconnected before removing the internal EMC filter.

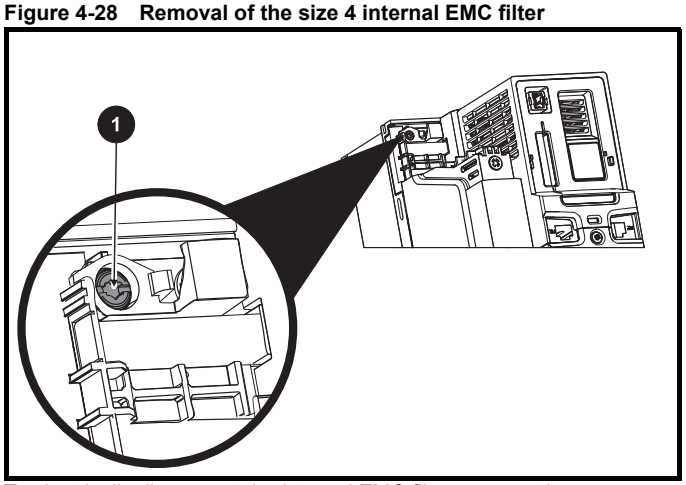
Figure 4-27 Removal of the size 3 internal EMC filter



Remove the screw and nut (1) and (2) as shown above.

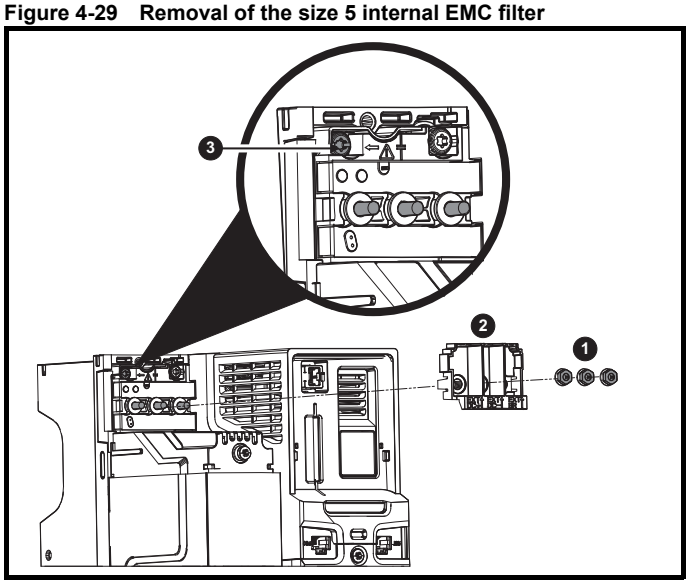
Lift away from the securing points and rotate away from the drive. Ensure the screw and nut are replaced and re-tightened with a maximum torque of 2 N m (1.47 lb ft).

Figure 4-28 Removal of the size 4 internal EMC filter



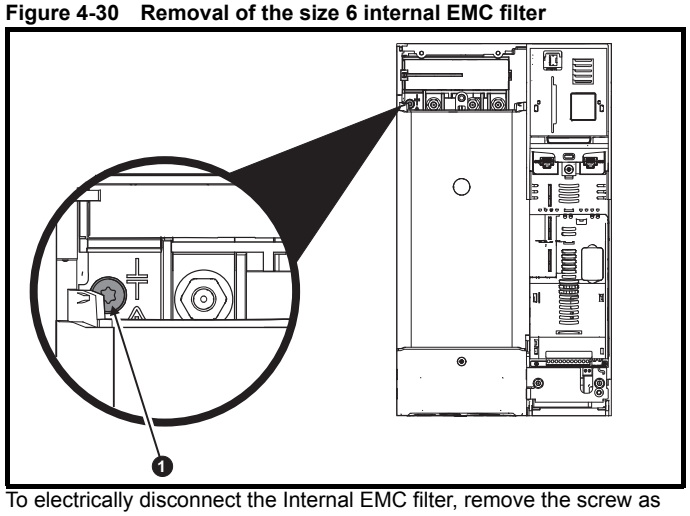
To electrically disconnect the Internal EMC filter, remove the screw as highlighted above (1).

Figure 4-29 Removal of the size 5 internal EMC filter



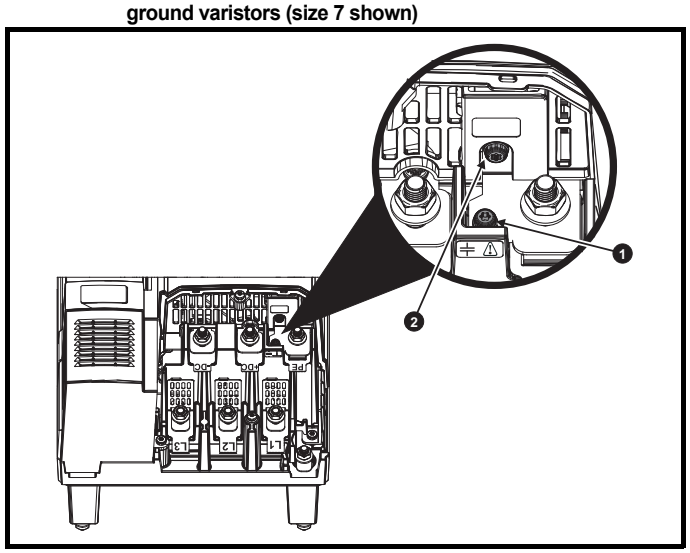
Remove the three M4 terminal nuts (1). Lift away the cover (2) to expose the M4 Torx internal EMC filter removal screw. Finally remove the M4 Torx internal EMC filter removal screw (3) to electrically disconnect the internal EMC filter.

Figure 4-30 Removal of the size 6 internal EMC filter



To electrically disconnect the Internal EMC filter, remove the screw as highlighted above (1).

Figure 4-31 Removal of the size 7, 8 and 9A internal EMC filter and line to ground varistors (size 7 shown)



To electrically disconnect the Internal EMC filter, remove the screw as highlighted above (1).

To electrically disconnect the line to ground varistors, remove the screw as highlighted above (2).

NOTE

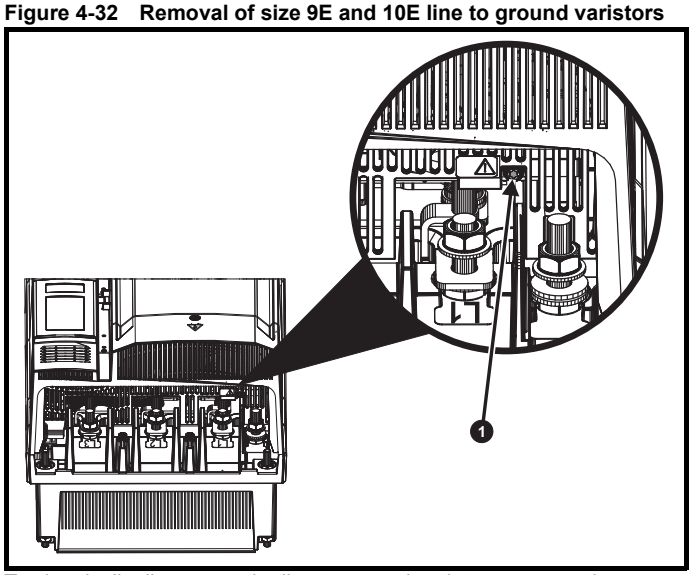
The Internal EMC filter on size 9E, 10E and 11E cannot be removed.

4.10.3 Line to ground varistors

WARNING

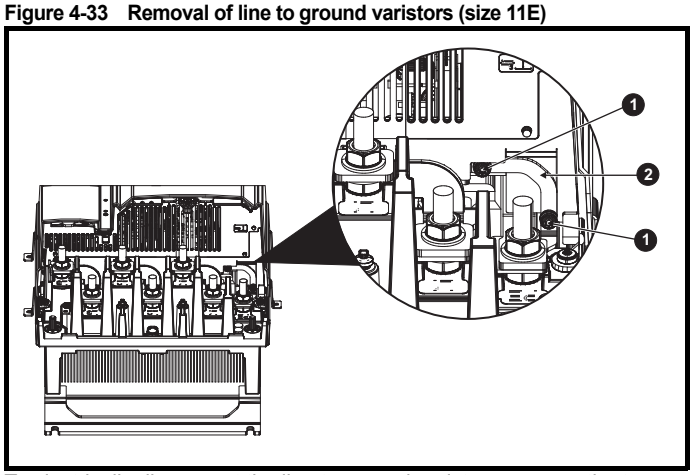
The line to ground varistors should only be removed in special circumstances such as ungrounded supplies with more than one source, for example on ships. Where the line to ground varistors are removed, ensure that line to ground transients are limited to values of category II. This is to ensure that line to ground transients do not exceed 4 kV as the drive insulation system from power to ground is designed to category II.Contact the supplier of the drive for more information.

Figure 4-32 Removal of size 9E and 10E line to ground varistors



To electrically disconnect the line to ground varistors, remove the screw as highlighted above (1).

Figure 4-33 Removal of line to ground varistors (size 11E)



To electrically disconnect the line to ground varistors, remove the two screws highlighted (1) above and remove the bracket (2).

NOTE

The line to ground varistors should only be removed in special circumstances.

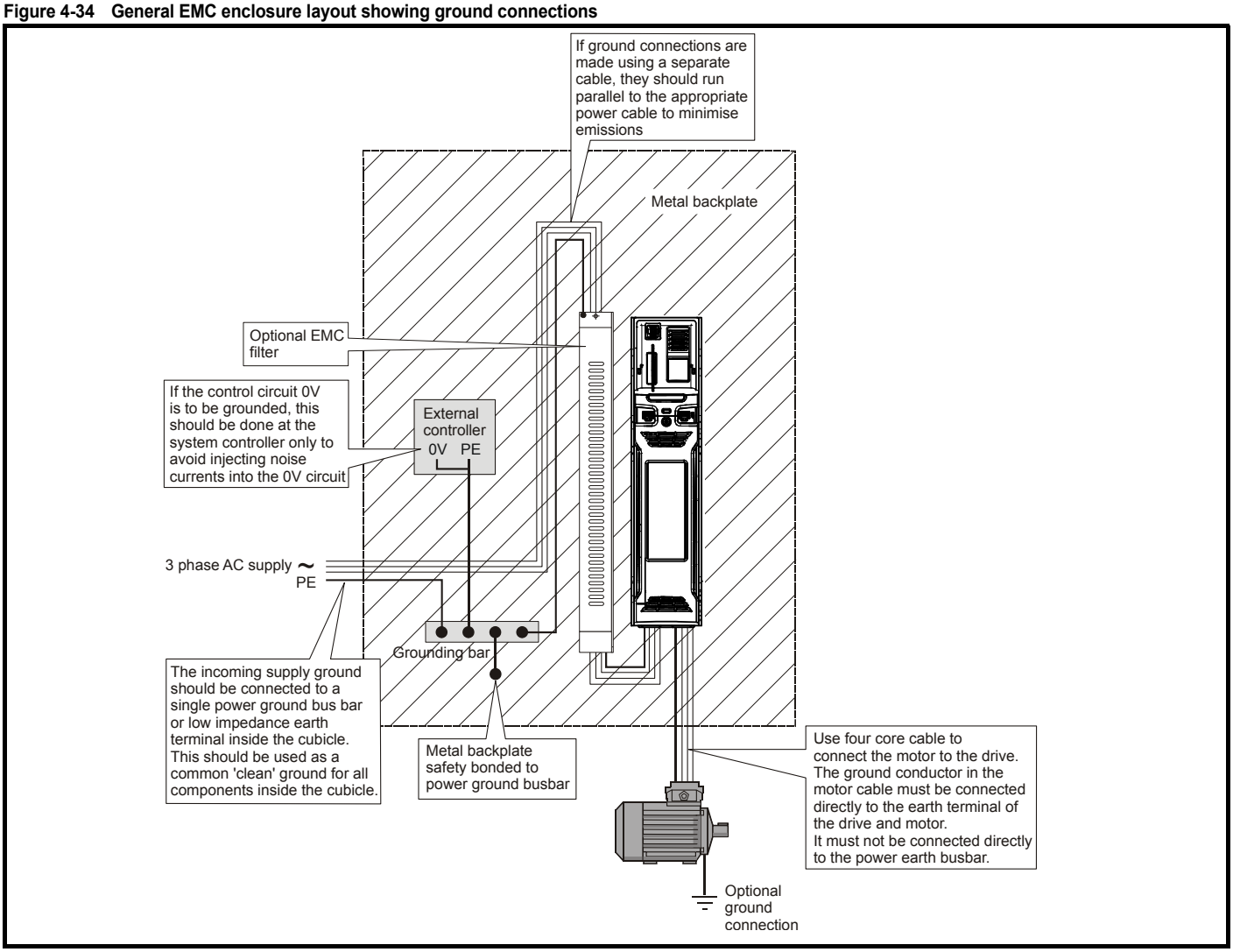
4.10.4 General requirements for EMC

Ground (earth) connections

The grounding arrangements should be in accordance with Figure 4-34, which shows a single drive on a back-plate with or without an additional enclosure.

Figure 4-34 shows how to configure and minimise EMC when using unshielded motor cable. However shielded cable is a better option, in which case it should be installed as shown in section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* on page 94.

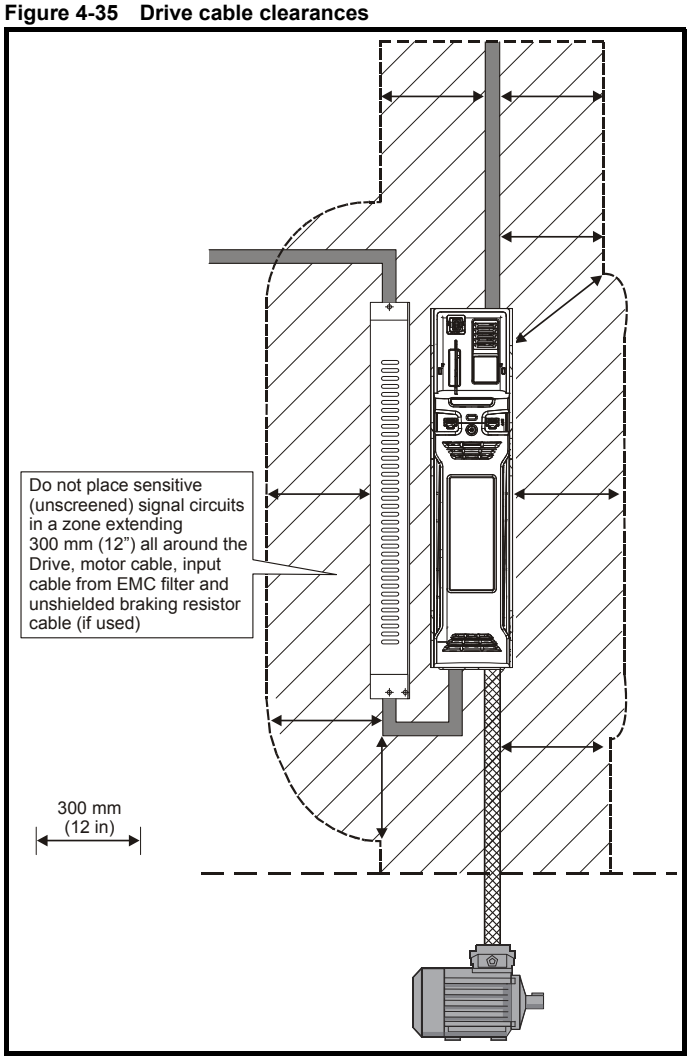
Figure 4-34 General EMC enclosure layout showing ground connections



Cable layout

Figure 4-35 indicates the clearances which should be observed around the drive and related 'noisy' power cables by all sensitive control signals / equipment.

Figure 4-35 Drive cable clearances



NOTE

Any signal cables which are carried inside the motor cable (i.e. motor thermistor) will pick up large pulse currents via the cable capacitance. The shield of these signal cables must be connected to ground close to the motor cable, to avoid this noise current spreading through the control system.

4.10.5 Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004 (standard for Power Drive Systems)

Meeting the requirements of this standard depends on the environment that the drive is intended to operate in, as follows:

Operation in the first environment

Observe the guidelines given in section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* on page 94. An external EMC filter will always be required.

CAUTION

This is a product of the restricted distribution class according to IEC 61800-3

In a residential environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Operation in the second environment

In all cases a shielded motor cable must be used, and an EMC filter is required for all drives with a rated input current of less than 100 A.

The drive contains an in-built filter for basic emission control. In some cases feeding the motor cables (U, V and W) once through a ferrite ring can maintain compliance for longer cable lengths.

For longer motor cables, an external filter is required. Where a filter is required, follow the guidelines in Section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* .

Where a filter is not required, follow the guidelines given in section 4.10.4 *General requirements for EMC* on page 93.

CAUTION

The second environment typically includes an industrial low-voltage power supply network which does not supply buildings used for residential purposes. Operating the drive in this environment without an external EMC filter may cause interference to nearby electronic equipment whose sensitivity has not been appreciated. The user must take remedial measures if this situation arises. If the consequences of unexpected disturbances are severe, it is recommended that the guidelines in Section 4.10.6 *Compliance with generic emission standards* be adhered to.

Refer to section 12.1.26 *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)* on page 255 for further information on compliance with EMC standards and definitions of environments.

Detailed instructions and EMC information are given in the *EMC Data Sheet* which is available from the supplier of the drive.

4.10.6 Compliance with generic emission standards

The following information applies to frame sizes 3 to 10.

Use the recommended filter and shielded motor cable. Observe the layout rules given in Figure 4-36 and Figure 4-39. Ensure the AC supply and ground cables are at least 100 mm from the power module and motor cable.

Figure 4-36 Supply and ground cable clearance (sizes 3 to 6)

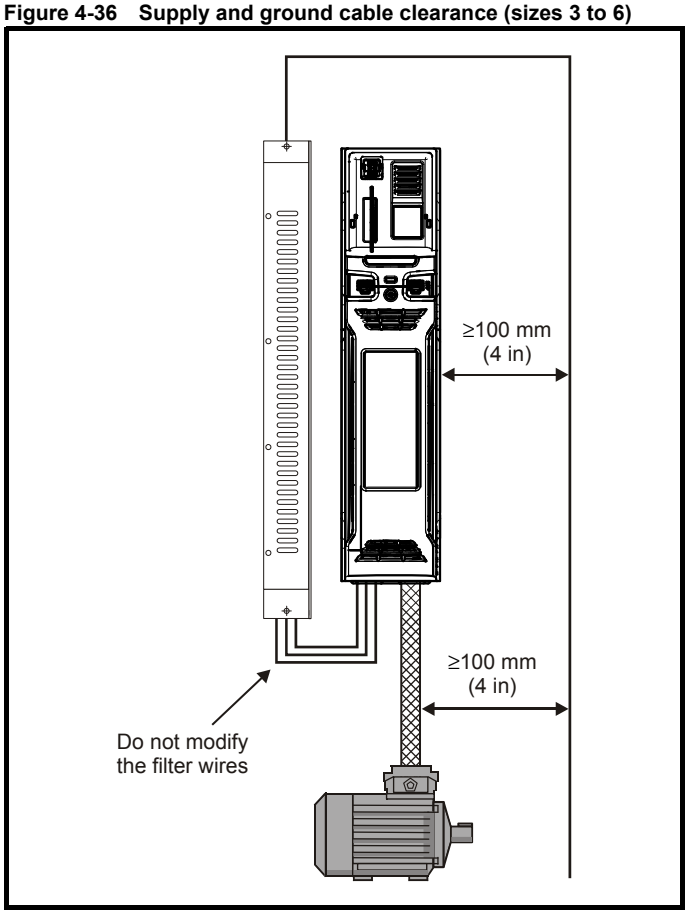
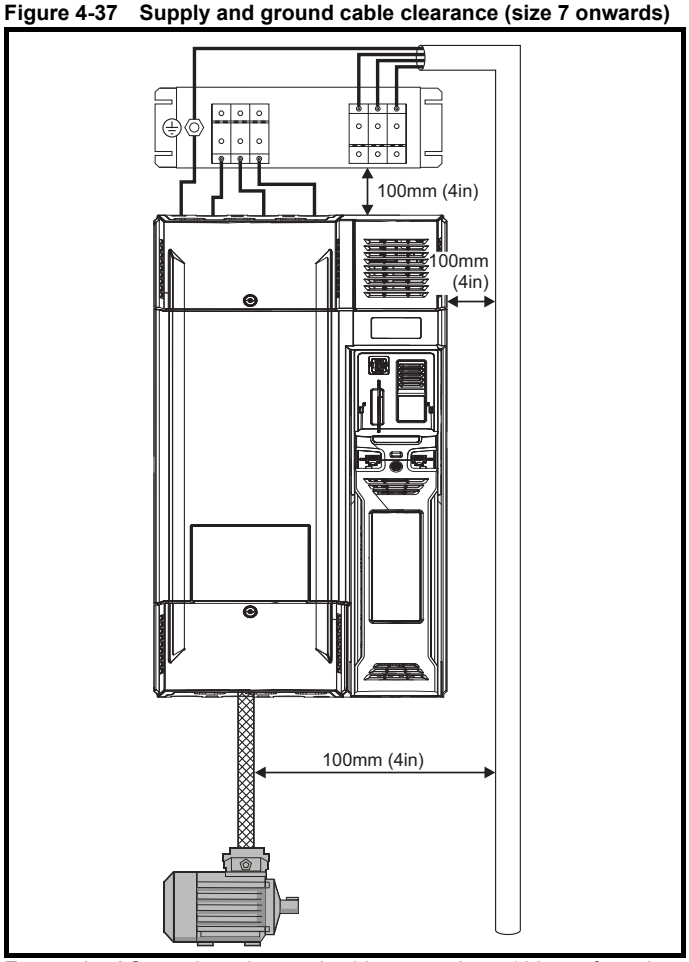
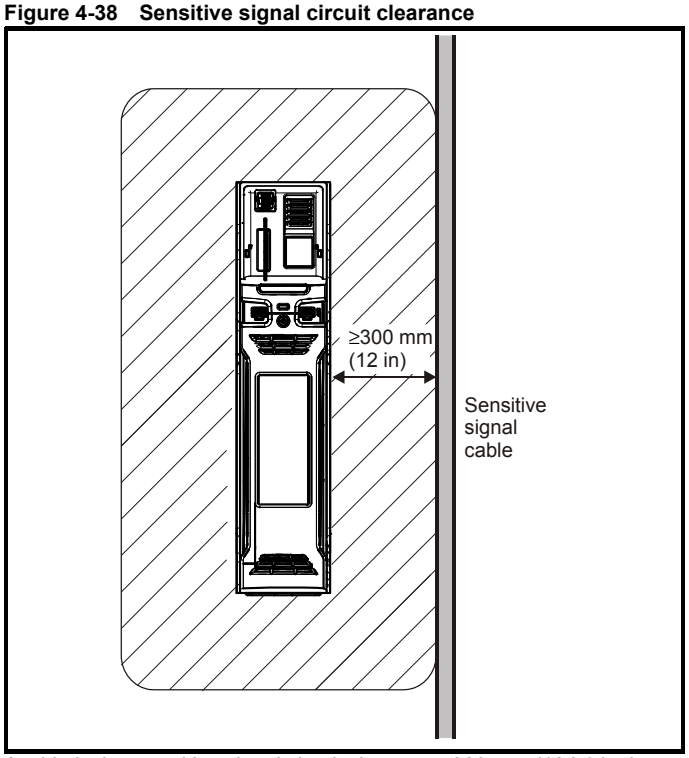


Figure 4-37 Supply and ground cable clearance (size 7 onwards)



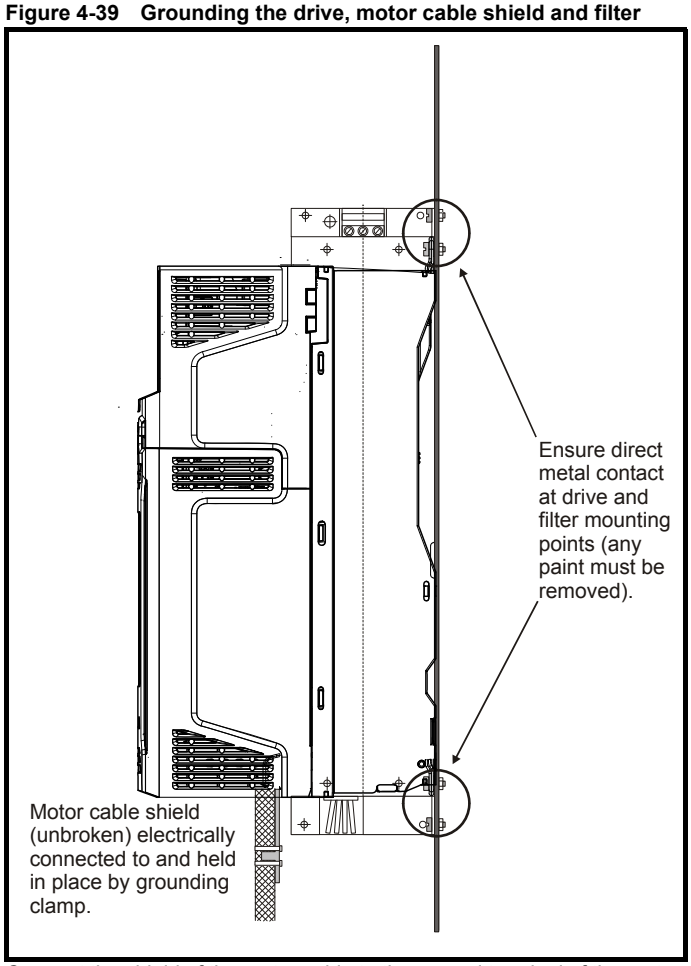
Ensure the AC supply and ground cables are at least 100 mm from the power module and motor cable.

Figure 4-38 Sensitive signal circuit clearance



Avoid placing sensitive signal circuits in a zone 300 mm (12 in) in the area immediately surrounding the power module. Ensure good EMC grounding.

Figure 4-39 Grounding the drive, motor cable shield and filter

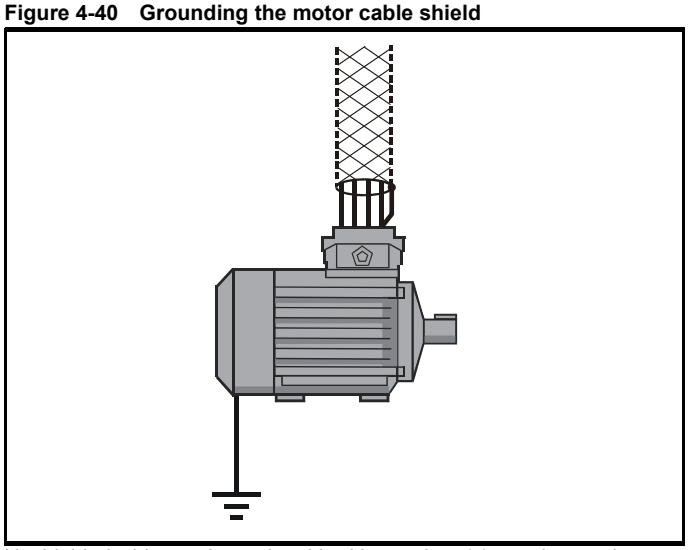


Connect the shield of the motor cable to the ground terminal of the motor frame using a link that is as short as possible and not exceeding 50 mm (2 in) long.

A complete 360° termination of the shield to the terminal housing of the motor is beneficial.

From an EMC consideration it is irrelevant whether the motor cable contains an internal (safety) ground core, or if there is a separate external ground conductor, or where grounding is through the shield alone. An internal ground core will carry a high noise current and therefore it must be terminated as close as possible to the shield termination.

Figure 4-40 Grounding the motor cable shield

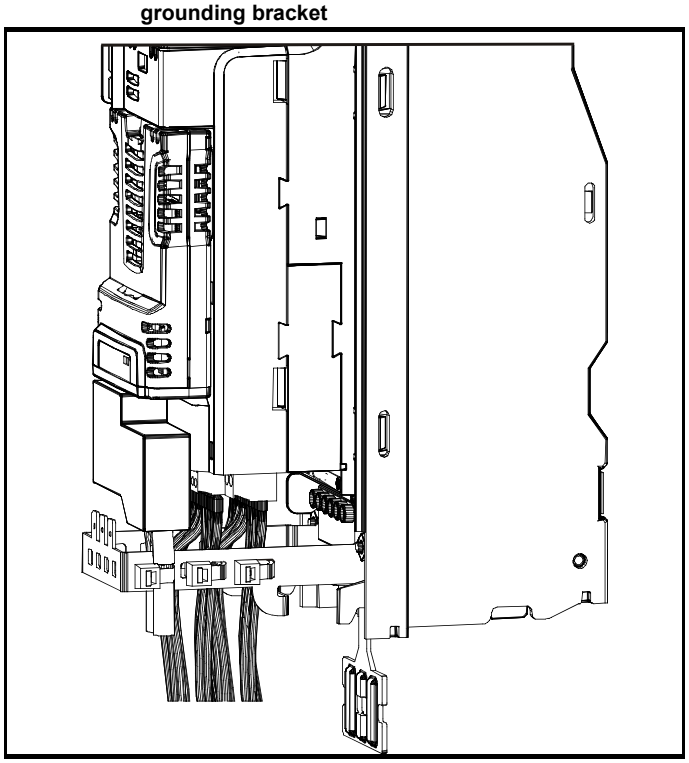


Unshielded wiring to the optional braking resistor(s) may be used provided the wiring runs internally to the enclosure.

If the control wiring is to leave the enclosure, it must be shielded and the shield(s) clamped to the drive using the grounding bracket as shown in Figure 4-41. Remove the outer insulating cover of the cable to ensure the shield(s) make direct contact with the bracket, but keep the shield(s) intact until as close as possible to the terminals

Alternatively, wiring may be passed through a ferrite ring, part number 3225-1004.

Figure 4-41 Grounding of signal cable shields using the grounding bracket



4.10.7 Variations in the EMC wiring

Interruptions to the motor cable

The motor cable should ideally be a single length of shielded or armored cable having no interruptions. In some situations it may be necessary to interrupt the cable, as in the following examples:

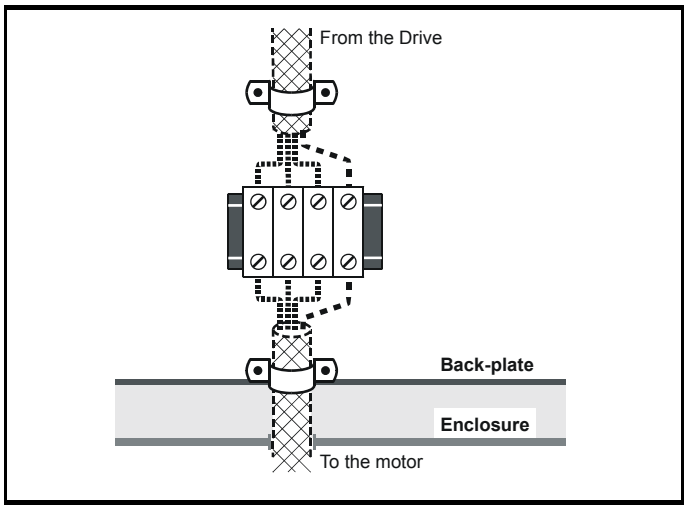
- Connecting the motor cable to a terminal block in the drive enclosure
- Installing a motor isolator / disconnect switch for safety when work is done on the motor

In these cases the following guidelines should be followed.

Terminal block in the enclosure

The motor cable shields should be bonded to the back-plate using uninsulated metal cable-clamps which should be positioned as close as possible to the terminal block. Keep the length of power conductors to a minimum and ensure that all sensitive equipment and circuits are at least 0.3 m (12 in) away from the terminal block.

Figure 4-42 Connecting the motor cable to a terminal block in the enclosure



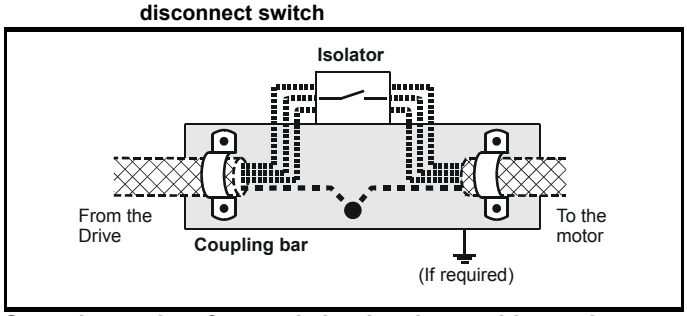
Using a motor isolator / disconnect-switch

The motor cable shields should be connected by a very short conductor having a low inductance. The use of a flat metal coupling-bar is recommended; conventional wire is not suitable.

The shields should be bonded directly to the coupling-bar using uninsulated metal cable-clamps. Keep the length of the exposed power conductors to a minimum and ensure that all sensitive equipment and circuits are at least 0.3 m (12 in) away.

The coupling-bar may be grounded to a known low-impedance ground nearby, for example a large metallic structure which is connected closely to the drive ground.

Figure 4-43 Connecting the motor cable to an isolator / disconnect switch



Surge immunity of control circuits - long cables and connections outside a building

The input/output ports for the control circuits are designed for general use within machines and small systems without any special precautions.

These circuits meet the requirements of EN 61000-6-2:2005 (1 kV surge) provided the 0 V connection is not grounded.

In applications where they may be exposed to high-energy voltage surges, some special measures may be required to prevent malfunction or damage. Surges may be caused by lightning or severe power faults in association with grounding arrangements which permit high transient voltages between nominally grounded points. This is a particular risk where the circuits extend outside the protection of a building.

As a general rule, if the circuits are to pass outside the building where the drive is located, or if cable runs within a building exceed 30 m, some additional precautions are advisable. One of the following techniques should be used:

1. Galvanic isolation, i.e. do not connect the control 0 V terminal to ground. Avoid loops in the control wiring, i.e. ensure every control wire is accompanied by its return (0 V) wire.
2. Shielded cable with additional power ground bonding. The cable shield may be connected to ground at both ends, but in addition the ground conductors at both ends of the cable must be bonded together by a power ground cable (equipotential bonding cable) with cross-sectional area of at least 10 mm^2, or 10 times the area of the signal cable shield, or to suit the electrical safety requirements of the plant. This ensures that fault or surge current passes mainly through the ground cable and not in the signal cable shield. If the building or plant has a well-designed common bonded network this precaution is not necessary.
3. Additional over-voltage suppression - for the analog and digital inputs and outputs, a zener diode network or a commercially available surge suppressor may be connected in parallel with the input circuit as shown in Figure 4-44 and Figure 4-45.

If a digital port experiences a severe surge its protective trip may operate (I/O Overload trip). For continued operation after such an event, the trip can be reset automatically by setting Pr **10.034** to 5.

Figure 4-44 Surge suppression for digital and unipolar inputs and outputs

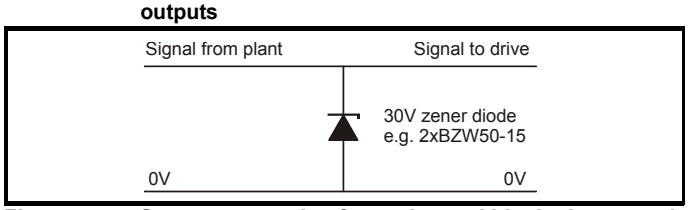
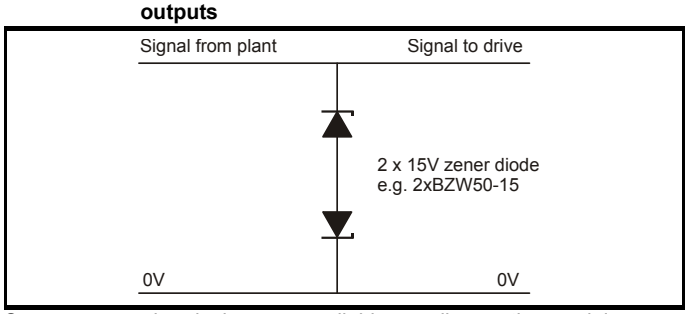


Figure 4-45 Surge suppression for analog and bipolar inputs and outputs



Surge suppression devices are available as rail-mounting modules, e.g. from Phoenix Contact:

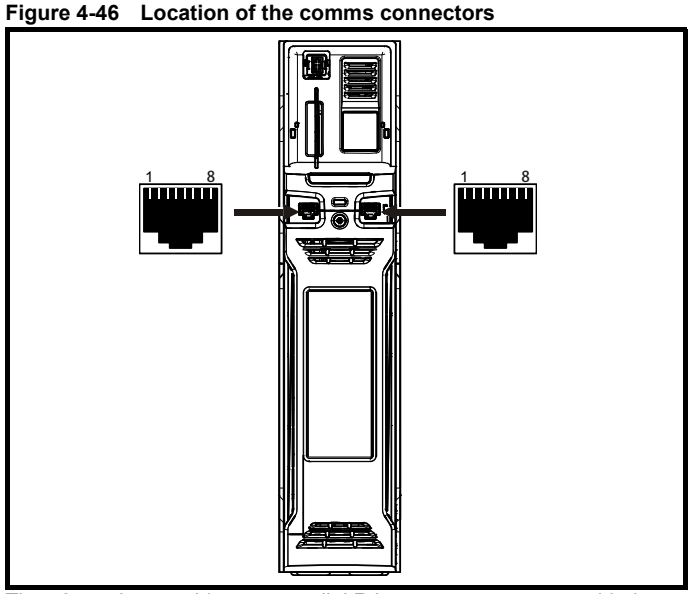
Unipolar TT-UKK5-D/24 DC
Bipolar TT-UKK5-D/24 AC

These devices are not suitable for fast digital data networks, because the capacitance of the diodes adversely affects the signal. For data networks, follow the specific recommendations for the particular network.

4.11 Communications connections

The drive offers a 2 wire 485 interface. This enables the drive set-up, operation and monitoring to be carried out with a PC or controller if required.

Figure 4-46 Location of the comms connectors



The 485 option provides two parallel RJ45 connectors are provided allowing easy daisy chaining. The drive only supports Modbus RTU protocol. See Table 4-20 for the connection details.

NOTE

Standard Ethernet cables are not recommended for use when connecting drives on a 485 network as they do not have the correct twisted pairs for the pinout of the serial comms port.

Table 4-20 Serial communication port pin-outs

Pin	Function
1	120 Ω Termination resistor
2	RX TX
3	Isolated 0 V
4	+24 V (100 mA)
5	Isolated 0 V
6	TX enable
7	RX\ TX\
8	RX\ TX\ (if termination resistors are required, link to pin 1)
Shell	Isolated 0 V

Minimum number of connections are 2, 3, 7 and shield.

4.11.1 Isolation of the 485 serial communications port

The serial PC communications port is double insulated and meets the requirements for SELV in EN 50178:1998.

WARNING

In order to meet the requirements for SELV in IEC60950 (IT equipment) it is necessary for the control computer to be grounded. Alternatively, when a lap-top or similar device is used which has no provision for grounding, an isolation device must be incorporated in the communications lead.

An isolated serial communications lead has been designed to connect the drive to IT equipment (such as laptop computers), and is available from the supplier of the drive. See below for details:

Table 4-21 Isolated serial comms lead details

Part number	Description
4500-0096	CT USB Comms cable

The “isolated serial communications” lead has reinforced insulation as defined in IEC60950 for altitudes up to 3,000 m.

4.12 Control connections

4.12.1 General

Table 4-22 The control connections consist of:

Function	Qty	Control parameters available	Terminal number
Single ended analog input	2	Mode, offset, invert, scaling, destination	5, 6
Analog output	2	Source, scaling, mode	7, 8
Digital input	3	Destination, invert, logic select	25, 26, 27
Digital input / output	3	Input / output mode select, destination / source, invert, logic select	22, 23, 24
Relay	2	Source, invert	41, 42, 71, 72
Drive enable (Safe Torque Off)	1		29
+24 V User output	1	Source, invert	3
0V common	5		1, 4, 9, 21, 28
+24 V External input	1	Destination, invert	2

Key:

Destination parameter:	Indicates the parameter which is being controlled by the terminal / function
Source parameter:	Indicates the parameter being output by the terminal
Mode parameter:	Analog - indicates the mode of operation of the terminal, i.e. voltage 0-10 V, current 4-20 mA etc. Digital - indicates the mode of operation of the terminal, i.e. positive / negative logic (the Drive Enable terminal is fixed in positive logic), open collector.

All analog terminal functions can be programmed in menu 7.
All digital terminal functions (including the relay) can be programmed in menu 8.

WARNING

The control circuits are isolated from the power circuits in the drive by basic insulation (single insulation) only. The installer must ensure that the external control circuits are insulated from human contact by at least one layer of insulation (supplementary insulation) rated for use at the AC supply voltage.

WARNING

If the control circuits are to be connected to other circuits classified as Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) (e.g. to a personal computer), an additional isolating barrier must be included in order to maintain the SELV classification.

CAUTION

If any of the digital inputs (including the drive enable input) are connected in parallel with an inductive load (i.e. contactor coil), then suitable suppression (i.e. diode or varistor) should be used on the coil of the load. If no suppression is used then over voltage spikes can cause damage to the digital inputs and outputs on the drive.

CAUTION

Ensure the logic sense is correct for the control circuit to be used. Incorrect logic sense could cause the motor to be started unexpectedly.
Positive logic is the default state for the drive.

NOTE

Any signal cables which are carried inside the motor cable (i.e. motor thermistor) will pick up large pulse currents via the cable capacitance. The shield of these signal cables must be connected to ground close to the point of exit of the motor cable, to avoid this noise current spreading through the control system.

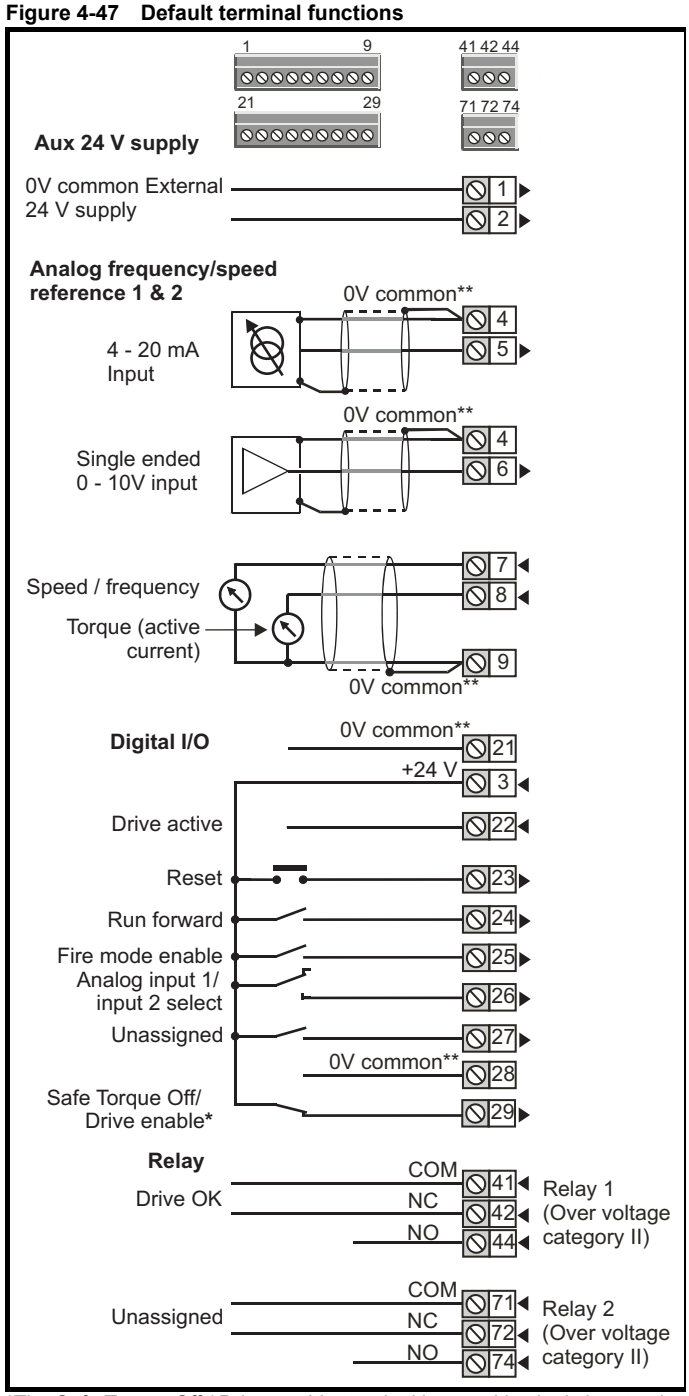
NOTE

The Safe Torque Off drive enable terminal is a positive logic input only. It is not affected by the setting of *Input Logic Polarity* (08.029).

NOTE

The common 0 V from analog signals should, wherever possible, not be connected to the same 0 V terminal as the common 0 V from digital signals. Terminals 1, 4 and 9 should be used for connecting the 0V common of analog signals, and terminals 21 and 28 for digital signals. This is to prevent small voltage drops in the terminal connections causing inaccuracies in the analog signals.

Figure 4-47 Default terminal functions



*The Safe Torque Off / Drive enable terminal is a positive logic input only.

** 0V common is connected to ground internally on Frame size 9 and 10.

4.12.2 Control terminal specification

1	0V common
Function	**Common connection for all external devices**

2	+24V external input
Function	**To supply the control circuit without providing a supply to the power stage**
Programmability	Can be switched on or off to act as a digital input by setting the source Pr **08.063** and input invert Pr **08.053**
Nominal voltage	+24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	+19.2 Vdc
Maximum continuous operating voltage	+28.0 Vdc
Minimum start-up voltage	21.6 Vdc
Recommended power supply	40 W 24 Vdc nominal
Recommended fuse	3 A, 50 Vdc

3	+24 V user output (selectable)
Terminal 3 default function	**+24 V user output**
Programmability	Can be switched on or off to act as a fourth digital output (positive logic only) by setting the source Pr **08.028** and source invert Pr **08.018**
Nominal output current	100 mA combined with DIO3
Maximum output current	100 mA 200 mA (total including all Digital I/O)
Protection	Current limit and trip
Sample / update period	2 ms when configured as an output (output will only change at the update rate of the source parameter if slower)

4	0V common
Function	**Common connection for all external devices**

5	Analog input 1
6	Analog input 2
Terminal 5 Default function	**Frequency / speed reference (Pr 1.036)**
Terminal 6 Default function	**Frequency / speed reference (Pr 1.037)**
Type of input AI 1 [AI 2]	Unipolar current and Bipolar single-ended analog voltage
Mode controlled by...	Pr **07.007** [07.011]
Operating in current mode (Default for terminal 5)	
Current ranges	0 to 20 mA ±5 %, 20 to 0 mA ±5 %, 4 to 20 mA ±5 %, 20 to 4 mA ±5 %
Maximum offset	250 µA
Absolute maximum voltage (reverse bias)	±36 V relative to 0V
Absolute maximum current	±30 mA
Equivalent input resistance	≤ 300 Ω
Operating in voltage mode (Default for terminal 6)	
Full scale voltage range	±10 V ±2 %
Maximum offset	±10 mV
Absolute maximum voltage range	±36 V relative to 0 V
Input resistance	≥100 k Ω
Common to all modes	
Resolution	12 bits (11 bits plus sign)
Sample / update	250 µs with destinations Pr **01.036**, Pr **01.037** or Pr **03.022,** Pr **04.008** in RFC-A or RFC-S. 4 ms for open loop mode and all other destinations in RFC-A or RFC-S mode.
Operating in thermistor input mode	
Voltage range ±10 V ±2 %	
Supported thermistor types	Din 4408, KTY 84, PT100, PT 1000, PT 2000, NI 1000
Internal pull-up voltage 5 V	
Trip threshold resistance	User defined in Pr **07.055 [07.060]**
Reset resistance	User defined in Pr **07.056 [07.061]**
Short-circuit detection resistance	50 Ω ± 40 %
Common to all modes	
Resolution	12 bits (11 bits plus sign)
Sample / update period	4 ms

7	Analog output 1
8	Analog output 2
Terminal 7 default function	**OL> Motor FREQUENCY output signal** **RFC> SPEED output signal**
Terminal 8 default function	**Motor active current**
Type of output	Bipolar single-ended analog voltage or unipolar current
AOI [AO2] Mode controlled by...	Pr **07.024** [07.024]
Operating in Voltage mode (default)	
Voltage range	±10 V ±5 %
Maximum offset	±120 mV
Maximum output current	±20 mA
Load resistance	≥1 k Ω
Protection	20 mA max. Short circuit protection
Operating in current mode	
Current ranges	0 to 20 mA ±5%, 20 to 0 mA ±5% 4 to 20 mA ±5%, 20 to 4 mA ±5%
Common to all modes	
Resolution	10-bit
Sample / update period	250 µs (output will only change at update the rate of the source parameter if slower)

9	0V common
Function	**Common connection for all external devices**

21	0V common
Function	**Common connection for all external devices**

22	Digital I/O 1
23	Digital I/O 2
24	Digital I/O 3
Terminal 22 default function	**DRIVE ACTIVE output**
Terminal 23 default function	**DRIVE RESET input**
Terminal 24 default function	**RUN FORWARD input**
Type	Positive or negative logic digital inputs, positive logic voltage source outputs
Input / output mode controlled by...	Pr **08.031**, Pr **08.032** and Pr **08.033**
Operating as an input	
Logic mode controlled by...	Pr **08.029**
Absolute maximum applied voltage range	-3 V to +30 V
Impedance	>2 mA @15 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1, 6.6 k Ω
Input thresholds	10 V ±0.8 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1
Operating as an output	
Nominal maximum output current	100 mA (DIO1 & 2 combined) 100 mA (DIO3 & 24 V User Output Combined)
Maximum output current	100 mA 200 mA (total including all Digital I/O)
Common to all modes	
Voltage range	0 V to +24 V
Sample / Update period	2 ms (output will only change at the update rate of the source parameter)

25	Digital Input 4
26	Digital Input 5
Terminal 25 default function	**FIRE MODE ENABLE input**
Terminal 26 default function	**Analog INPUT 1 / INPUT 2 select**
Type	Negative or positive logic digital inputs
Logic mode controlled by...	Pr **08.029**
Voltage range	0 V to +24 V
Absolute maximum applied voltage range	-3 V to +30 V
Impedance	>2 mA @15 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1, 6.6 k Ω
Input thresholds	10 V ±0.8 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1
Sample / Update period	2 ms

27	Digital Input 6
Terminal 27 default function	**Unassigned input**
Type	Negative or positive logic digital inputs
Logic mode controlled by...	Pr **08.029**
Voltage range	0 V to +24 V
Absolute maximum applied voltage range	-3 V to +30 V
Impedance	>2 mA @15 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1, 6.6 k Ω
Input thresholds	10 V ±0.8 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1
Sample / Update period	2 ms

28	0V common
Function	**Common connection for all external devices**

Refer to section 4.13 *Safe Torque Off (STO)* on page 102 for further information.

29	Safe Torque Off function (drive enable)
Type	Positive logic only digital input
Voltage range	0 V to +24 V
Absolute maximum applied voltage	30 V
Logic Threshold	10 V ± 5 V
Low state maximum voltage for disable to SIL3 and PL e	5 V
Impedance	>4 mA @15 V from IEC 61131-2, type 1, 3.3 k Ω
Low state maximum current for disable to SIL3 and PL e	0.5 mA
Response time	Nominal: 8 ms Maximum: 20 ms

The Safe Torque Off function may be used in a safety-related application in preventing the drive from generating torque in the motor to a high level of integrity. The system designer is responsible for ensuring that the complete system is safe and designed correctly according to the relevant safety standards. If the Safe Torque Off function is not required, this terminal is used for enabling the drive.

41 42 44	Relay 1
Default function	**Drive OK indicator**
Contact voltage rating	240 Vac, Installation over-voltage category II
Contact maximum current rating	2 A AC 240 V 4 A DC 30 V resistive load 0.5 A DC 30 V inductive load (L/R = 40 ms)
Contact minimum recommended rating	12 V 100 mA
Contact type	Common - 41 Normally closed - 42 Normally open - 44
Default contact condition	Closed when power applied and drive OK
Update period	4 ms

51	0 V*
52	+24 Vdc*
Size 6	
Nominal operating voltage	24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	18.6 Vdc
Maximum continuous operating voltage	28.0 Vdc
Minimum startup voltage	18.4 Vdc
Maximum power supply requirement	40 W
Recommended fuse	4 A @ 50 Vdc
Size 7 to 11	
Nominal operating voltage	24.0 Vdc
Minimum continuous operating voltage	19.2 Vdc
Maximum continuous operating voltage	30 Vdc (IEC), 26 Vdc (UL)
Minimum startup voltage	21.6 Vdc
Maximum power supply requirement	60 W
Recommended fuse	4 A @ 50 Vdc

*See Figure 4-17 to Figure 4-19 on page 81 for location.

71 72 74	Relay 2
Default function	**UNASSIGNED**
Contact voltage rating	240 Vac, Installation over-voltage category II
Contact maximum current rating	2 A AC 240 V 4 A DC 30 V resistive load 0.5 A DC 30 V inductive load (L/R = 40 ms)
Contact minimum recommended rating	12 V 100 mA
Contact type	Common - 71 Normally closed - 72 Normally open - 74
Default contact condition	Closed when power applied and drive OK
Update period	4 ms

To prevent the risk of a fire hazard in the event of a fault, a fuse or other over-current protection must be installed in the relay circuit.

4.13 Safe Torque Off (STO)

NOTE

The F300 STO input uses the same circuitry as an existing approved product. The F300 STO Function (sizes 3 to 10) have been approved by TUV, however at the time of writing frame 11 is still under review.

The Safe Torque Off function provides a means for preventing the drive from generating torque in the motor, with a very high level of integrity. It is suitable for incorporation into a safety system for a machine. It is also suitable for use as a conventional drive enable input.

The safety function is active when the STO input is in the logic-low state as specified in the control terminal specification. The function is defined according to EN 61800-5-2 and IEC 61800-5-2 as follows. (In these standards a drive offering safety-related functions is referred to as a PDS(SR)):

'Power, that can cause rotation (or motion in the case of a linear motor), is not applied to the motor. The PDS(SR) will not provide energy to the motor which can generate torque (or force in the case of a linear motor)'.

This safety function corresponds to an uncontrolled stop in accordance with stop category 0 of IEC 60204-1.

The Safe Torque Off function makes use of the special property of an inverter drive with an induction motor, which is that torque cannot be generated without the continuous correct active behavior of the inverter circuit. All credible faults in the inverter power circuit cause a loss of torque generation.

The Safe Torque Off function is fail-safe, so when the Safe Torque Off input is disconnected the drive will not operate the motor, even if a combination of components within the drive has failed. Most component failures are revealed by the drive failing to operate. Safe Torque Off is also independent of the drive firmware. This meets the requirements of the following standards, for the prevention of operation of the motor.

Data as verified by TÜV Rheinland:

According to EN ISO 13849-1:

PL = e

Category = 4

$MTTF_D$ = High

DC_{av} = High

Mission Time and Proof Test Interval = 20 years

The calculated $MTTF_D$ for the complete STO function is:

STO1 2574 yr

According to EN 61800-5-2:

SIL = 3

PFH = 4.21×10^{-11} h^{-1}

The Safe Torque Off input also meets the requirements of EN 81-1 (clause 12.7.3 b) as part of a system for preventing unwanted operation of the motor in a lift (elevator).

Safe Torque OfF can be used to eliminate electro-mechanical contactors, including special safety contactors, which would otherwise be required for safety applications.

The function can be used in safety-related machines or systems which have been designed according to IEC 62061 or IEC 61508, or other standards which are compatible with IEC 61508, since the analysis and the integrity metrics used in EN 61800-5-2 are the same.

Note on response time of Safe Torque Off, and use with safety controllers with self-testing outputs.
Safe Torque Off has been designed to have a response time of greater than 1 ms, so that it is compatible with safety controllers whose outputs are subject to a dynamic test with a pulse width not exceeding 1 ms.

Note on the use of servo motors, other permanent-magnet motors, reluctance motors and salient-pole induction motors.

When the drive is disabled through Safe Torque Off, a possible (although highly unlikely) failure mode is for two power devices in the inverter circuit to conduct incorrectly.

This fault cannot produce a steady rotating torque in any AC motor. It produces no torque in a conventional induction motor with a cage rotor. If the rotor has permanent magnets and/or saliency, then a transient alignment torque may occur. The motor may briefly try to rotate by up to 180° electrical, for a permanent magnet motor, or 90° electrical, for a salient pole induction motor or reluctance motor. This possible failure mode must be allowed for in the machine design.

WARNING
The design of safety-related control systems must only be done by personnel with the required training and experience. The safe torque off function will only ensure the safety of a machine if it is correctly incorporated into a complete safety system. The system must be subject to a risk assessment to confirm that the residual risk of an unsafe event is at an acceptable level for the application.

WARNING
Safe Torque Off inhibits the operation of the drive, this includes inhibiting braking. If the drive is required to provide both braking and Safe Torque Off in the same operation (e.g. for emergency stop) then a safety timer relay or similar device must be used to ensure that the drive is disabled a suitable time after braking. The braking function in the drive is provided by an electronic circuit which is not fail-safe. If braking is a safety requirement, it must be supplemented by an independent fail-safe braking mechanism.

WARNING
Safe Torque Off does not provide electrical isolation. The supply to the drive must be disconnected by an approved isolation device before gaining access to power connections.

With Safe Torque Off there are no single faults in the drive which can permit the motor to be driven. Therefore it is not necessary to have a second channel to interrupt the power connection, nor a fault detection circuit.

It is important to note that a single short-circuit from the Safe Torque Off input to a DC supply of approximately +24 V would cause the drive to be enabled. This can be excluded under EN ISO 13849-2 by the use of protected wiring. The wiring can be protected by either of the following methods:

- By placing the wiring in a segregated cable duct or other enclosure.

or

- By providing the wiring with a grounded shield in a positive-logic grounded control circuit. The shield is provided to avoid a hazard from an electrical fault. It may be grounded by any convenient method; no special EMC precautions are required.

WARNING
It is essential to observe the maximum permitted voltage of 5 V for a safe low (disabled) state of Safe Torque Off. The connections to the drive must be arranged so that voltage drops in the 0 V wiring cannot exceed this value under any loading condition. It is strongly recommended that the Safe Torque Off circuit be provided with a dedicated 0 V conductor which should be connected to terminal 28 at the drive.

Safe Torque Off over-ride

The drive does not provide any facility to over-ride the Safe Torque Off function, for example for maintenance purposes.

5 Getting started

This chapter introduces the user interfaces, menu structure and security levels of the drive.

5.1 Understanding the display

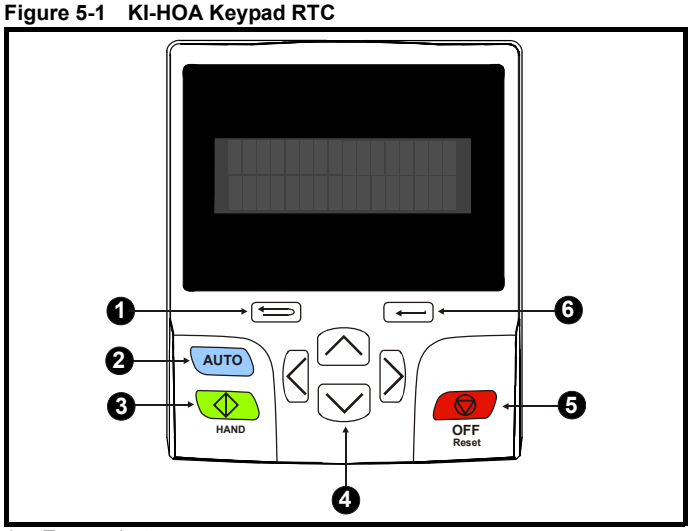
The keypad can only be mounted on the drive.

5.1.1 KI-HOA Keypad RTC

The KI-HOA Keypad RTC display consists of two rows of text. The upper row shows the drive status or the menu and parameter number currently being viewed. The lower row of the display line shows the parameter value or the specific trip type. The last two characters on the first row may display special indications. If more than one of these indications is active then the indications are prioritized as shown in Table 5-2.

When the drive is powered up the lower row will show the power up parameter defined by *Parameter Displayed At Power-Up* (11.022).

Figure 5-1 KI-HOA Keypad RTC



1. Escape button
2. Auto button
3. Start forward
4. Navigation keys (x4)
5. Off / Reset (red) button
6. Enter button

NOTE

The red stop button is also used to reset the drive.

The parameter value is correctly displayed in the lower row of the keypad display, see table below.

Table 5-1 Keypad display formats

Display formats	Value
IP Address	127.000.000.000
MAC Address	01ABCDEF2345
Time	12:34:56
Date	31-12-11 or 12-31-11
Version number	01.02.02.00
Character	ABCD
32 bit number with decimal point	21474836.47
16 bit binary number	0100001011100101

Table 5-2 Active action icon

Active action icon	Description	Row (1=top)	Priority in row
	Accessing non-volatile media card	1	1
	Alarm active	1	2
	Keypad real-time clock battery low	1	3
or	Drive security active and locked or unlocked	1	4
	User program running	3	1
	Keypad reference active	4	1

5.2 Keypad operation

5.2.1 Control buttons

The keypad consists of:

- Navigation Keys - Used to navigate the parameter structure and change parameter values.
- Enter / Mode button - Used to toggle between parameter edit and view mode.
- Escape / Exit button - Used to exit from parameter edit or view mode. In parameter edit mode, if parameter values are edited and the exit button is pressed, the parameter value will be restored to the value it had on entry to edit mode.

Three control buttons are used to select Hand / Off / Auto modes (see below).

NOTE

Low battery voltage is indicated by low battery symbol on the keypad display. Refer to section 3.13.1 *Real time clock battery replacement* on page 66 for information on battery replacement.

Figure 5-2 *Display modes* on page 104, shows an example of moving between menus and editing parameters.

5.2.2 Hand / Off / Auto

Hand / Off / Auto functions are enabled if Pr **01.052** is set to a non-zero value, otherwise the keypad buttons are allocated as follows:

- Blue AUTO - Forward/Reverse
- Green - Run
- Red - Reset

When Hand / Off / Auto functions are enabled (Pr **01.052** set to either 1, 2 or 3), then the keypad buttons will be allocated as follows:

- Blue AUTO - Auto
- Green - Hand
- Red - Off/Reset

The value in Pr **01.052** selects Hand/Off/Auto mode on power-up as shown in Table 5-3.

Table 5-3 Hand/Off/Auto mode

Pr 01.052	Power up
0	Hand/Off/Auto disabled
1	Auto Mode
2	Off Mode
3	See table Table 5-4

Table 5-4 Power-up modes if Pr 01.052 = 3

Power-down	Power-up
Hand	Off
Off	Off
Auto	Auto

Auto
In Auto mode, the reference for the motor speed/frequency will be selected by the value set in Pr **00.005**.

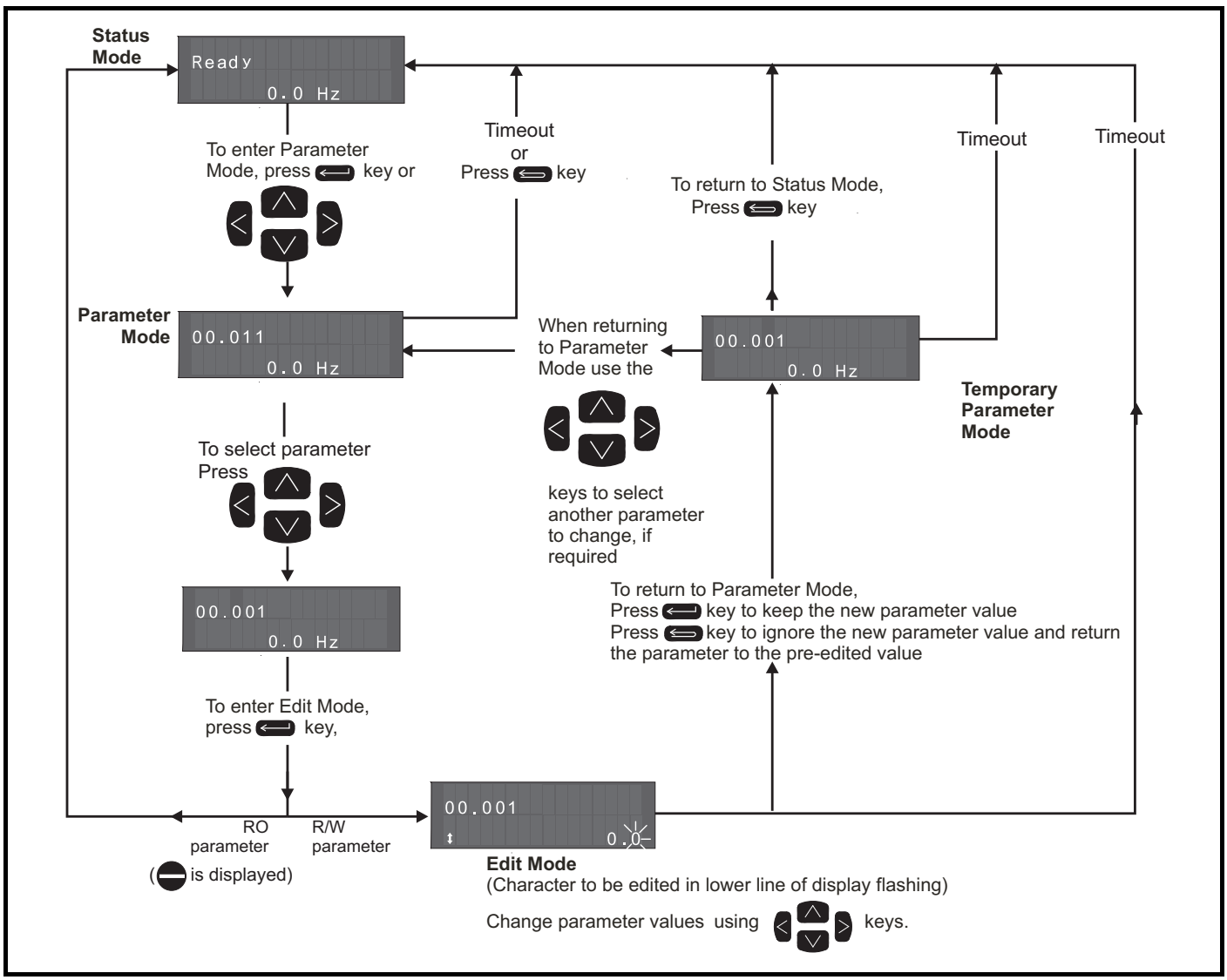
Hand
The speed/frequency reference Pr **00.005** is automatically set to keypad reference. The motor speed is determined by the value in the keypad control mode reference Pr **01.017**, which can be adjusted by pressing the Up/Down arrows on the keypad.

When Hand is selected from Auto, Pr **01.017** will be set to the value of the *Pre-ramp reference* (Pr **01.003**) on mode transition, so the current motor speed is maintained.

If Hand mode is selected from Off mode, the motor will ramp up to the speed determined by the value in Pr **01.017**.

Off
In Off mode, the motor will be stopped. The speed/frequency reference (Pr **00.005**) is automatically set to keypad reference allowing the value in the *keypad control mode reference* (Pr **01.017**) to be modified by pressing the Up/Down arrow keys. If Hand mode is then selected, the motor will ramp up to the speed determined by the value in Pr **01.017**.

Figure 5-2 Display modes



NOTE

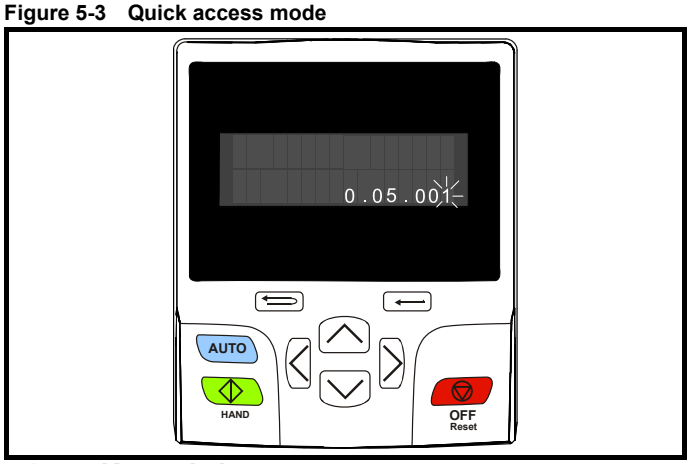
The navigation keys can only be used to move between menus if Pr **00.049** has been set to show 'All Menus'. Refer to section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109.

5.2.3 Quick access mode

The quick access mode allows direct access to any parameter without scrolling through menus and parameters.

To enter the quick access mode, press and hold the Enter button on the keypad while in 'parameter mode'.

Figure 5-3 Quick access mode



5.2.4 Keypad shortcuts

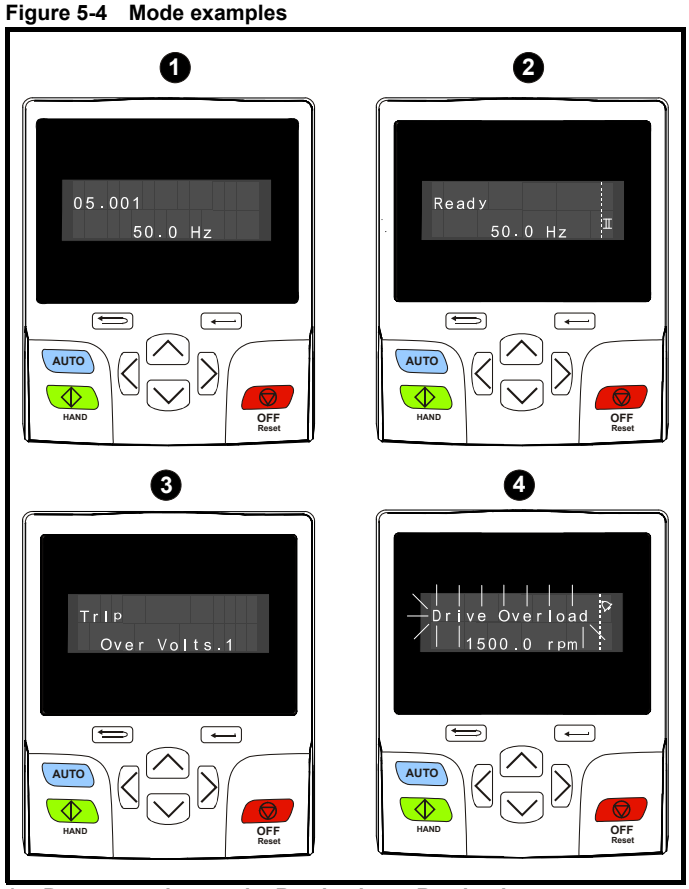
In 'parameter mode':

- If the up and down keypad buttons are pressed together, then the keypad display will jump to the start of the parameter menu being viewed, i.e. Pr **05.005** being viewed, when the above buttons pressed together will jump to Pr **05.000**.
- If the left and right keypad buttons are pressed together, then the keypad display will jump to the last viewed parameter in Menu 0.

In 'parameter edit mode':

- If the up and down keypad buttons are pressed together, then the parameter value of the parameter being edited will be set to 0.
- If the left and right keypad buttons are pressed together, the least significant digit (furthest right) will be selected on the keypad display for editing.

Figure 5-4 Mode examples



1. **Parameter view mode: Read write or Read only**
2. **Status mode: Drive OK status**

If the drive is ok and the parameters are not being edited or viewed, the upper row of the display will show one of the following:

- 'Inhibit', 'Ready' or 'Run'.

3. **Status mode: Trip status**

When the drive is in trip condition, the upper row of the display will indicate that the drive has tripped and the lower row of the display will show the trip code. For further information regarding trip codes. refer to Table 13-3 *Trip indications* on page 262.

4. **Status mode: Alarm status**

During an 'alarm' condition the upper row of the display flashes between the drive status (Inhibit, Ready or Run, depending on what is displayed) and the alarm.

WARNING

Do not change parameter values without careful consideration; incorrect values may cause damage or a safety hazard.

NOTE

When changing the values of parameters, make a note of the new values in case they need to be entered again.

NOTE

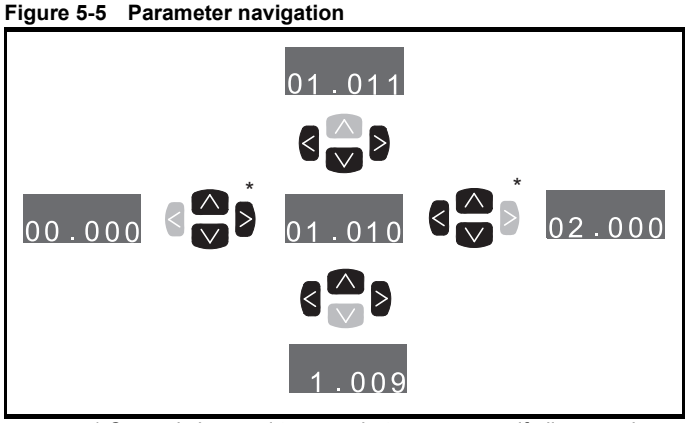
For new parameter-values to apply after the line power supply to the drive is interrupted, new values must be saved. Refer to section 5.7 *Saving parameters* on page 108.

5.3 Menu structure

The drive parameter structure consists of menus and parameters.

The drive initially powers up so that only Menu 0 can be viewed. The up and down arrow buttons are used to navigate between parameters and once Pr **00.049** has been set to 'All Menus' the left and right buttons are used to navigate between menus. For further information, refer to section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109

Figure 5-5 Parameter navigation



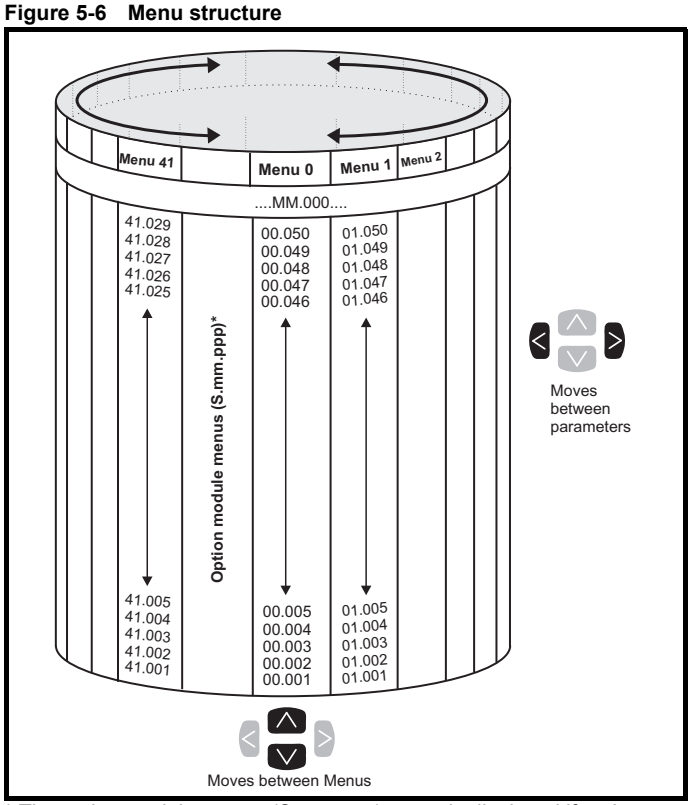
* Can only be used to move between menus if all menus have been enabled (Pr **00.049**). Refer to section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109.

The menus and parameters roll over in both directions.

i.e. if the last parameter is displayed, a further press will cause the display to rollover and show the first parameter.

When changing between menus the drive remembers which parameter was last viewed in a particular menu and thus displays that parameter.

Figure 5-6 Menu structure



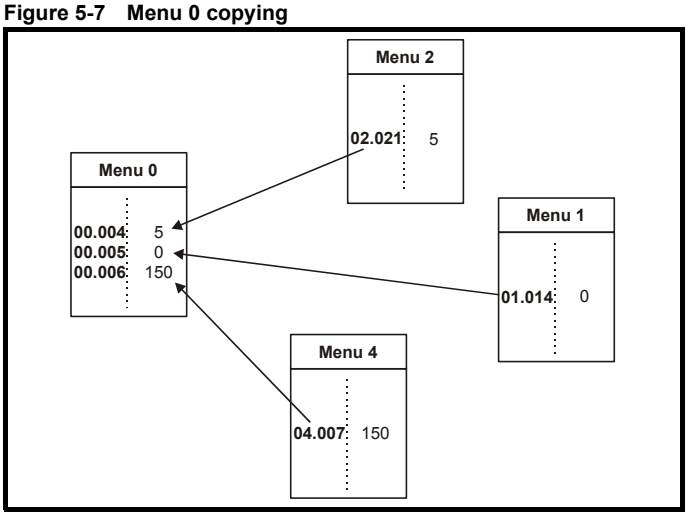
* The option module menus (S.mm.ppp) are only displayed if option modules are installed. Where S signifies the option module slot number and the mm.ppp signifies the menu and the parameter number of the option module's internal menus and parameter.

5.4 Menu 0

Menu 0 is used to bring together various commonly used parameters for basic easy set up of the drive. The parameters displayed in Menu 0 can be configured in Menu 22.
Appropriate parameters are copied from the advanced menus into Menu 0 and thus exist in both locations.

For further information, refer to Chapter 6 *Basic parameters* on page 111.

Figure 5-7 Menu 0 copying



5.5 Advanced menus

The advanced menus consist of groups or parameters appropriate to a specific function or feature of the drive. Menus 0 to 41 can be viewed on the KI-HOA Keypad RTC.

The option module menus (S.mm.ppp) are only displayed if option modules are installed. Where S signifies the option module slot number and the mm.ppp signifies the menu and parameter number of the option module's internal menus and parameter.

Table 5-5 Advanced menu descriptions

Menu	Description
0	Commonly used basic set up parameters for quick / easy programming
1	Frequency / Speed reference
2	Ramps
3	Frequency slaving, speed feedback and speed control
4	Torque and current control
5	Motor control
6	Sequencer and clock
7	Analog I/O, Temperature monitoring
8	Digital I/O
9	Programmable logic, motorized pot, binary sum, timers and scope
10	Status and trips
11	Drive set-up and identification, serial communications
12	Threshold detectors and variable selectors
14	User PID controller
15	Option module slot 1 set-up menu
16	Option module slot 2 set-up menu
17	Option module slot 3 set-up menu
18	General option module application menu 1
19	General option module application menu 2
20	General option module application menu 3
22	Menu 0 set-up
23	Not allocated
28	Reserved menu
29	Pumping functions
30	Onboard user programming application menu
Slot 1	Slot 1 option menus*
Slot 2	Slot 2 option menus*
Slot 3	Slot 3 option menus*

*Only displayed when the option modules are installed.

5.5.1 KI-HOA Keypad RTC

To enter the keypad set-up menu press and hold the escape button on the keypad from status mode. All the keypad parameters are saved to the keypad non-volatile memory when exiting from the keypad set-up menu.

To exit from the keypad set-up menu press the escape or or button. Below are the keypad set-up parameters.

Table 5-6 KI-Keypad set-up parameters

Parameters		Range	Type
Keypad.00	Language	Classic English (0) English (1)	RW
Keypad.01	Show Units	Off (0), On (1)	RW
Keypad.02	Backlight Level	0 to 100 %	RW
Keypad.03	Keypad Date	01.01.10 to 31.12.99	RO
Keypad.04	Keypad Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59	RO
Keypad.05	Show Raw Text Parameter Values	Off (0), On (1)	RW
Keypad.06	Software Version	00.00.00.00 to 99.99.99.99	RO

NOTE

It is not possible to access the keypad parameters via any communications channel.

5.5.2 Display messages

The following tables indicate the various possible mnemonics which can be displayed by the drive and their meaning.

Table 5-7 Status indications

Upper row string	Description	Drive output stage
Inhibit	The drive is inhibited and cannot be run. The Safe Torque Off signal is not applied to Safe Torque Off terminals or Pr **06.015** is set to 0. The other conditions that can prevent the drive from enabling are shown as bits in *Enable Conditions* (06.010)	Disabled
Ready	The drive is ready to run. The drive enable is active, but the drive inverter is not active because the final drive run is not active	Disabled
Stop	The drive is stopped / holding zero speed	Enabled
Run	The drive is active and running	Enabled
Supply Loss	Supply loss condition has been detected	Enabled
Deceleration	The motor is being decelerated to zero speed / frequency because the final drive run has been deactivated	Enabled
dc injection	The drive is applying dc injection braking	Enabled
Trip	The drive has tripped and no longer controlling the motor. The trip code appears in the lower display	Disabled
Under Voltage	The drive is in the under voltage state either in low voltage or high voltage mode	Disabled
Heat	The motor pre-heat function is active	Enabled
Phasing	The drive is performing a 'phasing test on enable'	Enabled

5.5.3 Alarm indications

An alarm is an indication given on the display by alternating the alarm string with the drive status string on the upper row and showing the alarm symbol in the last character in the upper row. Alarms strings are not displayed when a parameter is being edited, but the user will still see the alarm character on the upper row.

Table 5-8 Alarm indications

Alarm string	Description
Motor Overload	*Motor Protection Accumulator* (04.019) in the drive has reached 75.0 % of the value at which the drive will trip and the load on the drive is >100 %.
Drive Overload	Drive over temperature. *Percentage Of Drive Thermal Trip Level* (07.036) in the drive is greater than 90 %.
Auto Tune	The autotune procedure has been initialized and an autotune in progress.

Table 5-9 Option module and NV media card and other status indications at power-up

First row string	Second row string	Status
Booting	**Parameters**	Parameters are being loaded
Drive parameters are being loaded from a NV Media Card		
Booting	**User Program**	User program being loaded
User program is being loaded from a NV Media Card to the drive		
Booting	**Option Program**	User program being loaded
User program is being loaded from a NV Media Card to the option module in slot X		
Writing To	**NV Card**	Data being written to NV Media Card
Data is being written to a NV Media Card to ensure that its copy of the drive parameters is correct because the drive is in Auto or Boot mode		
Waiting For	**Power System**	Waiting for power stage
The drive is waiting for the processor in the power stage to respond after power-up		
Waiting For	**Options**	Waiting for an option module
The drive is waiting for the options modules to respond after power-up		
Uploading From	**Options**	Loading parameter database
At power-up it may be necessary to update the parameter database held by the drive because an option module has changed or because an applications module has requested changes to the parameter structure. This may involve data transfer between the drive an option modules. During this period 'Uploading From Options' is displayed		

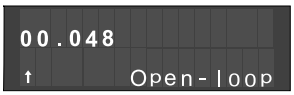
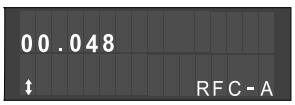
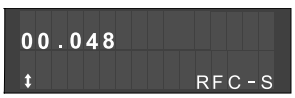
5.6 Changing the operating mode

Changing the operating mode returns all parameters to their default value, including the motor parameters. *User security status* (00.049) and *User security code* (00.034) are not affected by this procedure).

Procedure

Use the following procedure only if a different operating mode is required:

1. Ensure the drive is not enabled, i.e. terminal 29 is open or Pr **06.015** is OFF (0)
2. Enter either of the following values in Pr **mm.000**, as appropriate:
   1253 (50 Hz AC supply frequency)
   1254 (60 Hz AC supply frequency)
3. Change the setting of Pr **00.048** as follows:

Pr 00.048 setting		Operating mode
	1	Open-loop
	2	RFC-A
	3	RFC-S

The figures in the second column apply when serial communications are used.

4. Either:

- Press the red  reset button
- Toggle the reset digital input
- Carry out a drive reset through serial communications by setting Pr **10.038** to 100.

NOTE

Entering 1253 or 1254 in Pr **mm.000** will only load defaults if the setting of Pr **00.048** has been changed.

5.7 Saving parameters

When changing a parameter in Menu 0, the new value is saved when pressing the  Enter button to return to parameter view mode from parameter edit mode.

If parameters have been changed in the advanced menus, then the change will not be saved automatically. A save function must be carried out.

Procedure

1. Select 'Save Parameters'* in Pr **mm.000** (alternatively enter a value of 1000* in Pr **mm.000**)
2. Either:

- Press the red  reset button
- Toggle the reset digital input, or
- Carry out a drive reset through serial communications by setting Pr **10.038** to 100

* If the drive is in the under voltage state (i.e. when the control terminal 1 & 2 are being supplied from a low voltage DC supply) a value of 1001 must be entered into Pr **mm.000** to perform a save function.

5.8 Restoring parameter defaults

Restoring parameter defaults by this method saves the default values in the drives memory. *User security status* (00.049) and *User security code* (00.034) are not affected by this procedure).

Procedure

1. Ensure the drive is not enabled, i.e. terminal 29 is open or Pr **06.015** is OFF (0)
2. Select 'Reset 50 Hz Defs' or 'Reset 60 Hz Defs' in Pr **mm.000**. (alternatively, enter 1233 (50 Hz settings) or 1244 (60 Hz settings) in Pr **mm.000**).
3. Either:

- Press the red reset button
- Toggle the reset digital input
- Carry out a drive reset through serial communications by setting Pr **10.038** to 100

5.9 Parameter access level and security

The parameter access level determines whether the user has access to Menu 0 only or to all the advanced menus (Menus 1 to 41) in addition to Menu 0.

The User Security determines whether the access to the user is read only or read write.

Both the User Security and Parameter Access Level can operate independently of each other as shown in Table 5-10.

Table 5-10 Parameter access level and security

User security status (11.044)	Access level	User security	Menu 0 status	Advanced menu status
0	Menu 0	Open	RW	Not visible
		Closed	RO	Not visible
1	All Menus	Open	RW	RW
		Closed	RO	RO
2	Read-only Menu 0	Open	RO	Not visible
		Closed	RO	Not visible
3	Read-only	Open	RO	RO
		Closed	RO	RO
4	Status only	Open	Not visible	Not visible
		Closed	Not visible	Not visible
5	No access	Open	Not visible	Not visible
		Closed	Not visible	Not visible

The default settings of the drive are Parameter Access Level Menu 0 and user Security Open i.e. read / write access to Menu 0 with the advanced menus not visible.

5.9.1 User Security Level / Access Level

The drive provides a number of different levels of security that can be set by the user via *User Security Status* (11.044); these are shown in the table below.

User Security Status (Pr 11.044)	Description
Menu 0 (0)	All writable parameters are available to be edited but only parameters in Menu 0 are visible
All menus (1)	All parameters are visible and all writable parameters are available to be edited
Read- only Menu 0 (2)	Access is limited to Menu 0 parameters only. All parameters are read-only
Read-only (3)	All parameters are read-only however all menus and parameters are visible
Status only (4)	The keypad remains in status mode and no parameters can be viewed or edited
No access (5)	The keypad remains in status mode and no parameters can be viewed or edited. Drive parameters cannot be accessed via a comms/ fieldbus interface in the drive or any option module

5.9.2 Changing the User Security Level /Access Level

The security level is determined by the setting of Pr **00.049** or Pr **11.044**. The Security Level can be changed through the keypad even if the User Security Code has been set.

5.9.3 User Security Code

The User Security Code, when set, prevents write access to any of the parameters in any menu.

Setting User Security Code

Enter a value between 1 and 2147483647 in Pr **00.034** and press the button; the security code has now been set to this value. In order to activate the security, the Security level must be set to desired level in Pr **00.049**. When the drive is reset, the security code will have been activated and the drive returns to Menu 0 and the symbol is displayed in the right hand corner of the keypad display. The value of Pr **00.034** will return to 0 in order to hide the security code.

Unlocking User Security Code

Select a parameter that need to be edited and press the button, the upper display will now show 'Security Code'. Use the arrow buttons to set the security code and press the button. With the correct security code entered, the display will revert to the parameter selected in edit mode.

If an incorrect security code is entered, the following message 'Incorrect security code' is displayed, then the display will revert to parameter view mode.

Disabling User Security

Unlock the previously set security code as detailed above. Set Pr **00.034** to 0 and press the button. The User Security has now been disabled, and will not have to be unlocked each time the drive is powered up to allow read / write access to the parameters.

5.10 Displaying parameters with non-default values only

By selecting 'Show non-default' in Pr **mm.000** (Alternatively, enter 12000 in Pr **mm.000**), the only parameters that will be visible to the user will be those containing a non-default value. This function does not require a drive reset to become active. In order to deactivate this function, return to Pr **mm.000** and select 'No action' (alternatively enter a value of 0). Please note that this function can be affected by the access level enabled, refer to section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109 for further information regarding access level.

5.11 Displaying destination parameters only

By selecting 'Destinations' in Pr **mm.000** (Alternatively enter 12001 in Pr **mm.000**), the only parameters that will be visible to the user will be destination parameters. This function does not require a drive reset to become active. In order to deactivate this function, return to Pr **mm.000** and select 'No action' (alternatively enter a value of 0).

Please note that this function can be affected by the access level enabled, refer to section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109 for further information regarding access level.

5.12 Communications

The Powerdrive F300 drive offers a 2 wire 485 interface. This enables the drive set-up, operation and monitoring to be carried out with a PC or controller if required.

5.12.1 485 Serial communications

The EIA485 option provides two parallel RJ45 connectors allowing easy daisy chaining. The drive only supports Modbus RTU protocol.

The serial communications port of the drive is a RJ45 socket, which is isolated from the power stage and the other control terminals (see section 4.11 *Communications connections* on page 97 for connection and isolation details).

The communications port applies a 2 unit load to the communications network.

USB/EIA232 to EIA485 Communications

An external USB/EIA232 hardware interface such as a PC cannot be used directly with the 2-wire EIA485 interface of the drive. Therefore a suitable converter is required.

Suitable USB to EIA485 and EIA232 to EIA485 isolated converters are available from Control Techniques as follows:

- CT USB Comms cable (CT Part No. 4500-0096)
- CT EIA232 Comms cable (CT Part No. 4500-0087)

NOTE

When using the CT EIA232 Comms cable the available baud rate is limited to 19.2 k baud.

When using one of the above converters or any other suitable converter with the drive, it is recommended that no terminating resistors be connected on the network. It may be necessary to 'link out' the terminating resistor within the converter depending on which type is used. The information on how to link out the terminating resistor will normally be contained in the user information supplied with the converter.

Serial communications set-up parameters

The following parameters need to be set according to the system requirements.

Serial communications set-up parameters		
Serial Mode (11.024) {00.035}	8 2 NP (0), 8 1 NP (1), 8 1 EP (2), 8 1 OP (3), 8 2 NP M (4), 8 1 NP M (5), 8 1 EP M (6), 8 1 OP M (7), 7 2 NP (8), 7 1 NP (9), 7 1 EP (10), 7 1 OP (11), 7 2 NP M (12), 7 1 NP M (13), 7 1 EP M (14), 7 1 OP M (15)	The drive only supports the Modbus RTU protocol and is always a slave. This parameter defines the supported data formats used by the 485 comms port (if installed) on the drive. This parameter can be changed via the drive keypad, via a option module or via the comms interface itself.
Serial Baud Rate (11.025) {00.036}	300 (0), 600 (1), 1200 (2), 2400 (3), 4800 (4), 9600 (5), 19200 (6), 38400 (7), 57600(8), 76800(9), 115200 (10)	This parameter can be changed via the drive keypad, via a option module or via the comms interface itself. If it is changed via the comms interface, the response to the command uses the original baud rate. The master should wait at least 20 ms before sending a new message using the new baud rate.
Serial Address (11.023) {00.037}	1 to 247	This parameter defines the serial address and an addresses between 1 and 247 are permitted.

6 Basic parameters

Menu 0 is used to bring together various commonly used parameters for basic easy set up of the drive. All the parameters in Menu 0 appear in other menus in the drive (denoted by {…}). Menus 22 can be used to configure the parameters in Menu 0.

6.1 Menu 0: Basic parameters

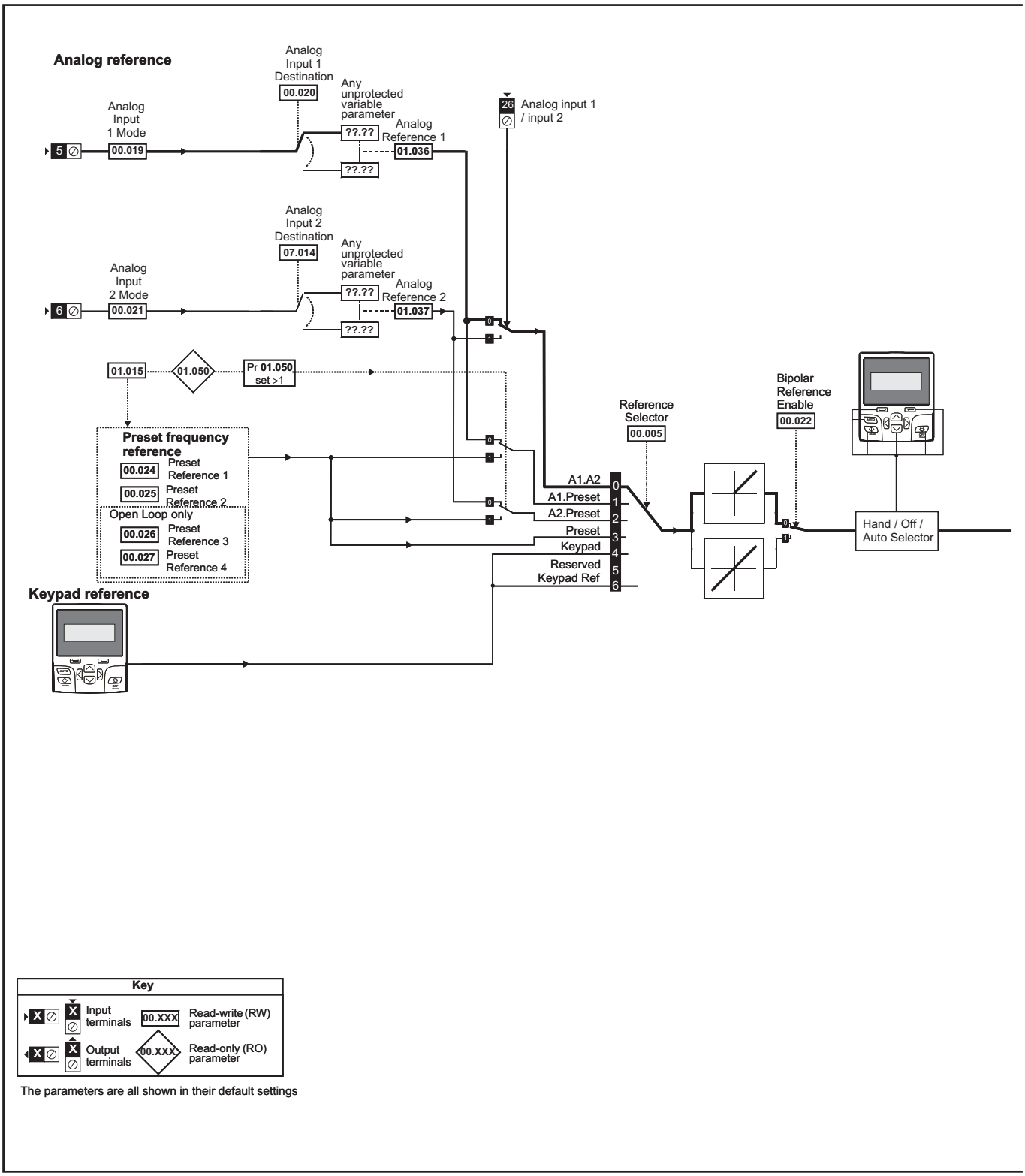
Parameter			Range			Default			Type					
			OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
00.001	Minimum Reference Clamp	**{01.007}**	±VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP1 Hz / rpm			0 Hz / rpm			RW	Num				US
00.002	Maximum Reference Clamp1	**{01.006}**	±VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1 Hz / rpm			50 Hz: 50.0 Hz 60 Hz: 60.0 Hz	50 Hz: 1500.0 rpm 60 Hz: 1800.0 rpm		RW	Num				US
00.003	Acceleration Rate 1	**{02.011}**	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s to Pr **01.006**	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s to Pr **01.006**		20.0 s to Pr **01.006**	20.000 s to Pr **01.006**		RW	Num				US
00.004	Deceleration Rate 1	**{02.021}**	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s to Pr **01.006**	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s to Pr **01.006**		20.0 s to Pr **01.006**	20.000 s to Pr **01.006**		RW	Num				US
00.005	Reference Selector	**{01.014}**	A1 A2 (0),A1 Preset (1), A2 Preset (2), Preset (3), Keypad (4), Precision (5), Keypad Ref (6)			A1 A2 (0)			RW	Txt				US
00.006	Symmetrical Current Limit	**{04.007}**	±VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT %			110 %	110 %		RW	Num		RA		US
00.007	Open-loop Control Mode / Action On Enable	**{05.014}**	Ur S (0),Ur (1), Fixed (2), Ur Auto (3), Ur I (4), Square (5), Current 1P (6)			Ur I (4)			RW	Txt				US
	Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1	**{03.010}**		0.0000 to 200.000 s/rad			0.0300 s/rad		RW	Num				US
00.008	Low Frequency Voltage Boost	**{05.015}**	0.0 to 25.0 %			3.0 %			RW	Num				US
	Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1	**{03.011}**		0.00 to 655.35 s^2/rad			0.10 s^2/rad		RW	Num				US
00.009	Dynamic V to F Select	**{05.013}**	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
	Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd 1	**{03.012}**		0.00000 to 0.65535 1/rad			0.00000 1/rad		RW	Num				US
00.010	Motor Rpm	**{05.004}**	±180000 rpm						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
	Speed Feedback	**{03.002}**		±VM_SPEED rpm					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
00.011	Output Frequency	**{05.001}**	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
00.012	Current Magnitude	**{04.001}**	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR A						RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	FI
00.013	Torque Producing Current	**{04.002}**	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT A						RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	FI
00.015	Ramp Mode Select	**{02.004}**	Standard (1), Std boost (2)	Standard (1)		Standard (1)			RW	Txt				US
00.017	Digital Input 6 Destination	**{08.026}**	0.000 to 59.999			0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
	Current Reference Filter 1 Time Constant	**{04.012}**		0.0 to 25.0 ms			1.0 ms		RW	Num				US
00.019	Analog Input 1 Mode	**{07.007}**	4-20mA Low (-4), 20-4mA Low (-3), 4-20mA Hold (-2), 20-4mA Hold (-1), 0-20mA (0), 20-0mA (1), 4-20mA Trip (2), 20-4mA Trip (3), 4-20mA (4), 20-4mA (5), Volt (6), Therm Short Cct (7), Thermistor (8), Therm No Trip (9)			4-20mA (4)			RW	Txt				US
00.020	Analog Input 1 Destination	**{07.010}**	00.000 to 59.999			01.036			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
00.021	Analog Input 2 Mode	**{07.011}**	4-20mA Low (-4), 20-4mA Low (-3), 4-20mA Hold (-2), 20-4mA Hold (-1), 0-20mA (0), 20-0mA (1), 4-20mA Trip (2), 20-4mA Trip (3), 4-20mA (4), 20-4mA (5), Volt (6), Therm Short Cct (7), Thermistor (8), Therm No Trip (9)			Volt (6)			RW	Txt				US
00.022	Bipolar Reference Enable	**{01.010}**	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
00.024	Preset Reference 1	**{01.021}**	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz / rpm			0.0 Hz / rpm			RW	Num				US
00.025	Preset Reference 2	**{01.022}**	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz / rpm			0.0 Hz / rpm			RW	Num				US
00.026	Preset Reference 3	**{01.023}**	±VM_SPEED_ FREQ_REF Hz			0.0 Hz			RW	Num				US
	Overspeed Threshold	**{03.008}**		0 to 40000 rpm			0 rpm		RW	Num				US

Parameter			Range			Default			Type					
			OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
00.027	Preset Reference 4	**{01.024}**	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz			0.0 Hz			RW	Num				US
00.029	NV Media Card Data Previously Loaded	**{11.036}**	0 to 999			0			RO	Num		NC	PT	
00.030	Parameter Cloning	**{11.042}**	None (0), Read (1), Program (2), Auto (3), Boot (4)			None (0)			RW	Txt		NC		US
00.031	Rated Voltage	**{11.033}**	200 V (0), 400 V (1), 575 V (2), 690 V (3)						RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
00.033	Catch A Spinning Motor	**{06.009}**	Disable (0), Enable (1), Fwd Only (2), Rev Only (3)			Disable (0)			RW	Txt				US
00.034	User Security Code	**{11.030}**	0 to 2147483647			0			RW	Num	ND	NC	PT	US
00.035	Serial Mode	**{11.024}**	8 2 NP (0), 8 1 NP (1), 8 1 EP (2), 8 1 OP (3), 8 2 NP M (4), 8 1 NP M (5), 8 1 EP M (6), 8 1 OP M (7), 7 2 NP (8), 7 1 NP (9), 7 1 EP (10), 7 1 OP (11), 7 2 NP M (12), 7 1 NP M (13), 7 1 EP M (14), 7 1 OP M (15)			8 2 NP (0)			RW	Txt				US
00.036	Serial Baud Rate	**{11.025}**	300 (0), 600 (1), 1200 (2), 2400 (3), 4800 (4), 9600 (5), 19200 (6), 38400 (7), 57600 (8), 76800 (9), 15200 (10)			19200 (6)			RW	Txt				US
00.037	Serial Address	**{11.023}**	1 to 247			1			RW	Num				US
00.038	Current Controller Kp Gain	**{04.013}**	0 to 30000			20	150		RW	Num				US
00.039	Current Controller Ki Gain	**{04.014}**	0 to 30000			40	2000		RW	Num				US
00.040	Auto-tune	**{05.012}**	0 to 2	0 to 5	0 to 6	0			RW	Num		NC		
00.041	Maximum Switching Frequency	**{05.018}**	2 kHz (0), 3 kHz (1), 4 kHz (2), 6 kHz (3), 8 kHz (4), 12 kHz (5), 16 kHz (6)			3 kHz (1)			RW	Txt		RA		US
00.042	Number Of Motor Poles	**{05.011}**	Automatic (0) to 480 Poles (240)			Automatic (0)		6 Poles (3)	RW	Num				US
00.043	Rated Power Factor	**{05.010}**	0.000 to 1.000			0.850			RW	Num		RA		US
00.044	Rated Voltage	**{05.009}**	±VM_AC_VOLTAGE_SET V			200V drive: 230V 50Hz default 400V drive: 400V 60Hz default 400V drive: 460V 575V drive: 575V 690V drive: 690V			RW	Num		RA		US
00.045	Rated Speed	**{05.008}**	0 to 33000 rpm	0.00 to 33000.00 rpm		Eur - 1500 rpm USA - 1800 rpm	Eur - 1450.00 rpm USA - 1750.00 rpm	3000.00 rpm	RW	Num				US
00.046	Rated Current	**{05.007}**	±VM_RATED_CURRENT A			Maximum Rated Current (11.060) A			RW	Num		RA		US
00.047	Rated Frequency	**{05.006}**	0.0 to 550.0 Hz			50Hz: 50.0 60Hz: 60.0			RW	Num				US
	Volts per 1000 rpm	**{05.033}**			0 to 10000 V / 1000 rpm			98 V / 1000 rpm	RW	Num				US
00.048	User Drive Mode	**{11.031}**	Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3)			Open-loop (1)	RFC-A (2)	RFC-S (3)	RW	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
00.049	User Security Status	**{11.044}**	Menu 0 (0), All Menus (1), Read-only Menu 0 (2), Read-only (3), Status Only (4), No Access (5)			Menu 0 (0)			RW	Txt	ND		PT	
00.050	Software Version	**{11.029}**	0 to 99999999						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
00.051	Action On Trip Detection	**{10.037}**	00000 to 11111			00000			RW	Bin				US
00.052	Reset Serial Communications	**{11.020}**	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC		
00.053	Motor Thermal Time Constant 1	**{04.015}**	1.0 to 3000.0 s			89.0 s			RW	Num				US
00.054	RFC Low Speed Mode	**{05.064}**			Injection (0), Non-salient (1)			Non-salient (1)	RW	Txt				US
00.055	Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current	**{05.071}**			0.0 to 1000.0 %			20.0 %	RW	Num		RA		US
00.056	No-load Lq	**{05.072}**			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US

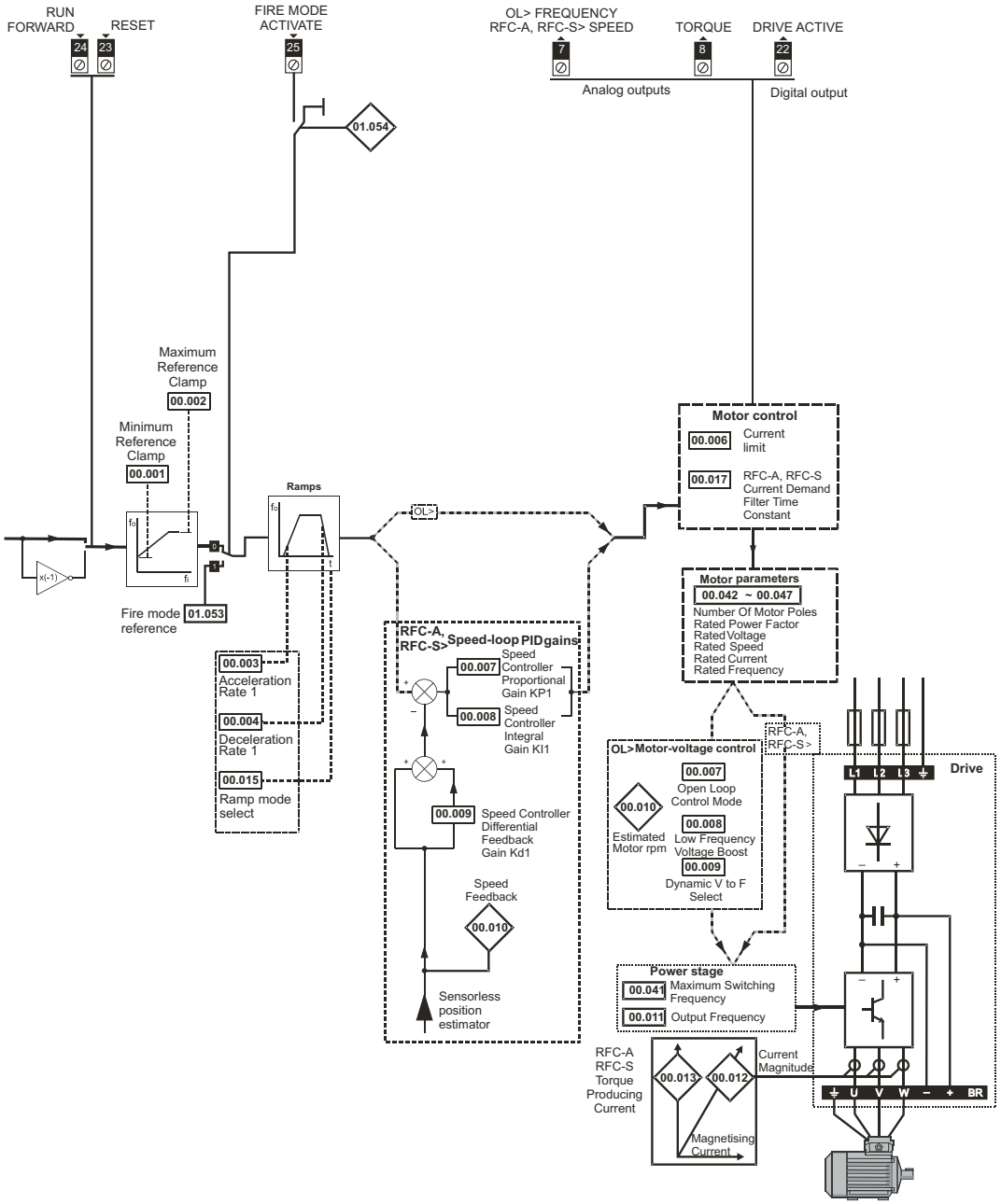
Parameter			Range			Default			Type					
			OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
00.057	Iq Test Current or Inductance Measurement	**{05.075}**			0 to 200 %			100 %	RW	Num				US
00.058	Phase Offset At Iq Test Current	**{05.077}**			±90.0 °			0.0 °	RW	Num		RA		US
00.059	Lq At The Defined Iq Test Current	**{05.078}**			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US
00.060	Id Test Current for Inductance Measurement	**{05.082}**			-100 to 0 %			-50 %	RW	Num				US
00.061	Lq At The Defined Id Test Current	**{05.084}**			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination
IP	IP address	Mac	Mac address	Date	Date parameter	Time	Time parameter						

Figure 6-1 Menu 0 logic diagram



The parameters are all shown in their default settings


RUN FORWARD
RESET
24
23
FIRE MODE ACTIVATE
25
01.054
OL> FREQUENCY RFC-A, RFC-S> SPEED
7
TORQUE
8
DRIVE ACTIVE
22
Analog outputs
Digital output
Maximum Reference Clamp
00.002
Minimum Reference Clamp
00.001
Ramps
Fire mode reference
01.053
00.003
Acceleration Rate 1
00.004
Deceleration Rate 1
00.015
Ramp mode select
OL>
Motor control
00.006
Current limit
00.017
RFC-A, RFC-S Current Demand Filter Time Constant
Motor parameters
00.042 ~ 00.047
Number Of Motor Poles
Rated Power Factor
Rated Voltage
Rated Speed
Rated Current
Rated Frequency
RFC-A, RFC-S> Speed-loop PID gains
00.007
Speed Controller Proportional Gain KP1
00.008
Speed Controller Integral Gain KI1
00.009
Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd1
Speed Feedback
00.010
Sensorless position estimator
OL> Motor-voltage control
00.007
Open Loop Control Mode
00.010
Estimated Motor rpm
00.008
Low Frequency Voltage Boost
00.009
Dynamic V to F Select
RFC-A, RFC-S>
Drive
L1 L2 L3
Power stage
00.041
Maximum Switching Frequency
00.011
Output Frequency
RFC-A RFC-S Torque Producing Current
00.013
00.012
Current Magnitude
Magnetising Current
+ U V W – + BR

6.2 Parameter descriptions

6.2.1 Pr mm.000

Pr **mm.000** is available in all menus, commonly used functions are provided as text strings in Pr **mm.000** shown in Table 6-1. The functions in Table 6-1 can also be selected by entering the appropriate numeric values (as shown in Table 6-2) in Pr **mm.000**. For example, enter 7001 in Pr **mm.000** to erase the file in NV media card location 001.

Table 6-1 Commonly used functions in xx.000

Value	Equivalent value	String	Action
0	0	**[No Action]**	
1000	1	**[Save parameters]**	Save parameters when under voltage is not active and low voltage threshold is not active
6001	2	**[Load file 1]**	Load the drive parameters or user program file from NV media card file 001
4001	3	**[Save to file 1]**	Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file 001
6002	4	**[Load file 2]**	Load the drive parameters or user program file from NV media card file 002
4002	5	**[Save to file 2]**	Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file 002
6003	6	**[Load file 3]**	Load the drive parameters or user program file from NV media card file 003
4003	7	**[Save to file 3]**	Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file 003
12000	8	**[Show non-default]**	Displays parameters that are different from defaults
12001	9	**[Destinations]**	Displays parameters that are set
1233	10	**[Reset 50Hz Defs]**	Load parameters with standard (50 Hz) defaults
1244	11	**[Reset 60Hz Defs]**	Load parameters with US (60 Hz) defaults
1070	12	**[Reset modules]**	Reset all option modules
11001	13	**[Read Enc. NP P1]**	No function on the F300
11051	14	**[Read Enc. NP P2]**	

Table 6-2 Functions in Pr mm.000

Value	Action
1000	Save parameters when *Under Voltage Active* (Pr **10.016**) is not active and *Low Under Voltage Threshold Select* mode (Pr **06.067** = Off) is not active.
1001	Save parameter under all conditions
1070	Reset all option modules
1233	Load standard (50 Hz) defaults
1234	Load standard (50 Hz) defaults to all menus except option module menus (i.e 15 to 20 and 24 to 28)
1244	Load US (60 Hz) defaults
1245	Load US (60 Hz) defaults to all menus except option module menus (i.e 15 to 20 and 24 to 28)
1253	Change drive mode and load standard (50 Hz) defaults
1254	Change drive mode and load US (60 Hz) defaults
1255	Change drive mode and load standard (50 Hz) defaults except for menus 15 to 20 and 24 to 28
1256	Change drive mode and load US (60 Hz) defaults except for menus 15 to 20 and 24 to 28
1299	Reset {Stored HF} trip.
2001*	Create a boot file on a non-volatile media card based on the present drive parameters including all Menu 20 parameters
4yyy*	NV media card: Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file xxx
5yyy*	NV media card: Transfer the onboard user program to onboard user program file xxx
6yyy*	NV media card: Load the drive parameters from parameter file xxx or the onboard user program from onboard user program file xxx
7yyy*	NV media card: Erase file xxx
8yyy*	NV Media card: Compare the data in the drive with file xxx
9555*	NV media card: Clear the warning suppression flag
9666*	NV media card: Set the warning suppression flag
9777*	NV media card: Clear the read-only flag
9888*	NV media card: Set the read-only flag
9999*	NV media card: Erase and format the NV media card
12000**	Only display parameters that are different from their default value. This action does not require a drive reset.
12001**	Only display parameters that are used to set-up destinations (i.e. DE format bit is 1). This action does not require a drive reset.
40yyy	Back-up all drive data.
60yyy	Load all drive data.

* See Chapter 9 *NV Media Card Operation* on page 162 for more information on these functions.

** These functions do not require a drive reset to become active. All other functions require a drive reset to initiate the function.

To allow easy access to some commonly used functions, refer to the table overleaf. Equivalent values and strings are also provided in the table above.

6.3 Full descriptions

Table 6-3 Key to parameter table coding

Coding	Attribute
RW	Read/Write: can be written by the user
RO	Read only: can only be read by the user
Bit	1 bit parameter. 'On' or 'Off' on the display
Num	Number: can be uni-polar or bi-polar
Txt	Text: the parameter uses text strings instead of numbers.
Bin	Binary parameter
IP	IP Address parameter
Mac	Mac Address parameter
Date	Date parameter
Time	Time parameter
Chr	Character parameter
FI	Filtered: some parameters which can have rapidly changing values are filtered when displayed on the drive keypad for easy viewing.
DE	Destination: This parameter selects the destination of an input or logic function.
RA	Rating dependent: this parameter is likely to have different values and ranges with drives of different voltage and current ratings. Parameters with this attribute will be transferred to the destination drive by non-volatile storage media when the rating of the destination drive is different from the source drive and the file is a parameter file. However, the values will be transferred if only the current rating is different and the file is a difference from default type file.
ND	No default: The parameter is not modified when defaults are loaded
NC	Not copied: not transferred to or from non-volatile media during copying.
PT	Protected: cannot be used as a destination.
US	User save: parameter saved in drive EEPROM when the user initiates a parameter save.
PS	Power-down save: parameter automatically saved in drive EEPROM when the under volts (UV) trip occurs.

6.3.1 Parameter x.00

00.000 {mm.000}	**Parameter zero**								
RW	Num				ND	NC	PT		
⇳	0 to 65,535				⇨				

6.3.2 Speed limits

00.001 {01.007}	**Minimum Reference Clamp**								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_NEGATIVE_REF_ CLAMP1 Hz / rpm			⇨	0.0 Hz			
RFC-A						0.0 rpm			
RFC-S									

(When the drive is jogging, [**00.001**] has no effect.)

Open-loop

Set Pr **00.001** at the required minimum output frequency of the drive for both directions of rotation. The drive speed reference is scaled between Pr **00.001** and Pr **00.002**. [**00.001**] is a nominal value; slip compensation may cause the actual frequency to be higher.

RFC-A / RFC-S

Set Pr **00.001** at the required minimum motor speed for both directions of rotation. The drive speed reference is scaled between Pr **00.001** and Pr **00.002**.

00.002 {01.006}	**Maximum Reference Clamp**								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_POSITIVE_REF_ CLAMP1 Hz / rpm			⇨	50Hz default: 50.0 Hz 60Hz default: 60.0 Hz			
RFC-A						50Hz default:1500.0 rpm 60Hz default:1800.0 rpm			
RFC-S									

(The drive has additional over-speed protection).

Open-loop

Set Pr **00.002** at the required maximum output frequency for both directions of rotation. The drive speed reference is scaled between Pr **00.001** and Pr **00.002**. [**00.002**] is a nominal value; slip compensation may cause the actual frequency to be higher.

RFC-A / RFC-S

Set Pr **00.002** at the required maximum motor speed for both directions of rotation. The drive speed reference is scaled between Pr **00.001** and Pr **00.002**.

For operating at high speeds see section on page 160.

6.3.3 Ramps, speed reference selection, current limit

00.003 {02.011}	**Acceleration Rate 1**								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_ACCEL_RATE			⇨	20 s to Pr **1.006**			
RFC-A						20 s to Pr **1.006**			
RFC-S									

Set Pr **00.003** at the required rate of acceleration.

Note that larger values produce lower acceleration. The rate applies in both directions of rotation.

00.004 {02.021}	**Deceleration Rate 1**								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_ACCEL_RATE			⇨	20 s to Pr **1.006**			
RFC-A						20 s to Pr **1.006**			
RFC-S									

Set Pr **00.004** at the required rate of deceleration.

Note that larger values produce lower deceleration. The rate applies in both directions of rotation.

00.005 {01.014}		**Reference Selector**								
RW		Txt							US	
OL	⇳	A1 A2 (0), A1 Preset (1), A2 Preset (2), Preset (3), Keypad (4), Precision (5), Keypad Ref (6)	⇨	A1 A2 (0)						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

Use Pr **00.005** to select the required frequency/speed reference as follows:

Setting		Description
A1 A2	0	Analog input 1 OR analog input 2 selectable by digital input, terminal 26
A1 Preset	1	Analog input 1 OR preset frequency/speed
A2 Preset	2	Analog input 2 OR preset frequency/speed
Preset (3)	3	Pre-set frequency/speed
Keypad (4)	4	Keypad mode
Precision (5)	5	Precision reference
Keypad Ref (6)	6	Keypad Reference

00.006 {04.007}		**Symmetrical Current Limit**								
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_MOTOR1_ CURRENT_LIMIT %	⇨	165 %						
RFC-A				175 %						
RFC-S										

Pr **00.006** limits the maximum output current of the drive (and hence maximum motor torque) to protect the drive and motor from overload.

Set Pr **00.006** at the required maximum torque as a percentage of the rated torque of the motor, as follows:

$$[\mathbf{00.006}] = \frac{\mathbf{T_R}}{\mathbf{T_{RATED}}} \times \mathbf{100}\ \mathbf{(\%)}$$

Where:

$\mathbf{T_R}$ Required maximum torque

$\mathbf{T_{RATED}}$ Motor rated torque

Alternatively, set Pr **00.006** at the required maximum active (torque-producing) current as a percentage of the rated active current of the motor, as follows:

$$[\mathbf{00.006}] = \frac{\mathbf{I_R}}{\mathbf{I_{RATED}}} \times \mathbf{100}\ \mathbf{(\%)}$$

Where:

$\mathbf{I_R}$ Required maximum active current

$\mathbf{I_{RATED}}$ Motor rated active current

6.3.4 Voltage boost, (open-loop), Speed-loop PID gains (RFC-A / RFC-S)

00.007 {05.014}		**Open-loop Control Mode (OL)**								
00.007 {03.010}		**Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1 (RFC)**								
RW		Txt / Num							US	
OL	⇳	Ur S (0), Ur (1), Fixed (2), Ur Auto (3), Ur I (4), Square (5), Current 1P (6)	⇨	Ur I (4)						
RFC-A	⇳	0.0000 to 200.000 s/rad	⇨	0.0300 s/rad						
RFC-S										

Open-loop

There are seven voltage modes available, which fall into three categories, vector control, fixed boost and single phase current output. For further details, refer to section 8.1.1 *Open loop motor control* on page 151.

RFC-A/ RFC-S

Pr **00.007** (**03.010**) operates in the feed-forward path of the speed-control loop in the drive. See Figure 11-4 *Menu 3 RFC-A, RFC-S logic diagram* on page 188 for a schematic of the speed controller. For information on setting up the speed controller gains, refer to section 8 *Optimization* on page 151.

00.008 {05.015}		**Low Frequency Voltage Boost (OL)**								
00.008 {03.011}		**Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1 (RFC)**								
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	0.0 to 25.0 %	⇨	3.0 %						
RFC-A	⇳	0.00 to 655.35 s^2/rad	⇨	0.10 s^2/rad						
RFC-S										

Open-loop

When *Open-loop Control Mode* (00.007) is set at **Fd** or **SrE**, set Pr **00.008** (**05.015**) at the required value for the motor to run reliably at low speeds.

Excessive values of Pr **00.008** can cause the motor to be overheated.

RFC-A/ RFC-S

Pr **00.008** (**03.011**) operates in the feed-forward path of the speed-control loop in the drive. For information on setting up the speed controller gains See section 11-4 *Menu 3 RFC-A, RFC-S logic diagram* on page 188. For information on setting up the speed controller gains, refer to section 8 *Optimization* on page 151.

00.009 {05.013}		**Dynamic V to F Select (OL)**								
00.009 {03.012}		**Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd 1 (RFC)**								
RW		Bit							US	
OL	⇳	Off (0) or On (1)	⇨	Off (0)						
RFC-A	⇳	0.00000 to 0.65535 1/rad	⇨	0.00000 1/rad						
RFC-S										

Open-loop

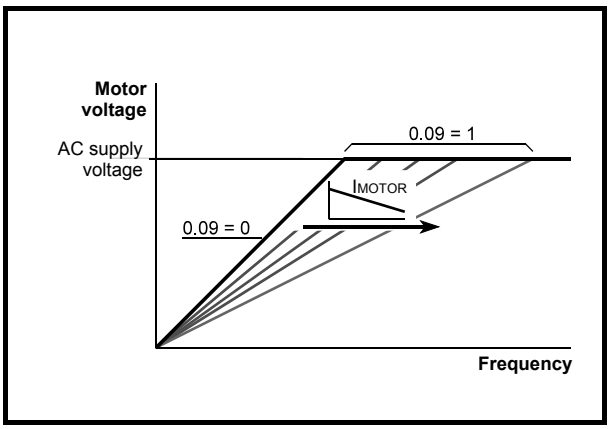
Set Pr **00.009** (**05.013**) at 0 when the V/f characteristic applied to the motor is to be fixed. It is then based on the rated voltage and frequency of the motor.

Set Pr **00.009** at 1 when reduced power dissipation is required in the motor when it is lightly loaded. The V/f characteristic is then variable resulting in the motor voltage being proportionally reduced for lower motor currents. Figure 6-2 shows the change in V/f slope when the motor current is reduced.

RFC-A / RFC-S

Pr **00.009** (**03.012**) operates in the feedback path of the speed-control loop in the drive. See Figure 11-4 *Menu 3 RFC-A, RFC-S logic diagram* on page 188 for a schematic of the speed controller. For information on setting up the speed controller gains, refer to Figure 8 *Optimization* on page 151.

Figure 6-2 Fixed and variable V/f characteristics



6.3.5 Monitoring

00.010 {05.004}	Motor Rpm									
RW		Bit							US	
OL	⇳	±180000 rpm					⇨			

Open-loop

Pr **00.010** (**05.004**) indicates the value of motor speed that is estimated from the following:

02.001 *Post Ramp Reference*
00.042 *Number Of Motor Poles*

00.010 {03.002}	Speed Feedback									
RO		Num	FI				ND	NC	PT		
RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	±VM_SPEED rpm					⇨				

RFC-A / RFC-S

Pr **00.010** (**03.002**) indicates the value of motor speed that is obtained from the speed feedback.

00.011 {05.001}	Output Frequency (OL)									
RO		Num	FI				ND	NC	PT		
OL RFC-A	⇳	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz					⇨				

Open-loop and RFC-A

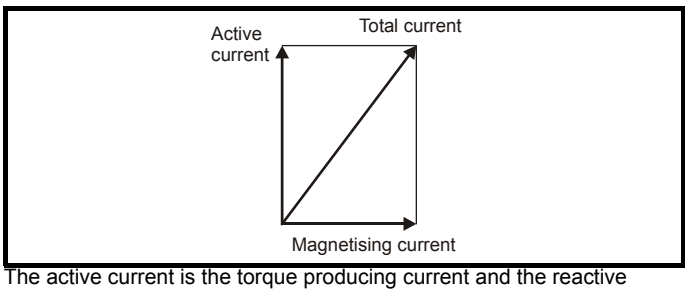
Pr **00.011** displays the frequency at the drive output.

RFC-S

Pr **00.011** displays the position of the encoder in mechanical values of 0 to 65,535. There are 65,536 units to one mechanical revolution.

00.012 {04.001}	Current Magnitude									
RO		Bit	FI				ND	NC	PT		
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR A					⇨				

Pr **00.012** displays the rms value of the output current of the drive in each of the three phases. The phase currents consist of an active component and a reactive component, which can form a resultant current vector as shown in the following diagram:



The active current is the torque producing current and the reactive current is the magnetizing or flux-producing current.

00.013 {04.002}	Torque Producing Current									
RO		Bit	FI				ND	NC	PT		
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT A					⇨				

When the motor is being driven below its rated speed, the torque is proportional to [**00.013**].

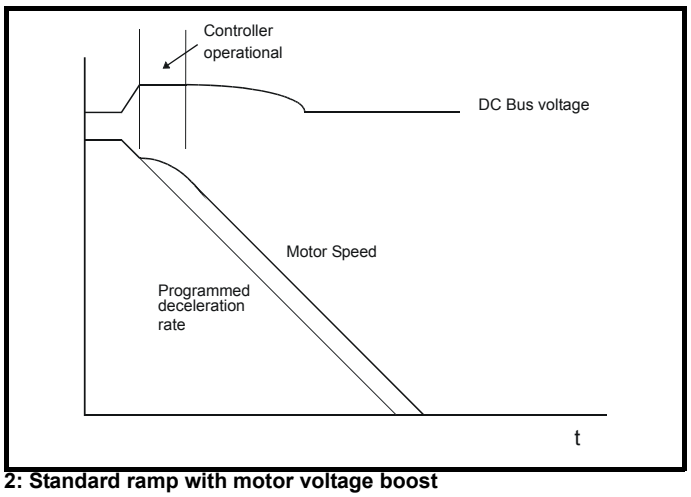
6.3.6 Ramp mode selector, Stop and torque mode selectors

00.015 {02.004}	Ramp Mode Select									
RW		Txt							US	
OL	⇳	Standard (1), Std boost (2)					⇨	Standard (1)		
RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	Standard (1)					⇨	Standard (1)		

Pr **00.015** sets the ramp mode of the drive as shown below:

1: Standard ramp

Standard ramp is used. During deceleration, if the voltage rises to the standard ramp level (Pr **02.008**) it causes a controller to operate, the output of which changes the demanded load current in the motor. As the controller regulates the link voltage, the motor deceleration increases as the speed approaches zero speed. When the motor deceleration rate reaches the programmed deceleration rate the controller ceases to operate and the drive continues to decelerate at the programmed rate. If the standard ramp voltage (Pr **02.008**) is set lower than the nominal DC bus level the drive will not decelerate the motor, but it will coast to rest. The output of the ramp controller (when active) is a current demand that is fed to the frequency changing current controller (Open-loop modes) or the torque producing current controller (RFC-A or RFC-S modes). The gain of these controllers can be modified with Pr **04.013** and Pr **04.014**.



2: Standard ramp with motor voltage boost

This mode is the same as normal standard ramp mode except that the motor voltage is boosted by 20 %. This increases the losses in the motor, dissipating some of the mechanical energy as heat giving faster deceleration.

00.017 {08.026}	Digital Input 6 Destination							
RW	Num		DE				PT	US
OL	⇳	00.000 to 59.999		⇨	06.031			

Open-loop

Pr **00.017** sets the destination of digital input T27.

00.017 {04.012}	Current Reference Filter Time Constant								
RW	Num							US	
RFC-A	⇳	0.0 to 25.0 ms			⇨	1.0 ms			
RFC-S									

RFC-A / RFC-S

A first order filter, with a time constant defined by Pr **00.017**, is provided on the current demand to reduce acoustic noise and vibration produced as a result of position feedback quantisation noise. The filter introduces a lag in the speed loop, and so the speed loop gains may need to be reduced to maintain stability as the filter time constant is increased.

00.019 {07.011}	Analog Input 1 Mode								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	4-20 mA Low (-4), 20-4 mA Low (-3), 4-20 mA Hold (-2), 20-4 mA Hold (-1), 0-20 mA (0), 20-0 mA (1), 4-20 mA Trip (2), 20-4 mA Trip (3), 4-20 mA (4), 20-4 mA (5), Volt (6), Therm Short Cct (7), Thermistor (8), Therm No Trip (9)			⇨	4-20 mA (4)			
RFC-A									
RFC-S									

In modes 2 and 3, a current loop loss trip is generated if the current falls below 3 mA.

In modes -4, -3, 2 and 3 the analog input level goes to 0.0 % if the input current falls below 3 mA.

In modes -2 and -1 the analog input remains at the value it had in the previous sample before the current fell below 3 mA.

Pr Value	Pr string	Comments
-4	4-20 mA Low	4-20 mA low value on current loss (1)
-3	20-4 mA Low	20-4 mA low value on current loss (1)
-2	4-20 mA Hold	4-20 mA hold at level before loss on current loss
-1	20-4 mA Hold	20-4 mA hold at level before loss on current loss
0	0-20 mA	
1	20-0 mA	
2	4-20 mA Trip	4-20 mA trip on current loss
3	20-4 mA Trip	20-4 mA trip on current loss
4	4-20 mA	
5	20-4 mA	
6	Volt	
7	Therm Short Cct	Temperature Measurement Input With Short Circuit Detection
8	Thermistor	Temperature Measurement Without Short Circuit Detection
9	Therm No Trip	Temperature Measurement Input With No Trips

00.020 {07.010}	Analog Input 1 Destination								
RW	Num			DE				PT	US
OL	⇳	00.000 to 59.999			⇨	01.036			
RFC-A									
RFC-S									

Pr **00.020** sets the destination of analog input 1.

00.021 {07.011}	Analog Input 2 Mode								
RW	Txt								US
OL	⇳	4-20 mA Low (-4), 20-4 mA Low (-3), 4-20 mA Hold (-2), 20-4 mA Hold (-1), 0-20 mA (0), 20-0 mA (1), 4-20 mA Trip (2), 20-4 mA Trip (3), 4-20 mA (4), 20-4 mA (5), Volt (6)			⇨	Volt (6)			
RFC-A									
RFC-S									

In modes 2 and 3, a current loop loss trip is generated if the current falls below 3 mA.

In modes -4, -3, 2 and 3 the analog input level goes to 0.0 % if the input current falls below 3 mA.

In modes -2 and -1 the analog input remains at the value it had in the previous sample before the current fell below 3 mA.

Pr Value	Pr string	Comments
-4	4-20 mA Low	4-20 mA low value on current loss (1)
-3	20-4 mA Low	20-4 mA low value on current loss (1)
-2	4-20 mA Hold	4-20 mA hold at level before loss on current loss
-1	20-4 mA Hold	20-4 mA hold at level before loss on current loss
0	0-20 mA	
1	20-0 mA	
2	4-20 mA Trip	4-20 mA trip on current loss
3	20-4 mA Trip	20-4 mA trip on current loss
4	4-20 mA	
5	20-4 mA	
6	Volt	
7	Therm Short Cct	Temperature Measurement Input With Short Circuit Detection
8	Thermistor	Temperature Measurement Without Short Circuit Detection
9	Therm No Trip	Temperature Measurement Input With No Trips

00.022 {01.010}	**Bipolar Reference Enable**									
RW		Bit							US	
OL	⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)	⇨	OFF (0)						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

Pr **00.022** determines whether the reference is uni-polar or bi-polar as follows:

Pr 00.022	Function	
0	Unipolar speed/frequency reference	
1	Bipolar speed/frequency reference	

00.024 {01.021}	**Preset Reference 1**									
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_ REF Hz / rpm	⇨	0.0 Hz / rpm						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

00.025 {01.022}	**Preset Reference 2**									
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_ REF Hz / rpm	⇨	0.0 Hz / rpm						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

00.026 {01.023}	**Preset Reference 3 (OL)**									
00.026 {03.008}	**Overspeed Threshold (RFC)**									
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_ REF Hz	⇨	0.0 Hz / rpm						
RFC-A	⇳	0 to 40000 rpm								
RFC-S										

Open-loop

If the preset reference has been selected (see Pr **00.005**), the speed at which the motor runs is determined by these parameters.

RFC-A / RFC-S

If the speed feedback (Pr **03.002**) exceeds this level in either direction, an overspeed trip is produced. If this parameter is set to zero, the overspeed threshold is automatically set to 120 % x SPEED_FREQ_MAX.

00.027 {01.024}	**Preset Reference 4 (OL)**									
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_ REF Hz	⇨	0.0						
RFC-A	⇳		⇨							
RFC-S										

Open-loop

Refer to Pr **00.024** to Pr **00.026**.

00.029 {11.036}	**NV Media Card Data Previously Loaded**									
RO		Num					NC	PT	US	
OL	⇳	0 to 999	⇨	0						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

This parameter shows the number of the data block last transferred from a SMARTCARD to the drive.

00.030 {11.42}	**Parameter Cloning**									
RO		Txt					NC		US*	
OL	⇳	None (0), Read (1), Program (2), Auto (3), Boot (4)	⇨	None (0)						
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

* Only a value of 3 or 4 in this parameter is saved.

NOTE

If Pr **00.030** is equal to 1 or 2, this value is not transferred to the EEPROM or the drive. If Pr **00.030** is set to a 3 or 4 the value is transferred.

Pr String	Pr value	Comment
None	0	Inactive
Read	1	Read parameter set from the NV Media Card
Program	2	Programming a parameter set to the NV Media Card
Auto	3	Auto save
Boot	4	Boot mode

For further information, please refer tosection 9 *NV Media Card Operation* on page 162.

00.031 {11.033}	Drive Rated Voltage									
RO	Txt				ND	NC	PT			
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	200 V (0), 400 V (1), 575 V (2), 690 V (3)			⇨					

Pr **00.031** indicates the voltage rating of the drive.

00.033 {06.009}	Catch A Spinning Motor (OL)								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	Disable (0), Enable (1), Fwd Only (2), Rev Only (3)			⇨	Disable (0)			

Open-loop

When the drive is enabled with Pr **00.033** = 0, the output frequency starts at zero and ramps to the required reference. When the drive is enabled when Pr **00.033** has a non-zero value, the drive performs a start-up test to determine the motor speed and then sets the initial output frequency to the synchronous frequency of the motor. Restrictions may be placed on the frequencies detected by the drive as follows:

Pr 00.033	Pr string	Function
0	Disable	Disabled
1	Enable	Detect all frequencies
2	Fwd only	Detect positive frequencies only
3	Rev only	Detect negative frequencies only

00.034 {11.030}	User security code								
RW	Num				ND	NC	PT	US	
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	0 to 2147483647			⇨	0			

If any number other than 0 is programmed into this parameter, user security is applied so that no parameters except Pr **00.049** can be adjusted with the keypad. When this parameter is read via a keypad it appears as zero. For further details refer to section 5.9.3 *User Security Code* on page 109.

00.035 {11.024}	Serial Mode								
RW	Txt							US	
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	8 2 NP (0), 8 1 NP (1), 8 1 EP (2), 8 1 OP (3), 8 2 NP M (4), 8 1 NP M (5), 8 1 EP M (6), 8 1 OP M (7), 7 2 NP (8), 7 1 NP (9), 7 1 EP (10), 7 1 OP (11), 7 2 NP M (12), 7 1 NP M (13), 7 1 EP M (14), 7 1 OP M (15)			⇨	8 2 NP (0)			

This parameter defines the communications protocol used by the EIA485 comms port on the drive. This parameter can be changed via the drive keypad, via a Solutions Module or via the comms interface itself. If it is changed via the comms interface, the response to the command uses the original protocol. The master should wait at least 20 ms before send a new message using the new protocol. (Note: ANSI uses 7 data bits, 1 stop bit and even parity; Modbus RTU uses 8 data bits, 2 stops bits and no parity).

Pr Value	Pr String
0	8 2 NP
1	8 1 NP
2	8 1 EP
3	8 1 OP
4	8 2 NP M
5	8 1 NP M
6	8 1 EP M
7	8 1 OP M
8	7 2 NP
9	7 1 NP
10	7 1 EP
11	7 1 OP
12	7 2 NP M
13	7 1 NP M
14	7 1 EP M
15	7 1 OP M

The core drive always uses the Modbus rtu protocol and is always a slave. *Serial Mode* (11.024) defines the data format used by the serial comms interface. The bits in the value of *Serial Mode* (11.024) define the data format as follows. Bit 3 is always 0 in the core product as 8 data bits are required for Modbus rtu. The parameter value can be extended in derivative products which provide alternative communications protocols if required.

Bits	3	2	1 and 0
Format	Number of data bits 0 = 8 bits 1 = 7 bits	Register mode 0 = Standard 1 = Modified	Stop bits and Parity 0 = 2 stop bits, no parity 1 = 1 stop bit, no parity 2 = 1 stop bit, even parity 3 = 1 stop bit, odd parity

Bit 2 selects either standard or modified register mode. The menu and parameter numbers are derived for each mode as given in the following table. Standard mode is compatible with Unidrive SP. Modified mode is provided to allow register numbers up to 255 to be addressed. If any menus with numbers above 63 should contain more than 99 parameters, then these parameters cannot be accessed via Modbus rtu.

Register mode	Register address
Standard	(mm x 100) + ppp - 1 where mm ≤ 162 and ppp ≤ 99
Modified	(mm x 256) + ppp - 1 where mm ≤ 63 and ppp ≤ 255

Changing the parameters does not immediately change the serial communications settings. See *Reset Serial Communications* (11.020) for more details.

00.036 {11.025}	Serial Baud Rate								
RW	Txt							US	
OL RFC-A RFC-S	⇳	300 (0), 600 (1), 1200 (2), 2400 (3), 4800 (4), 9600 (5), 19200 (6), 38400 (7), 57600 (8), 76800 (9), 115200 (10)			⇨	19200 (6)			

This parameter can be changed via the drive keypad, via a Solutions Module or via the comms interface itself. If it is changed via the comms interface, the response to the command uses the original baud rate. The master should wait at least 20 ms before send a new message using the new baud rate.

00.037 {11.023}	Serial Address								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	1 to 247			⇨	1			
RFC-A									
RFC-S									

Used to define the unique address for the drive for the serial interface. The drive is always a slave address 0 is used to globally address all slaves, and so this address should not be set in this parameter

00.038 {04.013}	Current Controller Kp Gain								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	0 to 30000			⇨	20			
RFC-A						150			
RFC-S									

00.039 {04.014}	Current Controller Ki Gain								
RW	Num							US	
OL	⇳	0 to 30000			⇨	40			
RFC-A	⇳				⇨	2000			
RFC-S									

These parameters control the proportional and integral gains of the current controller used in the open loop drive. The current controller either provides current limits or closed loop torque control by modifying the drive output frequency. The control loop is also used in its torque mode during line power supply loss, or when the controlled mode standard ramp is active and the drive is decelerating, to regulate the flow of current into the drive.

00.040 {05.012}	Auto-tune								
RW	Num					NC			
OL	⇳	0 to 2			⇨	0			
RFC-A	⇳	0 to 5			⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0 to 6			⇨				

Open-Loop

There are two autotune tests available in open loop mode, a stationary and a rotating test. A rotating autotune should be used whenever possible so the measured value of power factor of the motor is used by the drive.

- A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to remove the load from the motor shaft. The stationary test measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017), *Transient Inductance* (05.024), *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and current at *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060) which are required for good performance in vector control modes (see Open Loop Control Mode (00.007), later in this table). If *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) = 1, then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). The stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. To perform a Stationary autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).
- A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is unloaded. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune, as above, then a rotating test is performed in which the motor is accelerated with currently selected ramps up to a frequency of *Rated Frequency* (05.006) x $^{2}/_{3}$, and the frequency is maintained at that level for 4 seconds. *Stator Inductance* (05.025) is measured and this value is used in conjunction with other motor parameters to calculate *Rated Power Factor* (05.010). To perform a Rotating autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 2, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

Following the completion of an autotune test the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the *Drive Enable* (06.015) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the *Control Word* (06.042) and *Control Word Enable* (06.043).

RFC-A

There are four autotune tests available in RFC-A mode, a stationary test, a rotating test and two inertia measurement tests. A stationary autotune will give moderate performance whereas a rotating autotune will give improved performance as it measures the actual values of the motor parameters required by the drive. An inertia measurement test should be performed separately to a stationary or rotating autotune.

It is highly recommended that a rotating autotune is performed (Pr **00.040** set to 2).

- A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to remove the load from the motor shaft. The stationary autotune measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Transient Inductance* (05.024) of the motor. These are used to calculate the current loop gains, and at the end of the test the values in Pr **04.013** and Pr **04.014** are updated. *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and *Current At Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060) for the drive are also measured. Additionally, if *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) = 1, then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). A stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. To perform a Stationary autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).
- A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is unloaded. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune, a rotating test is then performed which the motor is accelerated with currently selected ramps up to a frequency of *Rated Frequency* (05.006) x $^{2}/_{3}$, and the frequency is maintained at the level for up to 40 s. During the rotating autotune the *Stator Inductance* (05.025), and the motor saturation breakpoints (Pr **05.029**, Pr **05.030**, Pr **06.062** and Pr **05.063**) are modified by the drive. The power factor is also modified for user information only, but is not used after this point as the stator inductance is used in the vector control algorithm instead. To perform a Rotating autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 2, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

Following the completion of an autotune test, the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the *Drive Enable* (06.015) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the control word (Pr **06.042** & Pr **06.043**).

RFC-S

There are two autotune tests available in RFC-S sensorless mode, a stationary autotune and an inertia measurement test.

- The stationary autotune can be used to measure all the necessary parameters for basic control. The tests measures *Stator Resistance* (05.017), *Ld* (05.024), *No Load Lq* (05.068), *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and *Current At Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060). If *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) =

1 then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). The *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and the Ld (05.024) are then used to set up *Current controller Kp Gain* (04.013) and *Current Controller Ki Gain* (04.014). To perform a Stationary autotune, set **Pr 00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

- In sensorless mode, if Rotating autotune is selected (Pr **00.040** = 2), then a stationary autotune is performed.

Following the completion of an autotune test the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the drive *Enable Parameter* (06.015) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the control word (Pr **06.042** & Pr **06.043**).

00.041 {05.018}	**Maximum Switching Frequency**									
RW	Num					NC				
OL	⇳	2 kHz (0), 3 kHz (1), 4 kHz (2), 6 kHz (3), 8 kHz (4), 12 kHz (5), 16 kHz (6)			⇨	3 kHz (1)				
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

This parameter defines the required switching frequency. The drive may automatically reduce the actual switching frequency (without changing this parameter) if the power stage becomes too hot. A thermal model of the IGBT junction temperature is used based on the heatsink temperature and an instantaneous temperature drop using the drive output current and switching frequency. The estimated IGBT junction temperature is displayed in Pr **07.034**. If the temperature exceeds 145 °C the switching frequency is reduced if this is possible (i.e >3 kHz). Reducing the switching frequency reduces the drive losses and the junction temperature displayed in Pr **07.034** also reduces. If the load condition persists the junction temperature may continue to rise again above 145 °C and the drive cannot reduce the switching frequency further the drive will initiate an 'OHt Inverter' trip. Every second the drive will attempt to restore the switching frequency to the level set in Pr **00.041**.

The full range of switching frequencies are not available on all ratings of the Powerdrive F300. See section 8.3 *Switching frequency* on page 160 for the maximum available switching frequency for each drive rating.

6.3.7 Motor parameters

00.042 {05.011}	**Number Of Motor Poles**									
RW	Num							US		
OL	⇳	Automatic (0) to 480 Poles (240)				⇨	Automatic (0)			
RFC-A										
RFC-S						⇨	6 Poles (3)			

Open-loop

This parameter is used in the calculation of motor speed, and in applying the correct slip compensation. When Automatic (0) is selected, the number of motor poles is automatically calculated from the *Rated Frequency* (00.047) and the *Rated Speed* rpm (00.045). The number of poles = 120 * rated frequency / rpm rounded to the nearest even number.

RFC-A

This parameter must be set correctly for the vector control algorithms to operate correctly. When Automatic (0) is selected, the number of motor poles is automatically calculated from the *Rated Frequency* (00.047) and the *Rated Speed* rpm (00.045) rpm. The number of poles = 120 * rated frequency / rpm rounded to the nearest even number.

RFC-S

This parameter must be set correctly for the vector control algorithms to operate correctly. When auto is selected the number of poles is set to 6.

00.043 {05.010}	**Rated Power Factor**									
RW	Num								US	
OL	⇳	0.000 to 1.000				⇨	0.850			
RFC-A	⇳	0.000 to 1.000				⇨	0.850			
RFC-S	⇳					⇨				

The power factor is the true power factor of the motor, i.e. the angle between the motor voltage and current.

Open-loop

The power factor is used in conjunction with the motor rated current (Pr **00.046**) to calculate the rated active current and magnetizing current of the motor. The rated active current is used extensively to control the drive, and the magnetizing current is used in vector mode Rs compensation. It is important that this parameter is set up correctly.

This parameter is obtained by the drive during a rotational autotune. If a stationary autotune is carried out, then the nameplate value should be entered in Pr **00.043**.

RFC-A

If the stator inductance (Pr **05.025**) contains a non-zero value, the power factor used by the drive is continuously calculated and used in the vector control algorithms (this will not update Pr **00.043**).

If the stator inductance is set to zero (Pr **05.025**) then the power factor written in Pr **00.043** is used in conjunction with the motor rated current and other motor parameters to calculate the rated active and magnetizing currents which are used in the vector control algorithm.

This parameter is obtained by the drive during a rotational autotune. If a stationary autotune is carried out, then the nameplate value should be entered in Pr **00.043**.

00.044 {05.009}	**Rated Voltage**									
RW	Num					RA			US	
OL	⇳	±VM_AC_VOLTAGE_SET				⇨	200 V drive: 230 V 50Hz default 400 V drive: 400 V 60Hz default 400 V drive: 460 V 575 V drive: 575 V 690 V drive: 690 V			
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

Open-loop and RFC-A

Enter the value from the rating plate of the motor.

00.045 {05.008}	**Rated Speed**									
RW	Num					ND			US	
OL	⇳	0 to 33000 rpm				⇨	50 Hz default: 1500 rpm 60 Hz default: 1800 rpm			
RFC-A	⇳	0.00 to 33000.00 rpm				⇨	50 Hz default: 1450 rpm 60 Hz default: 1750 rpm			
RFC-S	⇳	0.00 to 33000.00 rpm				⇨	3000.00 rpm			

Open-loop

This is the speed at which the motor would rotate when supplied with its base frequency at rated voltage, under rated load conditions (= synchronous speed - slip speed). Entering the correct value into this parameter allows the drive to increase the output frequency as a function of load in order to compensate for this speed drop.

Slip compensation is disabled if Pr **00.045** is set to 0 or to synchronous speed, or if Pr **05.027** is set to 0.

If slip compensation is required this parameter should be set to the value from the rating plate of the motor, which should give the correct rpm for a hot machine. Sometimes it will be necessary to adjust this when the drive is commissioned because the nameplate value may be inaccurate. Slip compensation will operate correctly both below base speed and within the field weakening region. Slip compensation is normally used to correct for the motor speed to prevent speed variation with load. The rated load rpm can be set higher than synchronous speed to deliberately introduce speed droop. This can be useful to aid load sharing with mechanically coupled motors.

RFC-A

Rated load rpm is used with motor rated frequency to determine the full load slip of the motor which is used by the vector control algorithm. Incorrect setting of this parameter can result in the following:

- Reduced efficiency of motor operation
- Reduction of maximum torque available from the motor
- Failure to reach maximum speed
- Over-current trips
- Reduced transient performance
- Inaccurate control of absolute torque in torque control modes

The nameplate value is normally the value for a hot machine, however, some adjustment may be required when the drive is commissioned if the nameplate value is inaccurate. The rated full load rpm can be optimized by the drive (For further information, refer to section on page 153).

RFC-S

The rated speed is not used by the motor control algorithms, but is used by the motor thermal protection system.

00.046 {05.007}	**Rated Current**									
RW		Num				RA			US	
OL	⇳	±VM_RATED_CURRENT				⇨	Maximum Rated Current (11.060)			
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

Enter the name-plate value for the motor rated current.

00.047 {05.006}	**Rated Frequency**									
00.047 {05.033}	**Volts per 1000 rpm**									
RW		Num							US	
OL	⇳	0.0 to 550.0 Hz				⇨	50 Hz default: 50.0 Hz 60 Hz default: 60.0 Hz			
RFC-A	⇳	0.0 to 550.0 Hz								
RFC-S	⇳	0 to 10000 V / 1000 rpm				⇨	98 V / 1000 rpm			

Enter the value from the rating plate of the motor.

6.3.8 Operating-mode selection

00.048 {11.031}	**User Drive Mode**								
RW		Txt				ND	NC	PT	US
OL	⇳	Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3)				⇨	Open-loop (1)		
RFC-A						⇨	RFC-A (2)		
RFC-S						⇨	RFC-S (3)		

The settings for Pr **0.48** are as follows:

Setting	Operating mode
1	Open-loop
2	RFC-A
3	RFC-S

This parameter defines the drive operating mode. Pr **mm.000** must be set to '1253' (European defaults) or '1254' (USA defaults) before this parameter can be changed. When the drive is reset to implement any change in this parameter, the default settings of all parameters will be set according to the drive operating mode selected and saved in memory.

6.3.9 Status information

00.049 {11.044}	**User Security Status**									
RW		Txt						ND	PT	
OL	⇳	Menu 0 (0), All Menus (1), Read-only Menu 0 (2), Read-only (3), Status Only (4), No Access (5)				⇨	Menu 0 (0)			
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

This parameter controls access via the drive keypad as follows:

Security level	Description
0 (Menu 0)	All writable parameters are available to be edited but only parameters in Menu 0 are visible.
1 (All Menus)	All writable parameters are visible and available to be edited.
2 (Read-only Menu 0)	All parameters are read-only. Access is limited to Menu 0 parameters only.
3 (Read-only)	All parameters are read-only however all menus and parameters are visible.
4 (Status Only)	The keypad remains in status mode and no parameters can be viewed or edited.
5 (No Access)	The keypad remains in status mode and no parameters can be viewed or edited. Drive parameters cannot be accessed via a comms / fieldbus interface in the drive or any option module.

The keypad can adjust this parameter even when user security is set.

00.050 {11.029}	**Software Version**									
RO		Num					ND	NC	PT	
OL	⇳	0 to 99999999				⇨				
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

The parameter displays the software version of the drive.

00.051 {10.037}	**Action On Trip Detection**									
RW		Bin								US
OL	⇳	00000 to 11111				⇨	00000			
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

Each bit in this parameter has the following functions:

Bit	Function
0	Stop on non-important trips
1	Disable braking resistor overload detection
2	Disable phase loss stop
3	Disable braking resistor temperature monitoring
4	Disable parameter freeze on trip

Example
Pr **10.037**=8 (1000_{binary}) Th Brake Res trip is disabled

Pr **10.037**=12 (1100_{binary}) Th Brake Res and phase loss trip is disabled

Stop on non-important trips
If bit 0 is set to one the drive will attempt to stop before tripping if any of the following trip conditions are detected: I/O Overload, An Input 1 Loss, An Input 2 Loss or Keypad Mode.

Disable braking resistor overload detection
For details of braking resistor overload detection mode see Pr **10.030**.

Disable phase loss trip
Normally the drive will stop when the input phase loss condition is detected. If this bit is set to 1 the drive will continue to run and will only trip when the drive is brought to a stop by the user.

Disable braking resistor temperature monitoring
Size 3, 4 and 5 drives have an internal user install braking resistor with a thermistor to detect overheating of the resistor. As default bit 3 of Pr **10.037** is set to zero, and so if the braking resistor and its thermistor is not installed the drive will produce a trip (Th Brake Res) because the thermistor appears to be open-circuit. This trip can be disabled so that the drive can run by setting bit 3 of Pr **10.037** to one. If the resistor is installed then no trip is produced unless the thermistor fails, and so bit 3 of Pr **10.037** can be left at zero. This feature only applies to size 3, 4 and 5 drives. For example if Pr **10.037** = 8, then Th Brake Res trip will be disabled.

Disable parameter freeze on trip
If this bit is 0 then the parameters listed below are frozen on trip until the trip is cleared. If this bit is 1 then this feature is disabled.

Open-loop mode	RFC-A and RFC-S modes
Reference Selected (01.001)	*Reference Selected* (01.001)
Pre-skip Filter Reference (01.002)	*Pre-skip Filter Reference* (01.002)
Pre-ramp Reference (01.003)	*Pre-ramp Reference* (01.003)
Post Ramp Reference (02.001)	*Post Ramp Reference* (02.001)
Frequency Slaving Demand (03.001)	*Final Speed Reference* (03.001)
	Speed Feedback (03.002)
	Speed Error (03.003)
	Speed Controller Output (03.004)
Current Magnitude (04.001)	*Current Magnitude* (04.001)
Torque Producing Current (04.002)	*Torque Producing Current* (04.002)
Magnetising Current (04.017)	*Magnetising Current* (04.017)
Output Frequency (05.001)	*Output Frequency* (05.001)
Output Voltage (05.002)	*Output Voltage* (05.002)
Output Power (05.003)	*Output Power* (05.003)
D.c. Bus Voltage (05.005)	*DC Bus Voltage* (05.005)
Analog Input 1 (07.001)*	*Analog Input 1* (07.001)*
Analog Input 2 (07.002)*	*Analog Input 2* (07.002)*

00.052 {11.020}	Reset Serial Communications									
RW		Bit				ND	NC			
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	Off (0) or On (1)				⇨	Off (0)			

When *Serial Address* (11.023), *Serial Mode* (11.024), *Serial Baud Rate* (11.025), *Minimum Comms Transmit Delay* (11.026) or *Silent Period* (11.027) are modified the changes do not have an immediate effect on the serial communications system. The new values are used after the next power-up or if *Reset Serial Communications* (11.020) is set to one. *Reset Serial Communications* (11.020) is automatically cleared to zero after the communications system is updated.

00.053 {04.015}	Motor Thermal Time Constatnt									
RW		Num							US	
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	1.0 to 3000.0 s				⇨	89.0 s			

Pr **00.053** is the motor thermal time constant of the motor, and is used (along with the motor rated current Pr **00.046**, and total motor current Pr **00.012**) in the thermal model of the motor in applying thermal protection to the motor.

Setting this parameter to 0 disables the motor thermal protection.

For further details, refer to section 8.4 Motor thermal protection on page 132.

6.3.10 Additional parameters for RFC-S sensorless control

00.054 {05.064}	RFC Low Speed Mode									
RW		Txt							US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	Injection (0), Non salient (1)				⇨	Non salient (1)			

If sensorless mode is being used and is active (i.e. *Sensorless Mode Active* (03.078) = 1) and the motor speed is below *Rated Speed* (00.045) / 10 then a special low speed algorithm must be used to control the motor. *RFC Low Speed Mode* (00.054) is used to select the algorithm to be used.

0: Injection

A high frequency signal is injected into the motor to detect the motor flux axis. This can be used in a similar way to operation with position feedback except that for the drive to remain stable the speed controller bandwidth may need to be limited to 10 Hz or less and the current limit may need to be limited (see *Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current* (00.055)).

1: Non-salient

If the ratio Lq/Ld < 1.1 on no load then the injection mode cannot be used and this mode should be used instead. This mode does not provide the same level of control as injection mode and has the following restrictions:

- Speed control is possible, but not torque control.
- Spinning start is not possible and the motor must start from standstill.
- Below *Rated Speed* (00.045) / 10 it will not be possible to produce more than approximately 60 % to 70 % of rated torque.
- There may be some movement of the motor shaft in either direction as the motor starts.
- It is not possible to measure the motor inertia using auto-tuning with *Auto-tune* (00.040) = 4.
- Normally the ramp rate should not be slower than 5 s/1000 rpm when operating in the region below *Rated Speed* (00.045) / 10.
- This mode is not intended to control the motor for prolonged periods below *Rated Speed* (00.045) / 10, but is intended to allow the motor to be started from standstill to run outside the low speed region.
- This mode is not intended to allow motor reversals. If the direction does need to be reversed, the motor should be stopped and any oscillations must die away, before the motor is restarted in the other direction.

Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current (00.055) defines a current applied in the motor d axis to aid starting. The default value is suitable for most motors with a load of up to 60% rated torque. However, in some applications this level may need to be adjusted.

00.055 {05.071}	Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current Limit									
RW		Num				RA			US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0.0 to 1000.0 %				⇨	20.0 %			

Injection mode

For low speed sensorless operation for signal injection (*RFC Low Speed Mode* (05.064) = 0) it is necessary to have a ratio of Lq/Ld = 1.1. Even if a motor has a larger ratio on no load, this ratio normally reduces as the q axis current is increased from zero. *Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current Limit* (05.071) should be set at a level that is lower than the point where the inductance ratio falls to 1.1. The value of this parameter is used to define the drive current limits when signal injection is active and prevent loss of control of the motor.

Non-salient mode

For low speed sensorless operation for non-salient motors (*RFC Low Speed Mode* (05.064) = 1) defines a current applied in the d axis to aid starting. For most motors and applications requiring up to 60 % torque on starting, the default value is suitable. However the level of current may need to be increased to make the motor start.

00.056 {05.072}	No-load Lq									
RW		Num				RA			US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0.0000 to 500.000 mH				⇨	0.000 mH			

Motor q axis inductance with no current in the motor.

00.057 {05.075}	Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement									
RW		Num							US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0 to 200 %				⇨	100 %			

Maximum test current level used for Iq during auto-tuning when measuring the motor inductance and phase offset as a percentage of *Rated Current* (00.046). This value is also used by the sensorless control algorithm to define the motor inductance and a reference frame phase offset at different levels of Iq. The values of *Lq At The Defined Iq Test Current* (00.059), and Phase Offset At Iq Test Current (00.058), should be the values which correspond to the test current level. For most motors, *Phase Offset At Iq Test Current* (00.058) will be zero and have little effect on the performance, however Lq is likely to vary significantly with Iq and should be set up correctly for good performance. *If Lq At The Defined Iq Test Current* (00.059), or *Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement* (00.057) are zero, then the estimate of Lq will not be affected by the level of Iq, and if *Phase Offset At Iq Test Current* (00.058) or *Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement* (00.057) are zero the phase offset will not be affected by the level of Iq.

00.058 {05.077}	Phase Offset At Iq Test Current									
RW		Num				RA			US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	±90.0 °				⇨	0.0 °			

This parameter defines the offset of the point of minimum inductance as an electrical angle from the point with no current in the motor, to the point with a level of Iq equivalent to *Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement* (00.057). When the value is left at its default value of zero, no compensation for phase offset with changes in Iq are made. *Phase Offset At Iq Test Current* (00.058) is used for low speed RFC sensorless control using injection mode. A positive value advances the point of minimum inductance with positive Iq. See *RFC Low Speed Mode* (00.054). For most motors a value of zero is acceptable.

00.059 {05.078}	Lq At The Defined Iq Test Current									
RW		Num				RA			US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0.000 to 500.000 mH				⇨	0.000 mH			

Motor q axis inductance with no current in the d axis and the current defined by *Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement* (00.057) in the q axis of the motor. If this parameter is left at its default value of zero, then no compensation is made to the value of Lq with changes in Iq.

00.060 {05.082}	Id Test Current For Inductance Measurement									
RW	Num								US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	-100 to 0 %				⇨	- 50 %			

Minimum test current level used for Id during auto-tuning when measuring the motor inductance as a percentage of *Rated Current* (00.046). This is then used in a similar way as *Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement* (00.057), to estimate the value of Lq used in the control algorithms as Id changes. If *Lq At The Defined Id Test Current* (00.061), or *Id Test Current for Inductance Measurement* (00.060) are set to zero, then no compensation is made for changes in Lq with Id.

00.061 {05.084}	Lq At The Id Test Current									
RW	Num								US	
OL / RFC-A	⇳					⇨				
RFC-S	⇳	0.000 to 500.000 mH				⇨	0.000 mH			

Motor q axis inductance with no current in the q axis and the current defined by *Id Test Current for Inductance Measurement* (00.060) in the d axis of the motor. If this parameter is left at its default value of zero then no compensation is made to the value of Lq with changes in Id.

6.3.11 Fire mode

WARNING

Fire Mode - Important Warning.
When Fire Mode is active the motor overload and thermal protection are disabled, as well as a number of drive protection functions. Fire Mode is provided for use only in emergency situations where the safety risk from disabling protection is less than the risk from the drive tripping - typically in smoke extraction operation to permit evacuation of a building. The use of Fire Mode itself causes a risk of fire from overloading of the motor or drive, so it must only be used after careful consideration of the balance of risks.

Care must be taken to prevent inadvertent activation or de-activation of Fire Mode. Fire Mode is indicated by a flashing display text warning "Fire mode active".

Care must be taken to ensure that parameters Pr **01.053** or Pr **01.054** are not inadvertently re-allocated to different inputs or variables. It should be noted that, by default, Pr **01.054** is controlled from digital input 4 and changing Pr **08.024** can re-allocate this digital input to another parameter. These parameters are at access level 2 in order to minimize the risk of inadvertent or unauthorized changes. It is recommended that User Security be applied to further reduce the risk (see section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109). These parameters may also be changed via serial communications so adequate precautions should be taken if this functionality is utilized.

1.053	Fire mode reference									
RW	Uni								US	
OL / RFC	⇳	±SPEED_FREQ_MAX Hz/rpm				⇨	0.0 Hz / 0.0 rpm			

1.054	Fire mode activation									
RO	Bit							NC	US	
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)					⇨				

Emergency ventilation or fire mode allows for the purging of air from a structure during a fire. It is enabled if Pr **01.053** is set to a non zero value and activated when Pr **01.054** is set to one. When activated, the pre-ramp reference (Pr **01.003**) is set to the value of Pr **01.053** and the normal drive controls are overridden as follows:

1. Drive enable is only controlled by the Enable input (Pr **06.015**). The control word (Pr **06.043**) cannot be used to disable the drive.
2. The internal run command is forced to be active. The normal drive sequencing bits (Pr **06.030** to Pr **06.034**) and the control word have no effect.
3. The limit switch functions (Pr **06.035** and Pr **06.036**) have no effect and will not stop the motor.
4. The hard speed reference is forced to zero. The hard speed reference should not be used when fire mode is likely to be activated as this will cause an abrupt change of speed.
5. The hand/off/auto function is disabled. If this system is in the hand state when fire mode is activated it will be forced to the off state, so that hand state is not active when fire mode is de-activated.
6. Keypad mode is disabled.
7. All latching mode states are reset.

When Pr **01.054** is subsequently set to zero the drive returns to normal operation.

Pr **01.054** can only be changed from a digital input and the default configuration allocates this to digital input 4.

CAUTION

Care should be taken when modifying parameters as setting Pr **01.053** to zero inhibits the fire mode function and changing Pr **08.024** (*Digital Input 4 source*) could result in digital input 4 source to be allocated to a parameter other than Pr **01.054**.

If fire mode is activated when the drive is in a tripped state then the trip is reset.

Only the trips listed in the following table can be initiated while fire mode is active.

Trip number	String	Cause of trip
2	OU	DC bus over-voltage
3	OI.AC	AC instantaneous over-current
4	OI.br	Braking resistor instantaneous over current
5	PS	Drive power supply fault
8	PS.10V	10V user power supply overload
9	PS.24V	24V internal power supply overload
21	O.ht1	Power device over temperature based on thermal model
31	EEF	EEProm failure
36	SAVE.Er	User parameter save error
37	PSAVE.Er	Power down save parameter error
103	OIbr.P	Power module braking IGBT over current
104	OIAC.P	Power module over current detected from the module output currents
105	Oht2.P	Power module heatsink over temperature
106	OU.P	Power module DC bus over-voltage
107	Ph.P	Power module phase loss detection
108	PS.P	Power module power supply fail
109	OIdc.P	Power module over current detected from on state voltage monitoring
110	Unid.P	Power module unidentified trip
200	SL1.HF	Slot 1 Option Module failure
205	SL2.HF	Slot 2 Option Module failure
210	SL3.HF	Slot 3 Option Module failure
217 to 232	HF17 to HF32	Hardware faults

CAUTION

It is possible for the drive or motor to become damaged when operating in fire mode because some of the drive thermal protection trips are disabled.

6.3.12 Advanced process PID

The Advanced Process PID comprises two PID controllers. PID 1 can be configured to operate as follows (refer to Pr **14.059** for details).

- Single setpoint and single feedback
- Single setpoint and dual feedback
- Dual setpoints and dual feedback

PID 2 always operates as a single setpoint, single feedback controller.

When a feedback signal requires square root conversion (e.g. airflow), square root scaling can be applied to PID 1 feedback (see Pr **14.058,** Pr **14.060**, Pr **14.061** and Pr **14.062**). PID 1 also includes a pre-sleep boost level facility (see Pr **14.028** and Pr **14.029**) to reduce frequent transitions into sleep mode when the PID is used.

The PID system is always active even when the output destination parameters are not set to a valid destination parameter. This allows the PID controllers to be used independently from the drive via a building automation network.

14.001	**PID 1 output**								
14.031	**PID 2 output**								
RO	Bi					NC	PT		
⇳	±100.00				⇨				

Pr **14.001** is the output (limited by Pr **14.013** and Pr **14.014**) from PID 1 before scaling (Pr **14.015**) is applied. It is derived from the following algorithm:

Output = Error x [Kp + Ki/s + Kds/(0.064s + 1)]

Where:

Error = Reference (Pr **14.003**, Pr **14.025**) - Feedback (Pr **14.004**)

Kp = proportional gain (Pr **14.010**)

Ki = integral gain (Pr **14.011**)

Kd = differential gain (Pr **14.012**)

Therefore with an error of 100% and Kp = 1.000, the output produced by the proportional term is 100%. With an error of 100% and Ki = 1.000 the output produced by the integral term will increase linearly by 100% every second. With an error that is increasing by 100% per second and Kd = 1.000 the output produced by the differential term will be 100%. A filter with a 64 ms time constant is applied to the differential term to reduce noise.

14.002	**PID main reference source parameter**								
RW	Uni						PT	US	
⇳	Pr **0.000** to Pr **50.099**				⇨	Pr **0.000**			

14.003	**PID 1 reference source parameter**								
14.033	**PID 2 reference source parameter**								
RW	Uni						PT	US	
⇳	Pr **0.000** to Pr **50.099**				⇨	Pr **0.000**			

The PID reference is the sum of the digital reference (Pr **14.025**) and the value from the location defined by the source parameter (Pr **14.003**). Before the reference is applied to the controller algorithm, it can be scaled by setting Pr **14.023** to a value other than one and/or inverted by setting Pr **14.005** = 1.

14.004	**PID 1 feedback source parameter**								
14.034	**PID 2 feedback source parameter**								
RW	Uni						PT	US	
⇳	Pr **0.000** to Pr **50.099**				⇨	Pr **0.000**			

The feedback is the sum of the digital feedback (Pr **14.026**) and the value from the location defined by the source parameter (Pr **14.004**). Before the reference is applied to the controller algorithm, it can be scaled by setting Pr **14.024** to a value other than one and/or inverted by setting Pr **14.006** = 1.

14.005	**PID 1 reference invert**								
14.035	**PID 2 reference invert**								
RW	Bit							US	
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨	OFF (0)			

14.006	**PID 1 feedback invert**								
14.036	**PID 2 feedback invert**								
RW	Bit							US	
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨	OFF (0)			

14.007	**PID 1 reference slew-rate limit**								
14.037	**PID 2 reference slew-rate limit**								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.0 to 3200.0 s				⇨	0.0			

Pr **14.007** defines the time taken for the reference input to ramp from 0 to 100% following a 0 to 100% step change in input.

14.008	PID 1 enable								
RW	Bit							US	
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨	OFF (0)			

PID 1 is enabled when Pr **14.008** = 1 and both the parameter sources defined by Pr **14.009** and Pr **14.027** have a value of one. (The source value for Pr **14.009** or Pr **14.027** appears as one if the parameter is set to 0.0.) By default, Pr **14.009** is set to 10.001 (drive OK) so that the PID controller is disabled if the drive is tripped. When the PID controller is disabled the output is zero and all the internal state variables (i.e. integrator accumulator etc.) are held at zero.

14.009	PID 1 optional enable source parameter 1								
RW	Uni						PT	US	
⇳	Pr **0.000** to Pr **50.099**				⇨	Pr **0.000**			

14.010	PID 1 proportional gain								
14.040	PID 2 proportional gain								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.011	PID 1 integral gain								
14.041	PID 2 integral gain								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.012	PID 1 differential gain								
14.042	PID 2 differential gain								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.013	PID 1 output upper limit								
14.043	PID 2 output upper limit								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.00 to 100.00 %				⇨	100.00			

14.014	PID 1 output lower limit								
14.044	PID 2 output lower limit								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨	-100.00			

If Pr **14.018** is zero, the upper limit (Pr **14.013**) defines the maximum positive output for the PID controller and the lower limit defines the minimum positive or maximum negative output. If symmetrical limits are selected, i.e. Pr **14.018** =c1, then the upper limit defines the maximum positive or negative magnitude for the PID output. When any of the limits is active then the integrator accumulator is held.

14.015	PID 1 output scaling								
14.045	PID 2 output scaling								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.016	PID 1 output destination parameter								
14.046	PID 2 output destination parameter								
RW	Uni		DE				PT	US	
⇳	Pr **0.000** to Pr **50.099**				⇨	Pr **0.000**			

14.017	PID 1 integrator hold								
14.047	PID 2 integrator hold								
RW	Bit						NC		US
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨	OFF (0)			

When this parameter is set to OFF (0) the integrator operates normally. Setting this parameter to On (1) will cause the integrator value to be held. Setting this parameter does not prevent the integrator from being reset to zero if the PID controller is disabled.

14.018	PID 1 symmetrical limit enable								
14.048	PID 2 symmetrical limit enable								
RW	Bit							US	
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨	OFF (0)			

14.019	PID 1 feed-forward reference								
14.049	PID 2 feed-forward reference								
RO	Bi						NC	PT	US
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨				

14.020	PID 1 reference								
14.050	PID 2 reference								
RO	Bi						NC	PT	US
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨				

14.021	PID 1 feedback								
14.051	PID 2 feedback								
RO	Bi						NC	PT	US
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨				

14.022	PID 1 error								
14.052	PID 2 error								
RO	Bi						NC	PT	US
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨				

14.023	PID 1 reference scaling								
14.053	PID 2 reference scaling								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.024	PID 1 feedback scaling								
14.054	PID 2 feedback scaling								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.000 to 4.000				⇨	1.000			

14.025	PID 1 digital reference								
14.055	PID 2 digital reference								
RW	Bi					NC			
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨	0.00			

14.026	PID 1 digital feedback								
14.055	PID 2 digital feedback								
RW	Bi					NC			
⇳	±100.00 %				⇨	0.00			

14.027	PID 1 optional enable source parameter 2								
RW	Uni						PT	US	
⇳	0.00 to 50.99				⇨	0.00			

14.028	PID 1 pre-sleep boost level								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.00 to 100.00 %				⇨	0.00			

14.029	Maximum boost time								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0.0 to 250.0 s				⇨	0.0			

14.030	PID 1 pre-sleep boost level enable								
RO	Bit					NC	PT		
⇳	OFF (0) or On (1)				⇨				

If PID is used to control the motor output via Menu 1 and sleep mode is enabled, then the drive will automatically stop the motor when the output drops below the sleep/wake threshold. The feedback may then fall causing the output and hence the feedback to rise again. Setting Pr **14.028** and Pr **14.029** to non zero values results in the value in Pr **14.028** being added to the PID reference for a length of time defined in Pr **14.029** when the drive attempts to enter sleep mode.. This will reduce the frequency of the transitions into sleep mode. Pr **14.030** indicates when the boost system is enabled.

14.038	PID 2 enable								
RW	Uni							US	
⇳	0 to 2				⇨	0			

Parameter value	PID enable state
0	PID 2 disabled; output is zero and integrator reset to zero
1	PID 2 enabled
2	PID 2 enable state follows PID 1 enable state

14.058	PID 1 feedback output scaling								
RW	Uni							US	
	0.000 to 4.000					0.000			

Pr **14.058** allows scaling to be applied to the combined feedback signal from PID controller 1 and PID controller 2 after the square root function has been applied.

14.059	PID mode selector								
RW	Uni							US	
	0 to 7					0			

Single setpoint, single feedback (Pr **14.059** = 0 or 1)

The two PID controllers operate independently. The feedback for PID2 is always from the PID2 feedback input. PID1 feedback can select one of two sensors as shown in the table below.

Parameter 14.059	Final PID1 feedback
0	PID1 feedback
1	PID2 feedback

Single setpoint, dual feedback (Pr **14.059** = 2 to 5)

PID1 feedback is from two sensors, which can be configured as shown in the table below.

Parameter 14.059	Final PID1 feedback
2	PID1 feedback + PID2 feedback
3	Lowest of PID1 feedback and PID2 feedback
4	Highest of PID1 feedback and PID2 feedback
5	(PID1 feedback + PID2 feedback) / 2

Dual setpoint, dual feedback (Pr **14.059** = 6 to 7)

When PID mode 6 or 7 is selected the controller operates in a dual zone mode. In this mode the reference and feedback quantities from each PID controller are used to calculate two controller errors. These two errors are then checked and the zone with the larger or smaller absolute value of error (depending upon mode selected) is used as the error signal to the PID1 controller.

Parameter 14.059	PID1 Error
6	Lowest of |PID1 Error| or |PID2 Error|
7	Highest of |PID1 Error| or |PID2 Error|

14.060	PID 1 Square root enable								
14.061	PID 2 Square root enable								
RW	Bit							US	
	OFF (0) or On (1)					OFF (0)			

14.062	Combined PID square root enable								
RW	Uni							US	
	OFF (0) or On (1)					OFF (0)			

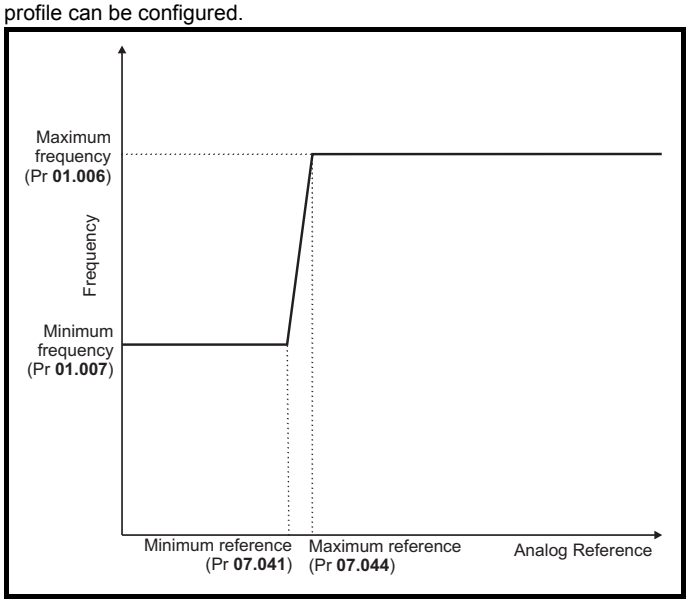
The square root functions in the feedback paths are enabled or disabled with Pr **14.060**, Pr **14.061** and Pr **14.062**.

When the square root function is enabled, the following algorithm is applied to the feedback.

Square root function output = Sign(Feedback) x 100.00% x v(|Feedback| / 100.00%)

where Sign(Feedback) is 1 if the feedback is positive or -1 is the feedback is negative.
Analog reference profile

If analog input 2 is used as a reference, then the following reference profile can be configured.



For example, if the following is required:

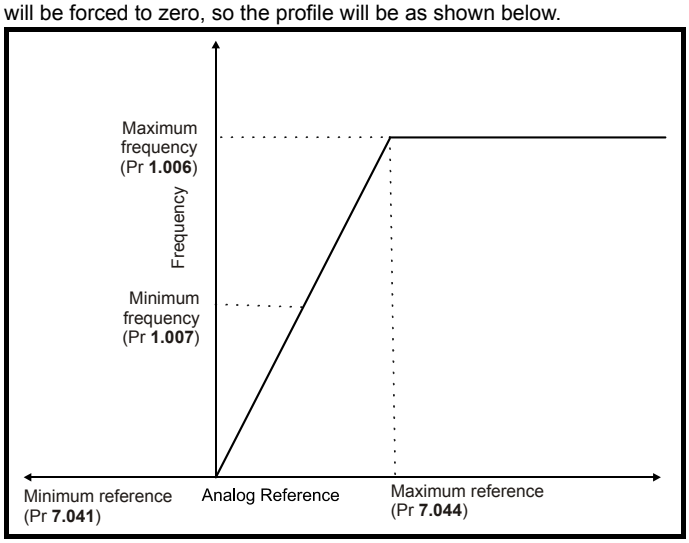
- Output frequency = 20 Hz when analog reference < 25 %,
- Output frequency = 60 Hz when analog reference > 75 %,
- Output frequency = linear ramp between 20 and 60 Hz when analog reference is between 25 and 75 %, then the parameters should be set as follows:
- Pr **01.006** = 60
- Pr **01.007** = 20
- Pr **07.041** = 25
- Pr **07.044** = 75

NOTE

If Pr **7.041** is greater than or equal to Pr **07.044**, analog input 2 (Pr **07.002**) will be forced to 0%, so the output frequency will always be equal to the value in Pr **01.007**.

NOTE

If Pr **07.041** is negative and Pr **07.044** positive, the minimum reference will be forced to zero, so the profile will be as shown below.



NOTE

Parameters Pr **07.041** and Pr **07.044** are 8 bit parameters so these only have a resolution of 1%.

7 Running the motor

This chapter takes the new user through all the essential steps to running a motor for the first time, in each of the possible operating modes.

For information on tuning the drive for the best performance, see *Chapter 8 Optimization on page 151*.

WARNING

Ensure that no damage or safety hazard could arise from the motor starting unexpectedly.

CAUTION

The values of the motor parameters affect the protection of the motor.
The default values in the drive should not be relied upon.
It is essential that the correct value is entered in Pr **00.046** *Rated Current*. This affects the thermal protection of the motor.

CAUTION

If the drive is started using the keypad it will run to the speed defined by the keypad reference (Pr **01.017**). This may not be acceptable depending on the application. The user must check in Pr **01.017** and ensure that the keypad reference has been set to 0.

WARNING

If the intended maximum speed affects the safety of the machinery, additional independent over-speed protection must be used.

7.1 Quick start connections

WARNING

Fire Mode - Important Warning
When Fire Mode is active the motor overload and thermal protection are disabled, as well as a number of drive protection functions. Fire Mode is provided for use only in emergency situations where the safety risk from disabling protection is less than the risk from the drive tripping - typically in smoke extraction operation to permit evacuation of a building. The use of Fire Mode itself causes a risk of fire from overloading of the motor or drive, so it must only be used after careful consideration of the balance of risks.
Care must be taken to prevent inadvertent activation or deactivation of Fire Mode. Fire Mode is indicated by a flashing display text warning "Fire mode active".
Care must be taken to ensure that parameters Pr **01.053** or Pr **01.054** are not inadvertently re-allocated to different inputs or variables. It should be noted that, by default, Pr **01.054** is
controlled from digital input 4 and changing Pr **08.024** can re-allocate this digital input to another parameter. These parameters are at access level 2 in order to minimize the risk of inadvertent or unauthorized changes. It is recommended that User Security be applied to further reduce the risk (see section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109). These parameters may also be changed via serial communications so adequate precautions should be taken if this functionality is utilized.

7.1.1 Basic requirements

This section shows the basic connections which must be made for the drive to run in the required mode. For minimal parameter settings to run in each mode please see the relevant part of section 7.3 *Quick start commissioning / start-up* on page 139.

Table 7-1 Minimum control connection requirements for each control mode

Drive control method	Requirements
Auto mode	Drive enable Speed reference Run forward
Hand mode	Drive enable
Serial communications	Drive enable Serial communications link

Table 7-2 Minimum requirements for each mode of operation

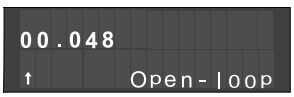
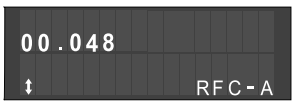
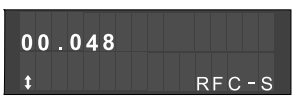
Operating mode	Requirements
Open loop mode	Induction motor
RFC – A sensorless (without feedback position)	Induction motor without speed feedback
RFC - S sensorless (without position feedback)	Permanent magnet motor without speed and position feedback

7.2 Changing the operating mode

Changing the operating mode returns all parameters to their default value, including the motor parameters. *User Security Status* (Pr **00.049**) and *User Security Code* (Pr **00.034**) are not affected by this procedure).

Procedure
Use the following procedure only if a different operating mode is required:

1. Enter either of the following values in Pr **mm.000**, as appropriate:
   1253 (50 Hz AC supply frequency)
   1254 (60 Hz AC supply frequency)
2. Change the setting of Pr **00.048** as follows:

Pr 00.048 setting		Operating mode
	1	Open-loop
	2	RFC-A
	3	RFC-S

The figures in the second column apply when serial communications are used.

3. Either:

- Press the red  reset button
- Toggle the reset digital input
- Carry out a drive reset through serial communications by setting Pr **10.038** to 100 (ensure that Pr. **mm.000** returns to 0).

Figure 7-1 Minimum connections to get the motor running in any operating mode (size 3 and 4)

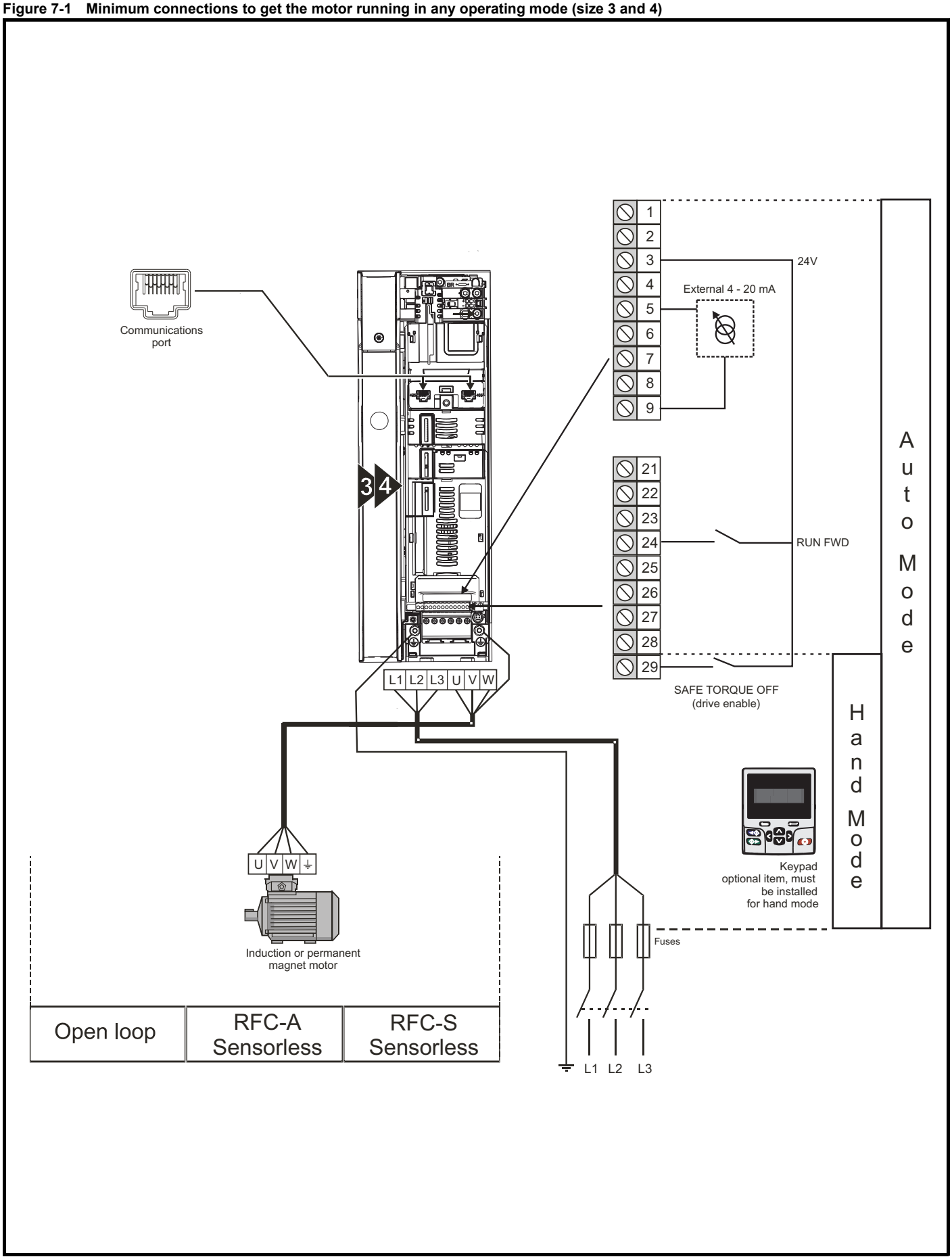


Figure 7-2 Minimum connections to get the motor running in any operating mode (size 5)

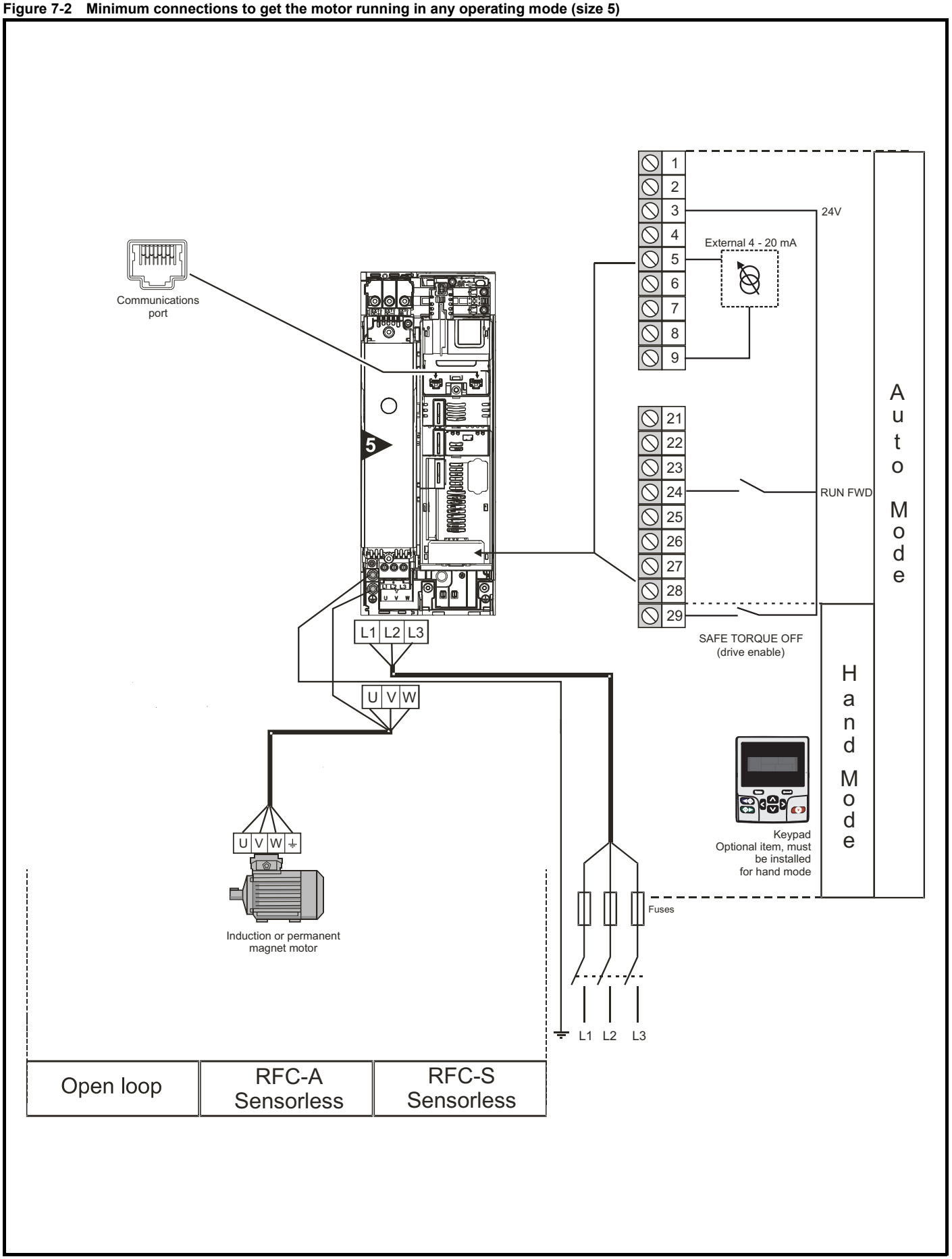


Figure 7-3 Minimum connections to get the motor running in any operating mode (size 6)

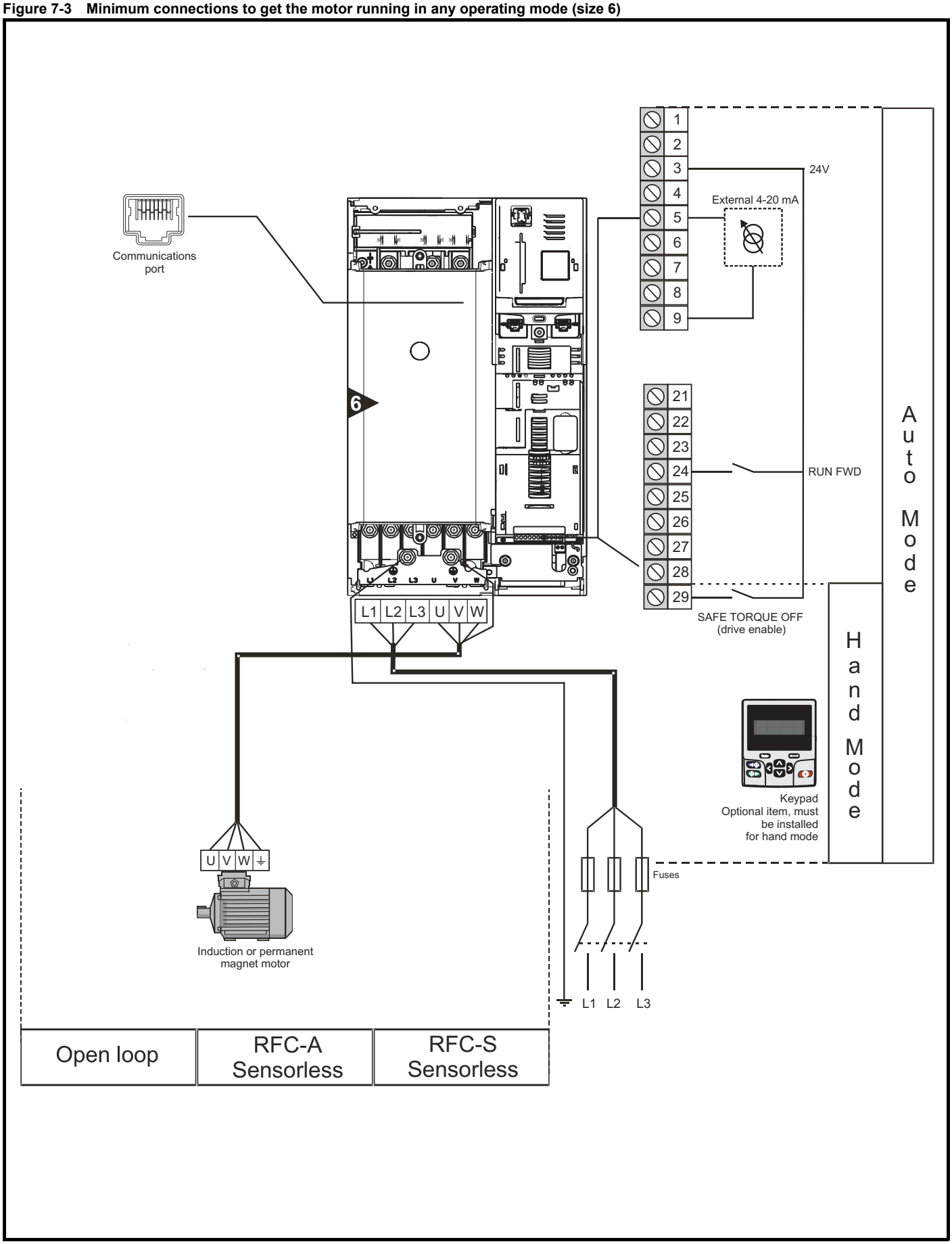
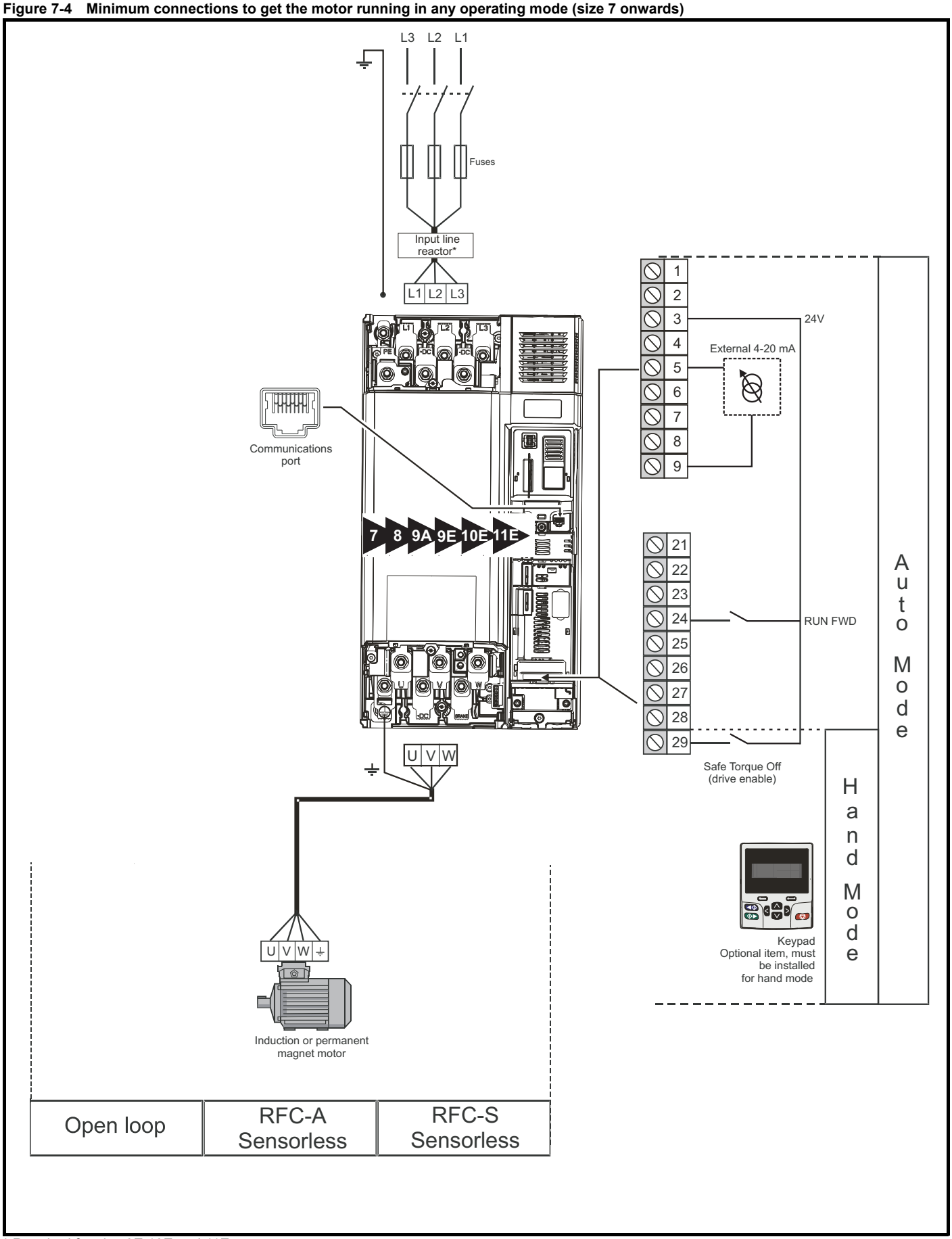


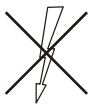
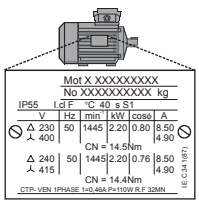
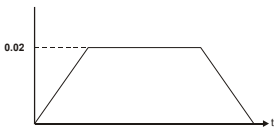
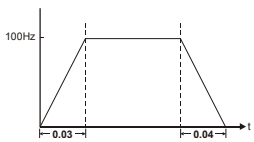
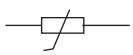
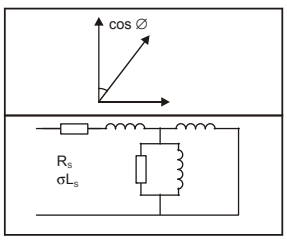
Figure 7-4 Minimum connections to get the motor running in any operating mode (size 7 onwards)



* Required for size 9E,10E and 11E.

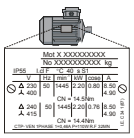
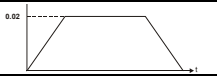
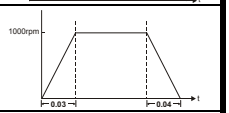
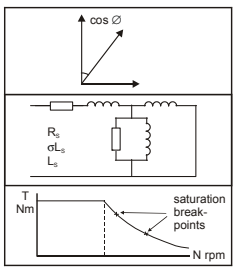
7.3 Quick start commissioning / start-up

7.3.1 Open loop

Action	Detail	
Before power-up	Ensure: • The drive enable signal is not given (terminal 29) • Run signal is not given • Motor is connected	
Power-up the drive	Verify that Open Loop mode is displayed as the drive powers up. If the mode is incorrect see section 5.6 *Changing the operating mode* on page 108. Ensure: • Drive displays 'Inhibit' If the drive trips, see Chapter 13 *Diagnostics* on page 260.	
Enter motor nameplate details	Enter: • Motor rated frequency in Pr **00.047** (Hz) • Motor rated current in Pr **00.046** (A) • Motor rated speed in Pr **00.045** (rpm) • Motor rated voltage in Pr **00.044** (V) - check if ⅄ or Δ connection	
Set maximum frequency	Enter: • Maximum frequency in Pr **00.002** (Hz)	
Set acceleration / deceleration rates	Enter: • Acceleration rate in Pr **00.003** (s to Pr **01.006**) • Deceleration rate in Pr **00.004**	
Motor thermistor set-up	The motor thermistor can be selected in Pr **07.111**. Refer to Pr **07.011** for further information.	
Autotune	The drive is able to perform either a stationary or a rotating autotune. The motor must be at a standstill before an autotune is enabled. A rotating autotune should be used whenever possible so the measured value of power factor of the motor is used by the drive. **WARNING** A rotating autotune will cause the motor to accelerate up to $^2/_3$ base speed in the direction selected regardless of the reference provided. Once complete the motor will coast to a stop. The enable signal must be removed before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be stopped at any time by removing the run signal or removing the drive enable. • A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to uncouple the load from the motor shaft. A stationary autotune measures stator resistance and transient inductance of the motor and values relating to deadtime compensation from the drive. These are required for good performance in vector control modes. A stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. • A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is uncoupled. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune before rotating the motor at $^2/_3$ base speed in the direction selected. The rotating autotune measures the power factor of the motor. To perform an autotune: • Set Pr **00.040** = 1 for a stationary autotune or set Pr **00.040** = 2 for a rotating autotune • Close the Drive Enable signal (terminal 29). The drive will display 'Ready'. • Close the run signal (terminal 24). The upper row of the display will flash 'Auto Tune' while the drive is performing the autotune. • Wait for the drive to display 'Inhibit' and for the motor to come to a standstill. If the drive trips, see Chapter 13 *Diagnostics* on page 260. • Remove the drive enable and run signal from the drive.	
Save parameters	Select 'Save Parameters' in Pr **mm.000** (alternatively enter a value of 1000 in Pr **mm.000**) and press the red reset button or toggle the reset digital input.	
Run	Drive is now ready to run	

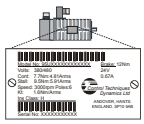
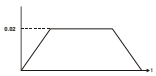
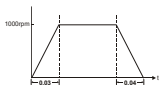
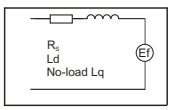
7.3.2 RFC - A Sensorless

Induction motor without position feedback

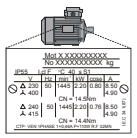
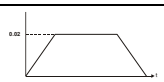
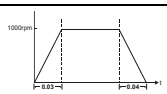
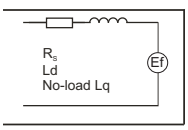
Action	Detail	
Before power-up	Ensure: • The drive enable signal is not given (terminal 29) • Run signal is not given • Motor is connected	
Power-up the drive	Verify that RFC-A mode is displayed as the drive powers up. If the mode is incorrect see section 5.6 *Changing the operating mode* on page 108, otherwise restore parameter defaults (See section 5.8 *Restoring parameter defaults* on page 109. Ensure: • Drive displays 'Inhibit' If the drive trips, see *Chapter 13 Diagnostics* on page 260.	
Enter motor nameplate details	Enter: • Motor rated frequency in Pr **00.047** (Hz) • Motor rated current in Pr **00.046** (A) • Motor rated speed in Pr **00.045** (rpm) • Motor rated voltage in Pr **00.044** (V) - check if ⅄ or △ connection	
Set maximum speed	Enter: • Maximum speed in Pr **00.002** (rpm)	
Set acceleration / deceleration rates	Enter: • Acceleration rate in Pr **00.003** (s to Pr **01.006**) • Deceleration rate in Pr **00.004**	
Autotune	The drive is able to perform either a stationary or a rotating autotune. The motor must be at a standstill before an autotune is enabled. A stationary autotune will give moderate performance whereas a rotating autotune will give improved performance as it measures the actual values of the motor parameters required by the drive. **NOTE** It is highly recommended that a rotating autotune is performed (Pr **00.040** set to 2). **WARNING** A rotating autotune will cause the motor to accelerate up to $^{2}/_{3}$ base speed in the direction selected regardless of the reference provided. Once complete the motor will coast to a stop. The enable signal must be removed before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be stopped at any time by removing the run signal or removing the drive enable. • A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to uncouple the load from the motor shaft. The stationary autotune measures the stator resistance and transient inductance of the motor and values relating to deadtime compensation from the drive. Measured values are used to calculate the current loop gains, and at the end of the test the values in Pr **00.038** and Pr **00.039** are updated. A stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. • A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is uncoupled. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune before rotating the motor at 2/3 base speed in the direction selected. The rotating autotune measures the stator inductance of the motor and calculates the power factor. To perform an autotune: • Set Pr **00.040** = 1 for a stationary autotune or set Pr **00.040** = 2 for a rotating autotune • Close the drive enable signal (terminal 29). The drive will display 'Inhibit'. • Close the run signal (terminal 24). The lower display will flash 'Autotune' while the drive is performing the autotune. • Wait for the drive to display 'Inhibit' and for the motor to come to a standstill. If the drive trips, see *Chapter 13 Diagnostics* on page 260. • Remove the drive enable and run signal from the drive.	
Save parameters	Select 'Save Parameters' in Pr **mm.000** (alternatively enter a value of 1000 in Pr **mm.000**) and press red reset button or toggle the reset digital input.	
Run	Drive is now ready to run	

7.3.3 RFC-S Sensorless

Permanent magnet motor without position feedback

Action	Detail	
Before power-up	Ensure: • The drive enable signal is not given (terminal 29). • Run signal is not given • Motor is connected	
Power-up the drive	Verify that RFC-S mode is displayed as the drive powers up. If the mode is incorrect see Chapter 5.6 *Changing the operating mode* on page 108, otherwise restore parameter defaults (see Chapter 5.8 *Restoring parameter defaults* on page 109). Ensure: • Drive displays 'inhibit' If the drive trips, see Chapter 13 *Diagnostics* on page 260.	
Enter motor nameplate details	Enter: • Motor rated current in Pr **00.046** (A) • Number of poles in Pr **00.042** • Motor rated voltage in Pr **00.044** (V)	
Set maximum speed	Enter: • Maximum speed in Pr **00.002** (rpm)	
Set acceleration / deceleration rates	Enter: • Acceleration rate in Pr **00.003** (s to Pr **01.006**) • Deceleration rate in Pr **00.004**	
Autotune	The drive is able to perform a stationary autotune. The motor must be at a standstill before an autotune is enabled. A stationary autotune will give moderate performance. • A stationary autotune is performed to locate the flux axis of the motor. The stationary autotune measures the stator resistance, inductance in flux axis, inductance in torque axis with no load on the motor and values relating to deadtime compensation from the drive. Measured values are used to calculate the current loop gains, and at the end of the test the values in Pr **00.038** and Pr **00.039** are updated. To perform an autotune: • Set Pr **00.040** = 1 or 2 for a stationary autotune. (Both perform the same tests). • Close the run signal (terminal 24). • Close the drive enable signal (terminal 29). The upper row of the display will flash 'Auto Tune' while the drive is performing the test. • Wait for the drive to display 'Inhibit'. If the drive trips it cannot be reset until the drive enable signal (terminal 29) has been removed. See *Chapter 13 Diagnostics* on page 260. • Remove the drive enabled and run signal from the drive.	
Check Saliency	In sensorless mode, when the motor speed is below Pr **00.045** / 10, a special low speed algorithm must be used to control the motor. There are two modes available, with the mode chosen based on the saliency of the motor. The ratio No-load Lq (Pr **00.056**) / Ld (Pr **05.024**) provides a measure of the saliency. If this value is > 1.1, then injection (0) mode may be used (this is the default). Non-salient (1) mode may be used (but with limitations). If this value is < 1.1, then Non-salient (1) mode must be used. Set Pr **00.054** for the selected mode: Injection (0) or Non-salient (1).	
Save parameters	Select 'Save Parameters' in Pr **mm.000** (alternatively enter a value of 1000 in Pr **mm.000**) and press red reset button or toggle the reset digital input.	
Run	Drive is now ready to run	

7.3.4 RFC-S mode (Sensorless) Dyneo LSRPM motor set-up with V01.12.02.00 onwards firmware

Action	Detail	
Before power-up	Ensure: • The drive enable signal is not given (terminal 29). • Run signal is not given • Motor is connected	
Power-up the drive	Verify that RFC-S mode is displayed as the drive powers up. If the mode is incorrect see section 5.6 *Changing the operating mode* on page 108, otherwise restore parameter defaults (see section 5.8 *Restoring parameter defaults* on page 109). Ensure that the drive displays 'inhibit'	
Enter motor nameplate details	Enter: • Motor rated current in Pr **00.046** (A)* • Rated speed in Pr **00.045** (rpm) • Volts per 1000 rpm in Pr **00.047** (V / 1000 rpm) Motor rated voltage Pr **00.044** and number of motor poles Pr **00.042** are also required but the default values in RFC-S mode for the Powerdrive F300 are set to match those required by the Dyneo LSRPM motor. From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.	
Enter motor thermal data and switching frequency	Enter: • Motor Thermal Time Constant value into Pr **00.053** (s) from the values specified inTable 7-3 to Table 7-9 . • Switching frequency value into Pr **00.041** (kHz) from the values specified inTable 7-3 to Table 7-9 .	
Set maximum speed	Enter: • Maximum speed in Pr **00.002** (rpm)	
Set acceleration / deceleration rates	Enter: • Acceleration rate in Pr **00.003** (s to Pr **01.006**) • Deceleration rate in Pr **00.004**	
Autotune	Perform a stationary autotune. The motor must be at a standstill before an autotune is enabled. To perform an autotune: • Set Pr **00.040** = 1 or 2 for a stationary autotune. (Both perform the same tests). • Close the drive enable signal (terminal 29). • Press the green *hand* button. • The upper row of the display will flash 'Auto Tune' during the test. • Wait for the drive to display 'Inhibit'. If the drive trips it cannot be reset until the drive enable signal (terminal 29) has been removed. • Remove the drive enable from the drive. If no trip occurs during or after the autotune then this indicates that the drive has been correctly set-up and is ready to run the Dyneo LSRPM motor. If a User Trip 40 occurs, then this indicates that the motor rated current or motor rated speed was not recognized as being a valid value for a Dyneo LSRPM motor. Check the Rated Speed (Pr **00.045**) and Rated Current (Pr **00.046**) entered in the drive against the Dyneo LSRPM motors listed in Table 7-3 to Table 7-9. Correct the values and perform an autotune again.	
Check Saliency	In sensorless mode, when the motor speed is below Pr **00.045** / 10, a special low speed algorithm must be used to control the motor. There are two modes available, with the mode chosen based on the saliency of the motor. The Dyneo LSRPM motors have little or no saliency so require the non-salient low speed mode to be used. Set Pr **00.054** to: Non-salient (1). Non-salient mode requires the ramp rate to be no slower than 5 s / 1000 rpm when operating in the region below Rated Speed Pr **00.045** / 10. The drive contains a feature to ensure that the ramp rate during the low speed region is at least 4 s / 1000 rpm. This feature is enabled automatically after a successful set-up of the Dyneo LSRPM motor.	
Save parameters	Select 'Save Parameters' in Pr **mm.000** (alternatively enter a value of 1000 in Pr **mm.000**) and press red reset button or toggle the reset digital input.	
Run	Drive is now ready to run	

* When using V01.11.01.00 firmware the Sensorless motor rated current must be used rather than the nameplate value (see Table 7-3 to Table 7-9 overleaf).

Table 7-3 Dyneo LSRPM 1500 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V / 1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
1500 LSRPM 90SL 3 kW	5.9	6.0	3	212	850
1500 LSRPM 100L 4.5 kW	8.6	8.6	3	223	850
1500 LSRPM 100L 6 kW	10.9	10.9	3	237	850
1500 LSRPM 132M 8.2 kW	16.0	17.3	3	232	1050
1500 LSRPM 132M 10.2 kW	19.9	20.6	3	234	1050
1500 LSRPM 132M 12 kW	23.0	23.6	3	237	1050
1500 LSRPM 160MP 15.6 kW	30.0	30.0	3	241	1050
1500 LSRPM 160MP 19.2 kW	37.0	37.0	3	242	1050
1500 LSRPM 160LR 22.8 kW	43.0	43.0	3	245	1050
1500 LSRPM 200L 25 kW	56.0	60.8	3	204	900
1500 LSRPM 200L 33 kW	65.5	69.0	3	218	900
1500 LSRPM 200L / 225ST1 40 kW	82.9	82.9	3	215	900
1500 LSRPM 200LU / 250MY 55 kW	110	110	3	221	900
1500 LSRPM 225MR1 70 kW	142	142	3	218	900
1500 LSRPM 250ME / 280SCM 85 kW	175	175	3	208	1150
1500 LSRPM 280SC 105 kW	215	215	3	210	1150
1500 LSRPM 280SD / 315SN 125 kW	245	245	3	228	1150
1500 LSRPM 280MK1 / 315MP1 145 kW	265	273	3	219	2600
1500 LSRPM 315SP1 175 kW	350	350	3	213	2600
1500 LSRPM 315MR1 220 kW	415	415	3	226	2600
1500 LSRPM 315MR1 250 kW	490	490	3	226	2600

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-4 Dyneo LSRPM 1800 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
1800 LSRPM 132M 9.8 kW	19.0	19.8	3	188	1050
1800 LSRPM 132M 12.3 kW	24.0	24.7	3	197	1050
1800 LSRPM 132M 14.4 kW	28.0	28.0	3	191	1050
1800 LSRPM 160MP 18.7 kW	36.0	36.0	3	206	1050
1800 LSRPM 160MP 23 kW	42.9	42.9	3	204	1050
1800 LSRPM 160LR 27.3 kW	52.0	52.0	3	205	1050
1800 LSRPM 200L 33 kW	79.0	80.3	3	170	900
1800 LSRPM 200L 40 kW	82.5	85.0	3	172	900
1800 LSRPM 200L 55 kW	120	124	3	181	900
1800 LSRPM 225ST1 70 kW	145	145	3	182	900
1800 LSRPM 225MR1 85 kW	172	172	3	187	900
1800 LSRPM 250ME 100 kW	204	207	3	195	1150
1800 LSRPM 280SC 125 kW	248	248	3	183	1150
1800 LSRPM 280SD 150 kW	295	295	3	195	1150
1800 LSRPM 280MK1 175 kW	330	330	3	196	2600
1800 LSRPM 315SP1 195 kW	370	370	3	206	2600
1800 LSRPM 315MR1 230 kW	425	425	3	201	2600

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-5 Dyneo LSRPM 2400 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
2400 LSRPM 90SL 4.8 kW	9.1	9.4	4	145	850
2400 LSRPM 100L 7.2 kW	13.4	13.4	4	146	850
2400 LSRPM 100L 9.5 kW	17.7	17.7	4	151	850
2400 LSRPM 132M 13.1 kW	25.0	27.2	8	149	1050
2400 LSRPM 132M 16.3 kW	31.0	32.1	8	140	1050
2400 LSRPM 132M 19.2 kW	37.0	37.1	8	152	1050
2400 LSRPM 160MP 25 kW	47.0	47.0	8	153	1050
2400 LSRPM 160MP 31 kW	58.0	58.0	8	156	1050
2400 LSRPM 160LR 36 kW	69.0	69.0	8	156	1050
2400 LSRPM 200L 50 kW	110	110	4	136	900
2400 LSRPM 200L1 65 kW	137	137	4	128	900
2400 LSRPM 200L1 80 kW	160	164	4	145	900
2400 LSRPM 225MR1 100 kW	200	201	4	142	900
2400 LSRPM 250SE 125 kW	235	240	4	146	1150
2400 LSRPM 250ME 150 kW	285	288	4	146	1150
2400 LSRPM 280SD1 190 kW	350	361	4	152	1150
2400 LSRPM 280MK1 230 kW	429	429	4	147	2600

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-6 Dyneo LSRPM 3000 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
3000 LSRPM 90SL 5.8 kW	11.0	11.1	4	120	850
3000 LSRPM 100L 8.7 kW	16.2	16.2	4	131	850
3000 LSRPM 100L 11.6 kW	21.0	21.0	4	134	850
3000 LSRPM 132M 15.8 kW	30.0	31.8	8	121	1050
3000 LSRPM 132M 19.7 kW	38.0	38.0	8	121	1050
3000 LSRPM 132M 23 kW	44.0	44.0	8	126	1050
3000 LSRPM 160MP 30 kW	57.0	57.0	8	127	1050
3000 LSRPM 160MP 37 kW	67.8	67.8	8	128	1050
3000 LSRPM 160LR 44 kW	82.0	82.0	8	129	1050
3000 LSRPM 200L 50 kW	111	116	4	109	900
3000 LSRPM 200L1 65 kW	126	136	4	118	900
3000 LSRPM 200L1 85 kW	170	170	4	125	900
3000 LSRPM 225ST2 110 kW	215	219	4	118	900
3000 LSRPM 250SE 145 kW	285	285	4	114	1150
3000 LSRPM 250ME1 170 kW	338	344	4	111	1150
3000 LSRPM 280SD1 200 kW	365	365	4	126	1150
3000 LSRPM 280SD1 220 kW	370	398	4	130	1150

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-7 Dyneo LSRPM 3600 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
3600 LSRPM 132M 17.6 kW	33.0	33.7	8	103	1050
3600 LSRPM 132M 22 kW	39.4	41.2	8	103	1050
3600 LSRPM 132M 26 kW	48.0	48.0	8	106	1050
3600 LSRPM 160MP 34 kW	63.0	63.0	8	106	1050
3600 LSRPM 160MP 41 kW	77.0	77.0	8	107	1050
3600 LSRPM 160LR 49 kW	91.0	91.0	8	110	1050
3600 LSRPM 200L1 70 kW	129	137	4	100	900
3600 LSRPM 200L1 85 kW	162	162	4	100	900
3600 LSRPM 200LU2 115 kW	217	232	4	103	900
3600 LSRPM 225SG 132 kW	250	250	4	103	1150
3600 LSRPM 250SE1 165 kW	330	330	4	96	1150
3600 LSRPM 250SE1 190 kW	350	360	4	106	1150
3600 LSRPM 280SD1 240 kW	420	429	4	108	1150

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-8 Dyneo LSRPM 4500 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
4500 LSRPM 132M 18.6 kW	35.0	35.0	8	86	1050
4500 LSRPM 132M 23 kW	44.0	44.0	8	84	1050
4500 LSRPM 132M 27 kW	51.0	51.0	8	83	1050
4500 LSRPM 160MP 35 kW	67.0	67.0	8	90	1050
4500 LSRPM 160MP 44 kW	81.0	81.0	8	92	1050
4500 LSRPM 160LR 52 kW	97.0	97.0	8	86	1050
4500 LSRPM 200L1 65 kW	130	142	8	82	900
4500 LSRPM 200L1 80 kW	160	172	8	82	900
4500 LSRPM 200L1 100 kW	200	200	8	79	900
4500 LSRPM 200L2 120 kW	230	230	8	82	900
4500 LSRPM 200LU2 135 kW	258	260	8	84	900
4500 LSRPM 225SR2 150 kW	262	281	8	91	900

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

Table 7-9 Dyneo LSRPM 5500 rpm motors

LSRPM Motor model	Motor rated current (nameplate value) Pr 00.046* A	Sensorless motor rated current after autotune* A	Switching frequency Pr 00.041 kHz	Ke Pr 00.047 V/1000 rpm	Motor Thermal Time Constant Pr 00.053 s
5500 LSRPM 132M 18.6 kW	35.0	35.0	8	74	1050
5500 LSRPM 132M 23 kW	44.0	44.0	8	74	1050
5500 LSRPM 132M 27 kW	52.0	52.0	8	77	1050
5500 LSRPM 160MP 35 kW	67.0	67.0	8	76	1050
5500 LSRPM 160MP 44 kW	82.0	82.0	8	77	1050
5500 LSRPM 160LR 52 kW	97.0	97.0	8	77	1050
5500 LSRPM 200L1 70 kW	140	141	8	68	900
5500 LSRPM 200L1 85 kW	170	170	8	64	900
5500 LSRPM 200L1 100 kW	210	210	8	64	900
5500 LSRPM 200L2 140 kW	265	296	8	67	900

* From firmware version 01.12.xx.xx onwards, the rated current from the motor nameplate is entered into Pr **05.007** / Pr **00.046** and will be updated automatically to the sensorless value after an autotune.

7.4 Quick start commissioning / start-up using Powerdrive F300 Connect (V02.00.00.00 onwards)

Powerdrive F300 Connect is a Windows™ based software commissioning/start-up tool for Powerdrive F300. Powerdrive F300 Connect can be used for commissioning / start-up and monitoring, drive parameters can be uploaded, downloaded and compared and simple or custom menu listings can be created. Drive menus can be displayed in standard list format or as live block diagrams. Powerdrive F300 Connect is able to communicate with a single drive or a network. Powerdrive F300 Connect can be downloaded from www.controltechniques.com (file size approximately 100 MB).

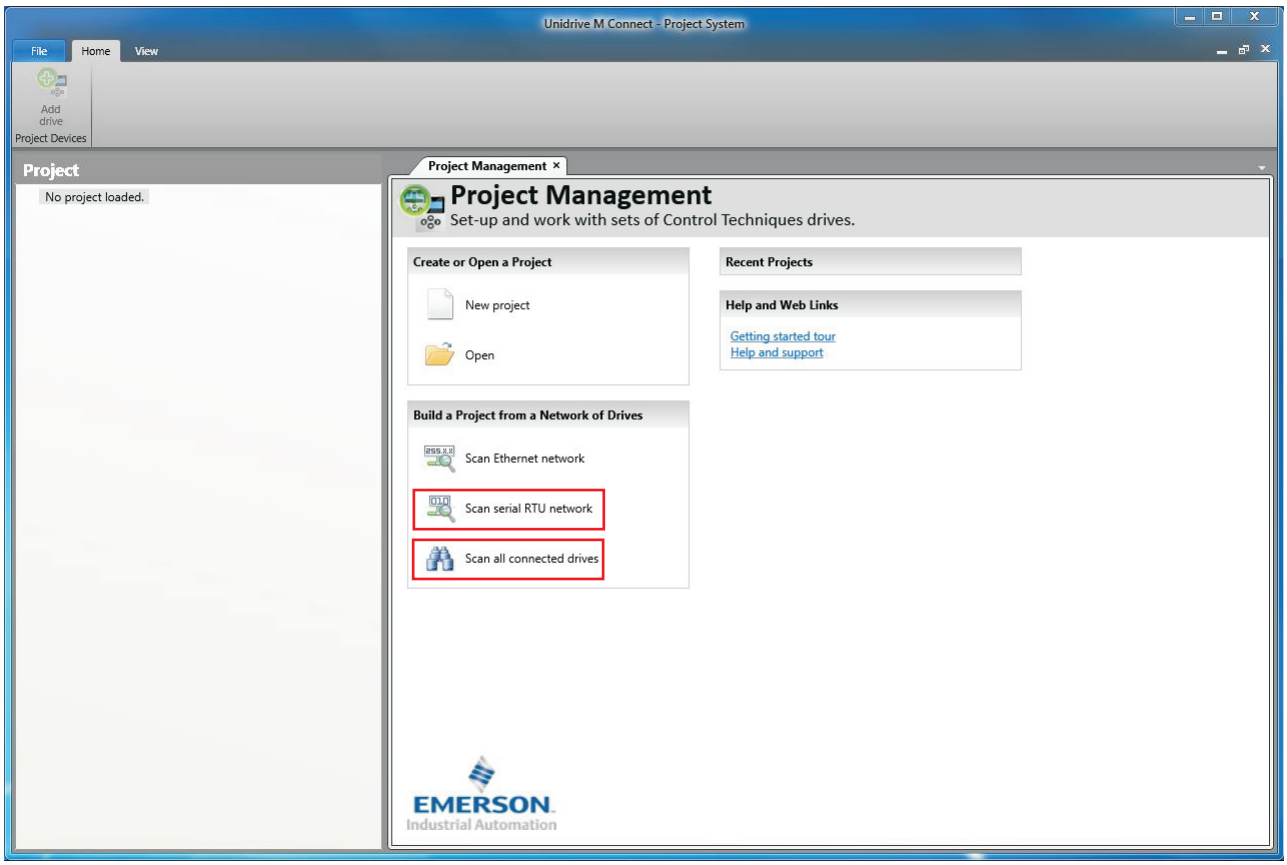
Powerdrive F300 Connect system requirements

- Windows 8, Windows 7 SP1, Windows Vista SP2, Windows XP SP3
- Minimum of 1280 x 1024 screen resolution with 256 colours
- Microsoft.Net Frameworks 4.0 (this is provided in the downloaded file)
- Note that you must have administrator rights to install Powerdrive F300 Connect

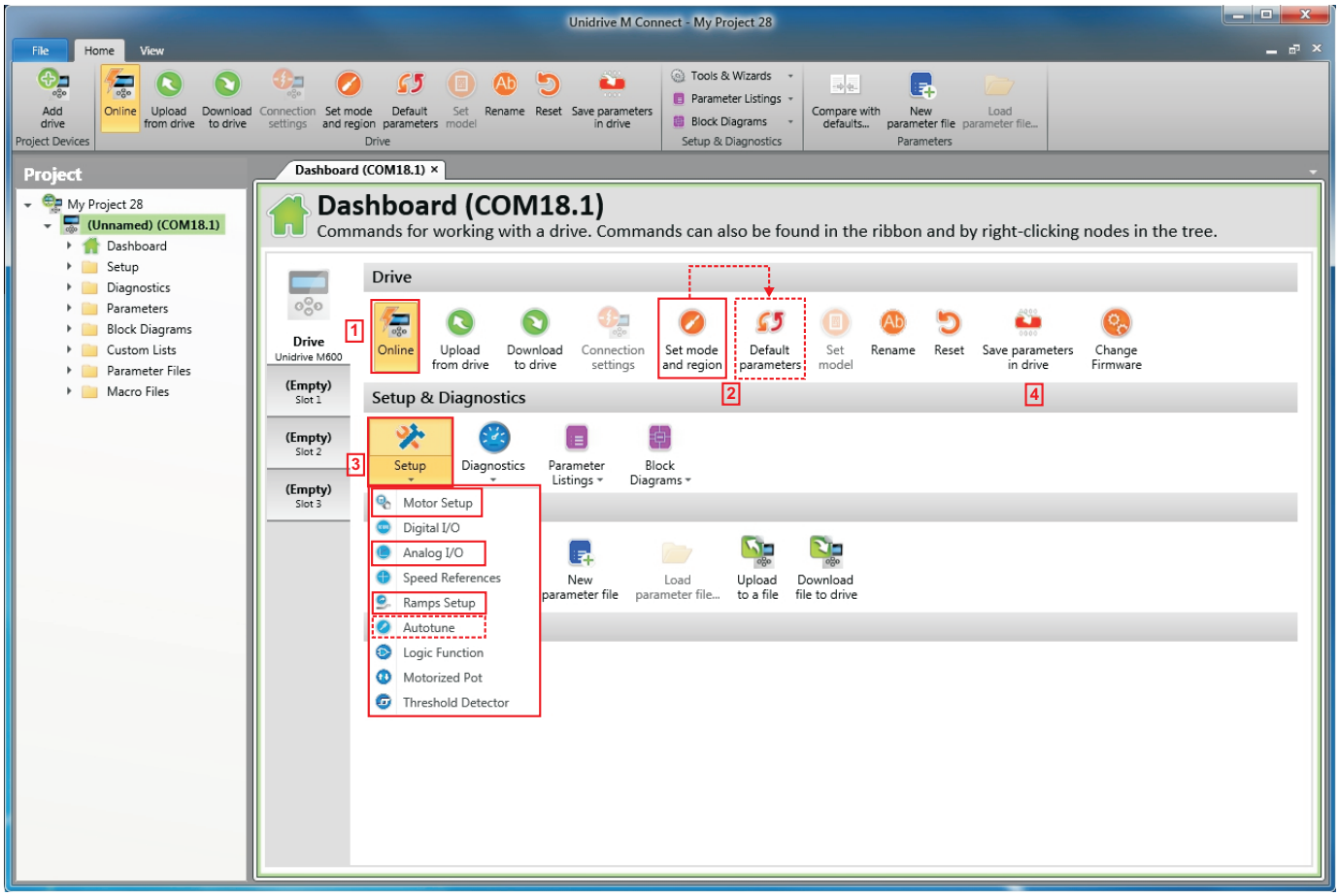
Any previous copy of Powerdrive F300 Connect should be uninstalled before proceeding with the installation (existing projects will not be lost). Included within Powerdrive F300 Connect is the *Parameter Reference Guide* for Powerdrive F300.

7.4.1 Power-up the drive

1. Start Powerdrive F300 Connect, and on the ‘Project Management’ screen select 'Scan serial RTU network' or 'Scan all connected drives’.



Select the discovered drive.



1. Select the ‘Online’ icon to connect with the drive. When a successful connection is made the icon will be highlighted orange.
2. Select ‘Set mode and region’.
   If the required control mode is highlighted in the ‘Drive Settings’ dialogue, then:
   - Change the supply frequency, if required and select ‘Apply’, otherwise select ‘Cancel’.
   - Select ‘Default parameters‘ from the Dashboard and in the ‘Default Parameters’ dialogue, select ‘Apply’

   If the required control mode is not highlighted in the ‘Drive Settings’ dialogue then:
   - Select the required mode and supply frequency.
   - Select ‘Apply’.

3. Select ‘Setup’ and perform the steps highlighted (dotted lines indicate a step which may not need to be performed (see overleaf):

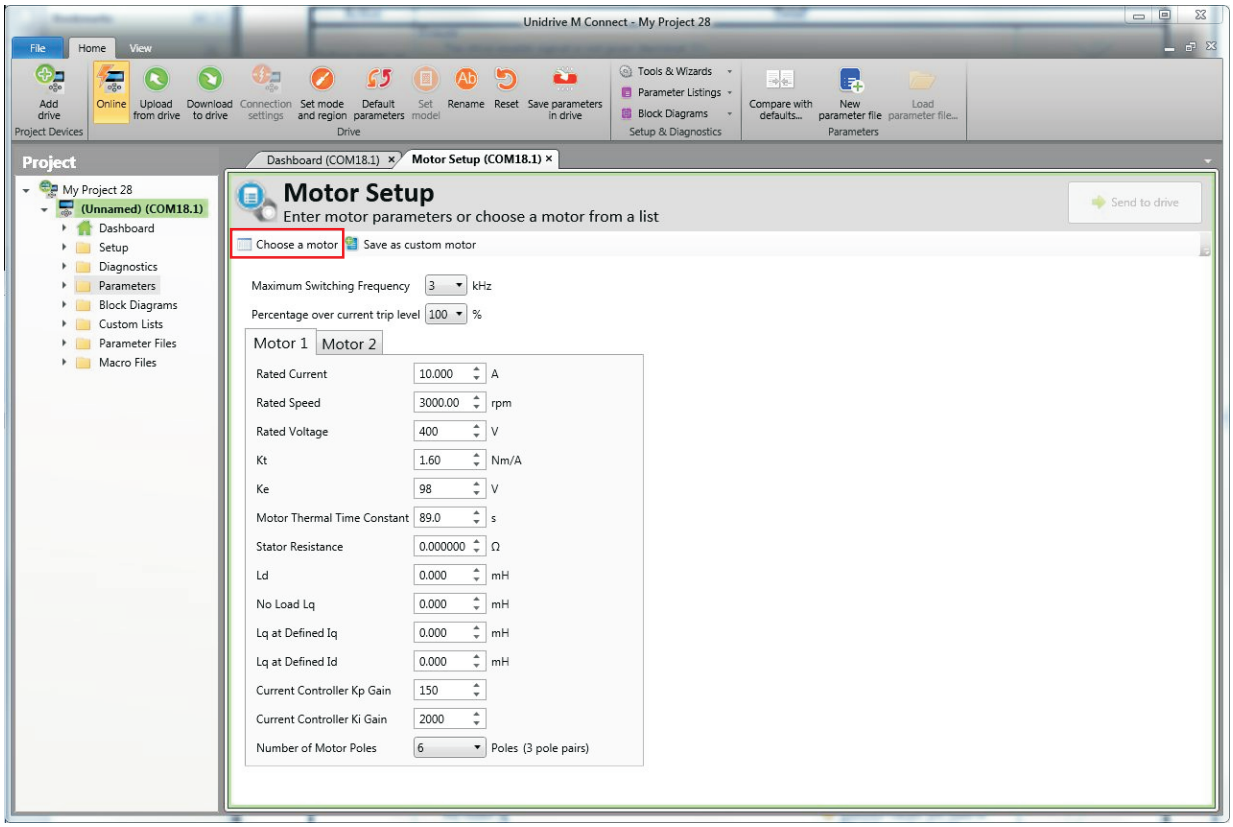
Action	Detail
Motor Setup	Powerdrive F300 Connect contains a database for induction motors and permanent magnet motors. Provision is also made to enter motor nameplate data. The next section describes the use of the motor database for a Leroy Somer LSRPM motor used in RFC-S Sensorless mode.
Analog I/O	The motor thermistor can be selected in Pr **07.011**. Refer to the parameter help for Pr **07.011** for further information.
Ramps Setup	Enter the required Acceleration rate and Deceleration rate
Autotune	Not required when using data from the motor database for a Leroy Somer LSRPM motor used in RFC-S Sensorless mode.

4. Select 'Save parameters in drive' to perform a parameter save. The drive is now ready to run.

7.4.2 Use of the motor database for a Leroy Somer LSRPM motor for use in RFC-S Sensorless mode.

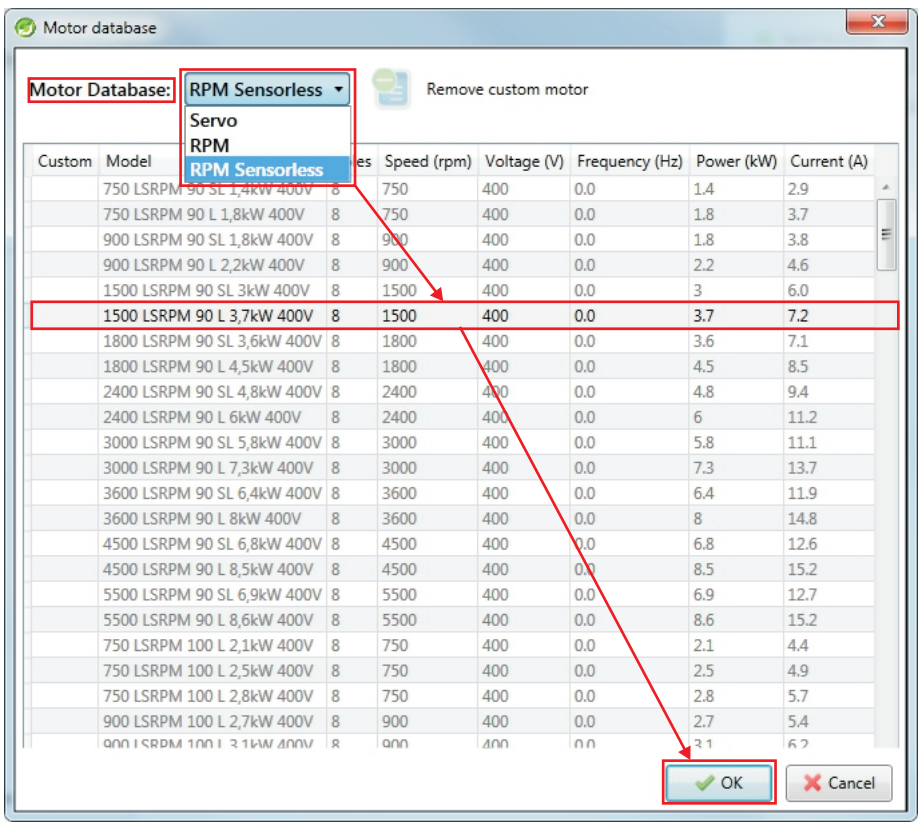
Select 'Motor Setup' from the 'Dashboard'.

On the 'Motor Setup' screen, select 'Choose a motor'.

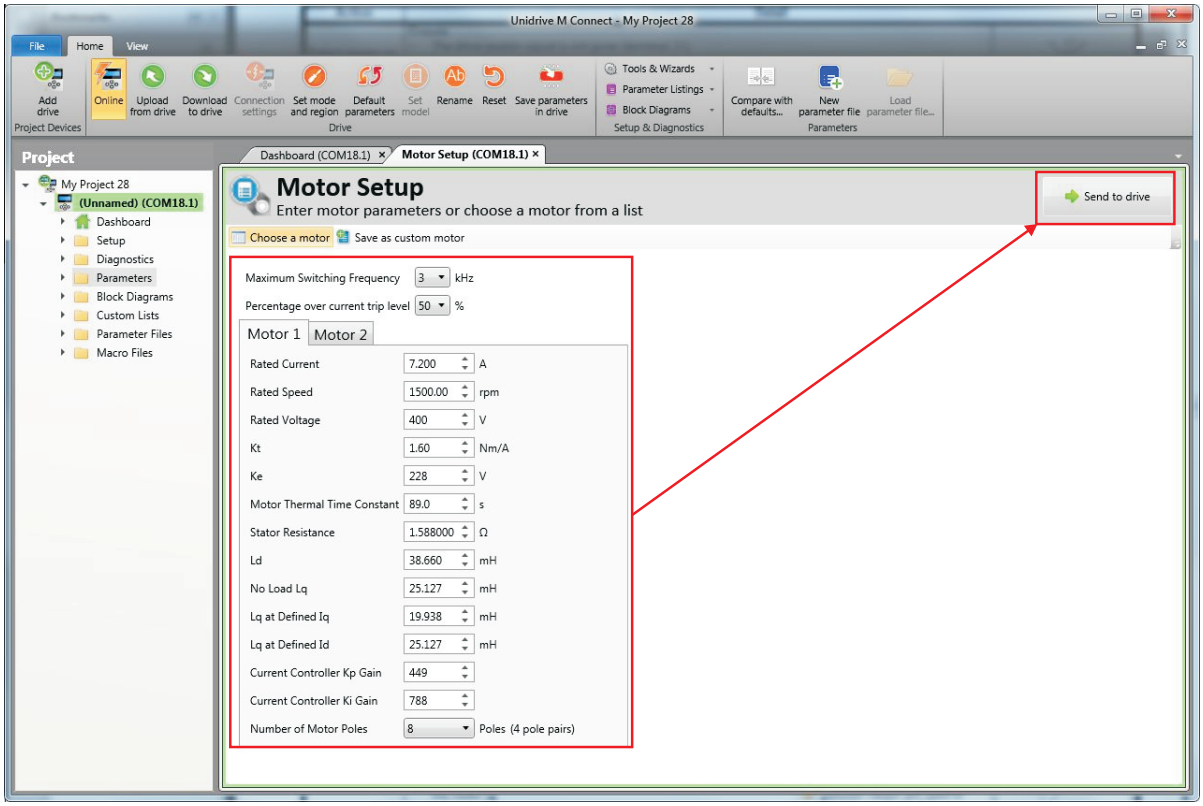


Select the required motor database:

Select the required motor from the list and click 'OK'.



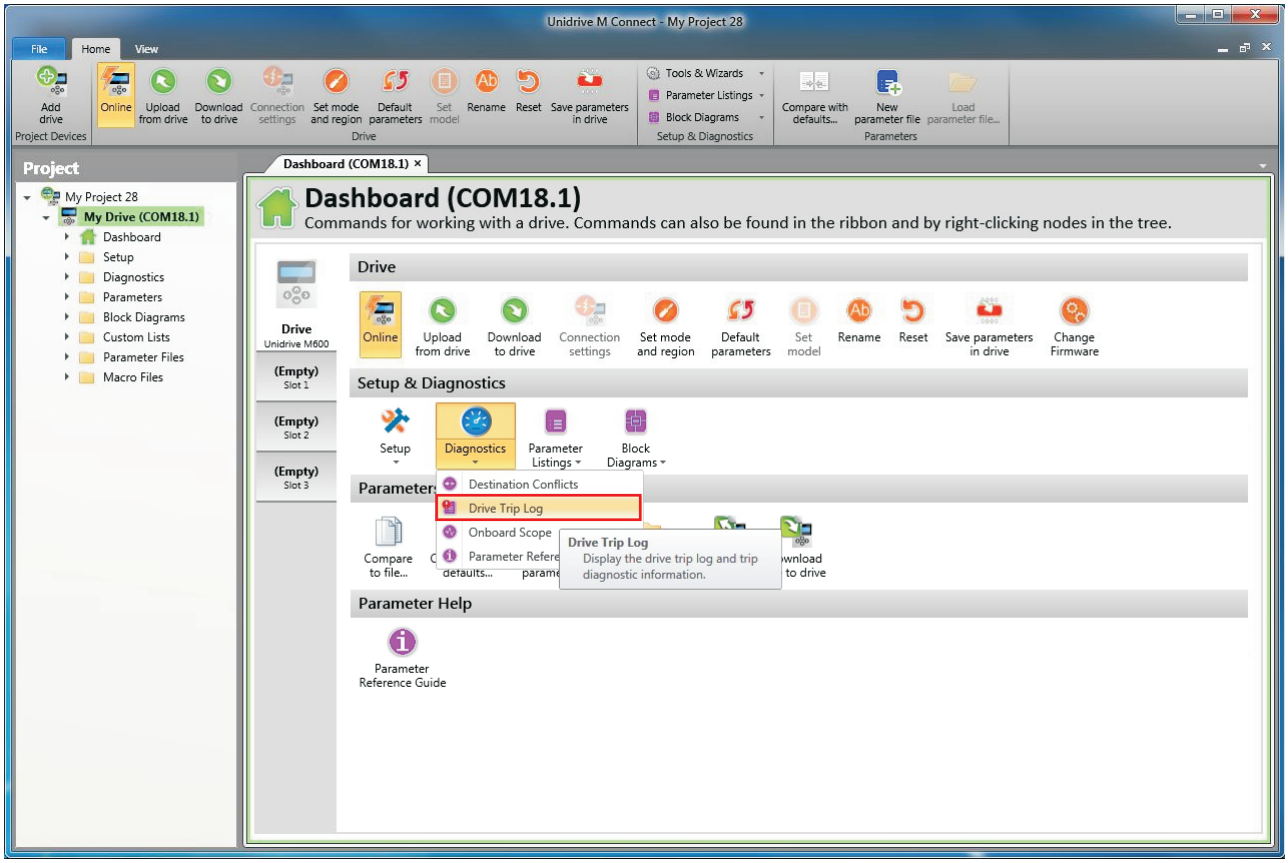
The data for the selected motor is displayed on the 'Motor Setup' screen. Click 'Send to drive' to set the associated parameters.



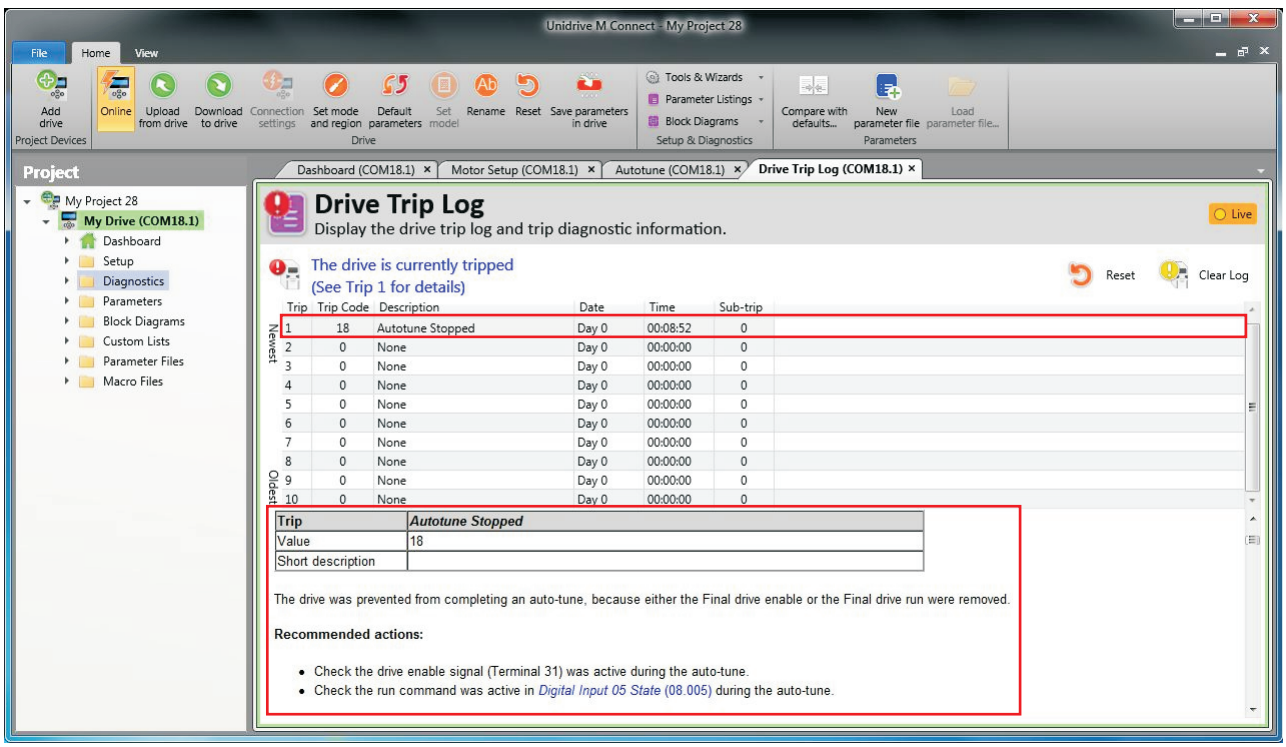
7.5 Diagnostics

If the drive trips, it is possible to interrogate the trip log from within Powerdrive F300 Connect.

Select 'Drive Trip Log' from the 'Dashboard'.



The drive trip log shows the trip responsible for stopping the autotune and a description of the trip.



8 Optimization

This chapter takes the user through methods of optimizing the drive set-up and maximize the performance. The auto-tuning features of the drive simplify the optimization tasks.

8.1 Motor map parameters

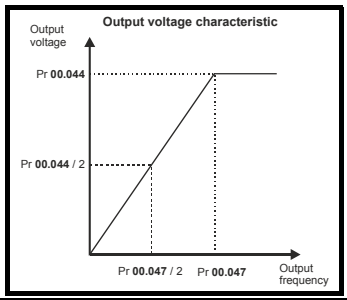
8.1.1 Open loop motor control

Pr 00.046 {05.007} *Rated Current*	**Defines the maximum continuous motor current**

- The rated current parameter must be set to the maximum continuous current of the motor. The motor rated current is used in the following:
- Current limits (see section 8.3 *Switching frequency* on page 160, for more information).
- Motor thermal overload protection (see section 8.2 *Motor thermal protection* on page 159, for more information)
- Vector mode voltage control (see *Open Loop Control Mode* (00.007), later in this table)
- Slip compensation (see *Enable Slip Compensation* (05.027), later in this table)
- Dynamic V/F control

Pr 00.044 {05.009} *Rated Voltage*	**Defines the voltage applied to the motor at rated frequency**
Pr 00.047 {05.006} *Rated Frequency*	**Defines the frequency at which rated voltage is applied**

The *Rated Voltage* (00.044) and the *Rated Frequency* (00.047) are used to define the voltage to frequency characteristic applied to the motor (see *Open Loop Control Mode* (00.007), later in this table). The *Rated Frequency* (00.047) is also used in conjunction with the motor rated speed to calculate the rated slip for slip compensation (see *Rated Speed* (00.045), later in this table).



Pr 00.045 {05.008} *Rated Speed*	**Defines the full load rated speed of the motor**
Pr 00.042 {05.011} *Number Of Motor Poles*	**Defines the number of motor poles**

The motor rated speed and the number of poles are used with the motor rated frequency to calculate the rated slip of induction machines in Hz.

Rated slip (Hz) = Motor rated frequency - (Number of pole pairs x [Motor rated speed / 60]) = $\mathbf{00.047} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{00.042}}{\mathbf{2}} \times \frac{\mathbf{00.045}}{\mathbf{60}}\right)$

If Pr **00.045** is set to 0 or to synchronous speed, slip compensation is disabled. If slip compensation is required this parameter should be set to the nameplate value, which should give the correct rpm for a hot machine. Sometimes it will be necessary to adjust this when the drive is commissioned because the nameplate value may be inaccurate. Slip compensation will operate correctly both below base speed and within the field-weakening region. Slip compensation is normally used to correct for the motor speed to prevent speed variation with load. The rated load rpm can be set higher than synchronous speed to deliberately introduce speed droop. This can be useful to aid load sharing with mechanically coupled motors.

Pr **00.042** is also used in the calculation of the motor speed display by the drive for a given output frequency. When Pr **00.042** is set to 'Automatic', the number of motor poles is automatically calculated from the rated frequency Pr **00.047**, and the motor rated speed Pr **00.045**.

Number of poles = 120 x (*Rated Frequency* (00.047) / *Rated Speed* (00.045)) rounded to the nearest even number.

Pr 00.043 {05.010} *Rated Power Factor*	**Defines the angle between the motor voltage and current**

The power factor is the true power factor of the motor, i.e. the angle between the motor voltage and current. The power factor is used in conjunction with the *Rated Current* (00.046), to calculate the rated active current and magnetising current of the motor. The rated active current is used extensively to control the drive, and the magnetising current is used in vector mode stator resistance compensation. It is important that this parameter is set up correctly. The drive can measure the motor rated power factor by performing a rotating autotune (see Autotune (Pr **00.040**), below).

Pr 0.40 {5.12} Autotune

There are two autotune tests available in open loop mode, a stationary and a rotating test. A rotating autotune should be used whenever possible so the measured value of power factor of the motor is used by the drive.

- A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to remove the load from the motor shaft. The stationary test measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017), *Transient Inductance* (05.024), *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and *Current At Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060) which are required for good performance in vector control modes (see *Open Loop Control Mode* (00.007), later in this table). If *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) = 1, then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). The stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. To perform a Stationary autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).
- A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is unloaded. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune, as above, then a rotating test is performed in which the motor is accelerated with currently selected ramps up to a frequency of *Rated Frequency* (05.006) x $^{2}/_{3}$, and the frequency is maintained at that level for 4 seconds. *Stator Inductance* (05.025) is measured and this value is used in conjunction with other motor parameters to calculate *Rated Power Factor* (05.010). To perform a Rotating autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 2, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

Following the completion of an autotune test the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the *Drive Enable* (06.015) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the *Control Word* (06.042) and *Control Word Enable* (06.043).

Pr 00.007 {05.014} *Open Loop Control Mode*

There are several voltage modes available which fall into two categories, vector control and fixed boost.

Vector control

Vector control mode provides the motor with a linear voltage characteristic from 0 Hz to motor *Rated Frequency* (00.047), and then a constant voltage above motor rated frequency. When the drive operates between motor rated frequency/50 and motor rated frequency/4, full vector based stator resistance compensation is applied. When the drive operates between motor rated frequency/4 and motor rated frequency/2 the stator resistance compensation is gradually reduced to zero as the frequency increases. For the vector modes to operate correctly the *Rated Power Factor* (00.043), *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Voltage Offset At Zero Current* (05.058) are all required to be set up accurately. The drive can be made to measure these by performing an autotune (see Pr 00.040 *Autotune*). The drive can also be made to measure the stator resistance and voltage offset automatically every time the drive is enabled or the first time the drive is enabled after it is powered up, by selecting one of the vector control voltage modes.

(0) **Ur S** = The stator resistance and the voltage offset are measured and the parameters for the selected motor map are over-written each time the drive is made to run. This test can only be done with a stationary motor where the flux has decayed to zero. Therefore this mode should only be used if the motor is guaranteed to be stationary each time the drive is made to run. To prevent the test from being done before the flux has decayed there is a period of 1 second after the drive has been in the ready state during which the test is not done if the drive is made to run again. In this case, previously measured values are used. Ur S mode ensures that the drive compensates for any change in motor parameters due to changes in temperature. The new values of stator resistance and voltage offset are not automatically saved to the drive's EEPROM.(4)

(4) **Ur I** = The stator resistance and voltage offset are measured when the drive is first made to run after each power-up. This test can only be done with a stationary motor. Therefore this mode should only be used if the motor is guaranteed to be stationary the first time the drive is made to run after each power-up. The new values of stator resistance and voltage offset are not automatically saved to the drive's EEPROM.

(1) **Ur** = The stator resistance and voltage offset are not measured. The user can enter the motor and cabling resistance into the *Stator Resistance* (05.017). However this will not include resistance effects within the drive inverter. Therefore if this mode is to be used, it is best to use an autotune test initially to measure the stator resistance and voltage offset.

(3) **Ur_Auto** = The stator resistance and voltage offset are measured once, the first time the drive is made to run. After the test has been completed successfully the *Open Loop Control Mode* (00.007) is changed to Ur mode. The *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Voltage Offset At Zero Current* (05.058)) parameters are written to, and along with the *Open Loop Control Mode* (00.007), are saved in the drive's EEPROM. If the test fails, the voltage mode will stay set to Ur Auto and the test will be repeated next time the drive is made to run.

Fixed boost

Neither the stator resistance nor the voltage offset are used in the control of the motor, instead a fixed characteristic with low frequency voltage boost as defined by Pr **00.008**, is used. Fixed boost mode should be used when the drive is controlling multiple motors. There are two settings of fixed boost available:

(2) **Fixed** = This mode provides the motor with a linear voltage characteristic from 0 Hz to *Rated Frequency* (00.047), and then a constant voltage above rated frequency.

(5) **Square** = This mode provides the motor with a square law voltage characteristic from 0 Hz to *Rated Frequency* (00.0 47), and then a constant voltage above rated frequency. This mode is suitable for variable torque applications like fans and pumps where the load is proportional to the square of the speed of the motor shaft. This mode should not be used if a high starting torque is required.

Pr 00.007 {05.014} *Open Loop Control Mode (cont)*

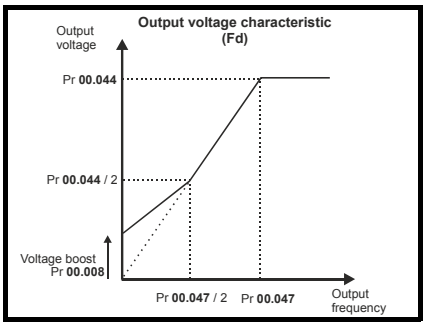
Fixed boost

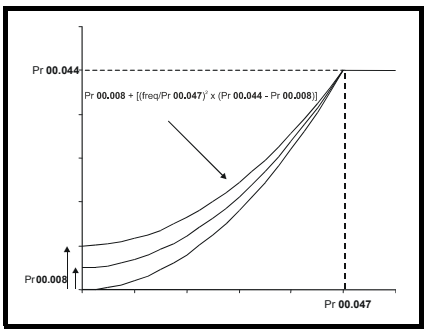
Neither the stator resistance nor the voltage offset are used in the control of the motor, instead a fixed characteristic with low frequency voltage boost as defined by parameter Pr **00.008**, is used. Fixed boost mode should be used when the drive is controlling multiple motors. There are two settings of fixed boost available:

(2) **Fixed** = This mode provides the motor with a linear voltage characteristic from 0 Hz to *Rated Frequency* (00.047), and then a constant voltage above rated frequency.

(5) **Square** = This mode provides the motor with a square law voltage characteristic from 0 Hz to *Rated Frequency* (00.047), and then a constant voltage above rated frequency. This mode is suitable for variable torque applications like fans and pumps where the load is proportional to the square of the speed of the motor shaft. This mode should not be used if a high starting torque is required.

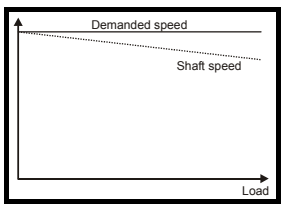
For both these modes, at low frequencies (from 0 Hz to ½ x Pr **00.047**) a voltage boost is applied defined by Pr **00.008** as shown below:





Pr 05.027 *Enable Slip Compensation*

When a motor, being controlled in open loop mode, has load applied a characteristic of the motor is that the output speed droops in proportion to the load applied as shown:



In order to prevent the speed droop shown above slip compensation should be enabled. To enable slip compensation Pr **05.027** must be set to a 1 (this is the default setting), and the motor rated speed must be entered in Pr **00.045** (Pr **05.008**).

The motor rated speed parameter should be set to the synchronous speed of the motor minus the slip speed. This is normally displayed on the motor nameplate, i.e. for a typical 18.5 kW, 50 Hz, 4 pole motor, the motor rated speed would be approximately 1465 rpm. The synchronous speed for a 50 Hz, 4 pole motor is 1500 rpm, so therefore the slip speed would be 35 rpm. If the synchronous speed is entered in Pr **00.045**, slip compensation will be disabled. If too small a value is entered in Pr **00.045**, the motor will run faster than the demanded frequency. The synchronous speeds for 50 Hz motors with different numbers of poles are as follows:

2 pole = 3000 rpm, 4 pole = 1500 rpm, 6pole =1000 rpm, 8 pole = 750 rpm

8.1.2 RFC-A Sensorless mode

Induction motor without position feedback

Pr 00.046 {05.007} *Motor Rated Current*	**Defines the maximum motor continuous current**

The motor rated current parameter must be set to the maximum continuous current of the motor. The motor rated current is used in the following:

- Motor thermal overload protection (see section 8.2 *Motor thermal protection* on page 159, for more information)
- Vector control algorithm

Pr 00.044 {05.009} *Rated Voltage*	**Defines the voltage applied to the motor at rated frequency**
Pr 00.047 {05.006} *Rated Frequency*	**Defines the frequency at which rated voltage is applied**

The motor rated voltage Pr **00.044** and the motor rated frequency Pr **00.047** are used to define the relationship between the voltage and frequency applied to the motor, as shown.

The motor rated voltage is used by the field controller to limit the voltage applied to the motor. Normally this is set to the nameplate value. To allow current control to be maintained, it is necessary for the drive to leave some 'headroom' between the motor terminal voltage and the maximum available drive output voltage. For good transient performance at high speed, the motor rated voltage should be set below 95 % of the minimum supply voltage to the drive.

The motor rated voltage and motor rated frequency are also used during the rotating autotune test (see Autotune Pr **00.040** later in this table) and in the calculations required for automatic optimization of the motor rated speed (see Motor rated speed optimization Pr **05.016**, later in this table). Therefore, it is important that the correct value for motor rated voltage is used.

Pr 00.045 {05.008} *Rated Speed*	**Defines the full load rated speed of the motor**
Pr 00.042 {05.011} *Number Of Motor Poles*	**Defines the number of motor poles**

The motor rated speed and motor rated frequency are used to determine the full load slip of the motor which is used by the vector control algorithm.

Incorrect setting of this parameter has the following effects:

- Reduced efficiency of motor operation
- Reduction of maximum torque available from the motor
- Reduced transient performance
- Inaccurate control of absolute torque in torque control modes

The nameplate value is normally the value for a hot motor; however, some adjustment may be required when the drive is commissioned if the nameplate value is inaccurate. Either a fixed value can be entered in this parameter or an optimization system may be used to automatically adjust this parameter (see *Motor Parameter Adaptive Control* (05.016), later in this table).

When Pr **00.042** is set to 'Automatic', the number of motor poles is automatically calculated from the motor *Rated Frequency* (00.047), and the motor *Rated Speed* (00.045).

Number of poles = 120 x (Motor *Rated Frequency* (00.047 / Motor *Rated Speed* (00.045) rounded to the nearest even number.

Pr 00.043 {5.10} *Rated Power Factor*	**Defines the angle between the motor voltage and current**

The power factor is the true power factor of the motor, i.e. the angle between the motor voltage and current. If the *Stator Inductance* (05.025) is set to zero then the power factor is used in conjunction with the motor *Rated Current* (00.046) and other motor parameters to calculate the rated active and magnetising currents of the motor, which are used in the vector control algorithm. If the stator inductance has a non-zero value this parameter is not used by the drive, but is continuously written with a calculated value of power factor. The stator inductance can be measured by the drive by performing a rotating autotune (see *Autotune* (Pr 00.040), later in this table).

Pr 00.040 {05.012} *Autotune*

There are three autotune tests available in RFC-A mode, a stationary test, a rotating test and an inertia measurement test. A stationary autotune will give moderate performance whereas a rotating autotune will give improved performance as it measures the actual values of the motor parameters required by the drive. An inertia measurement test should be performed separately to a stationary or rotating autotune.

It is highly recommended that a rotating autotune is performed (Pr **00.040** set to 2).

- A stationary autotune can be used when the motor is loaded and it is not possible to remove the load from the motor shaft. The stationary autotune measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Transient Inductance* (05.024) of the motor. These are used to calculate the current loop gains, and at the end of the test the values in Pr **04.013** and Pr **04.014** are updated. *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and *Current At Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060) for the drive are also measured. Additionally, if *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) = 1, then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). A stationary autotune does not measure the power factor of the motor so the value on the motor nameplate must be entered into Pr **00.043**. To perform a stationary autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).
- A rotating autotune should only be used if the motor is unloaded. A rotating autotune first performs a stationary autotune, a rotating test is then performed in which the motor is accelerated with currently selected ramps up to a frequency of *Rated Frequency* (05.006) x 2/3, and the frequency is maintained at the level for up to 40 s. During the rotating autotune the *Stator Inductance* (05.025), and the motor saturation breakpoints (Pr **05.029**, Pr **05.030**, Pr **06.062** and Pr **05.063**) are modified by the drive. The power factor is also modified for user information only, but is not used after this point as the stator inductance is used in the vector control algorithm instead. To perform a Rotating autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 2, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).
- The inertia measurement test can measure the total inertia of the load and the motor. This is used to set the speed loop gains (see Speed loop gains) and to provide torque feed-forwards when required during acceleration.
  Applied torque (sensorless mode) This test may give inaccurate results, if the motor rated speed is not set to the correct value for the motor, or if standard ramp mode is active. During the inertia measurement test a series of progressively larger torque levels are applied to the motor (20 %, 40 % ... 100 % of rated torque) to accelerate the motor up to $^{3}/_{4}$ x *Rated Speed* (05.008) to determine the inertia from the acceleration/deceleration time. The test attempts to reach the required speed within 5 s, but if this fails the next torque level is used. When 100 % torque is used the test allows 60 s for the required speed to be reached, but if this is unsucessful an Autotune trip is initiated. To reduce the time taken for the test it is possible to define the level of torque to be used for the test by setting *Mechanical Load Test Level* (05.021) to a non-zero value. When the test level is defined the test is only carried out at the defined test level and 60 s is allowed for the motor to reach the required speed. It should be noted that if the maximum speed allows for flux weakening then it may not be possible to achieve the required torque level to accelerate the motor quickly enough. If this is the case, the maximum speed reference should be reduced. To perform an Inertia measurement autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 4, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

Following the completion of an autotune test the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the *Drive Enable* (06.015) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the control word (Pr **06.042** & Pr **06.043**)

Pr 00.038 {04.013} / Pr 00.039 {04.014} *Current Loop Gains*

The current loop gains proportional (Kp) and integral (Ki) gains control the response of the current loop to a change in current (torque) demand. The default values give satisfactory operation with most motors. However, for optimal performance in dynamic applications it may be necessary to change the gains to improve the performance. The *Current Controller Kp Gain* (04.013) is the most critical value in controlling the performance. The values for the current loop gains can be calculated by performing a stationary or rotating autotune (see *Autotune* Pr **00.040**, earlier in this table) the drive measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Transient Inductance* (05.024) of the motor and calculates the current loop gains.

This will give a step response with minimum overshoot after a step change of current reference. The proportional gain can be increased by a factor of 1.5 giving a similar increase in bandwidth; however, this gives a step response with approximately 12.5 % overshoot. The equation for the integral gain gives a conservative value. In some applications where it is necessary for the reference frame used by the drive to dynamically follow the flux very closely (i.e. high speed Sensorless RFC-A induction motor applications) the integral gain may need to have a significantly higher value.

Speed Loop Gains (Pr 00.007 {03.010}, Pr 00.008 {03.011}, Pr 00.009 {03.012})

The speed loop gains control the response of the speed controller to a change in speed demand. The speed controller includes proportional (Kp) and integral (Ki) feed forward terms, and a differential (Kd) feedback term. The drive holds two sets of these gains and either set may be selected for use by the speed controller with Pr **03.016**. If Pr **03.016** = 0, gains Kp1, Ki1 and Kd1 (Pr **00.007** to Pr **00.009)** are used, and if Pr **03.016** = 1, gains Kp2, Ki2 and Kd2 (Pr **03.013** to Pr **03.015**) are used. Pr **03.016** may be changed when the drive is enabled or disabled. If the load is predominantly a constant inertia and constant torque, the drive can calculate the required Kp and Ki gains to give a required compliance angle or bandwidth dependant on the setting of Pr **03.017**.

Speed Controller Proportional Gain (Kp), Pr **00.007** {**03.010**} and Pr **03.013**

If the proportional gain has a value and the integral gain is set to zero the controller will only have a proportional term, and there must be a speed error to produce a torque reference. Therefore as the motor load increases there will be a difference between the reference and actual speeds. This effect, called regulation, depends on the level of the proportional gain, the higher the gain the smaller the speed error for a given load. If the proportional gain is too high either the acoustic noise produced by speed feedback quantization becomes unacceptable, or the stability limit is reached.

Speed Controller Integral Gain (Ki), Pr **00.008** {**03.011**} and Pr **03.014**

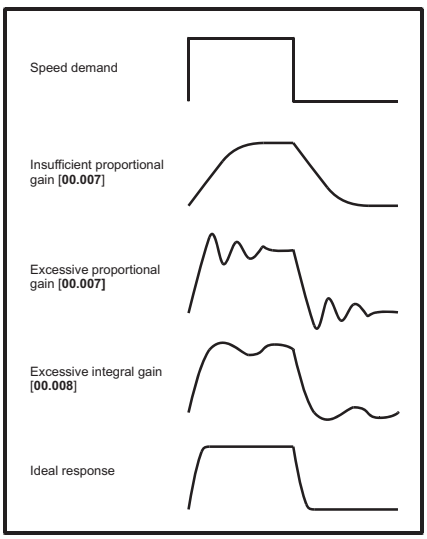
The integral gain is provided to prevent speed regulation. The error is accumulated over a period of time and used to produce the necessary torque demand without any speed error. Increasing the integral gain reduces the time taken for the speed to reach the correct level and increases the stiffness of the system, i.e. it reduces the positional displacement produced by applying a load torque to the motor. Unfortunately increasing the integral gain also reduces the system damping giving overshoot after a transient. For a given integral gain the damping can be improved by increasing the proportional gain. A compromise must be reached where the system response, stiffness and damping are all adequate for the application. For RFC-A Sensorless mode, it is unlikely that the integral gain can be increased much above 0.50.

Differential Gain (Kd), Pr **00.009** {**0 3.012**} and Pr **03.015**

The differential gain is provided in the feedback of the speed controller to give additional damping. The differential term is implemented in a way that does not introduce excessive noise normally associated with this type of function. Increasing the differential term reduces the overshoot produced by under-damping, however, for most applications the proportional and integral gains alone are sufficient.

There are six methods of tuning the speed loop gains dependant on the setting of Pr **03.017**:

1. Pr **03.017** = 0, User set-up.
   This involves the connecting of an oscilloscope to analog output 1 to monitor the speed feedback.
   Give the drive a step change in speed reference and monitor the response of the drive on the oscilloscope.
   The proportional gain (Kp) should be set up initially. The value should be increased up to the point where the speed overshoots and then reduced slightly.
   The integral gain (Ki) should then be increased up to the point where the speed becomes unstable and then reduced slightly.
   It may now be possible to increase the proportional gain to a higher value and the process should be repeated until the system response matches the ideal response as shown.
   The diagram shows the effect of incorrect P and I gain settings as well as the ideal response.
2. Pr **03.017** = 1, Bandwidth set-up
   If bandwidth based set-up is required, the drive can calculate Kp and Ki if the following parameters are set up correctly:
   Pr **03.020** - Required bandwidth,
   Pr **03.021** - Required damping factor,
   Pr **03.018** - Motor and load inertia.
   The drive can be made to measure the motor and load inertia by performing an inertia measurement autotune (see Autotune Pr **00.040**, earlier in this table).
3. Pr **03.017** = 2, Compliance angle set-up
   If compliance angle based set-up is required, the drive can calculate Kp and Ki if the following parameters are set up correctly:
   Pr **03.019** - Required compliance angle,
   Pr **03.021** - Required damping factor,
   Pr **03.018** - Motor and load inertia The drive can be made to measure the motor and load inertia by performing an inertia measurement autotune (see *Autotune* Pr 00.040, earlier in this table).
4. Pr **03.017** = 3, Kp gains times 16
   If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) = 3 the selected proportional gain used by the drive is multiplied by 16.



5. Pr **03.017** = 4 - 6

If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) is set to a value from 4 to 6 the *Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1* (03.010) and *Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1* (03.011) are automatically set up to give the bandwidths given in the table below and a damping factor of unity. These settings give low, standard or high performance.

Pr 03.017	Performance	Bandwidth
4	Low	5 Hz
5	Standard	25 Hz
6	High	100 Hz

6. Pr **03.017** = 7

If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) = 7 then *Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1* (03.010), *Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1* (03.011) and *Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd1* (03.012) are set up to give a closed-loop speed controller response that approximates to a first order system with a transfer function of $1 / (s\tau + 1)$, where $\tau = 1/\omega bw$ and ωbw = *Bandwidth* (03.020). In this case the damping factor is meaningless, and *Damping Factor* (03.021) and *Compliance Angle* (03.019) have no effect.

8.1.3 RFC-S Sensorless mode

Permanent magnet motor without Position feedback

Pr 00.046 {05.007} *Rated Current* — **Defines the maximum motor continuous current**

The motor rated current parameter must be set to the maximum continuous current of the motor. The motor rated current is used in the following:

- Motor thermal overload protection (see section 8.2 *Motor thermal protection* on page 159, for more information)

Pr 00.042 {05.011} *Number Of Motor Poles* — **Defines the number of motor poles**

The number of motor poles parameter defines the number of electrical revolutions in one whole mechanical revolution of the motor. This parameter must be set correctly for the control algorithms to operate correctly. When Pr **00.042** is set to "Automatic" the number of poles is 6.

Pr 00.040 {05.012} *Autotune*

There are two autotune tests available in RFC-S sensorless mode, a stationary autotune and an inertia measurement test.

- Stationary Autotune

The stationary autotune can be used to measure all the necessary parameters for basic control. The tests measures *Stator Resistance* (05.017), *Ld* (05.024), *No Load Lq* (05.068), *Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.059) and *Current At Maximum Deadtime Compensation* (05.060). If *Enable Stator Compensation* (05.049) = 1 then *Stator Base Temperature* (05.048) is made equal to *Stator Temperature* (05.046). *The Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Ld* (05.024) are then used to set up *Current controller Kp Gain* (04.013) and *Current Controller Ki Gain* (04.014). To perform a Stationary autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 1, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

- Rotating Autotune

In sensorless mode, if Rotating autotune is selected (Pr **00.040** = 2), then a stationary autotune is performed.

- Inertia measurement test

NOTE: It is not possible to perform this test if, after autotune, the ratio *No load Lq* (05.072) / *Ld* (05.024) < 1.1 and Pr **05.064** has been set to Non-salient.

The inertia measurement test can measure the total inertia of the load and the motor. This is used to set the speed loop gains (see Speed loop gains) and to provide torque feed-forwards when required during acceleration. The test may give inaccurate results, if the motor rated speed is not set to the correct value for the motor, or if standard ramp mode is active. During the inertia measurement test a series of progressively larger torque levels are applied to the motor (20 %, 40 % ... 100 % of rated torque) to accelerate the motor up to 3/4 x *Rated Speed* (05.008) to determine the inertia from the acceleration/deceleration time. The test attempts to reach the required speed within 5 s, but if this fails the next torque level is used. When 100 % torque is used the test allows 60 s for the required speed to be reached, but if this is unsucessful an Autotune trip is initiated. To reduce the time taken for the test it is possible to define the level of torque to be used for the test by setting *Mechanical Load Test Level* (05.021) to a non-zero value. When the test level is defined the test is only carried out at the defined test level and 60 s is allowed for the motor to reach the required speed. It should be noted that if the maximum speed allows for flux weakening then it may not be possible to achieve the required torque level to accelerate the motor quickly enough. If this is the case, the maximum speed reference should be reduced. To perform an Inertia measurement autotune, set Pr **00.040** to 4, and provide the drive with both an enable signal (on terminal 29) and a run signal (on terminal 24).

Following the completion of an autotune test the drive will go into the inhibit state. The drive must be placed into a controlled disable condition before the drive can be made to run at the required reference. The drive can be put in to a controlled disable condition by removing the Safe Torque Off signal from terminal 29, setting the drive Enable Parameter (**06.015**) to OFF (0) or disabling the drive via the control word (Pr **06.042** & Pr **06.043**).

Pr 03.079 *Sensorless Mode Filter*

When RFC-S sensorless mode is active the measured speed can include some ripple, which increases as the drive passes into field weakening. A filter is applied to the estimated speed and *Sensorless Mode Filter* (03.079) defines the time constant. The default time constant is 4 ms, but this can be extended to improve the filtering. This is particularly useful when using standard ramp or spinning start with a low friction high inertia load, and can prevent over voltage trips when the drive has no braking resistor.

Pr 05.071 *Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current*

Injection mode

For low speed sensorless operation with signal injection (*RFC Low Speed Mode* (05.064) = 0) it is necessary to have a ratio of Lq/Ld = 1.1. Even if a motor has a larger ratio on no load, this ratio normally reduces as the q axis current is increased from zero. *Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current* (05.071) should be set at a level that is lower than the point where the inductance ratio falls to 1.1. The value of this parameter is used to define the drive current limits when signal injection is active and prevent loss of control of the motor.

Non-salie0nt mode

For low speed sensorless operation for non-salient motors (*RFC Low Speed Mode* (05.064) = 1) this defines a current applied in the d axis to aid starting. For most motors and application requiring up to 60 % torque on starting the default value is suitable. However the level of current may need to be increased to make the motor start.

Pr 00.017 {04.012} *Current Reference Filter 1 Time Constant*

Current Reference Filter 1 Time Constant (00.017 / 04.012) defines the time constant of a first order filter that can be applied to the *Final Current Reference* (04.004). The filter is provided to reduce acoustic noise and vibration produced as a result of position feedback quantisation. The filter introduces a lag in the speed controller loop, and so the speed controller gains may need to be reduced to maintain stability as the filter time constant is increased. The time constant used is dependent on *Speed Controller Gain Select* (03.016) so that different time constants can be used with different gains. *Current Reference Filter 1 Time Constant* (00.017 / 04.012) is used if *Speed Controller Gain Select* (03.016) = 0, and *Current Reference Filter 2 Time Constant* (04.023) is used if *Speed Controller Gain Select* (03.016) = 1.

Pr 00.038 {04.013} / Pr 00.039 {04.014} *Current Loop Gains*

The current loop gains proportional (Kp) and integral (Ki) gains control the response of the current loop to a change in current (torque) demand. The default values give satisfactory operation with most motors. The proportional gain (Pr **04.013**) is the most critical value in controlling the performance. The values for the current loop gains can be calculated by performing a stationary or rotating autotune (see *Autotune* Pr **00.040**, earlier in this table) the drive measures the *Stator Resistance* (05.017) and *Transient Inductance* (05.024) of the motor and calculates the current loop gains.

Speed Loop Gains (Pr 00.007 {03.010}, Pr 00.008 {03.011}, Pr 00.009 {03.012})

The speed loop gains control the response of the speed controller to a change in speed demand. The speed controller includes proportional (Kp) and integral (Ki) feed forward terms, and a differential (Kd) feedback term. The drive holds two sets of these gains and either set may be selected for use by the speed controller with Pr **03.016**. If Pr **03.016** = 0, gains Kp1, Ki1 and Kd1 (Pr **00.007** to Pr **00.009)** are used, and if Pr **03.016** = 1, gains Kp2, Ki2 and Kd2 (Pr **03.013** to Pr **03.015**) are used. Pr **03.016** may be changed when the drive is enabled or disabled. If the load is predominantly a constant inertia and constant torque, the drive can calculate the required Kp and Ki gains to give a required compliance angle or bandwidth dependant on the setting of Pr **03.017**.

NOTE: In sensorless mode, the speed controller bandwidth may need to be limited to 10 Hz or less for stable operation.

Speed Controller Proportional Gain (Kp), Pr **00.007** {**03.010**} and Pr **03.013**

If the proportional gain has a value and the integral gain is set to zero the controller will only have a proportional term, and there must be a speed error to produce a torque reference. Therefore as the motor load increases there will be a difference between the reference and actual speeds. This effect, called regulation, depends on the level of the proportional gain, the higher the gain the smaller the speed error for a given load. If the proportional gain is too high either the acoustic noise produced by speed feedback quantization becomes unacceptable, or the stability limit is reached.

Speed Controller Integral Gain (Ki), Pr **00.008** {**03.011**} and Pr **03.014**

The integral gain is provided to prevent speed regulation. The error is accumulated over a period of time and used to produce the necessary torque demand without any speed error. Increasing the integral gain reduces the time taken for the speed to reach the correct level and increases the stiffness of the system, i.e. it reduces the positional displacement produced by applying a load torque to the motor. Unfortunately increasing the integral gain also reduces the system damping giving overshoot after a transient. For a given integral gain the damping can be improved by increasing the proportional gain. A compromise must be reached where the system response, stiffness and damping are all adequate for the application. For RFC-A Sensorless mode, it is unlikely that the integral gain can be increased much above 0.50.

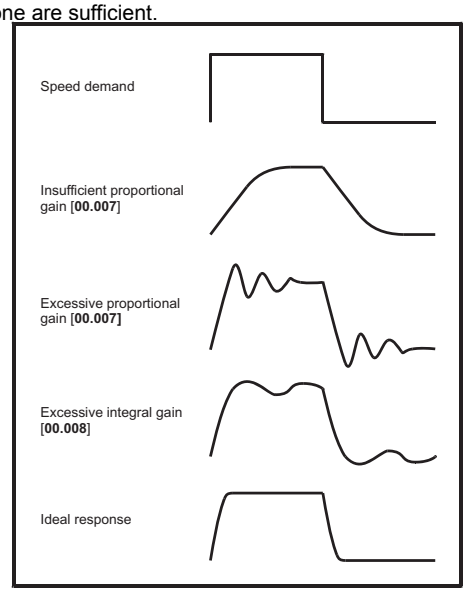
Differential Gain (Kd), Pr **00.009** {**0 3.012**} and Pr **03.015**

The differential gain is provided in the feedback of the speed controller to give additional damping. The differential term is implemented in a way that does not introduce excessive noise normally associated with this type of function. Increasing the differential term reduces the overshoot produced by under-damping, however, for most applications the proportional and integral gains alone are sufficient.

There are six methods of tuning the speed loop gains dependant on the setting of Pr **03.017**:

1. Pr **03.017** = 0, User set-up.
   This involves the connecting of an oscilloscope to analog output 1 to monitor the speed feedback.
   Give the drive a step change in speed reference and monitor the response of the drive on the oscilloscope.
   The proportional gain (Kp) should be set up initially. The value should be increased up to the point where the speed overshoots and then reduced slightly. The integral gain (Ki) should then be increased up to the point where the speed becomes unstable and then reduced slightly.
   It may now be possible to increase the proportional gain to a higher value and the process should be repeated until the system response matches the ideal response as shown.
   The diagram shows the effect of incorrect P and I gain settings as well as the ideal response.
2. Pr **03.017** = 1, Bandwidth set-up
   If bandwidth based set-up is required, the drive can calculate Kp and Ki if the following parameters are set up correctly:
   Pr **03.020** - Required bandwidth,
   Pr **03.021** - Required damping factor,
   Pr **03.018** - Motor and load inertia.
   The drive can be made to measure the motor and load inertia by performing an inertia measurement autotune (see Autotune Pr **00.040**, earlier in this table).
3. Pr **03.017** = 2, Compliance angle set-up
   If compliance angle based set-up is required, the drive can calculate Kp and Ki if the following parameters are set up correctly:
   Pr **03.019** - Required compliance angle,
   Pr **03.021** - Required damping factor,
   Pr **03.018** - Motor and load inertia The drive can be made to measure the motor and load inertia by performing an inertia measurement autotune (see *Autotune* Pr 00.040, earlier in this table).
4. Pr **03.017** = 3, Kp gains times 16

If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) = 3 the selected proportional gain used by the drive is multiplied by 16.



5. Pr **03.017** = 4 - 6

If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) is set to a value from 4 to 6 the *Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1* (03.010) and *Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1* (03.011) are automatically set up to give the bandwidths given in the table below and a damping factor of unity. These settings give low, standard or high performance.

Pr 03.017	Performance	Bandwidth
4	Low	5 Hz
5	Standard	25 Hz
6	High	100 Hz

6. Pr **03.017** = 7

If *Speed Controller Set-up Method* (03.017) = 7 then *Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1* (03.010), *Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1* (03.011) and *Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd1* (03.012) are set up to give a closed-loop speed controller response that approximates to a first order system with a transfer function of $1 / (s\tau + 1)$, where $\tau = 1/\omega bw$ and ωbw = *Bandwidth* (03.020). In this case the damping factor is meaningless, and *Damping Factor* (03.021) and *Compliance Angle* (03.019) have no effect.

8.2 Motor thermal protection

A dual time constant thermal model is provided to estimate the motor temperature as a percentage of its maximum allowed temperature.

The motor thermal protection is modelled using losses in the motor. The losses in the motor are calculated as a percentage value, so that under these conditions the *Motor Protection Accumulator* (04.019) would eventually reach 100 %.

Percentage losses = 100 % x [Load related losses + Iron losses]

Where:

Load related losses = $(1 - K_{fe}) \times (I / (K_1 \times I_{Rated}))^2$

Iron losses = $K_{fe} \times (w / w_{Rated})^{1.6}$

Where:

I = *Current Magnitude* (04.001)

I_{Rated} = *Rated Current* (05.007)

K_{fe} = *Rated Iron Losses As Percentage Of Losses* (04.039) / 100 %

The *Motor Protection Accumulator* (04.019) is given by:

Pr **04.019** = Percentage Losses x $[(1 - K_2) (1 - e^{-t/\tau 1}) + K_2 (1 - e^{-t/\tau 2})]$

Where:

T = *Motor Protection Accumulator* (04.019)

K_2 = *Motor Thermal Time Constant 2 Scaling* (04.038) / 100 %

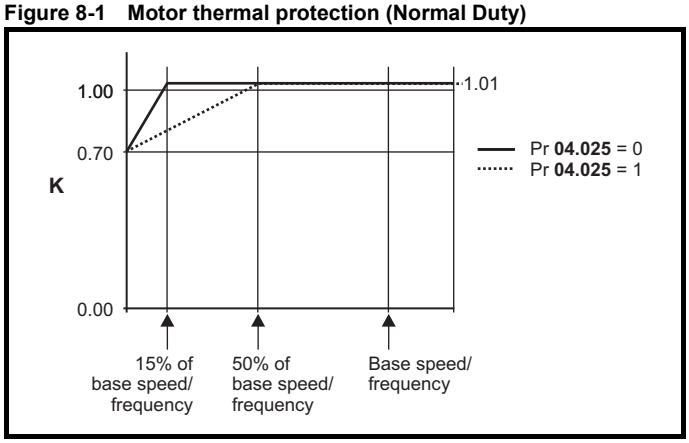
$\tau 1$ = *Motor Thermal Time Constant 1* (04.015)

$\tau 2$ = *Motor Thermal Time Constant 2* (04.037)

K_1 = Varies, see below

If Pr **04.025** is 0 the characteristic is for a motor which can operate at rated current over the whole speed range. Induction motors with this type of characteristic normally have forced cooling. If Pr **04.025** is 1 the characteristic is intended for motors where the cooling effect of motor fan reduces with reduced motor speed below 50 % of base speed/ frequency. The maximum value for K1 is 1.05, so that above the knee of the characteristics the motor can operate continuously up to 105 % current.

Figure 8-1 Motor thermal protection (Normal Duty)



Both settings of Pr **04.025** are intended for motors where the cooling effect of the motor fan reduces with reduced motor speed, but with different speeds below which the cooling effect is reduced. If Pr **04.025** is 0 the characteristic is intended for motors where the cooling effect reduces with motor speed below 15 % of base speed/frequency. If Pr **04.025** is 1 the characteristic is intended for motors where the cooling effect reduces with motor speed below 50 % of base speed/frequency. The maximum value for K1 is 1.01, so that above the knee of the characteristics the motor can operate continuously up to 101 % current.

When the estimated temperature in Pr **04.019** reaches 100 % the drive takes some action depending on the setting of Pr **04.016**. If Pr **04.016** is 0, the drive trips when Pr **04.019** reaches 100 %. If Pr **04.016** is 1, the current limit is reduced to (K - 0.05) x 100 % when Pr **04.019** reaches 100 %.

The current limit is set back to the user defined level when Pr **04.019** falls below 95 %. The thermal model temperature accumulator is reset to zero at power-up and accumulates the temperature of the motor while them drive remains powered-up. If the rated current defined by Pr **05.007** is altered, the accumulator is reset to zero.

The default setting of the thermal time constant (Pr **04.015**) is 89 s which is equivalent to an overload of 150 % for 60 s from cold.

Fire Mode - Important Warning.
When Fire Mode is active the motor overload and thermal protection are disabled, as well as a number of drive protection functions. Fire Mode is provided for use only in emergency situations where the safety risk from disabling protection is less than the risk from the drive tripping - typically in smoke extraction operation to permit evacuation of a building. The use of Fire Mode itself causes a risk of fire from overloading of the motor or drive, so it must only be used after careful consideration of the balance of risks.

Care must be taken to prevent inadvertent activation or de-activation of Fire Mode. Fire Mode is indicated by a flashing display text warning "Fire mode active".

Care must be taken to ensure that parameters Pr **01.053** or Pr **01.054** are not inadvertently re-allocated to different inputs or variables. It should be noted that, by default, Pr **01.054** is controlled from digital input 4 and changing Pr **08.024** can re-allocate this digital input to another parameter. These parameters are at access level 2 in order to minimize the risk of inadvertent or unauthorized changes. It is recommended that User Security be applied to further reduce the risk (see section 5.9 *Parameter access level and security* on page 109). These parameters may also be changed via serial communications so adequate precautions should be taken if this functionality is utilized.

8.3 Switching frequency

The default switching frequency is 3 kHz, however this can be increased up to a maximum of 16 kHz by Pr **05.018** (dependent on drive size). The available switching frequencies are shown below.

Table 8-1 Available switching frequencies

Drive size	Model	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
3	All	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9A								
9E								
10E								
11E								

If the switching frequency is increased from 3 kHz the following apply:

1. Increased heat loss in the drive, which means that derating to the output current must be applied.
   See the derating tables for switching frequency and ambient temperature in *section 12.1.1 Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)* on page 232.
2. Reduced heating of the motor - due to improved output waveform quality.
3. Reduced acoustic noise generated by the motor.
4. Increased sample rate on the speed and current controllers. A trade off must be made between motor heating, drive heating and the demands of the application with respect to the sample time required.

Table 8-2 Sample rates for various control tasks at each switching frequency

	3, 6, 12 kHz	2, 4, 8, 16 kHz	Open loop	RFC-A / RFC-S
Level 1	3 kHz = 167µs 6 kHz = 83 µs 12 kHz = 83 µs	2 kHz = 250 µs 4 kHz = 125 µs 8 kHz = 62.5 µs 16 kHz = 62.5 µs	Peak limit	Current controllers
Level 2	250 µs	2 kHz -500 µs 4 kHz - 250 µs 8 kHz - 125 µs 16 kHz - 125 µs	Current limit and ramps	Speed controller and ramps
Level 3	1 ms		Voltage controller	
Level 4	4 ms		Time critical user interface	
Background			Non-time critical user interface	

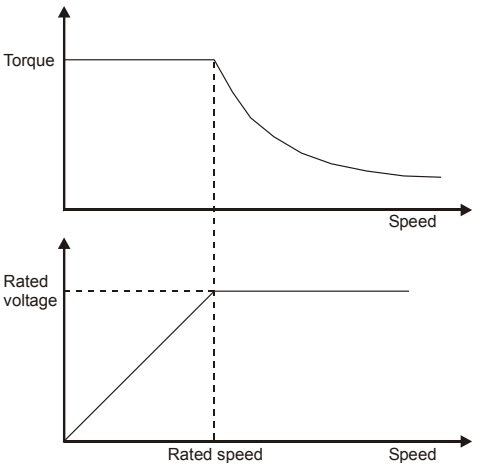
8.4 High speed operation

8.4.1 Field weakening (constant power) operation

(Open loop and RFC-A mode only)

The drive can be used to run an induction machine above synchronous speed into the constant power region. The speed continues to increase and the available shaft torque reduces. The characteristics below show the torque and output voltage characteristics as the speed is increased above the rated value.

Figure 8-2 Torque and rated voltage against speed



Care must be taken to ensure the torque available above base speed is sufficient for the application to run satisfactorily.

The saturation breakpoint parameters (Pr **05.029**, Pr **05. 030**, Pr **05.062** and Pr **05.063**) found during the autotune in RFC-A mode ensure the magnetizing current is reduced in the correct proportion for the specific motor. (In open loop mode the magnetizing current is not actively controlled).

8.4.2 Permanent magnet motor high speed operation

High speed servo mode is enabled by setting Pr **05.022** =1. Care must be taken when using this mode with permanent magnet motor to avoid damaging the drive. The voltage produced by the permanent magnet motor magnets is proportional to speed. For high speed operation the drive must apply currents to the motor to counter-act the flux produced by the magnets. It is possible to operate the motor at very high speeds that would give a very high motor terminal voltage, but this voltage is prevented by the action of the drive.

If however, the drive is disabled (or tripped) when the motor voltages would be higher than the rating of the drive without the currents to counter-act the flux from the magnets, it is possible to damage the drive. If high speed mode is enabled the motor speed must be limited to the levels given in the table below unless an additional hardware protection system is used to limit the voltages applied to the drive output terminals to a safe level.

Drive voltage rating	Maximum motor speed (rpm)	Maximum safe line to line voltage at the motor terminals (V rms)
200	400 x 1000 / (Ke x √2)	400 / √2
400	800 x 1000 / (Ke x √2)	800 / √2
575	955 x 1000 / (Ke x √2)	955 / √2
690	1145 x 1000 / (Ke x √2)	1145 / √2

Ke is the ratio between r.m.s. line to line voltage produced by the motor and the speed in V/1000 rpm. Care must also be taken not to de-magnetize the motor. The motor manufacturer should always be consulted before using this mode.

By default, high speed operation is disabled (Pr **05.022** = 0).

It is also possible to enable high speed operation, and allow the drive to automatically limit the motor speed to the levels specified in the tables and generate an Overspeed. 1 trip if the levels are exceeded (Pr **05.022** = -1)

8.4.3 Maximum speed / frequency

In all operating modes (Open loop, RFC-A and RFC-S) the maximum output frequency is limited to 550 Hz. However, in RFC-S mode the speed is also limited by the voltage constant (Ke) of the motor. Ke is a specific constant for the servo motor being used. It can normally be found on the motor data sheet in V/k rpm (volts per 1,000 rpm).

8.4.4 Quasi-Square wave (open-loop only)

The maximum output voltage level of the drive is normally limited to an equivalent of the drive input voltage minus voltage drops within the drive (the drive will also retain a few percent of the voltage in order to maintain current control). If the motor rated voltage is set at the same level as the supply voltage, some pulse deletion will occur as the drive output voltage approaches the rated voltage level. If Pr **05.020** (Quasi-square wave enable) is set to 1 the modulator will allow over modulation, so that as the output frequency increases beyond the rated frequency the voltage continues to increase above the rated voltage. The modulation depth will increase beyond unity; first producing trapezoidal and then quasi-square waveforms.

This can be used for example:

- To obtain high output frequencies with a low switching frequency which would not be possible with space vector modulation limited to unity modulation depth,

or

- In order to maintain a higher output voltage with a low supply voltage.

The disadvantage is that the machine current will be distorted as the modulation depth increases above unity, and will contain a significant amount of low order odd harmonics of the fundamental output frequency. The additional low order harmonics cause increased losses and heating in the motor.

9 NV Media Card Operation

9.1 Introduction

The Non-Volatile Media Card feature enables simple configuration of parameters, parameter back-up, storing / reading PLC programs and drive copying using a SMARTCARD or SD card storing / reading PLC programs. The drive offers backward compatibility for a Unidrive SP SMARTCARD.

The NV Media Card can be used for:

- Parameter copying between drives
- Saving drive parameter sets
- Saving an onboard user program

The NV Media Card is located at the top of the module under the drive display (if installed) on the left-hand side.

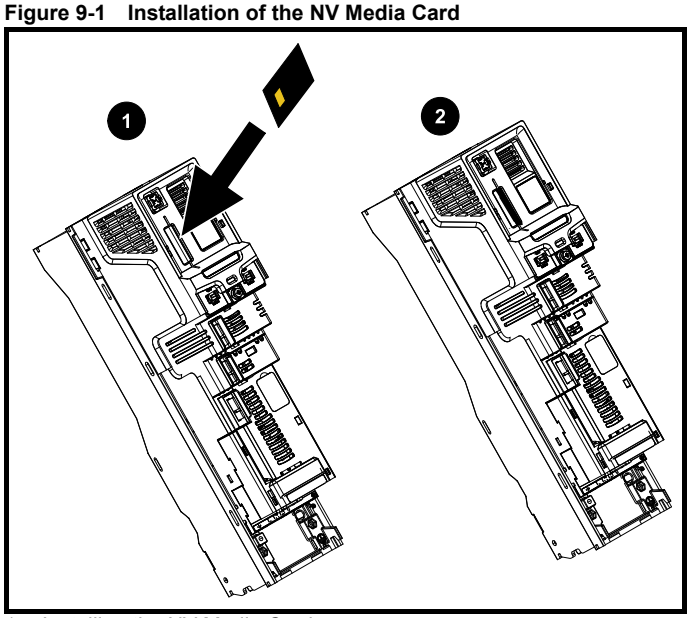
Ensure the NV Media Card is inserted with the contacts facing the left-hand side of the drive.

The drive only communicates with the NV Media Card when commanded to read or write, meaning the card may be "hot swapped".

WARNING

Beware of possible live terminals when installing the NV Media Card.

Figure 9-1 Installation of the NV Media Card



1. Installing the NV Media Card
2. NV Media Card installed

NV Media Card	Part number
SD Card Adaptor (memory card not included)	3130-1212-03
8 kB SMARTCARD	2214-4246-03
64 kB SMARTCARD	2214-1006-03

9.2 NV Media Card support

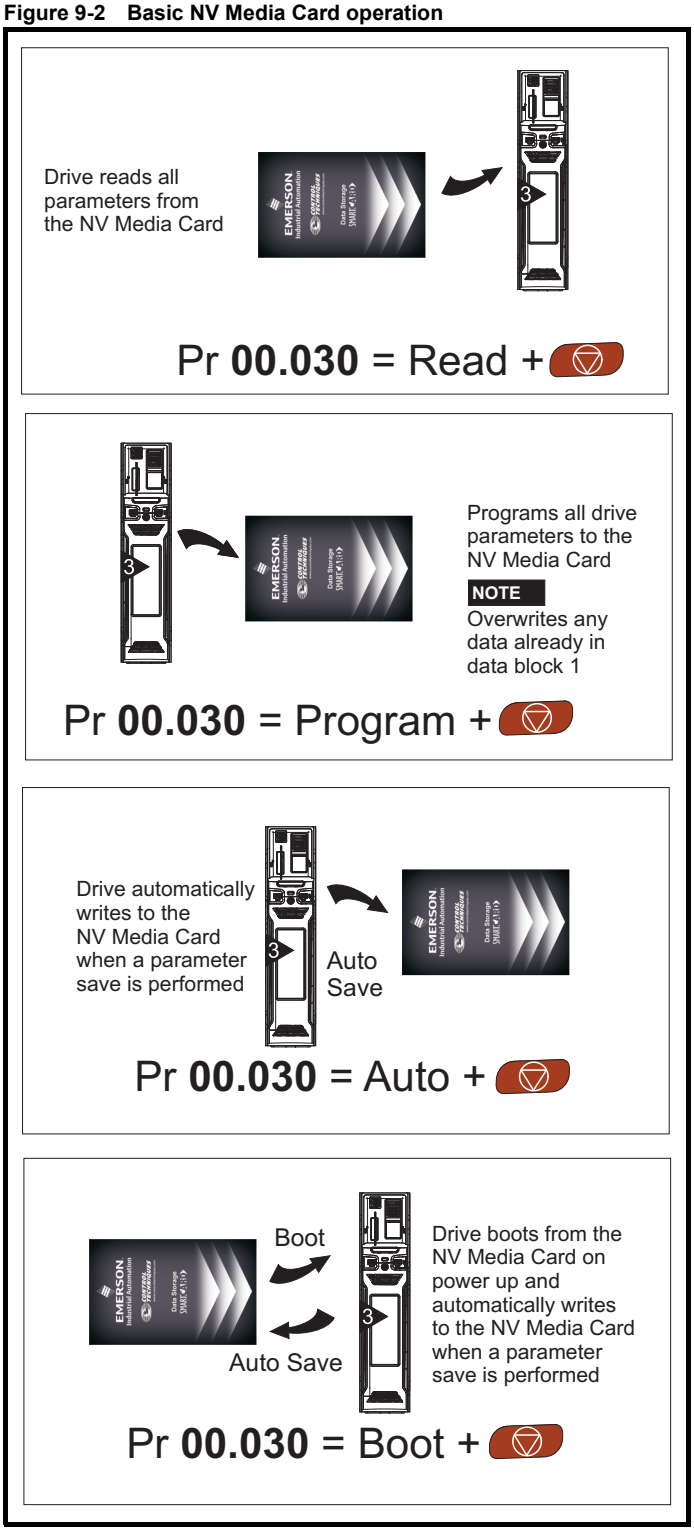
The NV Media Card can be used to store drive parameter sets and / or PLC programs set from the Powerdrive F300 in data blocks 001 to 499 on the card.

The Powerdrive F300 is compatible with a Unidrive SP SMARTCARD and is able to read and translate the Unidrive SP parameter set into a compatible parameter set for Powerdrive F300. This is only possible if the Unidrive SP parameter set was transferred to the SMARTCARD using the difference from defaults transfer method (i.e. 4yyy transfer).

The Powerdrive F300 is not able to read any other type of Unidrive SP data block on the card. Although it is possible to transfer difference from default data blocks from a Unidrive SP into the Powerdrive F300, the following should be noted:

1. If a parameter from the source drive does not exist in the target drive then no data is transferred for that parameter.
2. If the data for the parameter in the target drive is out of range then the data is limited to the range of the target parameter.
3. If the target drive has a different rating to the source drive then the normal rules for this type of transfer apply.

Figure 9-2 Basic NV Media Card operation



The whole card may be protected from writing or erasing by setting the read-only flag as detailed in section 9.3.9 *9888 / 9777 - Setting and clearing the NV Media Card read only flag* on page 164.

The card should not be removed during data transfer, as the drive will produce a trip. If this occurs then either the transfer should be reattempted or in the case of a card to drive transfer, default parameters should be loaded.

9.3 Transferring data

Data transfer, erasing and protecting the information is performed by entering a code in Pr **mm.000** and then resetting the drive as shown in Table 9-1.

Table 9-1 SMARTCARD and SD card codes

Code	Operation	SMARTCARD	SD card
2001	Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file 001 and sets the block as bootable. This will include the parameters from attached option modules.	✓	✓
4yyy	Transfer the drive parameters to parameter file yyy. This will include the parameters from attached option modules.	✓	✓
5yyy	Transfer the onboard user program to onboard user program file yyy.	✓	✓
6yyy	Load the drive parameters from parameter file yyy or the onboard user program from onboard user program file yyy.	✓	✓
7yyy	Erase file yyy.	✓	✓
8yyy	Compare the data in the drive with file yyy. If the files are the same then *Pr **mm.000*** (**mm.000**) is simply reset to 0 when the compare is complete. If the files are different a 'Card Compare' trip is initiated. All other NV media card trips also apply.	✓	✓
9555	Clear the warning suppression flag	✓	✓
9666	Set the warning suppression flag	✓	✓
9777	Clear the read-only flag	✓	✓
9888	Set the read-only flag	✓	✓
9999	Erase and format the NV media card	✓	
40yyy	Backup all drive data (parameter differences from defaults, an onboard user program and miscellaneous option data), including the drive name; the store will occur to the </MCDF/driveyyy/> folder; if it does not exist, it will be created. Because the name is stored, this is a backup, rather than a copy. The command code will be cleared when all drive and option data have been saved.		✓
60yyy	Load all drive data (parameter differences from defaults, an onboard user program and miscellaneous option data); the load will come from the </MCDF/driveyyy/> folder. The command code will not be cleared until the drive and all option data have been loaded.		✓

Where yyy indicates the block number 001 to 999.

NOTE

If the read only flag is set then only codes 6yyy or 9777 are effective.

9.3.1 Writing to the NV Media Card

4yyy - Writes defaults differences to the NV Media Card

The data block only contains the parameter differences from the last time default settings were loaded.

All parameters except those with the NC (Not copied) coding bit set are transferred to the NV Media Card. In addition to these parameters all menu 20 parameters (except Pr **20.000**), can be transferred to the NV Media Card.

Writing a parameter set to the NV Media Card (Pr 11.042 = Program (2))

Setting Pr **11.042** to Program (2) and resetting the drive will save the parameters to the NV Media Card, i.e. this is equivalent to writing 4001 to Pr **mm.000**. All NV Media Card trips apply except 'Card Change'. If the data block already exists it is automatically overwritten. When the action is complete this parameter is automatically reset to None (0).

9.3.2 Reading from the NV Media Card

6yyy - Reading from NV Media Card

When the data is transferred back to the drive, using 6yyy in Pr **mm.000**, it is transferred to the drive RAM and the EEPROM. A parameter save is not required to retain the data after-power down. Set up data for any option modules installed stored on the card are transferred to the drive. If the option modules installed are different between source and destination drives, the menus for the option module slots where the option module categories are different are not updated from the card and will contain their default values after the copying action. The drive will produce a 'Card Option' trip if the option module installed to the source and the destination drives are different or are in different slots. If the data is being transferred to the drive with different voltage or current rating a 'Card Rating' trip will occur.

The following drive rating dependant parameters (RA coding bit set) will not be transferred to the destination drive by a NV Media Card when the voltage rating of the destination drive is different from the source drive and the file is a parameter file.

However, drive rating dependent parameters will be transferred if only the current rating is different. If drive rating dependant parameters are not transferred to the destination drive they will contain their default values.

Pr **02.008** *Standard Ramp Voltage*
Pr **04.005** to Pr **04.007** and Pr **21.027** to Pr **21.029** *Motoring Current Limits*
Pr **04.024**, *User Current Maximum Scaling*
Pr **05.007**, Pr **21.007** *Rated Current*
Pr **05.009**, Pr **21.009** *Rated Voltage*
Pr **05.010**, Pr **21.010** *Rated Power Factor*
Pr **05.017**, Pr **21.012** *Stator Resistance*
Pr **05.018** *Maximum Switching Frequency*
Pr **05.024**, Pr **21.014** *Transient Inductance*
Pr **05.025**, Pr **21.024** *Stator Inductance*
Pr **06.006** *Injection Braking Level*
Pr **06.048** *Supply Loss Detection Level*
Pr **06.065** *Standard Under Voltage Threshold*
Pr **06.066** *Low Under Voltage Threshold*

Reading a parameter set from the NV Media Card (Pr 11.042 = Read (1))

Setting Pr **11.042** to Read (1) and resetting the drive will transfer the parameters from the card into the drive parameter set and the drive EEPROM, i.e. this is equivalent to writing 6001 to Pr **mm.000**.

All NV Media Card trips apply. Once the parameters are successfully copied this parameter is automatically reset to None (0). Parameters are saved to the drive EEPROM after this action is complete.

9.3.3 Auto saving parameter changes (Pr 11.042 = Auto (3))

This setting causes the drive to automatically save any changes made to menu 0 parameters on the drive to the NV Media Card. The latest menu 0 parameter set in the drive is therefore always backed up on the NV Media Card. Changing Pr **11.042** to Auto (3) and resetting the drive will immediately save the complete parameter set from the drive to the card, i.e. all parameters except parameters with the NC coding bit set. Once the whole parameter set is stored only the individual modified menu 0 parameter setting is updated.

Advanced parameter changes are only saved to the NV Media Card when Pr **mm.000** is set to 'Save Parameters' or a 1000 and the drive reset.

All NV Media Card trips apply, except 'Card Change'. If the data block already contains information it is automatically overwritten.

If the card is removed when Pr **11.042** is set to 3 Pr **11.042** is then automatically set to None (0).

When a new NV Media Card is installed Pr **11.042** must be set back to Auto (3) by the user and the drive reset so the complete parameter set is rewritten to the new NV Media Card if auto mode is still required.

When Pr **11.042** is set to Auto (3) and the parameters in the drive are saved, the NV Media Card is also updated, and therefore the NV Media Card becomes a copy of the drives stored configuration.

At power up, if Pr **11.042** is set to Auto (3), the drive will save the complete parameter set to the NV Media Card. The drive will display 'Card Write' during this operation. This is done to ensure that if a user puts a new NV Media Card in during power down the new NV Media Card will have the correct data.

NOTE

When Pr **11.042** is set to Auto (3) the setting of Pr **11.042** itself is saved to the drive EEPROM but not the NV Media Card.

9.3.4 Booting up from the NV Media Card on every power up (Pr 11.042 = Boot (4))

When Pr **11.042** is set to Boot (4) the drive operates the same as Auto mode except when the drive is powered-up. The parameters on the NV Media Card will be automatically transferred to the drive at power up if the following are true:

- A card is inserted in the drive
- Parameter data block 1 exists on the card
- The data in block 1 is type 1 to 4 (as defined in Pr **11.038**)
- Pr **11.042** on the card set to Boot (4)

The drive will display 'Booting Parameters during this operation. If the drive mode is different from that on the card, the drive gives a 'Card Drive Mode' trip and the data is not transferred.

If 'Boot' mode is stored on the copying NV Media Card this makes the copying NV Media Card the master device. This provides a very fast and efficient way of re-programming a number of drives.

NOTE

'Boot' mode is saved to the card, but when the card is read, the value of Pr **11.042** is not transferred to the drive.

9.3.5 Booting up from the NV Media Card on every power up (Pr mm.000 = 2001)

It is possible to create a bootable parameter data block by setting Pr **mm.000** to 2001 and initiating a drive reset. This data block is created in one operation and is not updated when further parameter changes are made.

Setting Pr **mm.000** to 2001 will overwrite the data block 1 on the card if it already exists.

9.3.6 8yyy - Comparing the drive full parameter set with the NV Media Card values

Setting 8yyy in Pr **mm.000**, will compare the NV Media Card file with the data in the drive. If the compare is successful Pr **mm.000** is simply set to 0. If the compare fails a 'Card Compare' trip is initiated.

9.3.7 7yyy / 9999 - Erasing data from the NV Media Card values

Data can be erased from the NV Media Card either one block at a time or all blocks in one go.

- Setting 7yyy in Pr **mm.000** will erase NV Media Card data block yyy
- Setting 9999 in Pr **mm.000** will erase all the data blocks on a SMARTCARD, but not on an SD Card.

9.3.8 9666 / 9555 - Setting and clearing the NV Media Card warning suppression flag

If the option modules installed to the source and destination drive are different or are in different slots the drive will produce a 'Card Option' trip. If the data is being transferred to a drive of a different voltage or current rating a 'Card Rating' trip will occur. It is possible to suppress these trips by setting the warning suppression flag. If this flag is set the drive will not trip if the option module(s) or drive ratings are different between the source and destination drives. The options module or rating dependent parameters will not be transferred.

- Setting 9666 in Pr **mm.000** will set the warning suppression flag
- Setting 9555 in Pr **mm.000** will clear the warning suppression flag

9.3.9 9888 / 9777 - Setting and clearing the NV Media Card read only flag

The NV Media Card may be protected from writing or erasing by setting the read only flag. If an attempt is made to write or erase a data block when the read only flag is set, a 'Card Read Only' trip is initiated. When the read only flag is set only codes 6yyy or 9777 are effective.

- Setting 9888 in Pr **mm.000** will set the read only flag
- Setting 9777 in Pr **mm.000** will clear the read only flag

9.4 Data block header information

Each data block stored on a NV Media Card has header information detailing the following:

- *NV Media Card File Number* (11.037)
- *NV Media Card File Type* (11.038)
- *NV Media Card File Version* (11.039)
- *NV Media Card File Checksum* (11.040)

The header information for each data block which has been used can be viewed in Pr **11.038** to Pr **11.040** by increasing or decreasing the data block number set in Pr **11.037**. If there is no data on the card Pr **11.037** can only have a value of 0.

9.5 NV Media Card parameters

Table 9-2 Key to parameter table coding

RW	Read / Write	ND	No default value
RO	Read only	NC	Not copied
Num	Number parameter	PT	Protected parameter
Bit	Bit parameter	RA	Rating dependant
Txt	Text string	US	User save
Bin	Binary parameter	PS	Power-down save
FI	Filtered	DE	Destination

11.036 {00.029}	NV Media Card File Previously Loaded									
RO	Num						NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	0 to 999				⇨	0			

This parameter shows the number of the data block last transferred from a NV Media Card to the drive. If defaults are subsequently reloaded this parameter is set to 0.

11.037	NV Media Card File Number									
RW	Num									
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	0 to 999				⇨	0			

This parameter should have the data block number which the user would like the information displayed in Pr **11.038**, Pr **11.039** and Pr **11.040**.

11.038	NV Media Card File Type									
RO	Txt					ND	NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	None (0), Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3), Regen (4), User Prog (5), Option App (6)				⇨				

Displays the type/mode of the data block selected with Pr **11.037**.

Pr 11.038	String	Type / mode
0	None	No file selected
1	Open-loop	Open-loop mode parameter file
2	RFC-A	RFC-A mode parameter file
3	RFC-S	RFC-S mode parameter file
4	Regen	Regen mode parameter file
5	User Prog	Onboard user program file
6	Option App	Option module application file

11.039	NV Media Card File Version									
RO	Num					ND	NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	0 to 9999				⇨				

Displays the version number of the file selected in Pr **11.037**.

11.040	NV Media Card File Checksum									
RO	Num					ND	NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	--2147483648 to 2147483647				⇨				

Displays the checksum of the data block selected in Pr **11.037**.

11.042	Parameter Cloning									
RW	Txt						NC		US*	
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	None (0), Read (1), Program (2), Auto (3), Boot (4)				⇨	None (0)			

* Only a value of 3 or 4 in this parameter is saved.

NOTE

If Pr **11.042** is equal to 1 or 2, this value is not transferred to the drive or saved to the EEPROM. If Pr **11.042** is set to 3 or 4 the value is saved to the EEPROM

None (0) = Inactive

Read (1) = Read parameter set from the NV Media Card

Program (2) = Program a parameter set to the NV Media Card

Auto (3) = Auto save

Boot (4) = Boot mode

11.072	NV Media Card Create Special File									
RW	Num						NC			
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	0 to 1				⇨	0			

If *NV Media Card Create Special File* (11.072) = 1 when a parameter file is transferred to an NV media card the file is created as a macro file. *NV Media Card Create Special File* (11.072) is reset to 0 after the file is created or the transfer fails.

11.073	NV Media Card Type									
RO	Txt					ND	NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	None (0), SMART Card (1), SD Card (2)				⇨				

This will display the type of media card inserted; it will contain one of the following values:

"None" (0) - No NV Media Card has been inserted.

"SMART Card" (1) - A SMARTCARD has been inserted.

"SD Card" (2) - A FAT formatted SD card has been inserted.

11.075	NV Media Card Read-only Flag									
RO	Bit					ND	NC	PT		
OL / RFC-A / RFC-S	⇳	Off (0) or On (1)				⇨				

NV Media Card Read-only Flag (11.075) shows the state of the read-only flag for the currently installed card.

11.076		NV Media Card Warning Suppression Flag								
RO		Bit				ND	NC	PT		
OL	⇳	Off (0) or On (1)				⇨				
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

NV Media Card Warning Suppression Flag (11.076) shows the state of the warning flag for the currently installed card.

11.077		NV Media Card File Required Version								
RW		Num				ND	NC	PT		
OL	⇳	0 to 9999				⇨				
RFC-A										
RFC-S										

The value of *NV Media Card File Required Version* (11.077) is used as the version number for a file when it is created on an NV Media Card. *NV Media Card File Required Version* (11.077) is reset to 0 when the file is created or the transfer fails.

9.6 NV Media Card trips

After an attempt to read, write or erase data from a NV Media Card a trip is initiated if there has been a problem with the command.

See Chapter 13 *Diagnostics* on page 260 for more information on NV Media Card trips.

10 Onboard PLC

10.1 Onboard PLC and Machine Control Studio

The drive has the ability to store and execute a 16 kB Onboard PLC user program without the need for additional hardware in the form of an option module.

Machine Control Studio is an IEC61131-3 development environment designed for use with Powerdrive F300 and compatible application modules. Machine Control Studio is based on CODESYS from 3S-Smart Software Solutions.

All of the programming languages defined in the IEC standard IEC 61131-3 are supported in the Machine Control Studio development environment.

- ST (Structured text)
- LD (Ladder diagram)
- FBD (Function block diagram)
- IL (Instruction list)
- SFC (Sequential function chart)
- CFC (Continuous Function Chart). CFC is an extension to the standard IEC programming languages

Machine Control Studio provides a complete environment for the development of user programs. Programs can be created, compiled and downloaded to a Powerdrive F300 for execution, via the communications port on the front of the drive. The run-time operation of the compiled program on the target can also be monitored using Machine Control Studio and facilities are provided to interact with the program on the target by setting new values for target variables and parameters.

The Onboard PLC and Machine Control Studio form the first level of functionality in a range of programmable options for Powerdrive F300.

Machine Control Studio can be downloaded from www.controltechniques.com.

See the Machine Control Studio help file for more information regarding using Machine Control Studio, creating user programs and downloading user programs to the drive.

10.2 Benefits

The combination of the Onboard PLC and Machine Control Studio, means that the drive can replace nano and some micro PLCs in many applications

Machine Control Studio benefits from access to the standard CODESYS function and function block libraries as well as those from third parties. Functions and function blocks available as standard in Machine Control Studio include, but not limited to, the following:

- Arithmetic blocks
- Comparison blocks
- Timers
- Counters
- Multiplexers
- Latches
- Bit manipulation

Typical applications for the Onboard PLC include:

- Ancillary pumps
- Fans and control valves
- Interlocking logic
- Sequences routines
- Custom control words.

10.3 Features

The Powerdrive F300 Onboard PLC user program has the following features:

10.3.1 Tasks

The Onboard PLC allows use of two tasks.

- Clock: A high priority real time task. The clock task interval can be set from 4 ms to 262 s in multiples of 4 ms. The parameter *Onboard User Program: Clock Task Time Used* (11.051) shows the percentage of the available time used by clock task. A read or write of a drive parameter by the user program takes a finite period of time. It is possible to select up to 10 parameters as fast access parameter which reduced the amount of time it takes for the user program to read from or write to a drive parameter. This is useful when using a clock task with a fast update rate as selecting a parameter for fast access reduces the amount of the clock task resource required to access parameters.
- Freewheeling: A non-real time background task. The freewheeling task is scheduled for a short period once every 64 ms. The time for which the task is scheduled will vary depending on the loading of the drive's processor. When scheduled, several scans of the user program may be performed. Some scans may execute in microseconds. However, when the main drive functions are scheduled there will be a pause in the execution of the program causing some scans to take many milliseconds. The parameter *Onboard User Program: Freewheeling Tasks Per Second* (11.050) shows the number of times the freewheeling task has started per second.

10.3.2 Variables

The Onboard PLC supports the use of variables with the data types of Boolean, integer (8 bit, 16 bit and 32 bit, signed and unsigned), floating point (64 bit only), strings and time.

10.3.3 Custom menu

Machine Control Studio can construct a custom drive menu to reside in menu 30 on the drive. The following properties of each parameter can be defined using Machine Control Studio:

- Parameter name
- Number of decimal places
- The units for the parameter to be display on the keypad.
- The minimum, maximum and default values
- Memory handling (i.e. power down save, user save or volatile)
- Data type. The drive provides a limited set of 1 bit, 8 bit, 16 bit and 32 bit integer parameters to create the customer menu.

Parameters in this customer menu can be accessed by the user program and will appear on the keypad.

10.3.4 Limitations

The Onboard PLC user program has the following limitations:

- The flash memory allocated to the Onboard PLC is 16 kB which includes the user program and its header which results in a maximum user program size of about 12 kB
- The Onboard PLC is provided with 2 kB of RAM.
- The drive is rated for 100 program downloads. This limitation is imposed by the flash memory used to store the program within the drive.
- There is only one real-time task with a minimum period of 4 ms.
- The freewheeling background task runs at a low priority. The drive is prioritized to perform the clock task and its major functions first, e.g. motor control, and will use any remaining processing time to execute the freewheeling task as a background activity. As the drive's processor becomes more heavily loaded, less time is spent executing the freewheeling task.
- Breakpoints, single stepping and online program changes are not possible.
- The Graphing tool is not supported.
- The variable data types REAL (32 bit floating point), LWORD (64 bit integer) and WSTRING (Unicode string), and retained variables are not supported.

10.4 Onboard PLC parameters

The following parameters are associated with the Onboard PLC user program.

11.047	Onboard User Program: Enable					
RW	Txt				US	
⇳	Stop (0) or Run (1)			⇨	Run (1)	

This parameter stops and starts the user program.

0 - Stop the User Program

The onboard user program is stopped. If it is restarted by setting *Onboard User Program: Enable* (11.047) to a non-zero value the background task starts from the beginning.

1 - Run the User Program

The user program will execute.

11.048	Onboard User Program: Status					
RO	Txt		NC	PT		
⇳	-2147483648 to 2147483647			⇨		

This parameter is read-only and indicates the status of the user program in the drive. The user program writes the value to this parameter.

0: Stopped

1: Running

2: Exception

3: No user program present

11.049	Onboard User Program: Programming Events					
RO	Uni		NC	PT	PS	
⇳	0 to 65535			⇨		

This parameter holds the number of times an Onboard PLC user program download has taken place and is 0 on dispatch from the factory. The drive is rated for one hundred ladder program downloads. This parameter is not altered when defaults are loaded.

11.050	Onboard User Program: Freewheeling Tasks Per Second					
RO	Uni		NC	PT		
⇳	0 to 65535			⇨		

This parameter shows the number of times the freewheeling task has started per second.

11.051	Onboard User Program: Clock Task Time Used					
RO			NC	PT		
⇳	0.0 to 100.0 %			⇨		

This parameter shows the percentage of the available time used by the user program clock task.

11.055	Onboard User Program: Clock Task Scheduled Interval					
RO			NC	PT		
⇳	0 to 262128 ms			⇨		

This parameter shows the interval at which the clock task is scheduled to run at in ms.

If the drive detects an error in the user program it will initiate a User Program trip. The sub-trip number for the User Program trip details the reason for the error. See Chapter 13 *Diagnostics* on page 260 for more information on the User Program trip.

11 Advanced parameters

This is a quick reference to all parameters in the drive showing units, ranges limits etc, with block diagrams to illustrate their function. Full descriptions of the parameters can be found in the *Parameter Reference Guide*.

WARNING

These advanced parameters are listed for reference purposes only. The lists in this chapter do not include sufficient information for adjusting these parameters. Incorrect adjustment can affect the safety of the system, and damage the drive and or external equipment. Before attempting to adjust any of these parameters, refer to the *Parameter Reference Guide*.

Table 11-1 Menu descriptions

Menu	Description
0	Commonly used basic set up parameters for quick / easy programming
1	Frequency / Speed reference
2	Ramps
3	Frequency slaving, speed feedback and speed control
4	Torque and current control
5	Motor control
6	Sequencer and clock
7	Analog I/O, Temperature monitoring
8	Digital I/O
9	Programmable logic, motorized pot, binary sum, timers and scope
10	Status and trips
11	Drive set-up and identification, serial communications
12	Threshold detectors and variable selectors
13	Standard motion control
14	User PID controller
15	Option module slot 1 set-up menu
16	Option module slot 2 set-up menu
17	Option module slot 3 set-up menu
18	General option module application menu 1
19	General option module application menu 2
20	General option module application menu 3
22	Menu 0 set-up
23	Not allocated
28	Reserved menu
29	Reserved for pumping functions
30	Onboard user programming application menu
Slot 1	Slot 1 option menus*
Slot 2	Slot 2 option menus*
Slot 3	Slot 3 option menus*

* Only displayed when the option modules are installed.

Operation mode abbreviations:

Open-loop:

Sensorless control for induction motors

RFC-A Sensorless:

Asynchronous Rotor Flux Sensorless Control for induction motors

RFC-S Sensorless: Synchronous Rotor Flux Sensorless Control for synchronous motors including permanent magnet motors.

Default abbreviations:

Standard default value (50 Hz AC supply frequency)

USA default value (60 Hz AC supply frequency)

NOTE

Parameter numbers shown in brackets {...} are the equivalent Menu 0 parameters. Some Menu 0 parameters appear twice since their function depends on the operating mode.

The Range - RFC-A / S column applies to both RFC-A and RFC-S. For some parameters, this column applies to only one of these modes, this is indicated accordingly in the Default columns.

In some cases, the function or range of a parameter is affected by the setting of another parameter. The information in the lists relates to the default condition of any parameters affected in this way.

Table 11-2 Key to parameter table coding

Coding	Attribute
RW	Read/Write: can be written by the user
RO	Read only: can only be read by the user
Bit	1 bit parameter. 'On' or 'Off' on the display
Num	Number: can be uni-polar or bi-polar
Txt	Text: the parameter uses text strings instead of numbers.
Bin	Binary parameter
IP	IP Address parameter
Mac	Mac Address parameter
Date	Date parameter
Time	Time parameter
Chr	Character parameter
FI	Filtered: some parameters which can have rapidly changing values are filtered when displayed on the drive keypad for easy viewing.
DE	Destination: This parameter selects the destination of an input or logic function.
RA	Rating dependent: this parameter is likely to have different values and ranges with drives of different voltage and current ratings. Parameters with this attribute will be transferred to the destination drive by non-volatile storage media when the rating of the destination drive is different from the source drive and the file is a parameter file. However, the values will be transferred if only the current rating is different and the file is a difference from default type file.
ND	No default: The parameter is not modified when defaults are loaded
NC	Not copied: not transferred to or from non-volatile media during copying.
PT	Protected: cannot be used as a destination.
US	User save: parameter saved in drive EEPROM when the user initiates a parameter save.
PS	Power-down save: parameter automatically saved in drive EEPROM when the under volts (UV) trip occurs.

Table 11-3 Feature look-up table

Feature	Related parameters (Pr)												
Acceleration rates	02.010	02.011 to 02.019		02.032	02.033	02.034	02.002						
Analog speed reference 1	01.036	07.010	07.001	07.007	07.008	07.009	07.025	07.026	07.030				
Analog speed reference 2	01.037	07.014	01.041	07.002	07.011	07.012	07.013	07.028	07.031				
Analog I/O	Menu 7												
Analog input 1	07.001	07.007	07.008	07.009	07.010	07.025	07.026	07.030					
Analog input 2	07.002	07.011	07.012	07.013	07.014	07.028	07.031						
Analog output 1	07.019	07.020	07.021	07.033									
Analog output 2	07.022	07.023	07.024										
Application menu	Menu 18		Menu 19		Menu 20								
At speed indicator bit	03.006	03.007	03.009	10.006	10.005	10.007							
Auto reset	10.034	10.035	10.036	10.001									
Autotune	05.012	05.016	05.017	05.023	05.024	05.025	05.010	05.029	05.030				
Catch a spinning motor	06.009	05.040											
Coast to stop	06.001												
Comms	11.023 to 11.026												
Copying	11.042	11.036 to 11.040											
Cost - per kWh electricity	06.016	06.017	06.024	06.025	06.026	06.040							
Current controller	04.013	04.014											
Current feedback	04.001	04.002	04.017	04.004	04.012	04.020	04.023	04.024	04.026	10.008	10.009	10.017	
Current limits	04.005	04.006	04.007	04.018	04.015	04.019	04.016	05.007	05.010	10.008	10.009	10.017	
DC bus voltage	05.005	02.008											
DC injection braking	06.006	06.007	06.001										
Deceleration rates	02.020	02.021 to 02.029		02.004	02.035 to 02.037		02.002	02.008	06.001	10.030	10.031	10.039	02.009
Defaults	11.043	11.046											
Digital I/O	Menu 8												
Digital I/O read word	08.020												
Digital I/O T22	08.001	08.011	08.021	08.031									
Digital I/O T23	08.002	08.012	08.022	08.032									
Digital I/O T24	08.003	08.013	08.023	08.033									
Digital input T25	08.004	08.014	08.024										
Digital input T26	08.005	08.015	08.025	08.039									
Digital input T27	08.006	08.016	08.026	08.039									
Digital output T3	08.008	08.018	08.028										
Direction	10.013	06.030	06.031	01.003	10.014	02.001	03.002	08.003	08.004	10.040			
Drive active	10.002	10.040											
Drive derivative	11.028												
Drive OK	10.001	08.027	08.007	08.017	10.036	10.040							
Dynamic performance	05.026												
Dynamic V/F	05.013												
Enable	06.015	08.009	08.010										
External trip	10.032	08.010	08.007										
Fan speed	06.045												
Fast disable	06.029												
Field weakening - induction motor	05.029	05.030	01.006	05.028									
Field weakening - PM motor	05.022	01.006	05.009										
Fire mode	01.053	01.054											
Filter change	06.019	06.018											
Frequency reference selection	01.014	01.015											
High stability space vector modulation	05.019												
I/O sequencer	06.004	06.030	06.031	06.032	06.033	06.034	06.042	06.043	06.041				
Inertia compensation	02.038	05.012	04.022	03.018									
Keypad reference	01.017	01.014	01.043	01.051	06.012	06.013							
Kt	05.032												
Line power supply loss	06.003	10.015	10.016	05.005									
Logic function 1	09.001	09.004	09.005	09.006	09.007	09.008	09.009	09.010					
Logic function 2	09.002	09.014	09.015	09.016	09.017	09.018	09.019	09.020					
Maximum speed	01.006												
Menu 0 set-up	Menu 22												
Minimum speed	01.007	10.004											
Modules - number of	11.035												
Motor map	05.006	05.007	05.008	05.009	05.010	05.011							

Feature	Related parameters (Pr)												
Motorized potentiometer	09.021	09.022	09.023	09.024	09.025	09.026	09.027	09.028					
Offset speed reference	01.004	01.038	01.009										
Onboard PLC	11.047 to 11.051												
Open loop vector mode	05.014	05.017	05.023										
Operating mode	00.048	11.031	03.024	05.014									
Output	05.001	05.002	05.003	05.004									
Overspeed threshold	03.008												
PID controller	Menu 14												
Positive logic	08.029												
Power up parameter	11.022	11.021											
Preset speeds	01.015	01.021 to 01.028			01.016	01.014	01.042	01.045 to 01.048			01.050		
Programmable logic	Menu 9												
Quasi square operation	05.020												
Ramp (accel / decel) mode	02.004	02.008	06.001	02.002	02.003	10.030	10.031	10.039					
Rated speed autotune	05.016	05.008											
Regenerating	10.010	10.011	10.030	10.031	06.001			10.012	10.039	10.040			
Relay outputs	08.007	08.017	08.027	8.045	8.055	8.065							
Reset	10.033	08.002	08.022	10.034	10.035	10.036	10.001						
RFC-A Sensorless	03.024	03.042	04.012	05.040									
S ramp	02.006	02.007											
Sample rates	05.018												
Safe Torque Off input	08.009	08.010											
Security code	11.030	11.044											
Serial comms	11.023 to 11.026												
Skip speeds	01.029	01.030	01.031	01.032	01.033	01.034	01.035						
Slip compensation	05.027	05.008											
NV media card	11.036 to 11.040			11.042									
Firmware version	11.029	11.034											
Speed controller	03.010 to 03.017			03.019	03.020	03.021							
Speed feedback	03.002	03.003	03.004										
Speed feedback - drive	03.026												
Speed reference selection	01.014	01.015	01.049	01.050	01.001								
Status word	10.040												
Supply	06.044	05.005	06.046										
Switching frequency	05.018	05.035	07.034	07.035									
Thermal protection - drive	05.018	05.035	07.004	07.005	07.006	07.032	07.035	10.018					
Thermal protection - motor	04.015	05.007	04.019	04.016	04.025	07.015							
Thermistor inputs	7.007	7.001	7.053	7.011	7.002	7.058							
Threshold detector 1	12.001	12.003 to 12.007											
Threshold detector 2	12.002	12.023 to 12.027											
Time - filter change	06.019	06.018											
Time - powered up log	06.020	06.021	06.028										
Time - run log	06.022	06.023	06.028										
Torque	04.003	04.026	05.032										
Torque mode	04.008	04.011	04.009	04.010									
Trip detection	10.037	10.038	10.020 to 10.029										
Trip log	10.020 to 10.029			10.041 to 10.051			06.028	10.070 to 10.079					
Under voltage	05.005	10.016	10.015										
V/F mode	05.015	05.014											
Variable selector 1	12.008 to 12.015												
Variable selector 2	12.028 to 12.035												
Velocity feed forward	01.039	01.040											
Voltage controller	05.031												
Voltage mode	05.014	05.017	05.023	05.015									
Voltage rating	11.033	05.009	05.005										
Voltage supply	06.044	06.046	05.005										
Warning	10.019	10.012	10.017	10.018	10.040								
Zero speed indicator bit	03.005	10.003											

Parameter ranges and Variable minimum/maximums:

Some parameters in the drive have a variable range with a variable minimum and a variable maximum values which is dependent on one of the following:

- The settings of other parameters
- The drive rating
- The drive mode
- Combination of any of the above

The tables below give the definition of variable minimum/maximum and the maximum range of these.

VM_AC_VOLTAGE	Range applied to parameters showing AC voltage
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	0 to the value listed below
Definition	VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MAX] is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4 VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MIN] = 0

VM_AC_VOLTAGE_SET	Range applied to the AC voltage set-up parameters
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	0 to the value listed below
Definition	VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MAX] is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4 VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MIN] = 0

VM_ACCEL_RATE	Maximum applied to the ramp rate parameters
Units	s / 100 Hz, s / 1000 rpm, s / 1000 mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.000
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 0.0 to 3200.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.000 to 3200.000
Definition	Open-loop mode If *Ramp Rate Units* (02.039) = 0: VM_ACCEL_RATE[MAX] = 3200.0 If *Ramp Rate Units* (02.039) = 1: VM_ACCEL_RATE[MAX] = 3200.0 x Pr **01.006** / 100.0 VM_ACCEL_RATE[MIN] = 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S modes If *Ramp Rate Units* (02.039) = 0: VM_ACCEL_RATE[MAX] = 3200.000 If *Ramp Rate Units* (02.039) = 1: VM_ACCEL_RATE[MAX] = 3200.000 x Pr **01.006** / 1000.0 VM_ACCEL_RATE[MIN] = 0.000 If the second motor map is selected (Pr **11.045** = 1) Pr **21.001** is used instead of Pr **01.006**.

VM_AMC_ROLL_OVER	Range applied the position parameters in the advanced motion controller
Units	User units
Range of [MIN]	0 or -2^{31}
Range of [MAX]	0 or $-2^{31}-1$
Definition	VM_AMC_ROLL_OVER[MAX] = $2^{31}-1$ VM_AMC_ROLL_OVER[MIN] = 2^{31}

VM_AMC_UNIPOLAR_ROLL_OVER	Range applied the position parameters in the advanced motion controller that are restricted to positive values
Units	User units
Range of [MIN]	0 L
Range of [MAX]	0 to 2^{31}-1
Definition	VM_AMC_UNIPOLAR_ROLL_OVER[MAX] = VM_AMC_ROLL_OVER[MAX] VM_AMC_UNIPOLAR_ROLL_OVER[MIN] = 0

VM_DC_VOLTAGE	Range applied to parameters showing DC voltage
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	0 to the value listed below
Definition	VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX] is the full scale d.c. link voltage feedback (over voltage trip level) for the drive. This level is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4 VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MIN] = 0

VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET	Range applied to DC voltage reference parameters
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	0 to the value listed below
Definition	VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MAX] is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4 VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MIN] = 0

VM_DRIVE_CURRENT	Range applied to parameters showing current in A
Units	A
Range of [MIN]	-99999.999 to 0.000
Range of [MAX]	0.000 to 99999.999
Definition	VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MAX] is equivalent to the full scale (over current trip level) or Kc value for the drive and is given by *Full Scale Current Kc* (11.061). VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MIN] = - VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MAX]

VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR	Unipolar version of VM_DRIVE_CURRENT
Units	A
Range of [MIN]	0.000
Range of [MAX]	0.000 to 99999.999
Definition	VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR[MAX] = VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MAX] VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR[MIN] = 0.000

VM_HIGH_DC_VOLTAGE	Range applied to parameters showing high DC voltage
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	0 to 1500
Definition	VM_HIGH_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX] is the full scale d.c. link voltage feedback for the high d.c. link voltage measurement which can measure the voltage if it goes above the normal full scale value. This level is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4 VM_HIGH_DC_VOLTAGE[MIN] = 0

VM_LOW_UNDER_VOLTS	Range applied the low under-voltage threshold
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	24
Range of [MAX]	24 to 1150
Definition	If *Back-up Mode Enable* (06.068) = 0: VM_LOW_UNDER_VOLTS[MAX] = VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS[MIN] If *Back-up Mode Enable* (06.068) = 1: VM_LOW_UNDER_VOLTS[MAX] = VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS[MIN] / 1.1. VM_LOW_UNDER_VOLTS[MIN] = 24.

VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT VM_MOTOR2_CURRENT_LIMIT	Range applied to current limit parameters
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	0.0
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.0
Definition	VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT[MIN] = 0.0 **Open-loop** VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX] = (I_{Tlimit} / I_{Trated}) x 100 % Where: I_{Tlimit} = I_{MaxRef} x cos(sin^{-1}(I_{Mrated} / I_{MaxRef})) I_{Mrated} = Pr **05.007** sin ϕ I_{Trated} = Pr **05.007** x cos ϕ cos ϕ = Pr **05.010** I_{MaxRef} is the lower of 0.7 x Pr **11.061** or 1.1 x Pr **11.060**. **RFC-A** VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX] = (I_{Tlimit} / I_{Trated}) x 100 % Where: I_{Tlimit} = I_{MaxRef} x cos(sin^{-1}(I_{Mrated} / I_{MaxRef})) I_{Mrated} = Pr **05.007** x cos ϕ_1 ITrated = Pr 05.007 x sin ϕ_1 ϕ_1 = cos-1 (Pr **05.010**) + ϕ_2. ϕ_1 is calculated during an autotune. See the variable minimum / maximum calculations in the *Parameter Reference Guide* for more information regarding ϕ_2. I_{MaxRef} is the lower of 0.9 x Pr **11.061** or 1.1 x Pr **11.060**. **RFC-S and Regen** VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX] = (I_{MaxRef} / Pr **05.007**) x 100 % Where: I_{MaxRef} is the lower of 0.9 x Pr **11.061** or 1.1 x Pr **11.060**. For VM_MOTOR2_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX] use Pr **21.007** instead of Pr **05.007** and Pr **21.010** instead of Pr **05.010**.

VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP1 **VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP2**	Limits applied to the negative frequency or speed clamp
Units	Open-loop: Hz RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: -550.0 to 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: -33000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 0.0 to 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	See table below VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP2 is defined in the same way except that Pr **21.001** is used instead of Pr **01.006**.

***Negative Reference Clamp Enable* (01.008)**	***Bipolar Reference Enable* (01.010)**	**VM_NEGATIVE_REF_ CLAMP1[MIN]**	**VM_NEGATIVE_REF_ CLAMP1[MAX]**
0	0	0.0	Pr **01.006**
0	1	0.0	0.0
1	X	-VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP[MAX]	0.0

VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1 **VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP2**	Limits applied to the positive frequency or speed reference clamp
Units	Open-loop: Hz RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1[MAX] defines the range of the positive reference clamp, *Maximum Reference Clamp* (01.006), which in turn limit the references. In open-loop mode VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1[MAX] is fixed at 550.0 Hz In RFC mode a limit is applied to the speed reference of 550 x 60 / Motor pole pairs. Therefore, with a 4 pole motor the limit for VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1[MAX] will be 16,500 rpm. VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1[MIN] = 0.0 VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP2 is defined in the same way as VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1 except VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP2[MAX] defines the range of the positive reference clamp, *M2 Maximum Reference Clamp* (21.001), which in turn limits the references.

VM_POWER	Range applied to parameters that either set or display power
Units	kW
Range of [MIN]	-99999.999 to 0.000
Range of [MAX]	0.000 to 99999.999
Definition	VM_POWER[MAX] is rating dependent and is chosen to allow for the maximum power that can be output by the drive with maximum a.c. output voltage, at maximum controlled current and unity power factor. VM_POWER[MAX] = √3 x VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MAX] x VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MAX] / 1000 VM_POWER[MIN] = -VM_POWER[MAX]

VM_RATED_CURRENT	Range applied to rated current parameters
Units	A
Range of [MIN]	-99999.999 to 0.000
Range of [MAX]	0.000 to 99999.999
Definition	VM_RATED_CURRENT [MAX] = *Maximum Rated Current* (11.060) and is dependent on the drive rating. This is the Normal Duty rating of the drive. VM_RATED_CURRENT [MIN] = 0.00

VM_REGEN_REACTIVE	Range applied to the reactive current reference in Regen mode
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	-1000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.0
Definition	VM_REGEN_REACTIVE[MAX] = ?(VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT2 - ILimit2) where ILimit gives the highest level of the active current reference that can occur. This value is defined by the current limit values. If the current limits are all set to their maximum values (i.e. VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT) then there is no current capability left for the reactive current. However, if the current limits are reduced the resulting headroom can be used for the reactive current. ILimit is defined by a combination of all the current limits excluding any reduction of the current limit due to the motor thermal model. VM_REGEN_REACTIVE[MIN] = - VM_REGEN_REACTIVE[MAX]

VM_SPEED	Range applied to parameters showing speed
Units	Open-loop, RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop, RFC-A, RFC-S: -33000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop, RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	This variable minimum/maximum defines the range of speed monitoring parameters. To allow headroom for overshoot the range is set to twice the range of the speed references. VM_SPEED[MAX] = 2 x VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX] VM_SPEED[MIN] = 2 x VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MIN]

VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF	Range applied to the frequency or speed reference parameters
Units	Open-loop: Hz RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: -550.0 to 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: -33000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 0.0 to 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	If Pr **01.008** = 0: VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX] = Pr **01.006** If Pr **01.008** = 1: VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX] = Pr **01.006** or |Pr **01.007**|, whichever is larger. If the second motor map is selected (Pr **11.045** = 1) Pr **21.001** is used instead of Pr **01.006** and Pr **21.002** instead of Pr **01.007**. VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MIN] = -VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX].

VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF_UNIPOLAR	Unipolar version of VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF
Units	Open-loop: Hz RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: 0.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 0.0 to 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF_UNIPOLAR[MAX] = VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX] VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF_UNIPOLAR[MIN] = 0.0

VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS	Range applied to some Menu 1 reference parameters
Units	Open-loop: Hz RFC-A, RFC-S: rpm or mm/s
Range of [MIN]	Open-loop: -550.0 to 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: -33000.0 to 33000.0
Range of [MAX]	Open-loop: 0.0 to 550.0 RFC-A, RFC-S: 0.0 to 33000.0
Definition	VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF_UNIPOLAR[MAX] = VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX]

***Negative Reference Clamp Enable* (01.008)**	***Bipolar Reference Enable* (01.010)**	**VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS [MIN]**
0	0	Pr **01.007**
0	1	-VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX]
1	0	0.0
1	1	-VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF[MAX]

If the second motor map is selected (Pr **11.045** = 1) Pr **21.002** is used instead of Pr **01.007**.

VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS	Range applied the standard under-voltage threshold
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0 to 1150
Range of [MAX]	0 to 1150
Definition	VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS[MAX] = VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET / 1.1 VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS[MIN] is voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4

VM_SUPPLY_LOSS_LEVEL	Range applied to the supply loss threshold
Units	V
Range of [MIN]	0 to 1150
Range of [MAX]	0 to 1150
Definition	VM_SUPPLY_LOSS_LEVEL[MAX] = VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MAX] VM_SUPPLY_LOSS_LEVEL[MIN] is drive voltage rating dependent. See Table 11-4

VM_SWITCHING_FREQUENCY	Range applied the switching frequency parameters
Units	
Range of [MIN]	0
Range of [MAX]	6
Definition	VM_SWITCHING_FREQUENCY[MAX] = Power stage dependent VM_SWITCHING_FREQUENCY[MIN] = 0

VM_TORQUE_CURRENT	Range applied to torque and torque producing current parameters
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	-1000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.0
Definition	

Select Motor 2 Parameters (11.045)	VM_TORQUE_CURRENT [MAX]
0	VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX]
1	VM_MOTOR2_CURRENT_LIMIT[MAX]

VM_TORQUE_CURRENT[MIN] = -VM_TORQUE_CURRENT[MAX]

VM_TORQUE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR	Unipolar version of VM_TORQUE_CURRENT
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	0.0
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.0
Definition	VM_TORQUE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR[MAX] = VM_TORQUE_CURRENT[MAX] VM_TORQUE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR[MIN] =0.0

VM_USER_CURRENT	Range applied to torque reference and percentage load parameters with one decimal place
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	-1000.0 to 0.0
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.0
Definition	VM_USER_CURRENT[MAX] = *User Current Maximum Scaling* (04.024) VM_USER_CURRENT[MIN] = -VM_USER_CURRENT[MAX]

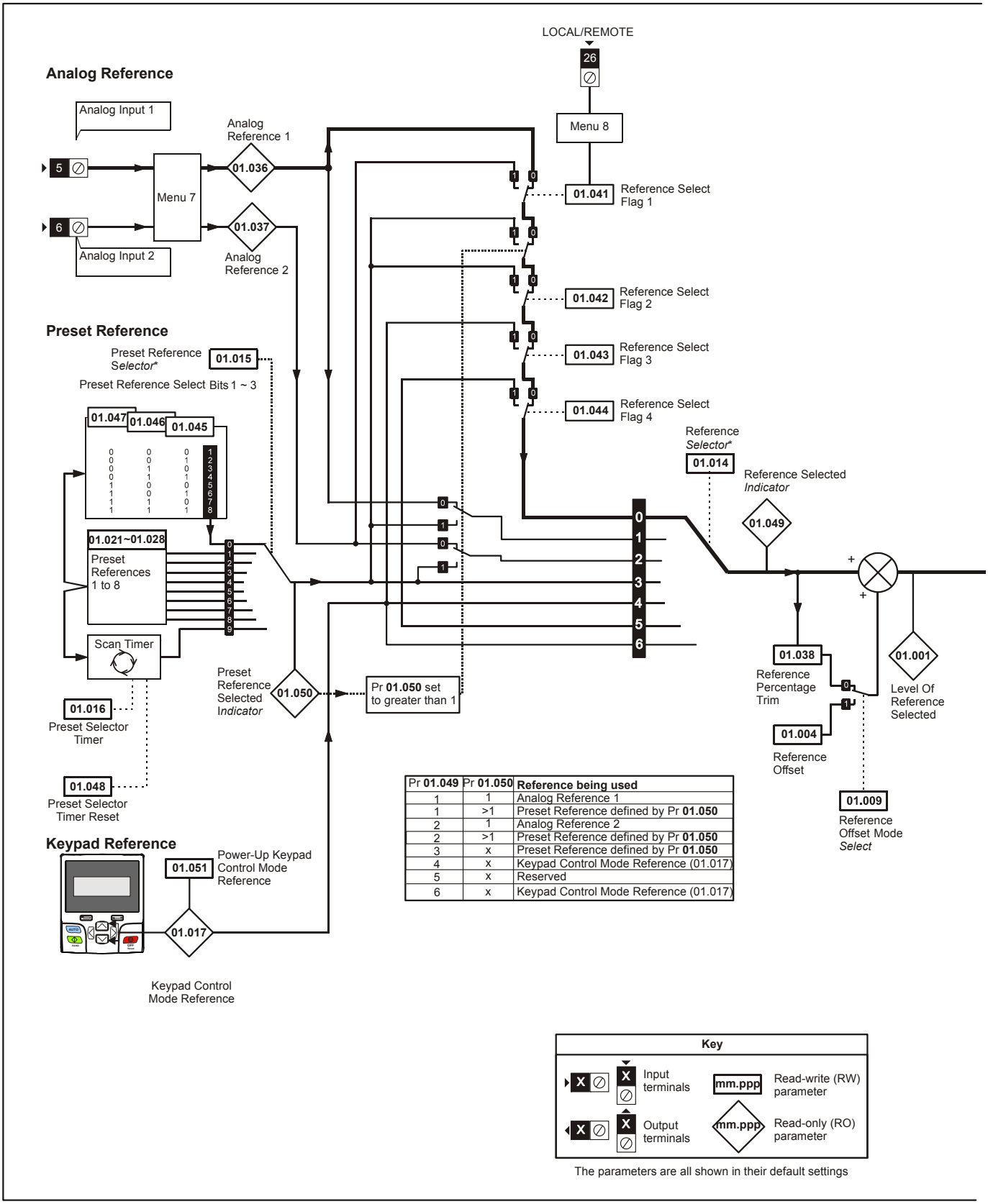
VM_USER_CURRENT_HIGH_RES	Range applied to torque reference and percentage load parameters with two decimal places
Units	%
Range of [MIN]	-1000.00 to 0.00
Range of [MAX]	0.0 to 1000.00
Definition	VM_USER_CURRENT_HIGH_RES[MAX] = *User Current Maximum Scaling* (04.024) with an additional decimal place VM_USER_CURRENT_HIGH_RES[MIN] = -VM_USER_CURRENT_HIGH_RES[MAX]

Table 11-4 Voltage ratings dependant values

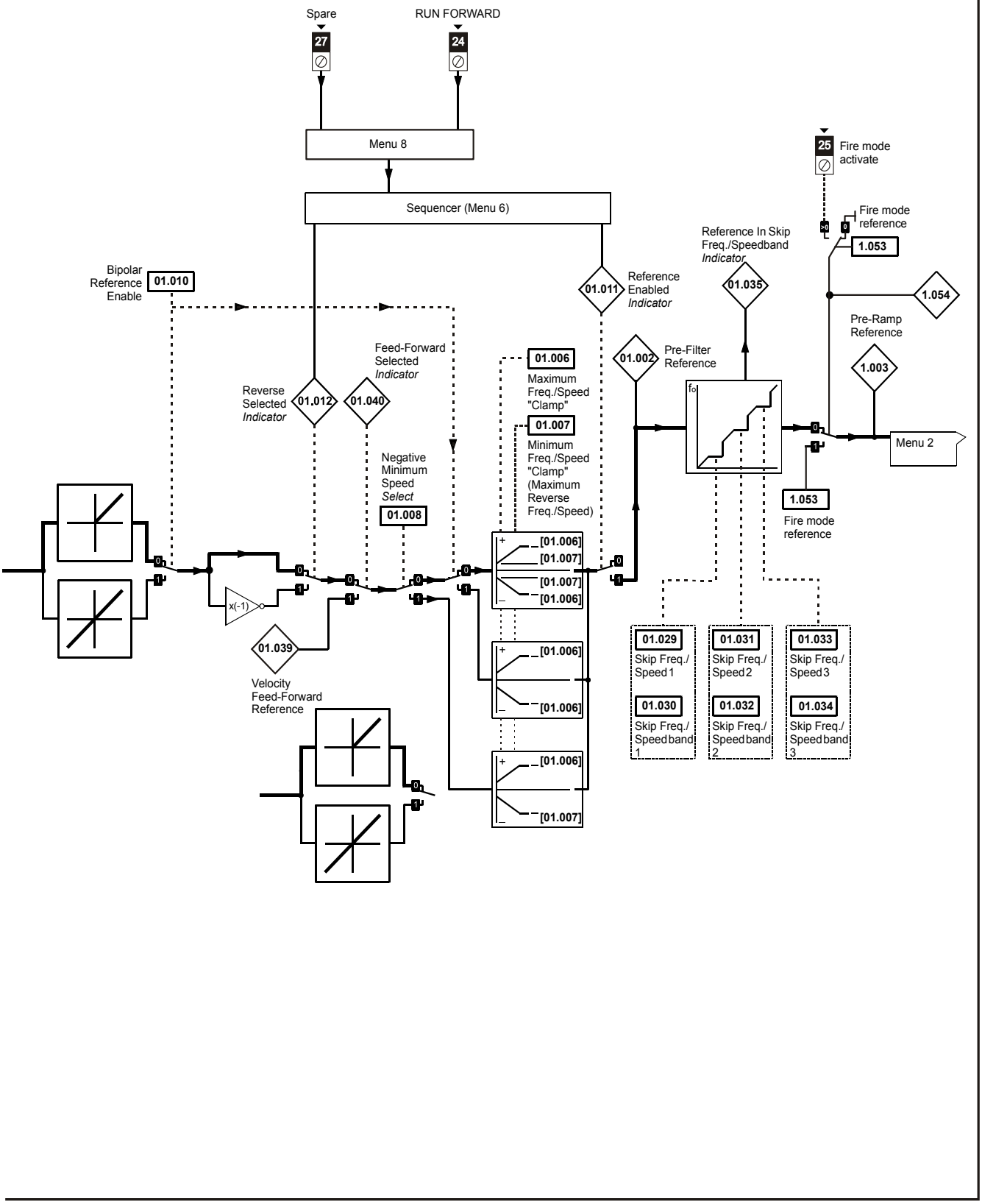
Variable min/max	Voltage level (V)			
	200 V	**400 V**	**575 V**	**690 V**
VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET(MAX]	400	800	955	1150
VM_DC_VOLTAGE(MAX]	415	830	990	1190
VM_AC_VOLTAGE_SET(MAX]	240	480	575	690
VM_AC_VOLTAGE[MAX]	325	650	780	930
VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS[MIN]	175	330	435	435
VM_SUPPLY_LOSS_LEVEL{MIN]	205	410	540	540
VM_HIGH_DC_VOLTAGE	1500	1500	1500	1500

11.1 Menu 1: Frequency / speed reference

Figure 11-1 Menu 1 logic diagram



Pr **01.049**	Pr **01.050**	**Reference being used**
1	1	Analog Reference 1
1	>1	Preset Reference defined by Pr **01.050**
2	1	Analog Reference 2
2	>1	Preset Reference defined by Pr **01.050**
3	x	Preset Reference defined by Pr **01.050**
4	x	Keypad Control Mode Reference (01.017)
5	x	Reserved
6	x	Keypad Control Mode Reference (01.017)

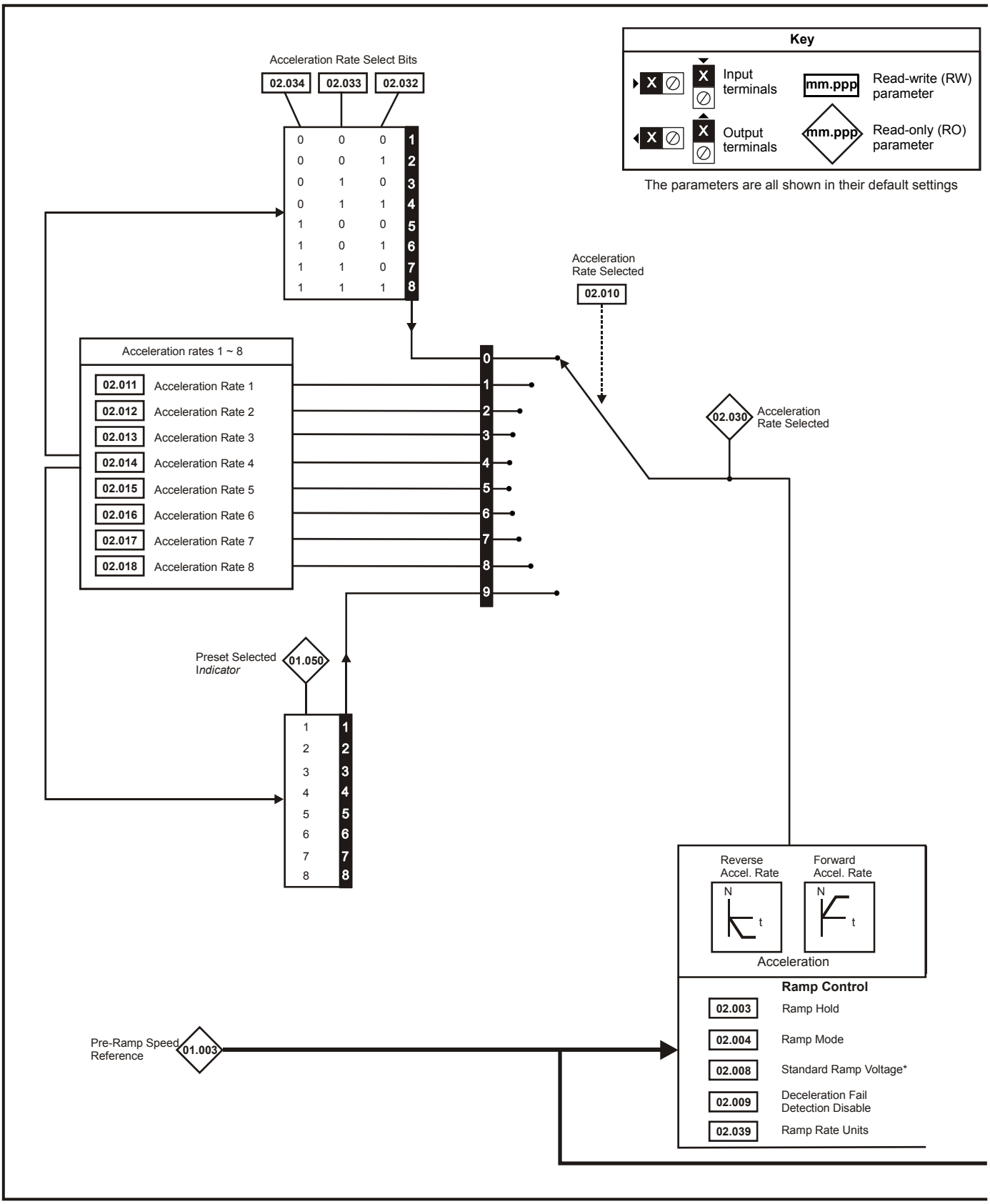

Spare
27
RUN FORWARD
24
Menu 8
Sequencer (Menu 6)
25
Fire mode activate
Fire mode reference
1.053
1.054
Reference In Skip Freq./Speedband Indicator
01.035
Bipolar Reference Enable
01.010
01.011
Reference Enabled Indicator
Pre-Ramp Reference
1.003
01.002
Pre-Filter Reference
Feed-Forward Selected Indicator
01.006
Maximum Freq./Speed "Clamp"
Reverse Selected Indicator
01.012
01.040
01.007
Minimum Freq./Speed "Clamp" (Maximum Reverse Freq./Speed)
Menu 2
Negative Minimum Speed Select
01.008
1.053
Fire mode reference
[01.006]
[01.007]
[01.007]
[01.006]
[01.006]
[01.006]
[01.006]
[01.006]
[01.007]
x(-1)
01.039
Velocity Feed-Forward Reference
01.029
Skip Freq./ Speed 1
01.030
Skip Freq./ Speed band 1
01.031
Skip Freq./ Speed 2
01.032
Skip Freq./ Speed band 2
01.033
Skip Freq./ Speed 3
01.034
Skip Freq./ Speed band 3

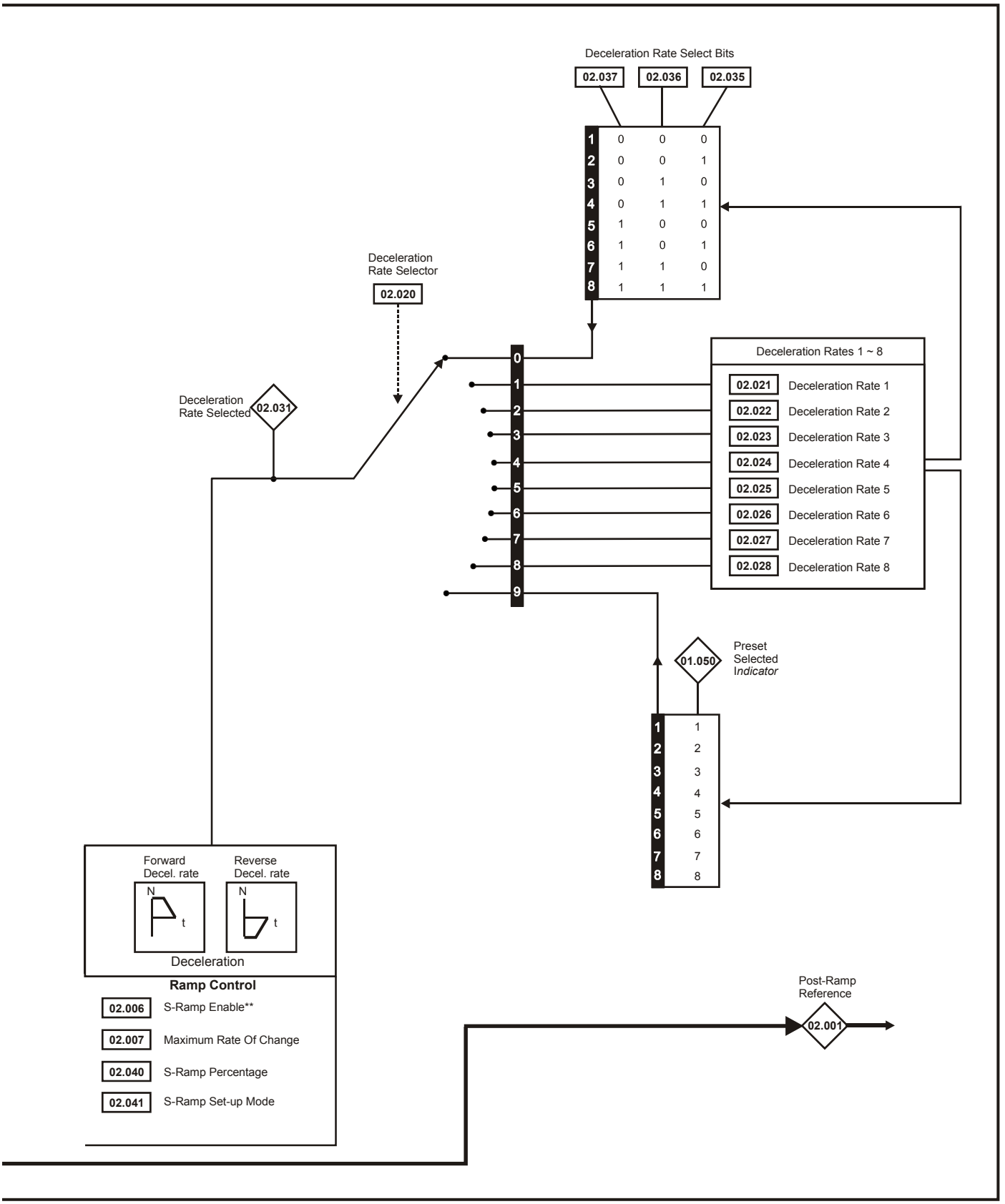
Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
01.001	Reference Selected	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF rpm				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.002	Pre-Skip Filter Reference	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF rpm				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.003	Pre-Ramp Reference	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF rpm				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.004	Reference Offset	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF rpm	0.0			RW	Num				US
01.006	Maximum Reference Clamp	±VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1 Hz	±VM_POSITIVE_REF_CLAMP1 rpm	50Hz: 50.0 60Hz: 60.0	50Hz: 1500.0 60Hz: 1800.0		RW	Num				US
01.007	Minimum Reference Clamp	±VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP1	±VM_NEGATIVE_REF_CLAMP1	0.0			RW	Num				US
01.008	Negative Reference Clamp	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
01.009	Reference Offset Select	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
01.010	Bipolar Reference Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
01.011	Reference On	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.012	Reverse Select	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.014	Reference Selector	A1 A2 (0), A1 Preset (1), A2 Preset (2) Preset (3), Keypad (4), Precision (5) Keypad Ref (6)		A1 A2 (0)			RW	Txt	ND			US
01.015	Preset Selector	0 to 9		0			RW	Num				US
01.016	Preset Selector Time	0.0 to 400.0 s		10.0 s			RW	Num				US
01.017	Keypad Control Mode Reference	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS		0.0			RO	Num		NC	PT	PS
01.021	Preset Reference 1	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.022	Preset Reference 2	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.023	Preset Reference 3	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.024	Preset Reference 4	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.025	Preset Reference 5	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.026	Preset Reference 6	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.027	Preset Reference 7	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.028	Preset Reference 8	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.029	Skip Reference 1	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 33, 000 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.030	Skip Reference Band 1	0.0 to 25.0 Hz	0 to 250 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.031	Skip Reference 2	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 33, 000 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.032	Skip Reference Band 2	0.0 to 25.0 Hz	0 to 250 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.033	Skip Reference 3	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 33, 000 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.034	Skip Reference Band 3	0.0 to 25.0 Hz	0 to 250 rpm	0.0	0		RW	Num				US
01.035	Reference In Rejection Zone	Off (0) or On (1)	Off (0) or On (1)				RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.036	Analog Reference 1	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS rpm	0.0			RO	Num		NC		
01.037	Analog Reference 2	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_USER_REFS rpm	0.0			RO	Num		NC		
01.038	Percentage Trim	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num		NC		
01.039	Speed Feed-forwards	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.040	Speed Feed-forwards Select	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.041	Reference Select Flag 1	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.042	Reference Select Flag 2	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.043	Reference Select Flag 3	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.044	Reference Select Flag 4	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.045	Preset Select Flag 1	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.046	Preset Select Flag 2	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.047	Preset Select Flag 3	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.048	Preset Selector Timer Reset	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
01.049	Reference Selected Indicator	1 to 6					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.050	Preset Selected Indicator	1 to 8					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
01.051	Power-up Keypad Control Mode Reference	Reset (0), Last (1), Preset (2)		Reset (0)			RW	Txt				US
01.052	Hand / Off / Auto operating mode	0 to 3		1			RW	Num				US
01.053	Fire mode reference	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		0.0			RW	Num				US
01.054	Fire mode activate	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RO	Bit		NC		

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.2 Menu 2: Ramps

Figure 11-2 Menu 2 logic diagram




Deceleration Rate Select Bits
02.037
02.036
02.035
1 0 0 0
2 0 0 1
3 0 1 0
4 0 1 1
5 1 0 0
6 1 0 1
7 1 1 0
8 1 1 1
Deceleration Rate Selector
02.020
Deceleration Rate Selected
02.031
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
Deceleration Rates 1 ~ 8
02.021 Deceleration Rate 1
02.022 Deceleration Rate 2
02.023 Deceleration Rate 3
02.024 Deceleration Rate 4
02.025 Deceleration Rate 5
02.026 Deceleration Rate 6
02.027 Deceleration Rate 7
02.028 Deceleration Rate 8
01.050
Preset Selected Indicator
1 1
2 2
3 3
4 4
5 5
6 6
7 7
8 8
Forward Decel. rate
Reverse Decel. rate
N
t
Deceleration
Ramp Control
02.006 S-Ramp Enable**
02.007 Maximum Rate Of Change
02.040 S-Ramp Percentage
02.041 S-Ramp Set-up Mode
Post-Ramp Reference
02.001

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
02.001	Post Ramp Reference	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF rpm				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
02.003	Ramp Hold	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
02.004	Ramp Mode	Fast (0), Standard (1), Std boost (2)	Fast (0), Standard (1)	Standard (1)			RW	Txt				US
02.006	S Ramp Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
02.007	Maximum Rate Of Change Of Acceleration	0.0 to 300.0 s^2/100 Hz	0.000 to 100.000 s^2/1000 rpm	3.1	1.500		RW	Num				US
02.008	Standard Ramp Voltage	±VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET V		200 V drive: 375 V 400 V drive 50 Hz: 750 V 400 V drive 60 Hz: 775 V 575 V drive: 895 V 690 V: 1075 V			RW	Num		RA		US
02.009	Deceleration Fail Detection Disable	Off (0) or On (1)	Off (0) or On (1)	Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
02.010	Acceleration Rate Selector	0 to 9	0 to 9	0			RW	Num				US
02.011	Acceleration Rate 1	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.012	Acceleration Rate 2	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.013	Acceleration Rate 3	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.014	Acceleration Rate 4	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.015	Acceleration Rate 5	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.016	Acceleration Rate 6	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.017	Acceleration Rate 7	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.018	Acceleration Rate 8	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.020	Deceleration Rate Selector	0 to 9		0			RW	Num				US
02.021	Deceleration Rate 1	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.022	Deceleration Rate 2	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.023	Deceleration Rate 3	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.024	Deceleration Rate 4	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.025	Deceleration Rate 5	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.026	Deceleration Rate 6	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.027	Deceleration Rate 7	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.028	Deceleration Rate 8	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	±VM_ACCEL_RATE s	20.0 s	20.000 s		RW	Num				US
02.030	Acceleration Rate Selected	0 to 8					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
02.031	Deceleration Rate Selected	0 to 8					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
02.032	Acceleration Rate Select Bit 0	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.033	Acceleration Rate Select Bit 1	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.034	Acceleration Rate Select Bit 2	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.035	Deceleration Rate Select Bit 0	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.036	Deceleration Rate Select Bit 1	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.037	Deceleration Rate Select Bit 2	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
02.039	Ramp Rate Units	Off = 100 Hz (0) or On = Maximum frequency (1)	Off = 1000 rpm or 1000 mm/s (0) or On = Maximum speed (1)	Off = 100 Hz (0)	Off = 1000 rpm or 1000 mm/s (0)		RW	Bit				US
02.040	S Ramp Percentage	0.0 to 50.0 %		0.0 %			RW	Num				US
02.041	S Ramp Set-up Mode	Single (0), Percentage (1), Independent (2)		Single (0)			RW	Txt				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.3 Menu 3: Frequency slaving, speed feedback and speed control

Figure 11-3 Menu 3 Open-loop logic diagram

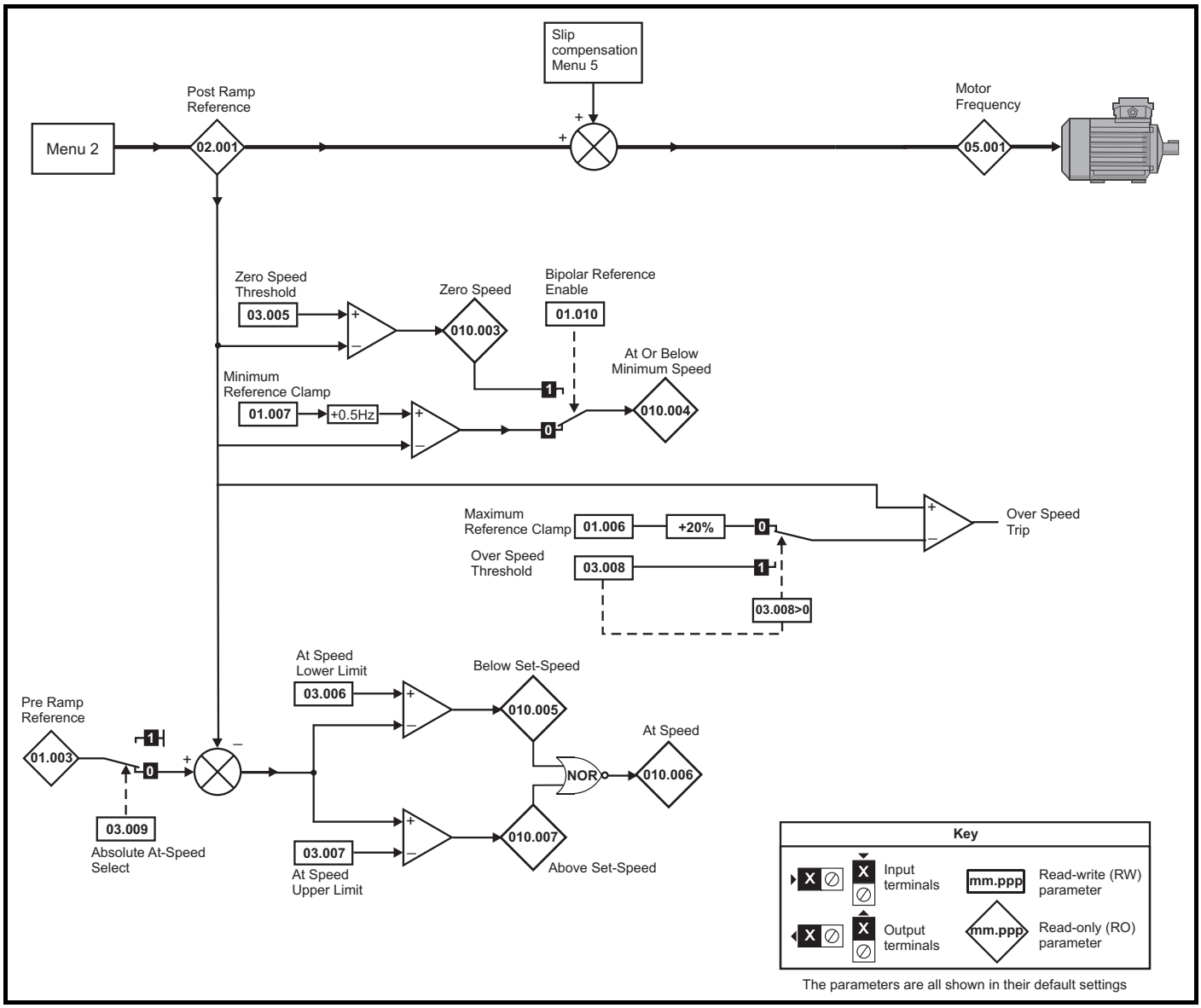
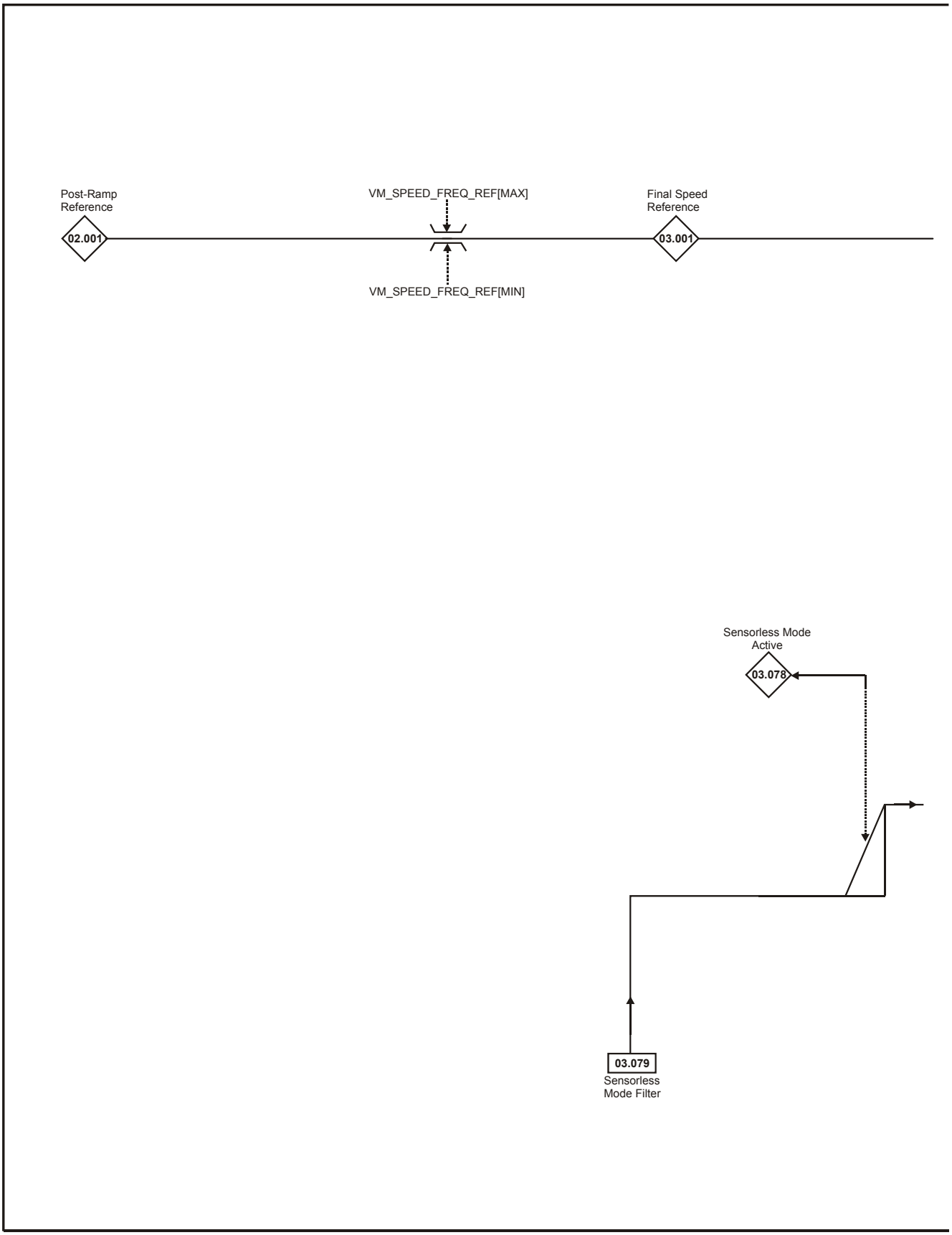
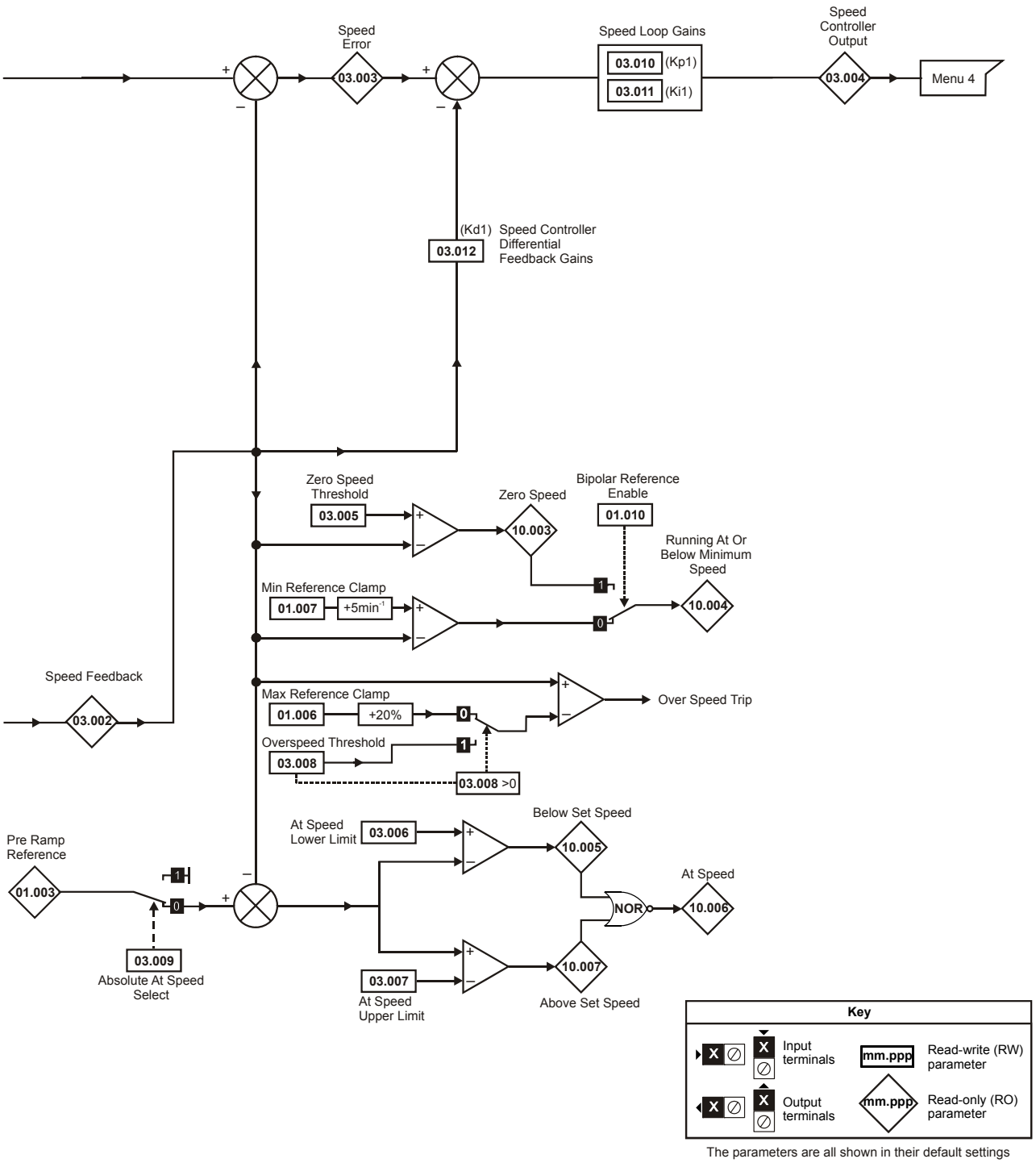


Figure 11-4 Menu 3 RFC-A, RFC-S logic diagram



NOTE

* Automatic change over if the relevant 'bit' of *Position Feedback Initialized* (03.076) is 0.



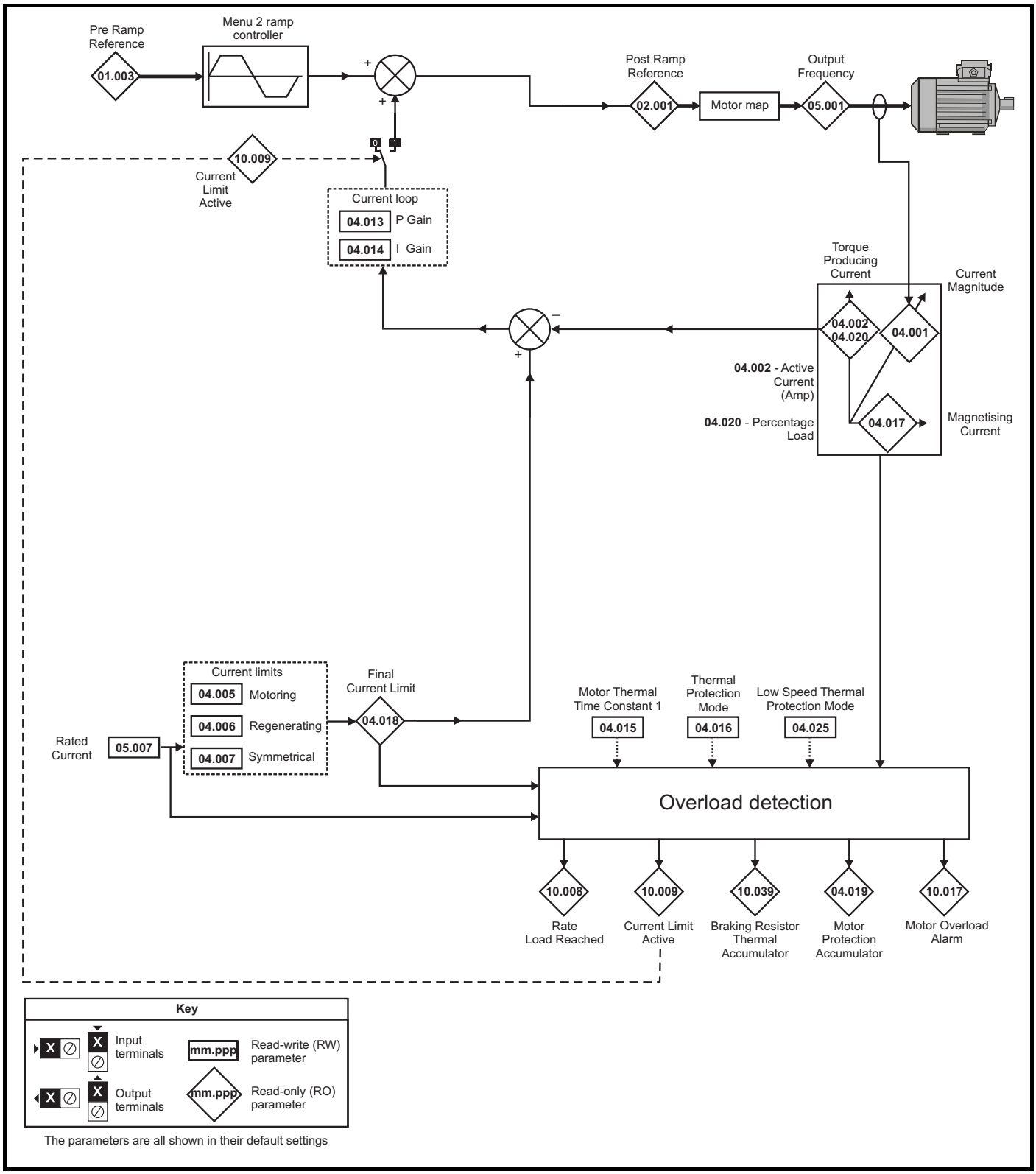
The parameters are all shown in their default settings

Parameter		Range			Default			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
03.001	Open-loop> Frequency Slaving Demand	±1000.0 Hz						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
	RFC> Final Speed Reference		±VM_SPEED					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
03.002	Speed Feedback		±VM_SPEED					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
03.003	Speed Error		±VM_SPEED					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
03.004	Speed Controller Output		±VM_TORQUE_CURRENT %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
03.005	Zero Speed Threshold	0.0 to 20.0 Hz	0 to 200 rpm		1.0 Hz	5 rpm		RW	Num				US
03.006	At Speed Lower Limit	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 33000 rpm		1.0 Hz	5 rpm		RW	Num				US
03.007	At Speed Upper Limit	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 33000 rpm		1.0 Hz	5 rpm		RW	Num				US
03.008	Over Speed Threshold	0.0 to 550.0 Hz	0 to 40000 rpm		0.0 Hz	0 rpm		RW	Num				US
03.009	Absolute At Speed Select	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
03.010	Speed Controller Proportional Gain Kp1		0.0000 to 200.0000 s/rad			0.0300 s/rad		RW	Num				US
03.011	Speed Controller Integral Gain Ki1		0.00 to 655.35 s^2/rad			0.10 s^2/rad		RW	Num				US
03.012	RFC> Speed Controller Differential Feedback Gain Kd1		0.00000 to 0.65535 1/rad			0.00000 1/rad		RW	Num				US
03.078	Sensorless Mode Active		Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
03.079	Sensorless Mode Filter		4 (0), 8 (1), 16 (2),32 (3), 64 (4) ms			4 (0) ms		RW	Txt				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.4 Menu 4: Torque and current control

Figure 11-5 Menu 4 Open loop logic diagram



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

Figure 11-6 Menu 4 RFC-A logic diagram

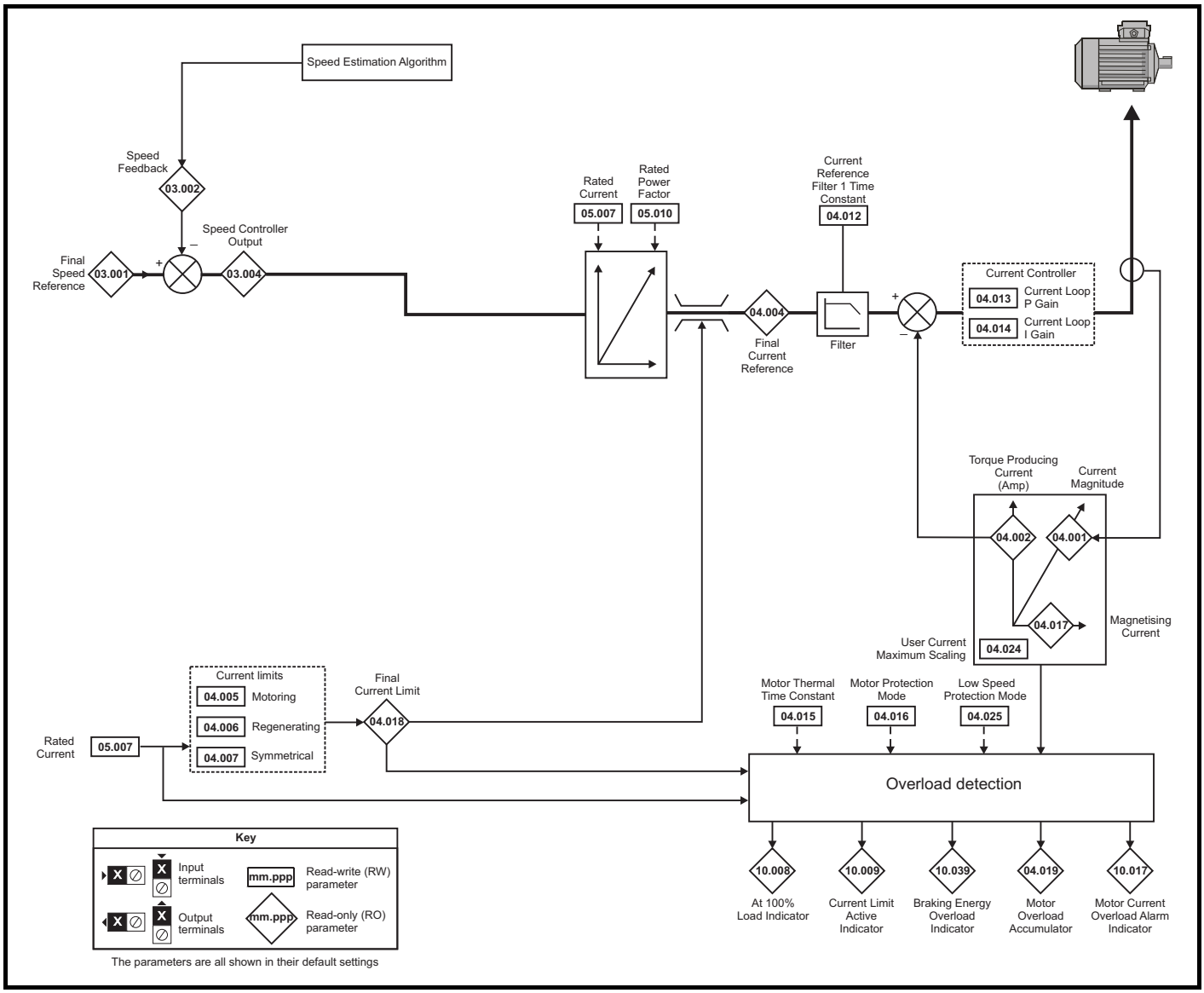
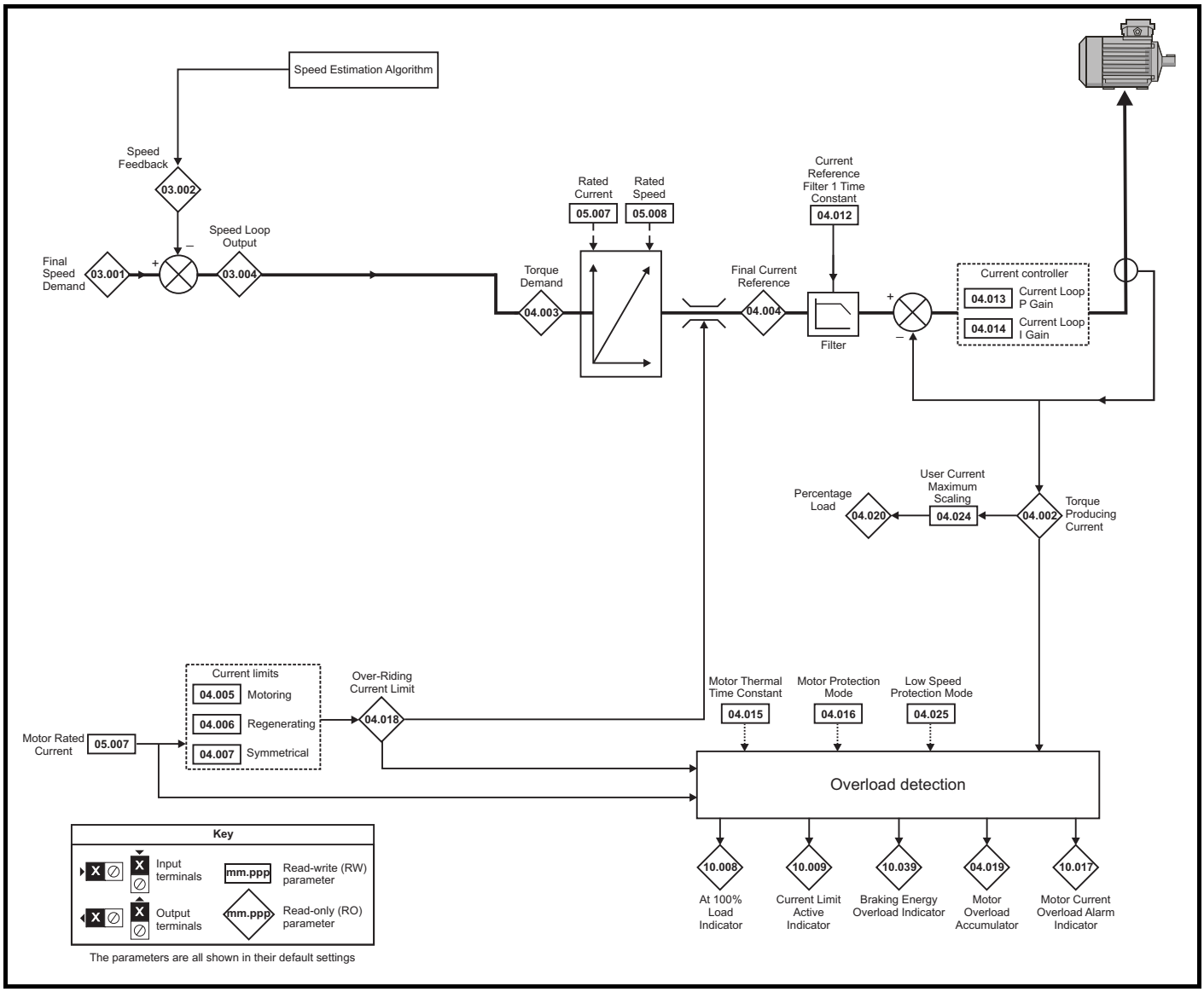


Figure 11-7 Menu 4 RFC-S logic diagram



Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
04.001	Current Magnitude	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.002	Torque Producing Current	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.003	Final Torque Reference	±VM_TORQUE_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.004	Final Current Reference	±VM_TORQUE_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.005	Motoring Current Limit	±VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT		110.0 %			RW	Num		RA		US
04.006	Regenerating Current Limit	±VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT		110.0 %			RW	Num		RA		US
04.007	Symmetrical Current Limit	±VM_MOTOR1_CURRENT_LIMIT		110.0 %			RW	Num		RA		US
04.012	Current Reference Filter 1 Time Constant		0.0 to 25.0 ms		1.0 ms		RW	Num				US
04.013	Current Controller Kp Gain	0 to 30000		20	150		RW	Num				US
04.014	Current Controller Ki Gain	0 to 30000		40	2000		RW	Num				US
04.015	Motor Thermal Time Constant 1	1.0 to 3000.0 s		89.0 s			RW	Num				US
04.016	Thermal Protection Mode	00 to 11		00			RW	Bin				US
04.017	Magnetising Current	±VM_DRIVE_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.018	Final Current Limit	±VM_TORQUE_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
04.019	Motor Protection Accumulator	0.0 to 100.0 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
04.020	Percentage Load	±VM_USER_CURRENT					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.021	Current feedback filter disable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
04.024	User Current Maximum Scaling	±VM_TORQUE_CURRENT_UNIPOLAR		110.0 %			RW	Num		RA		US
04.025	Low Speed Thermal Protection Mode	0 to 1		0			RW	Num				US
04.026	Percentage Torque	±VM_USER_CURRENT %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
04.027	Low load decision level	0.0 to100%		0.0 %			RW	Num				US
04.028	Low load detection speed / frequency threshold	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF		Unipolar 0.0			RW	Num				US
04.029	Enable trip on low load	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
04.036	Motor Protection Accumulator Power-Up Value	Power down (0), Zero (1), Real time (2)		Power down (0)			RW	Txt				US
04.037	Motor Thermal Time Constant 2	1.0 to 3000.0 s		89.0 s			RW	Num				US
04.038	Motor Thermal Time Constant 2 Scaling	0 to 100 %		0 %			RW	Num				US
04.039	Rated Iron Losses As Percentage Of Losses	0 to 100 %		0 %			RW	Num				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.5 Menu 5: Motor control

Figure 11-8 Menu 5 Open-loop logic diagram

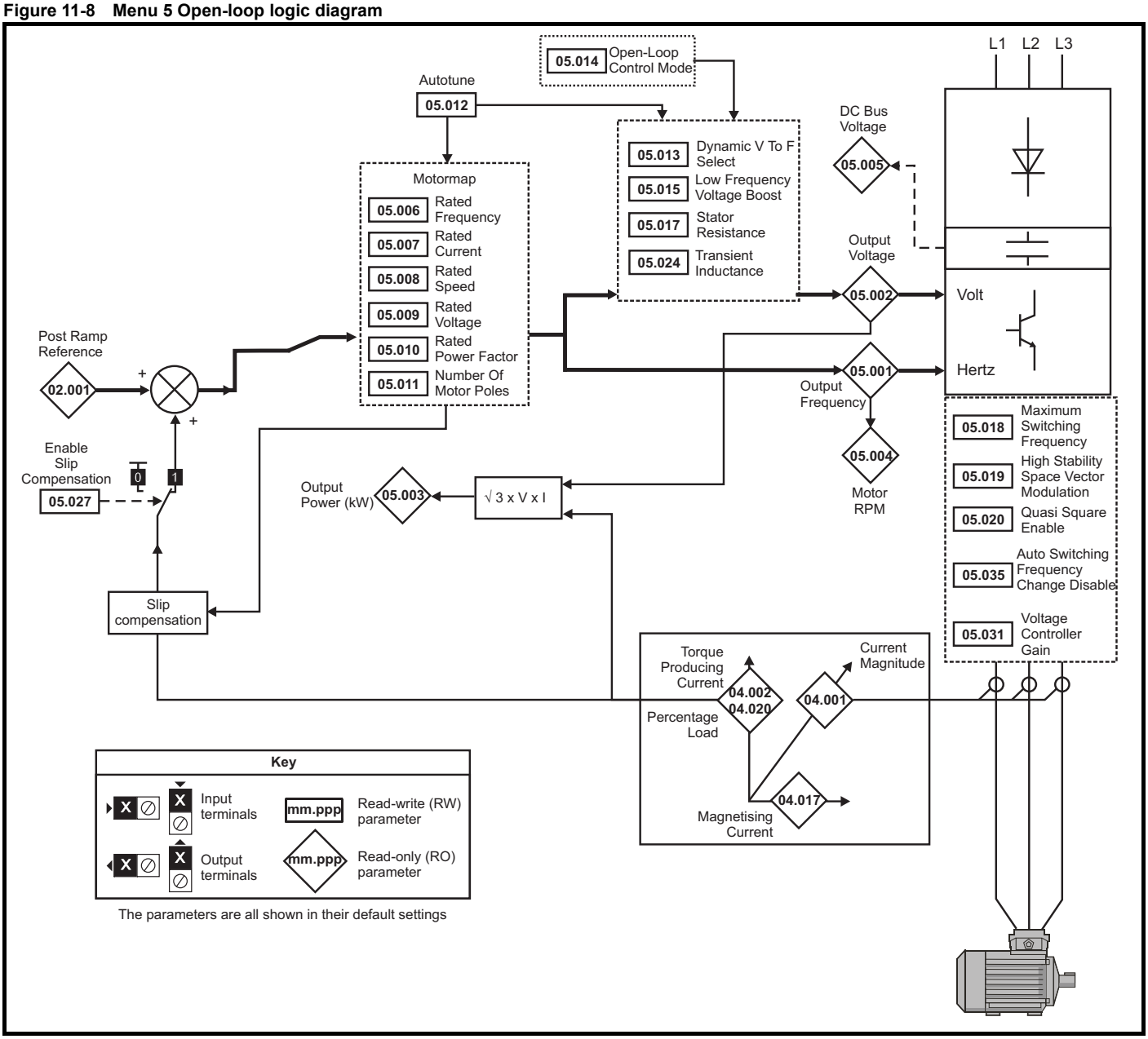
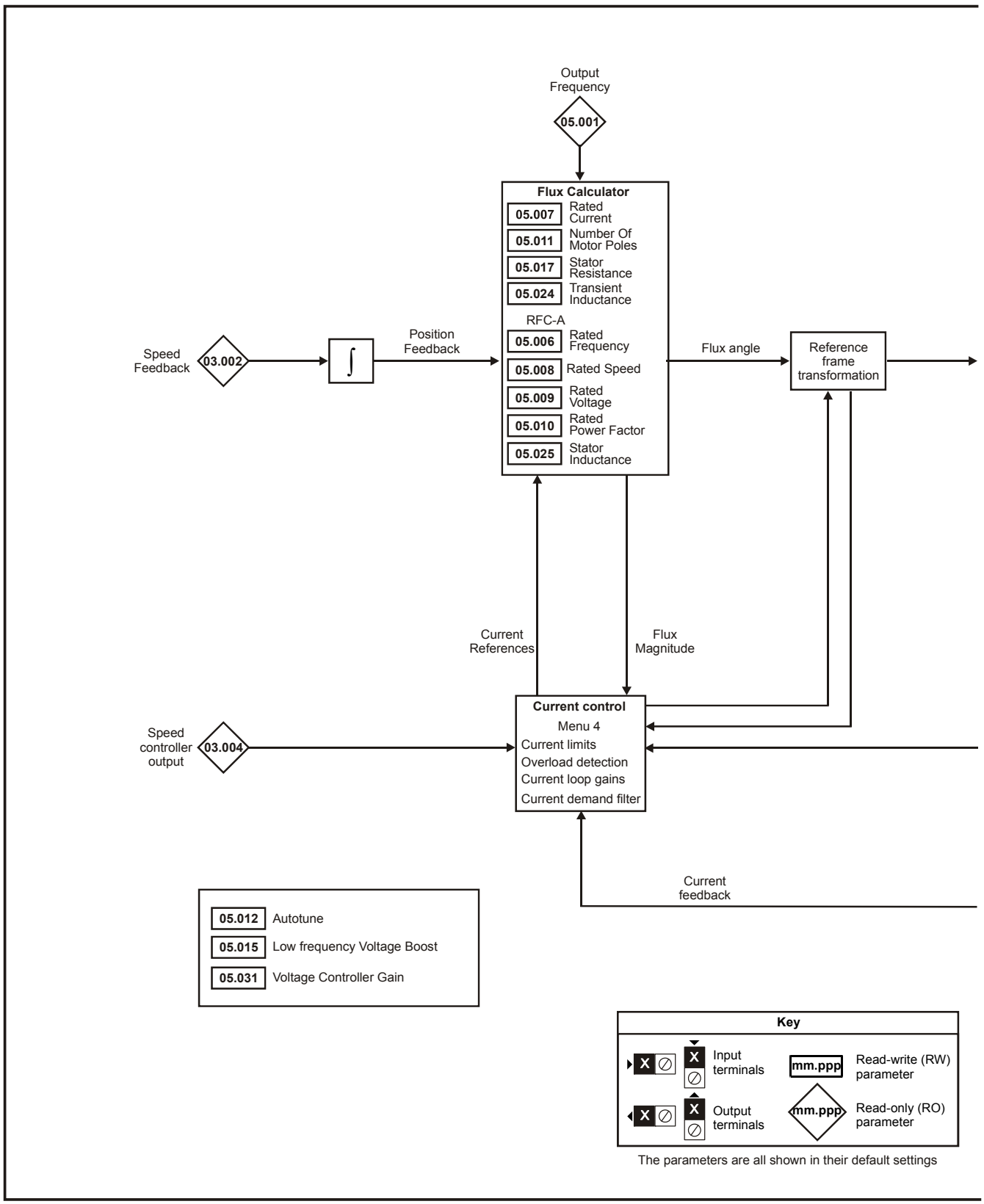
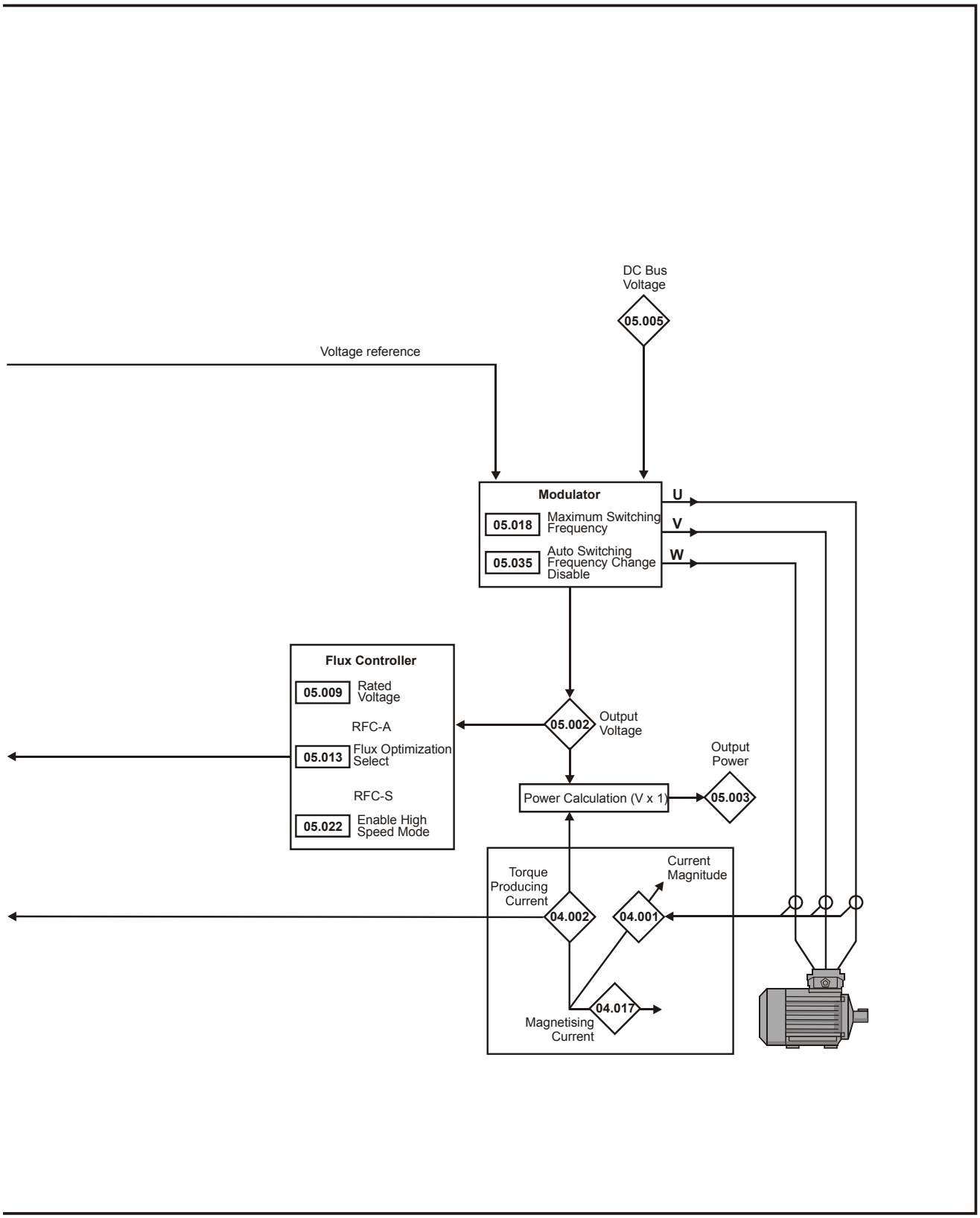


Figure 11-9 Menu 5 RFC-A, RFC-S logic diagram




DC Bus Voltage
05.005
Voltage reference
Modulator
05.018
Maximum Switching Frequency
05.035
Auto Switching Frequency Change Disable
U
V
W
Flux Controller
05.009
Rated Voltage
RFC-A
05.013
Flux Optimization Select
RFC-S
05.022
Enable High Speed Mode
05.002
Output Voltage
Output Power
Power Calculation (V x 1)
05.003
Torque Producing Current
04.002
Current Magnitude
04.001
04.017
Magnetising Current

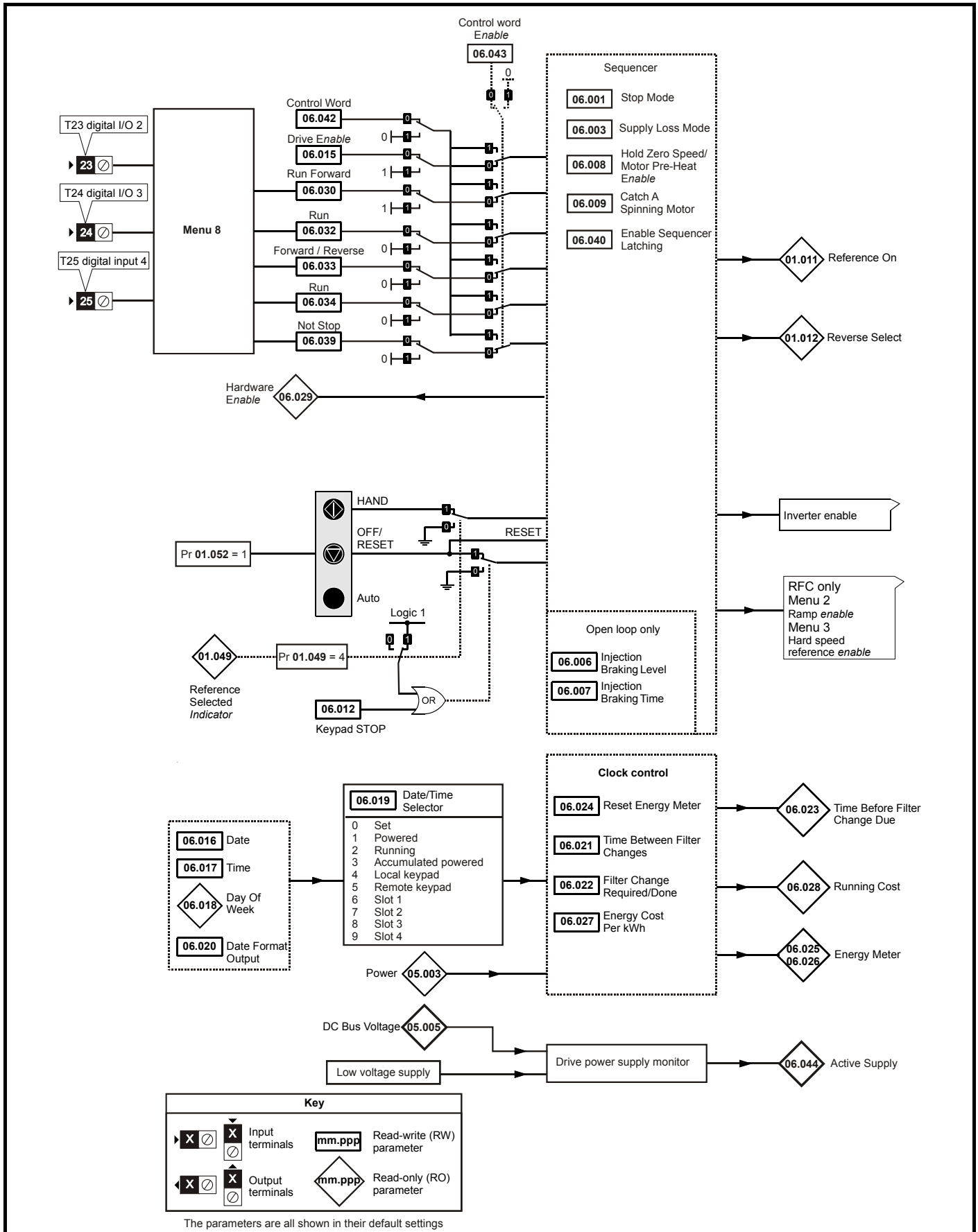
Parameter		Range(⇳)			Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
05.001	Output Frequency	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF Hz	±2000.0 Hz					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.002	Output Voltage	±VM_AC_VOLTAGE V						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.003	Output Power	±VM_POWER W						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.004	Motor Rpm	±180000 rpm						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.005	D.C. Bus Voltage	±VM_DC_VOLTAGE V						RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.006	Rated Frequency	0.0 to 550.0 Hz			50Hz: 50.0 60Hz: 60.0			RW	Num				US
05.007	Rated Current	±VM_RATED_CURRENT			Maximum Rated Current 11.060			RW	Num		RA		US
05.008	Rated Speed	0 to 33000 rpm	0.00 to 33000.00 rpm		Eur - 1500 rpm USA - 1800 rpm	Eur - 1450.00 rpm USA - 1750.00 rpm	3000.00 rpm	RW	Num				US
05.009	Rated Voltage	±VM_AC_VOLTAGE_SET V			200 V drive: 230 V Eur - 400 V drive: 400 V USA - 400 V drive: 460 V 575 V drive: 575 V 690 V drive: 690 V			RW	Num		RA		US
05.010	Rated Power Factor	0.000 to 1.000			0.850			RW	Num		RA		US
05.011	Number Of Motor Poles	Automatic (0) to 480 Poles (240)			Automatic (0)		6 Poles (3)	RW	Txt				US
05.012	Autotune	0 to 2	0 to 3	0 to 4	0			RW	Num		NC		
05.013	Dynamic V To F Select / Flux Optimization Select	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
05.014	Open-loop Control Mode / Action On Enable	Ur S (0), Ur (1), Fixed (2), Ur Auto (3), Ur I (4), Square (5), Current 1P (6)		Disabled (0), Short (1), Short Once (2), Long (3), Long Once (4)	Ur I (4)		Disabled (0)	RW	Txt				US
05.015	Low Frequency Voltage Boost	0.0 to 25.0 %			3.0 %			RW	Num				US
05.017	Stator Resistance	0.000000 to 1000.000000 Ω			0.000000 Ω			RW			RA		US
05.018	Maximum Switching Frequency	2 kHz (0), 3 kHz (1), 4 kHz (2), 6 kHz (3), 8 kHz (4), 12 kHz (5), 16 kHz (6)			3 kHz (1)			RW	Txt		RA		US
05.019	High Stability Space Vector Modulation	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
05.020	Quasi-square Enable							RW	Bit				US
05.022	Enable High Speed Mode			Limit (-1), Disable (0), Enable (1)			Limit (-1)	RW	Bit				US
05.024	Transient Inductance / Ld	0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH			RW	Num		RA		US
05.025	Stator Inductance	0.00 to 5000.00 mH			0.00 mH			RW	Num		RA		US
05.027	Enable Slip Compensation	Off (0) or On (1)			On (1)			RW	Bit		RA		US
05.031	Voltage Controller Gain	1 to 30			1			RW	Num				US
05.033	Volts per 1000 rpm			0 to 10000 V			98 V	RW	Num				US
05.034	Percentage Flux		0.0 to 150.0 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
05.035	Auto-switching Frequency Change Disable	Enabled (0), Disabled (1), No Ripple Detect (2)			Enabled (0)			RW	Txt				US
05.036	Auto-switching Frequency Step Size	1 to 2			2			RW	Num				US
05.037	Switching Frequency	2 kHz (0), 3 kHz (1), 4 kHz (2), 6 kHz (3), 8 kHz (4), 12 kHz (5), 16 kHz (6)						RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
05.038	Minimum Switching Frequency	0 to VM_MIN_SWITCHING_FREQUENCY kHz			2 kHz (0)			RW	Txt				US
05.039	Maximum Inverter Temperature Ripple	20 to 60 °C			60 °C								
05.040	Spin Start Boost	0.0 to 10.0			1.0			RW	Num				US
05.041	Voltage Headroom		0 to 20 %			0 %	10 %	RW	Num				US
05.042	Reverse Output Phase Sequence	Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
05.064	RFC Low Speed Mode			Injection (0), Non-salient (1)			Non-salient (1)	RW	Txt				US
05.065	Saliency Torque Control			Disabled (0), low (1), high (2)			Off (0)	RW	Bit				US

Parameter		Range(⇳)			Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
05.067	Percentage Over-current Trip Level			10 (0), 20 (1), 30 (2), 40 (3), 50 (4), 60 (5), 70 (6), 80 (7), 90 (8), 100 (9) %			100 (9) %	RW	Txt				US
05.070	Inverted Saturation Characteristic			Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)	RW	Bit				US
05.071	Low Speed Sensorless Mode Current Limit			0.0 to 1000.0 %			20.0 %	RW	Num		RA		US
05.072	No-load Lq			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US
05.075	Iq Test Current For Inductance Measurement			0 to 200 %			100 %	RW	Num				US
05.077	Phase Offset At Iq Test Current			±90.0 °			0.0 °	RW	Num		RA		US
05.078	Lq At The Defined Iq Test Current			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US
05.082	Id Test Current for Inductance Measurement			-100 to 0 %			-50 %	RW	Num				US
05.084	Lq At The Defined Id Test Current			0.000 to 500.000 mH			0.000 mH	RW	Num		RA		US
05.088	Estimated Lq			0.000 to 500.000 mH				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
05.089	Rated Torque Angle			0 to 90 °				RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.6 Menu 6: Sequencer and clock

Figure 11-10 Menu 6 logic diagram



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

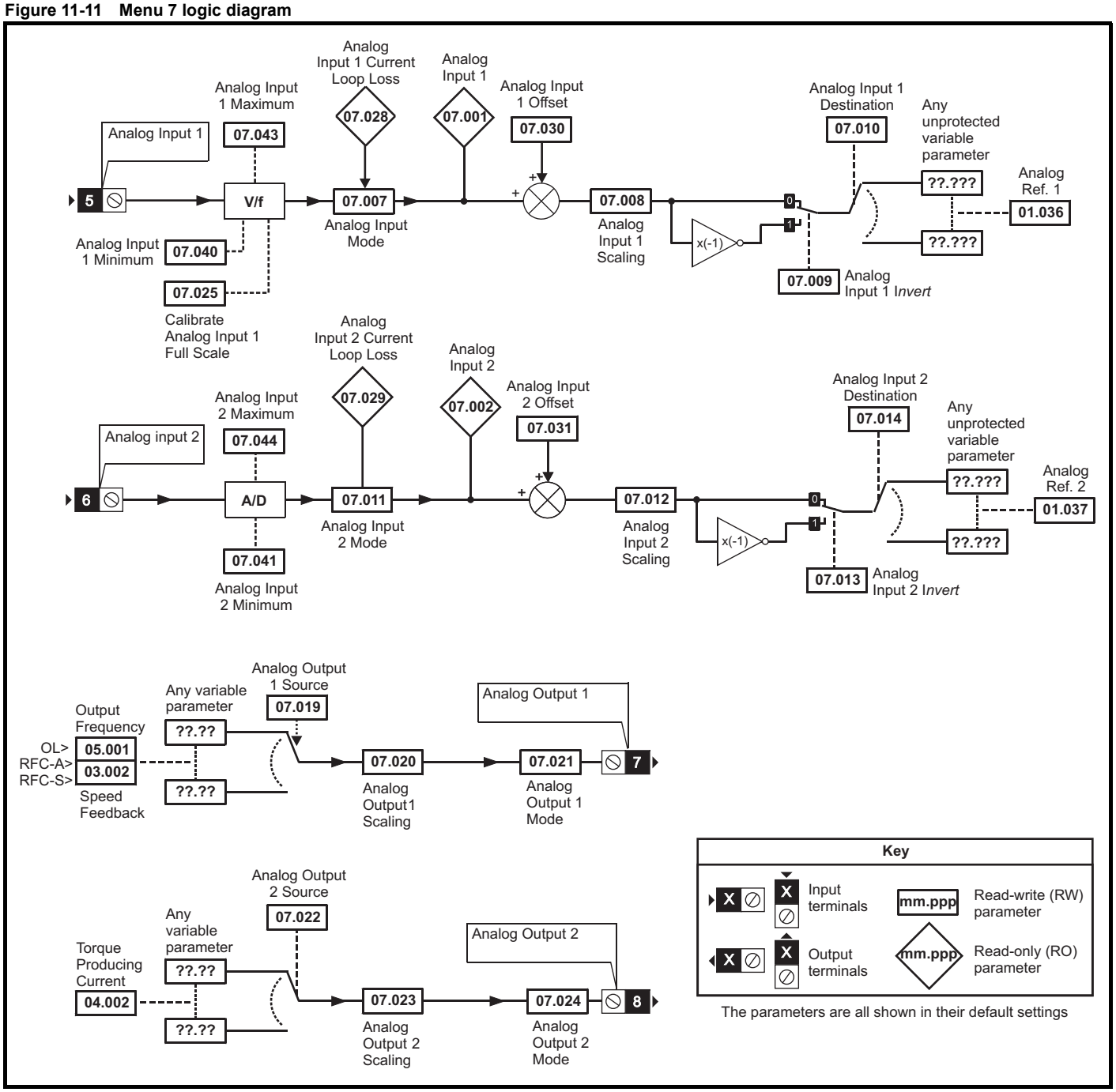
Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
06.001	Stop Mode	Coast (0), Ramp (1), Ramp dc I (2), dc I (3), Timed dc I (4), Disable (5)	Coast (0), Ramp (1), No Ramp (2)	Ramp (1)			RW	Txt				US
06.003	Supply Loss Mode	Disable (0), Ramp Stop (1), Ride Thru (2)	Disable (0), Ramp Stop (1), Ride Thru (2), Limit Stop (3)	Disable (0)			RW	Txt				US
06.006	Injection Braking Level	0.0 to 150.0 %		100.0 %			RW	Num		RA		US
06.007	Injection Braking Time	0.0 to 100.0 s		1.0 s			RW	Num				US
06.008	Hold Zero Speed	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.009	Catch A Spinning Motor	Disable (0), Enable (1), Fwd Only (2), Rev Only (3)		Disable (0)			RW	Txt				US
06.010	Enable Conditions	000000000000 to 111111111111					RO	Bin	ND	NC	PT	
06.011	Sequencer State Machine Inputs	0000000 to 1111111					RO	Bin	ND	NC	PT	
06.015	Drive Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		On (1)			RW	Bit		NC		US
06.016	Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RW	Date	ND	NC	PT	
06.017	Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RW	Time	ND	NC	PT	
06.018	Day Of Week	Sunday (0), Monday (1), Tuesday (2), Wednesday (3), Thursday (4), Friday (5), Saturday (6)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
06.019	Date/Time Selector	Set (0), Powered (1), Running (2), Acc Powered (3), Local Keypad (4), Remote Keypad (5), Slot 1 (6), Slot 2 (7), Slot 3 (8), Slot 4 (9)		Local Keypad (4)	Powered (1)		RW	Txt				US
06.020	Date Format	Std (0) or US (1)		Std (0)			RW	Txt				Us
06.021	Time Between Filter Changes	0 to 30000 Hours		0 Hours			RW	Num				US
06.022	Filter Change Required / Change Done	Off (0) or On (1)					RW	Bit	ND	NC		
06.023	Time Before Filter Change Due	0 to 30000 Hours					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
06.024	Reset Energy Meter	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				
06.025	Energy Meter: MWh	-999.9 to 999.0 MWh					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
06.026	Energy Meter: kWh	±99.99 kWh					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
06.027	Energy Cost Per kWh	0.0 to 600.0		0.0			RW	Num				US
06.028	Running Cost	±32000					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
06.029	Hardware Enable	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
06.030	Run Forward	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.032	Run Reverse	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.033	Forward/Reverse	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.034	Run	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.039	Not Stop	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.040	Enable Sequencer Latching	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.041	Drive Event Flags	00 to 11		00			RW	Bin		NC		
06.042	Control Word	000000000000000 to 111111111111111		000000000000000			RW	Bin		NC		
06.043	Control Word Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.044	Active Supply	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
06.045	Cooling Fan control	0 to 11		10			RW	Num				US
06.046	Supply Loss Hold Disable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.047	Input Phase Loss Detection Mode	Full (0), Ripple Only (1), Disabled (2)		Full (0)			RW	Txt				US
06.048	Supply Loss Detection Level	±VM_SUPPLY_LOSS_LEVEL		200 V drive: 205 V 400 V drive: 410 V 575 V drive: 540 V 690 V drive: 540 V			RW	Num		RA		US
06.051	Hold Supply Loss Active	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
06.052	Motor Pre-heat Current Magnitude	0 to 100 %		0 %			RW	Num				US
06.053	Sleep / Wake Threshold	±VM_SPEED_FREQ_REF_UNIPOLAR		0.0								
06.054	Sleep Time	0.0 to 250.0 s		10.0 s								
06.055	Wake Time	0.0 to 250.0 s		10.0 s								
06.056	Sleep Required	Off (0) or On (1)										
06.057	Sleep Active	Off (0) or On (1)										
06.058	Output Phase Loss Detection Time	0.5 s (0), 1.0 s (1), 2.0 s (2), 4.0 s (3)		0.5 s (0)								
06.059	Output Phase Loss Detection Enable	Disabled (0), Enabled (1)		Disabled (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.060	Standby Mode Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.061	Standby Mode Mask	0000000 to 1111111		0000000			RW	Bin				US

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
06.065	Standard Under Voltage Threshold	±VM_STD_UNDER_VOLTS		200 V drive: 175 V 400 V drive: 330 V 575 V drive: 435 V 690 V drive: 435 V			RW	Num		RA		US
06.066	Low Voltage Under Voltage Threshold	±VM_LOW_UNDER_VOLTS		200 V drive: 175 V 400 V drive: 330 V 575 V drive: 435 V 690 V drive: 435 V			RW	Num		RA		US
06.067	Low Under Voltage Threshold Select	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.068	Back Up Supply Mode Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.069	Under-Voltage System Contactor Close	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
06.070	Under-Voltage System Contactor Closed	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.071	Slow Rectifier Charge Rate Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.072	User Supply Select	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
06.084	Date And Time Offset	±24.00 Hours		0.00 Hours			RW	Num				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination
IP	IP address	Mac	Mac address	Date	Date parameter	Time	Time parameter	SMP	Slot,menu,parameter	Chr	Character parameter	Ver	Version number

11.7 Menu 7: Analog I/O

Figure 11-11 Menu 7 logic diagram

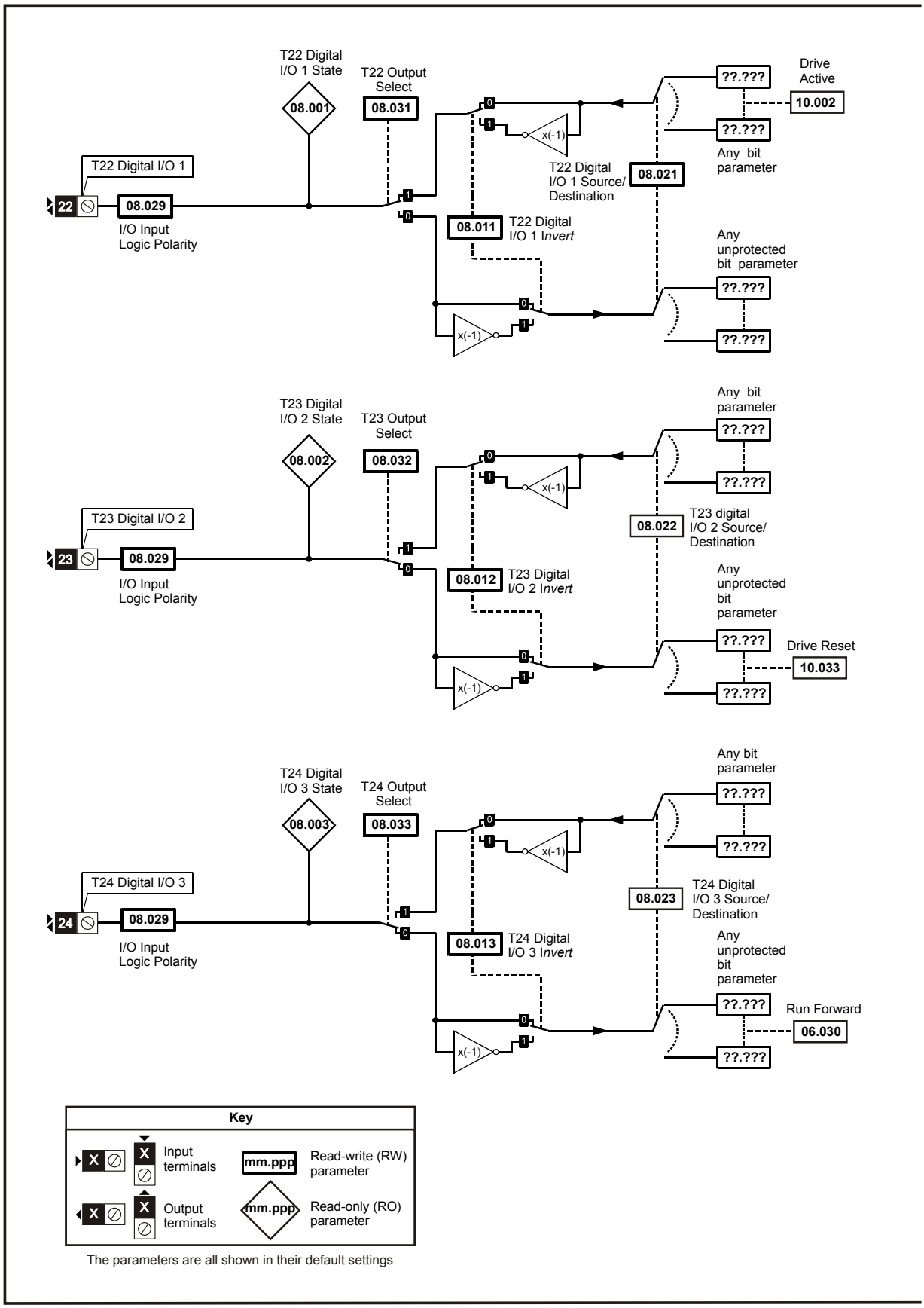


Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
07.001	Analog Input 1	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
07.002	Analog Input 2	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	FI
07.004	Monitored Temperature 1	±250 °C					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.005	Monitored Temperature 2	±250 °C					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.006	Monitored Temperature 3	±250 °C					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.007	Analog Input 1 Mode	4-20 mA Low (-4), 20-4 mA Low (-3), 4-20 mA Hold (-2), 20-4 mA Hold (-1), 0-20 mA (0), 20-0 mA (1), 4-20 mA Trip (2), 20-4 mA Trip (3), 4-20 mA (4), 20-4 mA (5), Volt (6), Therm Short Cct (7), Thermistor (8), Therm No Trip (9)		4-20 mA (4)			RW	Txt				US
07.008	Analog Input 1 Scaling	0.000 to 10.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
07.009	Analog Input 1 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
07.010	Analog Input 1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		1.036			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
07.011	Analog Input 2 Mode	4-20 mA Low (-4), 20-4 mA Low (-3), 4-20 mA Hold (-2), 20-4 mA Hold (-1), 0-20 mA (0), 20-0 mA (1), 4-20 mA Trip (2), 20-4 mA Trip (3), 4-20 mA (4), 20-4 mA (5), Volt (6), Therm Short Cct (7), Thermistor (8), Therm No Trip (9)		Volt (6)			RW	Txt				US
07.012	Analog Input 2 Scaling	0.000 to 10.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
07.013	Analog Input 2 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
07.014	Analog Input 2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		1.037			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
07.019	Analog Output 1 Source	0.000 to 59.999		5.001	3.002		RW	Num			PT	US
07.020	Analog Output 1 Scaling	0.000 to 10.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
07.021	Analog Output 1 Mode	Volt (0), 0-20 mA (1), 20-0 mA (2), 4-20 mA (3), 20-4 mA (4)		Volt (0)			RW	Txt				
07.022	Analog Output 2 Source	0.000 to 59.999		4.002			RW	Num				US
07.023	Analog Output 2 Scaling	0.000 to 10.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
07.024	Analog Output 2 Mode	Volt (0), 0-20 mA (1), 20-0 mA (2), 4-20 mA (3), 20-4 mA (4)		Volt (0)			RW	Txt				
07.025	Calibrate Analog Input 1 Full Scale	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
07.026	Analog Input 1 Fast Update Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
07.027	Analog Input 2 Fast Update Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
07.028	Analog Input 1 Current Loop Loss	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
07.029	Analog Input 2 Current Loop Loss						RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
07.030	Analog Input 1 Offset	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.031	Analog Input 2 Offset	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.033	Power Output	±100.0 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.034	Inverter Temperature	±250 °C					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.035	Percentage Of d.c. Bus Thermal Trip Level	0 to 100 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.036	Percentage Of Drive Thermal Trip Level	0 to 100 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.037	Temperature Nearest To Trip Level	0 to 29999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
07.038	Temperature Monitor Select 1	0 to 29999		1001			RW	Num				US
07.039	Temperature Monitor Select 2	0 to 29999		1002			RW	Num				US
07.040	Analog Input 1 Minimum	±100.00 %		-100.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.041	Analog Input 2 Minimum	±100.00 %		-100.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.043	Analog Input 1 Maximum	±100.00 %		100.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.044	Analog Input 2 Maximum	±100.00 %		100.00 %			RW	Num				US
07.051	Analog Input 1 Full Scale	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
07.052	Temperature Monitor Select 3	0 to 29999		1			RW	Num				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.8 Menu 8: Digital I/O

Figure 11-12 Menu 8 logic diagram



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

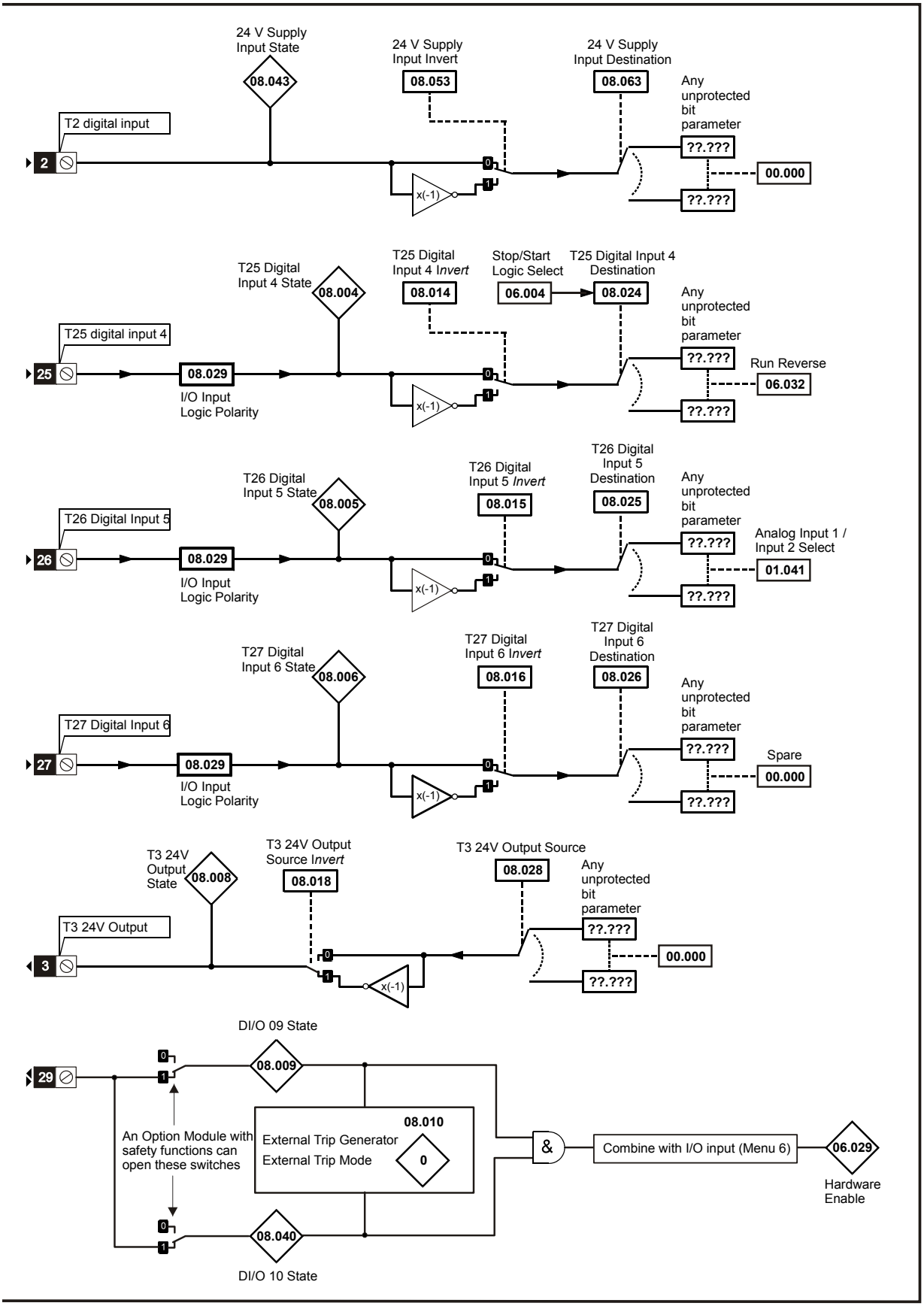

24 V Supply Input State
08.043
24 V Supply Input Invert
08.053
24 V Supply Input Destination
08.063
Any unprotected bit parameter
T2 digital input
2
??.???
00.000
??.???
x(-1)
T25 Digital Input 4 State
08.004
T25 Digital Input 4 Invert
08.014
Stop/Start Logic Select
06.004
T25 Digital Input 4 Destination
08.024
T25 digital input 4
25
08.029
I/O Input Logic Polarity
Run Reverse
06.032
T26 Digital Input 5 State
08.005
T26 Digital Input 5 Invert
08.015
T26 Digital Input 5 Destination
08.025
T26 Digital Input 5
26
Analog Input 1 / Input 2 Select
01.041
T27 Digital Input 6 State
08.006
T27 Digital Input 6 Invert
08.016
T27 Digital Input 6 Destination
08.026
T27 Digital Input 6
27
Spare
T3 24V Output State
08.008
T3 24V Output Source Invert
08.018
T3 24V Output Source
08.028
T3 24V Output
3
DI/O 09 State
29
08.009
08.010
External Trip Generator
External Trip Mode
0
An Option Module with safety functions can open these switches
&
Combine with I/O input (Menu 6)
06.029
Hardware Enable
08.040
DI/O 10 State

Figure 11-13 Menu 8 logic (cont)

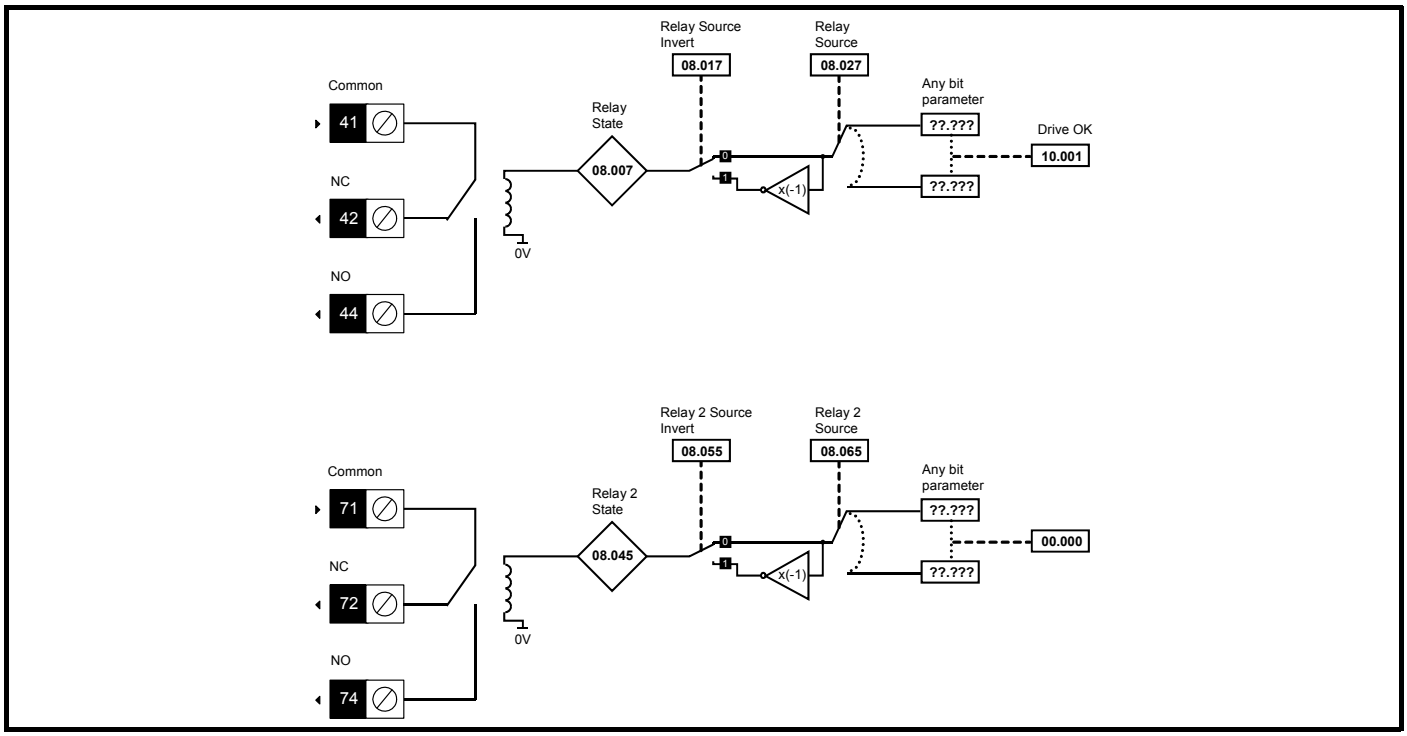
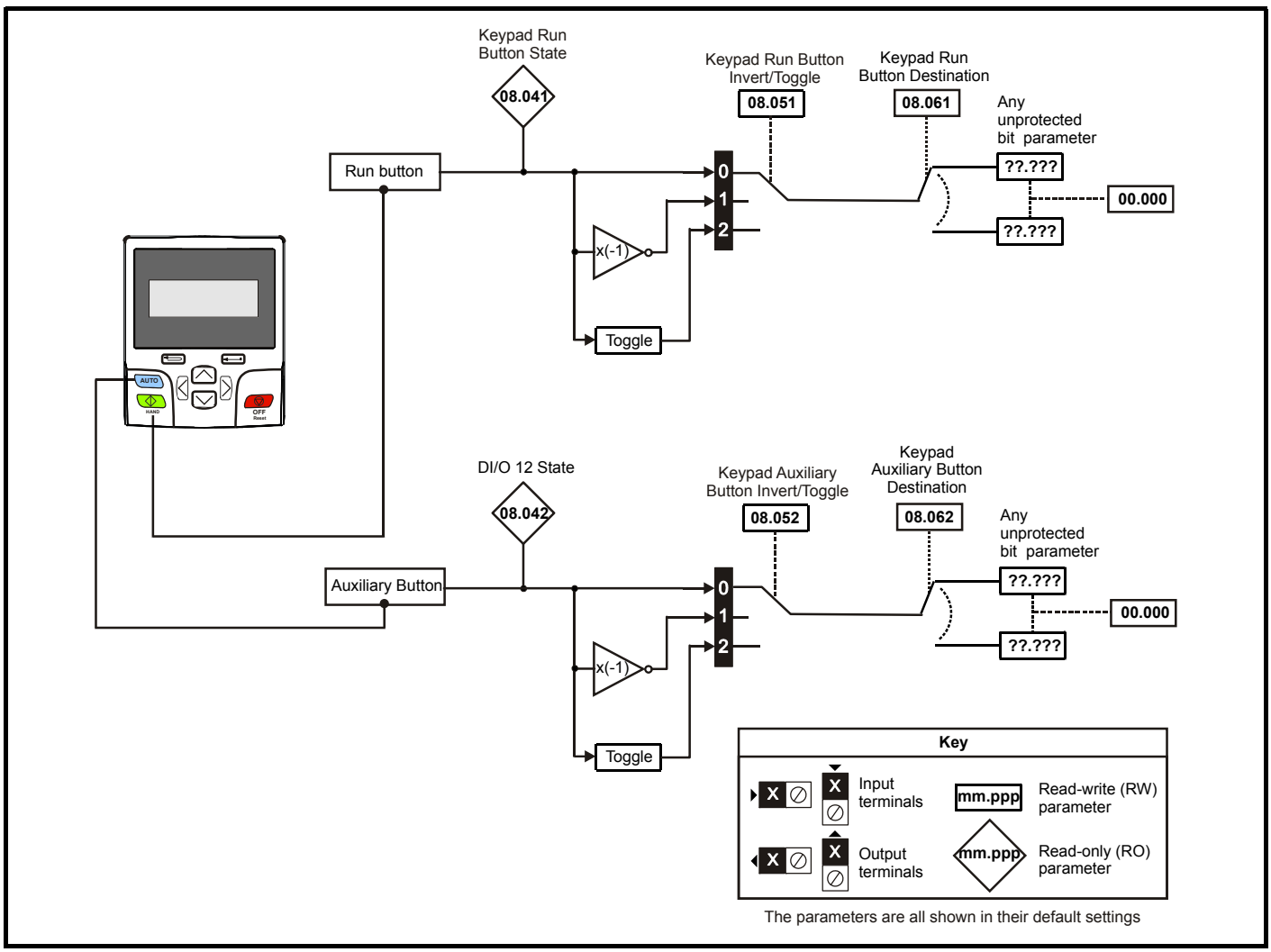


Figure 11-14 Menu 8 logic (cont)

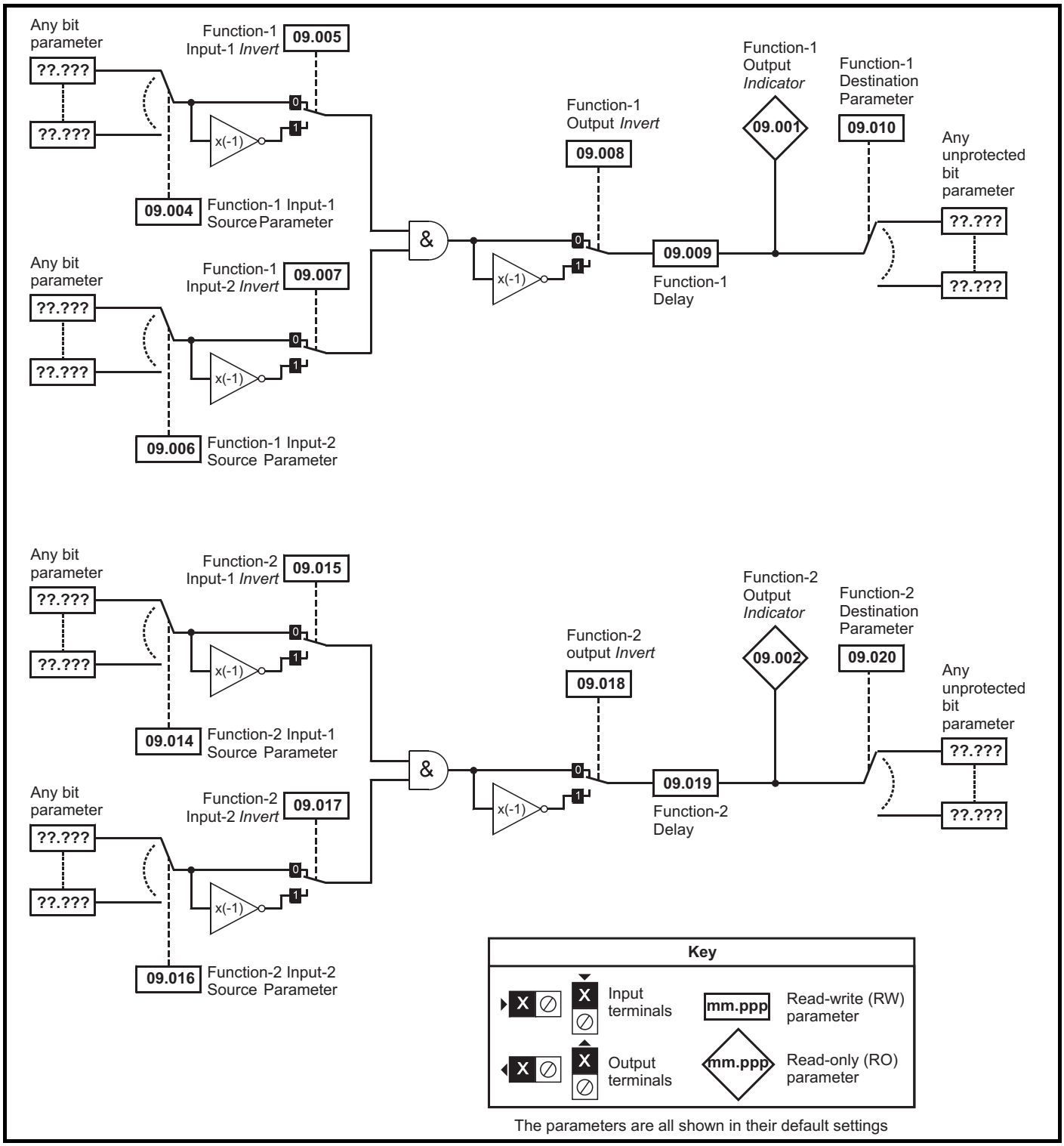


Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
08.001	Digital I/O 01 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.002	Digital I/O 02 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.003	Digital I/O 03 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.004	Digital Input 04 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.005	Digital Input 05 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.006	Digital Input 06 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.007	Relay Output State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.008	24V Supply Output State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.009	STO Input 01 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.010	External Trip Mode	Disable (0), STO 1 (1), STO 2 (2), STO 1 OR STO 2 (3)		Disable (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.011	Digital I/O 01 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.012	Digital I/O 02 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.013	Digital I/O 03 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.014	Digital Input 04 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.015	Digital Input 05 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.016	Digital Input 06 Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.017	Relay Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.018	24V Supply Output Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Invert (1)			RW	Txt				US
08.020	Digital I/O Read Word	0 to 511					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
08.021	Digital I/O 01 Source/Destination	0.000 to 59.999		10.002			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.022	Digital I/O 02 Source/Destination	0.000 to 59.999		10.033			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.023	Digital I/O 03 Source/Destination	0.000 to 59.999		6.030			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.024	Digital Input 04 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		1.054			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.025	Digital Input 05 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		1.041			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.026	Digital Input 06 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.027	Relay Output Source	0.000 to 59.999		10.001			RW	Num			PT	US
08.028	24V Supply Output Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
08.029	Input Logic Polarity	Negative Logic (0) or Positive Logic (1)		Positive Logic (1)			RW	Txt				US
08.031	Digital I/O 01 Output Select	Off (0) or On (1)		On (1)			RW	Bit				US
08.032	Digital I/O 02 Output Select	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
08.033	Digital I/O 03 Output Select	Off (0) or On (1)					RW	Bit				US
08.040	STO Input 02 State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.041	Keypad Run Button State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.042	Keypad Auxiliary Button State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.043	24V Supply Input State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.044	Keypad Stop Button State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.045	Relay 2 Output State	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
08.051	Keypad Run Button Invert/Toggle	Not Invert (0), Invert (1) or Toggle (2)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.052	Keypad Auxiliary Button Invert/Toggle	Not Invert (0), Invert (1) or Toggle (2)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.053	24V Supply Input Invert	Not Invert (0) or Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.055	Relay 2 Invert	Not Invert (0), Invert (1)		Not Invert (0)			RW	Txt				US
08.061	Keypad Run Button Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.062	Keypad Auxiliary Button Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
08.063	24V Supply Input Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
08.065	Relay 2 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
08.071	DI/O Output Enable Register 1	0000000000000000 to 1111111111111111		0000000000000000			RW	Bin			PT	US
08.072	DI/O Input Register 1	0000000000000000 to 1111111111111111		0000000000000000			RO	Bin			PT	
08.073	DI/O Output Register 1	0000000000000000 to 1111111111111111		0000000000000000			RW	Bin			PT	

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.9 Menu 9: Programmable logic, motorized pot, binary sum and timers

Figure 11-15 Menu 9 logic diagram: Programmable logic



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

Figure 11-16 Menu 9 logic diagram: Motorized pot and binary sum

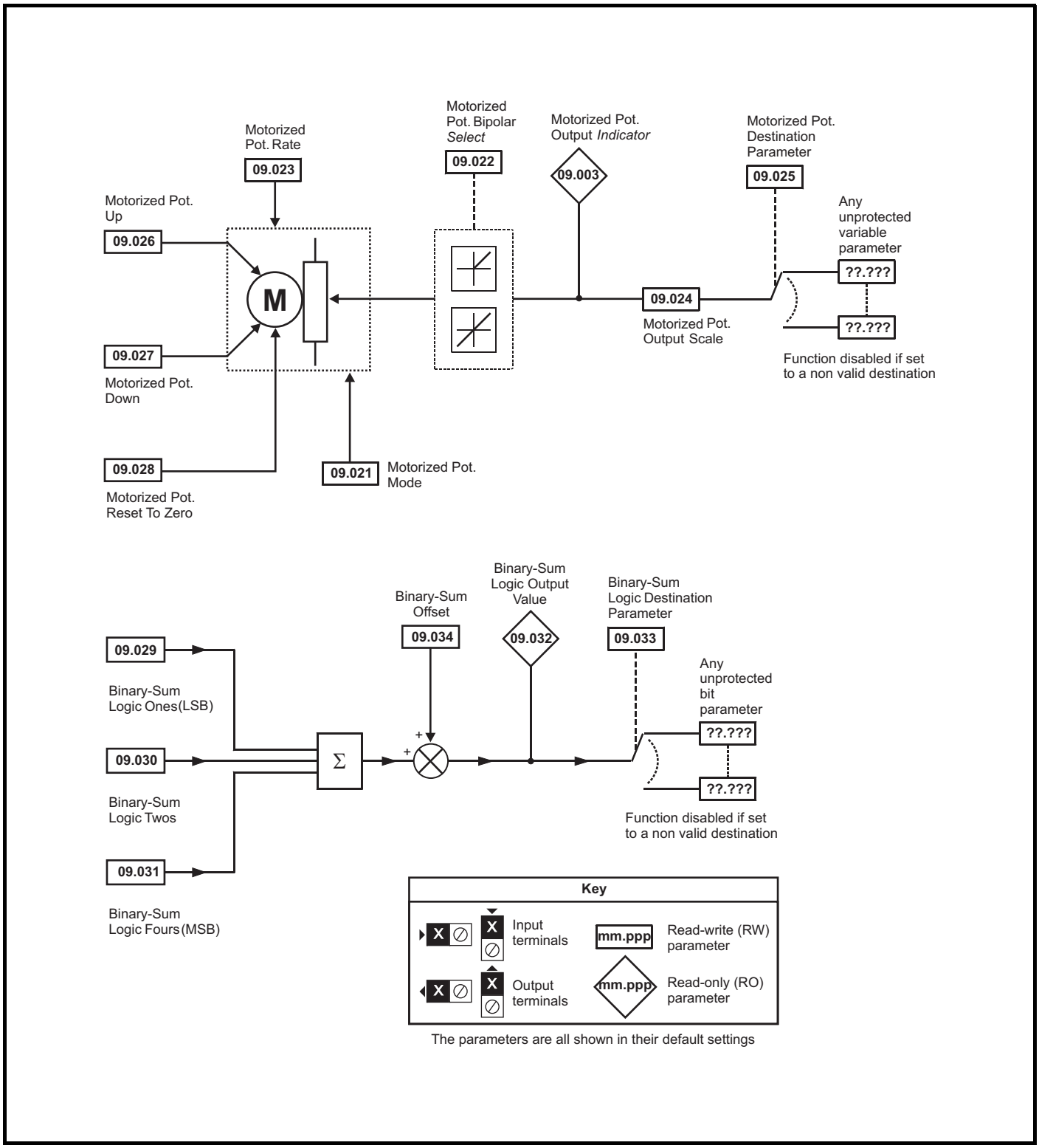
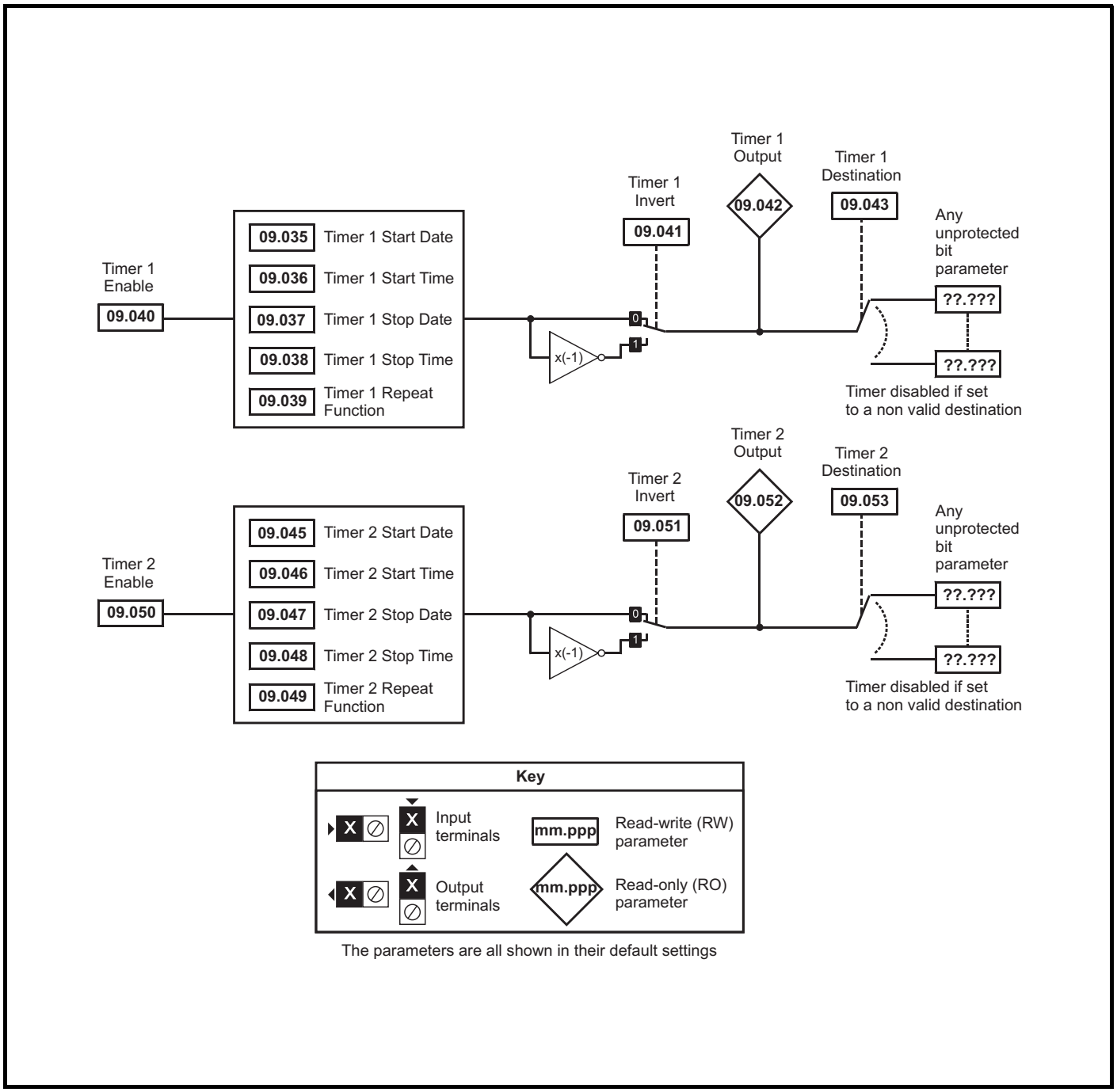
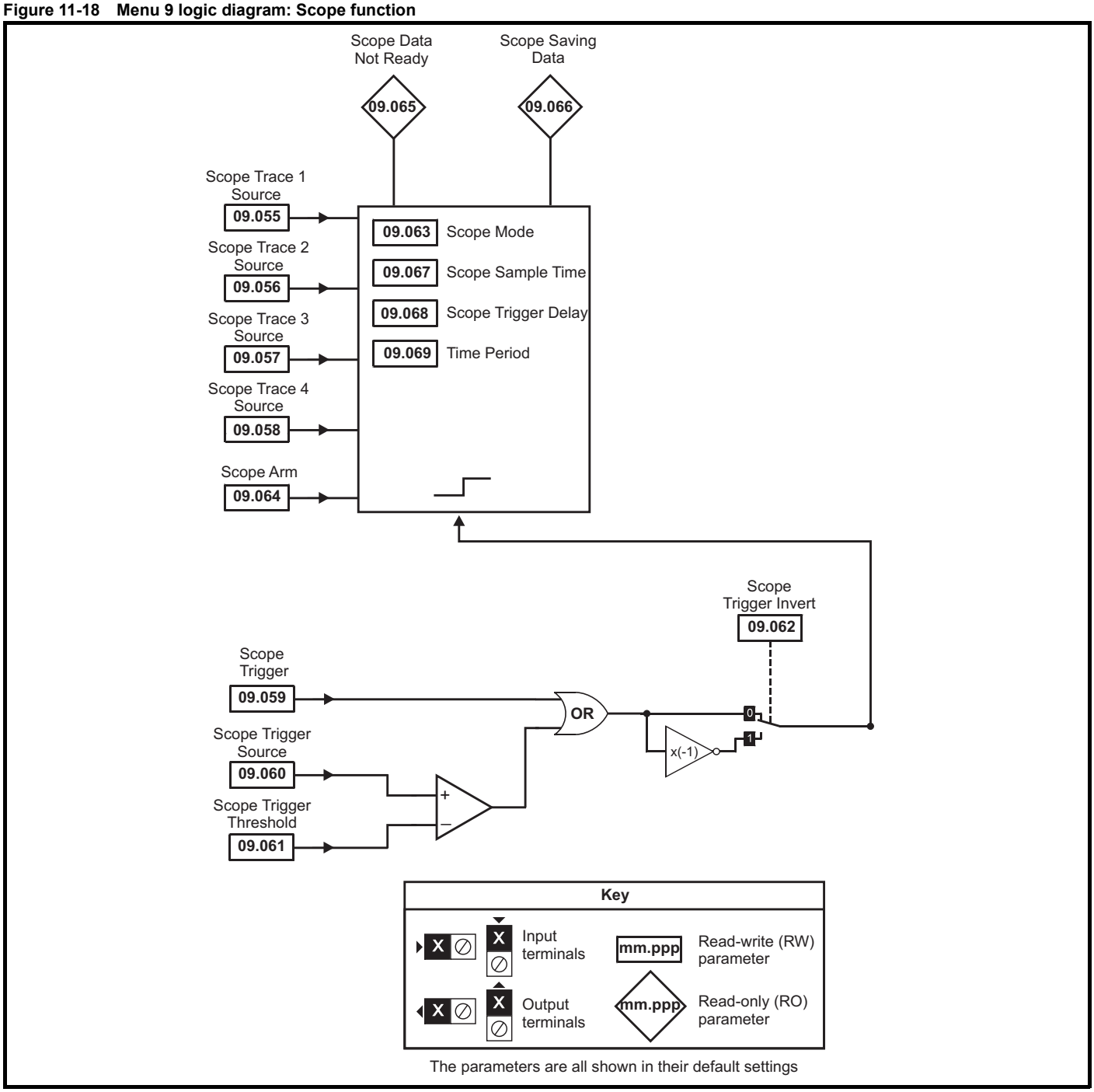


Figure 11-17 Menu 9 logic diagram: Timers



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

Figure 11-18 Menu 9 logic diagram: Scope function



Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
09.001	Logic Function 1 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.002	Logic Function 2 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.003	Motorized Pot Output	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
09.004	Logic Function 1 Source 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.005	Logic Function 1 Source 1 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.006	Logic Function 1 Source 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.007	Logic Function 1 Source 2 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.008	Logic Function 1 Output Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.009	Logic Function 1 Delay	±25.0 s		0.0s			RW	Num				US
09.010	Logic Function 1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.014	Logic Function 2 Source 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.015	Logic Function 2 Source 1 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.016	Logic Function 2 Source 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.017	Logic Function 2 Source 2 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.018	Logic Function 2 Output Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.019	Logic Function 2 Delay	±25.0 s		0.0 s			RW	Num				US
09.020	Logic Function 2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.021	Motorized Pot Mode	0 to 4		0			RW	Num				US
09.022	Motorized Pot Bipolar Select	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.023	Motorized Pot Rate	0 to 250 s		20 s			RW	Num				US
09.024	Motorized Pot Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
09.025	Motorized Pot Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.026	Motorized Pot Up	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.027	Motorized Pot Down	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.028	Motorized Pot Reset	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.029	Binary Sum Ones	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.030	Binary Sum Twos	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.031	Binary Sum Fours	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.032	Binary Sum Output	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
09.033	Binary Sum Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.034	Binary Sum Offset	0 to 248		0			RW	Num				US
09.035	Timer 1 Start Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99		00-00-00			RW	Date				US
09.036	Timer 1 Start Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59		00:00:00			RW	Time				US
09.037	Timer 1 Stop Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99		00-00-00			RW	Date				US
09.038	Timer 1 Stop Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59		00:00:00			RW	Time				US
09.039	Timer 1 Repeat Function	None (0), Hour (1), Day (2), Week (3), Month (4), Year (5), One off (6), Minute (7)		None (0)			RW	Txt				US
09.040	Timer 1 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.041	Timer 1 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.042	Timer 1 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.043	Timer 1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.045	Timer 2 Start Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99		00-00-00			RW	Date				US
09.046	Timer 2 Start Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59		00:00:00			RW	Time				US
09.047	Timer 2 Stop Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99		00-00-00			RW	Date				US
09.048	Timer 2 Stop Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59		00:00:00			RW	Time				US
09.049	Timer 2 Repeat Function	None (0), Hour (1), Day (2), Week (3), Month (4), Year (5), One off (6), Minute (7)		None (0)			RW	Txt				US
09.050	Timer 2 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.051	Timer 2 Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.052	Timer 2 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.053	Timer 2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	DE			PT	US
09.055	Scope Trace 1 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.056	Scope Trace 2 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.057	Scope Trace 3 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.058	Scope Trace 4 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.059	Scope Trigger	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				
09.060	Scope Trigger Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
09.061	Scope Trigger Threshold	-2147483648 to 2147483647		0			RW	Num				US

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
09.062	Scope Trigger Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
09.063	Scope Mode	Single (0), Normal (1), Auto (2)		Single (0)			RW	Txt				US
09.064	Scope Arm	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
09.065	Scope Data Not Ready	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.066	Scope Saving Data	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
09.067	Scope Sample Time	1 to 200		1			RW	Num				US
09.068	Scope Trigger Delay	0 to 100 %		0 %			RW	Num				US
09.069	Scope Time Period	0.00 to 200000.00 ms					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
09.070	Scope Auto-save Mode	Disabled (0), Overwrite (1), Keep (2)		Disabled (0)			RW	Txt				US
09.071	Scope Auto-save File Number	0 to 99		0			RO	Num				PS
09.072	Scope Auto-save Reset	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				
09.073	Scope Auto-save Status	Disabled (0), Active (1), Stopped (2), Failed (3)		Disabled (0)			RO	Txt				PS

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination
IP	IP address	Mac	Mac address	Date	Date parameter	Time	Time parameter	SMP	Slot,menu,parameter	Chr	Character parameter	Ver	Version number

11.10 Menu 10: Status and trips

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
10.001	Drive OK	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.002	Drive Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.003	Zero Speed	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.004	Running At Or Below Minimum Speed	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.005	Below Set Speed	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.006	At Speed	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.007	Above Set Speed	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.008	Rate Load Reached	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.009	Current Limit Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.010	Regenerating	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.011	Braking IGBT Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.012	Braking Resistor Alarm	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.013	Reverse Direction Commanded	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.014	Reverse Direction Running	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.015	Supply Loss	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.016	Under Voltage Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.017	Motor Overload Alarm	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.018	Drive Over-temperature Alarm	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.019	Drive Warning	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.020	Trip 0	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.021	Trip 1	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.022	Trip 2	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.023	Trip 3	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.024	Trip 4	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.025	Trip 5	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.026	Trip 6	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.027	Trip 7	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.028	Trip 8	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.029	Trip 9	0 to 255					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.030	Braking Resistor Rated Power	0.000 to 99999.999 kW		See Table 11-5			RW	Num				US
10.031	Braking Resistor Thermal Time Constant	0.000 to 1500.000 s		See Table 11-5			RW	Num				US
10.032	External Trip	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
10.033	Drive Reset	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit		NC		
10.034	Number Of Auto-reset Attempts	None (0), 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, Infinite (6)		None (0)			RW	Txt				US
10.035	Auto-reset Delay	0.0 to 600.0 s		1.0 s			RW	Num				US
10.036	Auto-reset Hold Drive ok	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
10.037	Action On Trip Detection	00000 to 11111		00000			RW	Bin				US
10.038	User Trip	0 to 255					RW	Num	ND	NC		
10.039	Braking Resistor Thermal Accumulator	0.0 to 100.0 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
10.040	Status Word	000000000000000 to 111111111111111					RO	Bin	ND	NC	PT	
10.041	Trip 0 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.042	Trip 0 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.043	Trip 1 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.044	Trip 1 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.045	Trip 2 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.046	Trip 2 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.047	Trip 3 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.048	Trip 3 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.049	Trip 4 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.050	Trip 4 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.051	Trip 5 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.052	Trip 5 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.053	Trip 6 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
10.054	Trip 6 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.055	Trip 7 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.056	Trip 7 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.057	Trip 8 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.058	Trip 8 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.059	Trip 9 Date	00-00-00 to 31-12-99					RO	Date	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.060	Trip 9 Time	00:00:00 to 23:59:59					RO	Time	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.061	Braking Resistor Resistance	0.00 to 10000.00 Ω		See Table 11-5			RW	Num				US
10.062	Low Load Detected Alarm	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.063	Local Keypad Battery Low	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.064	Remote Keypad Battery Low	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.065	Auto-tune Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.067	Fire Mode Active	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.068	Hold Drive OK On Under Voltage	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
10.069	Additional Status Bits	0000000000 to 1111111111					RO	Bin	ND	NC	PT	
10.070	Trip 0 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.071	Trip 1 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.072	Trip 2 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.073	Trip 3 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.074	Trip 4 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.075	Trip 5 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.076	Trip 6 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.077	Trip 7 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.078	Trip 8 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.079	Trip 9 Sub-trip Number	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.080	Stop Motor	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.081	Phase Loss	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
10.101	Drive Status	Inhibit (0), Ready (1), Stop (2), Scan (3), Run (4), Supply Loss (5), Deceleration (6), dc Injection (7), Position (8), Trip (9), Active (10), Off (11), Hand (12), Auto (13), Heat (14), Under Voltage (15), Phasing (16)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
10.102	Trip Reset Source	0 to 1023					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	PS
10.103	Trip Time Identifier	-2147483648 to 2147483647 ms					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
10.104	Active Alarm	None (0), Brake Resistor (1), Motor Overload (2), Ind Overload (3), Drive Overload (4), Auto Tune (5), Limit Switch (6), Fire Mode (7), Low Load (8), Option Slot 1 (9), Option Slot 2 (10), Option Slot 3 (11), Option Slot 4 (12)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
10.106	Potential Drive Damage Conditions	0000 to 1111					RO	Bin	ND	NC	PT	PS

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination
IP	IP address	Mac	Mac address	Date	Date parameter	Time	Time parameter	SMP	Slot,menu,parameter	Chr	Character parameter	Ver	Version number

Table 11-5 Defaults for Pr 10.030, Pr 10.031 and Pr 10.061

Drive size	Pr 10.030	Pr 10.031	Pr 10.061
3	50 W	3.3 s	75 Ω
4 and 5	100 W	2.0 s	38 Ω
All other ratings and frame sizes	0.000		0.00

11.11 Menu 11: General drive set-up

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
11.018	Status Mode Parameter 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
11.019	Status Mode Parameter 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
11.020	Reset Serial Communications	Off (0) or On (1)					RW	Bit	ND	NC		
11.021	Parameter 00.030 Scaling	0.000 to 10.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
11.022	Parameter Displayed At Power-up	0.000 to 0.080		0.010			RW	Num				US
11.023	Serial Address	1 to 247		1			RW	Num				US
11.024	Serial Mode	8 2 NP (0), 8 1 NP (1), 8 1 EP (2), 8 1 OP (3), 8 2 NP M (4), 8 1 NP M (5), 8 1 EP M (6), 8 1 OP M (7), 7 2 NP (8), 7 1 NP (9), 7 1 EP (10), 7 1 OP (11), 7 2 NP M (12), 7 1 NP M (13), 7 1 EP M (14), 7 1 OP M (15)		8 2 NP (0)			RW	Txt				US
11.025	Serial Baud Rate	300 (0), 600 (1), 1200 (2), 2400 (3), 4800 (4), 9600 (5), 19200 (6), 38400 (7), 57600 (8), 76800 (9), 115200 (10)		19200 (6)			RW	Txt				US
11.026	Minimum Comms Transmit Delay	0 to 250 ms		2 ms			RW	Num				US
11.027	Silent Period	0 to 250 ms		0 ms			RW	Num				US
11.028	Drive Derivative	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.029	Software Version	00.00.00.00 to 99.99.99.99					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.030	User Security Code	0 to 2147483647					RW	Num	ND	NC	PT	US
11.031	User Drive Mode	Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3)		Open-loop (1)	RFC-A (2)	RFC-S (3)	RW	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
11.033	Drive Rated Voltage	200 V (0), 400 V (1), 575 V (2), 690 V (3)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
11.034	Software Sub-version	0 to 99					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.035	Number Of Power Modules Test	-1 to 20		-1			RW	Num				US
11.036	NV Media Card File Previously Loaded	0 to 999		0			RO	Num		NC	PT	
11.037	NV Media Card File Number	0 to 999		0			RW	Num				
11.038	NV Media Card File Type	None (0), Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3), Regen (4), User Prog (5), Option App (6)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	
11.039	NV Media Card File Version	0 to 9999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.040	NV Media Card File Checksum	-2147483648 to 2147483647					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.042	Parameter Cloning	None (0), Read (1), Program (2), Auto (3), Boot (4)		None (0)			RW	Txt		NC		US
11.043	Load Defaults	None (0), Standard (1), US (2)					RW	Txt		NC		
11.044	User Security Status	Menu 0 (0), All Menus (1), Read-only Menu 0 (2), Read-only (3), Status Only (4), No Access (5)		Menu 0 (0)			RW	Txt	ND		PT	
11.046	Defaults Previously Loaded	0 to 2000					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	US
11.047	Onboard User Program: Enable	Stop (0) or Run (1)		Run (1)			RW	Txt				US
11.048	Onboard User Program: Status	-2147483648 to 2147483647					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.049	Onboard User Program: Programming Events	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.050	Onboard User Program: Freewheeling Tasks Per Second	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.051	Onboard User Program: Clock Task Time Used	0.0 to 100.0 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.052	Serial Number LS	000000000 to 999999999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.053	Serial Number MS	0 to 999999999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.054	Drive Date Code	0 to 65535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.055	Onboard User Program: Clock Task Scheduled Interval	0 to 262140 ms					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.056	Option Slot Identifiers	1234 (0), 1243 (1), 1324 (2), 1342 (3), 1423 (4), 1432 (5), 4123 (6), 3124 (7), 4132 (8), 2134 (9), 3142 (10), 2143 (11), 3412 (12), 4312 (13), 2413 (14), 4213 (15), 2314 (16), 3214 (17), 2341 (18), 2431 (19), 3241 (20), 3421 (21), 4231 (22), 4321 (23)		1234 (0)			RW	Txt			PT	
11.060	Maximum Rated Current	0.000 to 99999.999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.061	Full Scale Current Kc	0.000 to 99999.999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.063	Product Type	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.064	Product Identifier Characters	F300 (1295396912) to (2147483647)		F300			RO	Chr	ND	NC	PT	
11.065	Drive Rating And Configuration	00000000 to 999999999					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.066	Power Stage Identifier	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.067	Control Board Identifier	0.000 to 65.535					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.068	Internal I/O Identifier	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.069	Position Feedback Interface Identifier	0 to 255					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.070	Core Parameter Database Version	0.00 to 99.99					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
11.071	Number Of Power Modules Detected	0 to 20					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	US
11.072	NV Media Card Create Special File	0 to 1		0			RW	Num		NC		
11.073	NV Media Card Size	None (0), SMART Card (1), SD Card (2)					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.075	NV Media Card Read-only Flag	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
11.076	NV Media Card Warning Suppression Flag	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
11.077	NV Media Card File Required Version	0 to 9999					RW	Num	ND	NC	PT	
11.079	Drive Name Characters 1-4	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)	(0)			RW	Chr			PT	US
11.080	Drive Name Characters 5-8	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)	(0)			RW	Chr			PT	US
11.081	Drive Name Characters 9-12	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)	(0)			RW	Chr			PT	US
11.082	Drive Name Characters 13-16	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)	(0)			RW	Chr			PT	US
11.084	Drive Mode	Open-loop (1), RFC-A (2), RFC-S (3)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	US
11.085	Security Status	None (0), Read-only (1), Status-only (2), No Access (3)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
11.086	Menu Access Status	Menu 0 (0) or All Menus (1)					RO	Txt	ND	NC	PT	PS
11.090	Keypad Port Serial Address	1 to16		1			RW	Num				US
11.091	Product Identifier Characters 1	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)				RO	Chr	ND	NC	PT	
11.092	Product Identifier Characters 2	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)				RO	Chr	ND	NC	PT	
11.093	Product Identifier Characters 3	(-2147483648) to	(2147483647)				RO	Chr	ND	NC	PT	

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination
IP	IP address	Mac	Mac address	Date	Date parameter	Time	Time parameter	SMP	Slot,menu,parameter	Chr	Character parameter	Ver	Version number

11.12 Menu 12: Threshold detectors and variable selectors

Figure 11-19 Menu 12 logic diagram

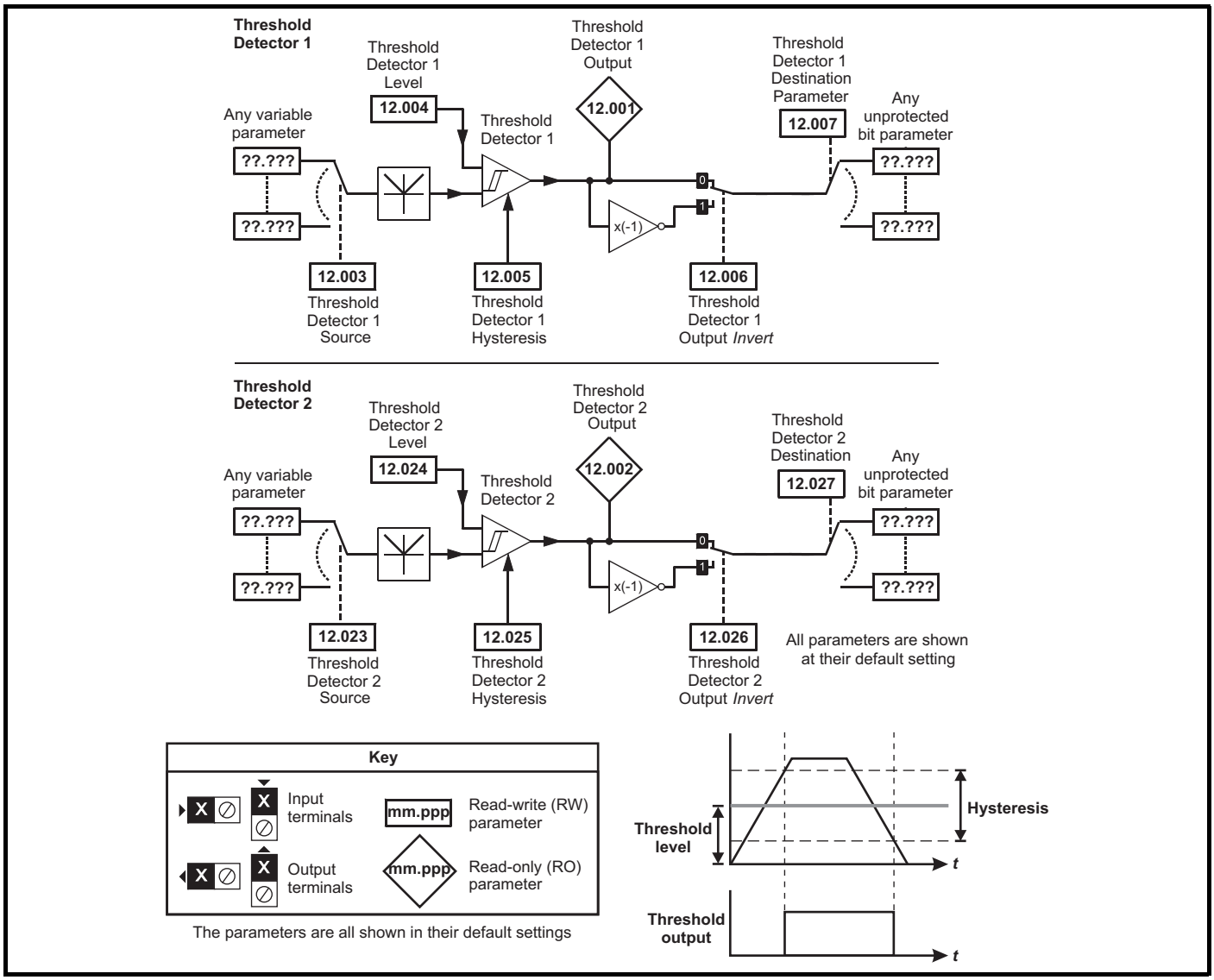
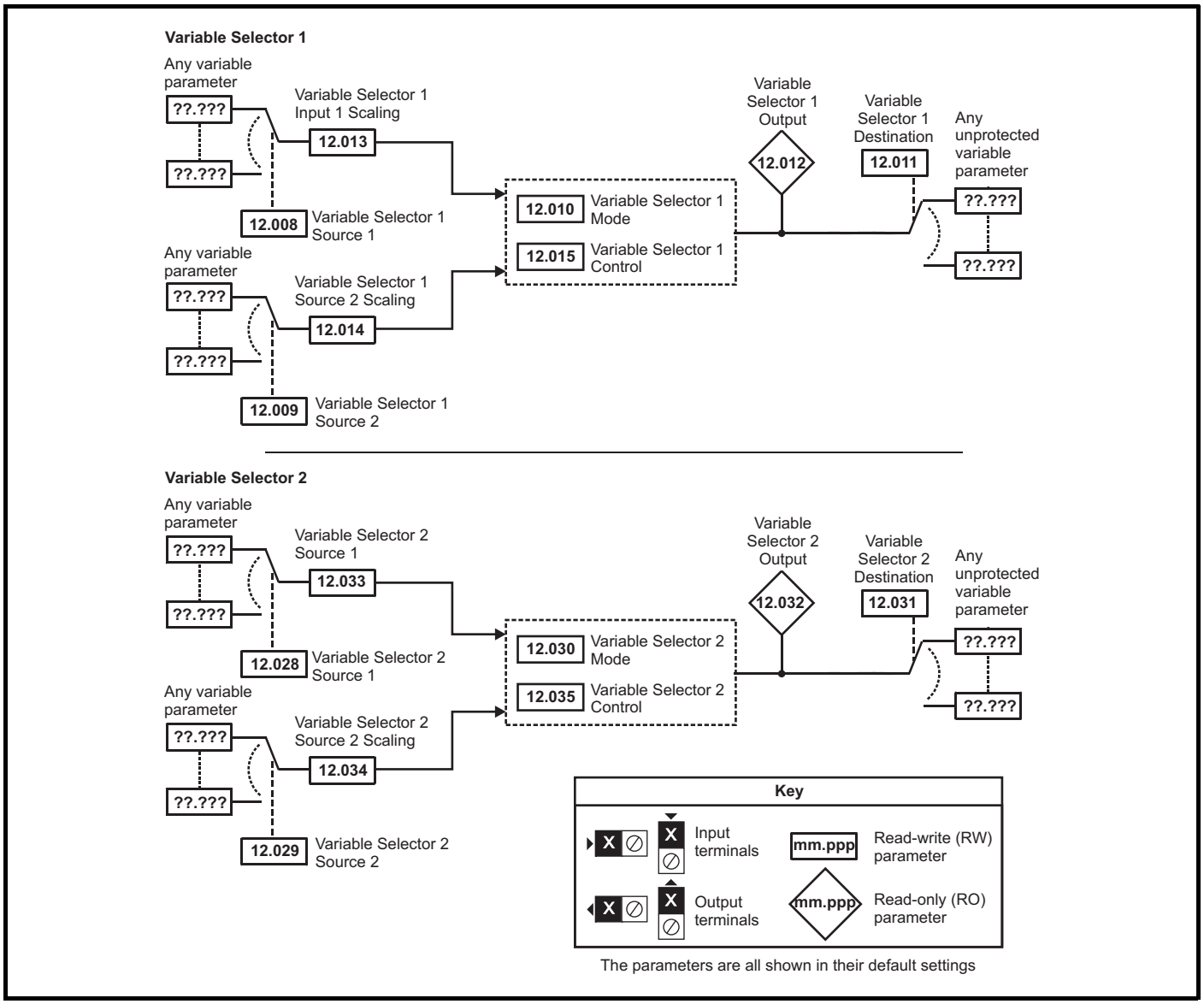


Figure 11-20 Menu 12 logic diagram (continued)



The parameters are all shown in their default settings

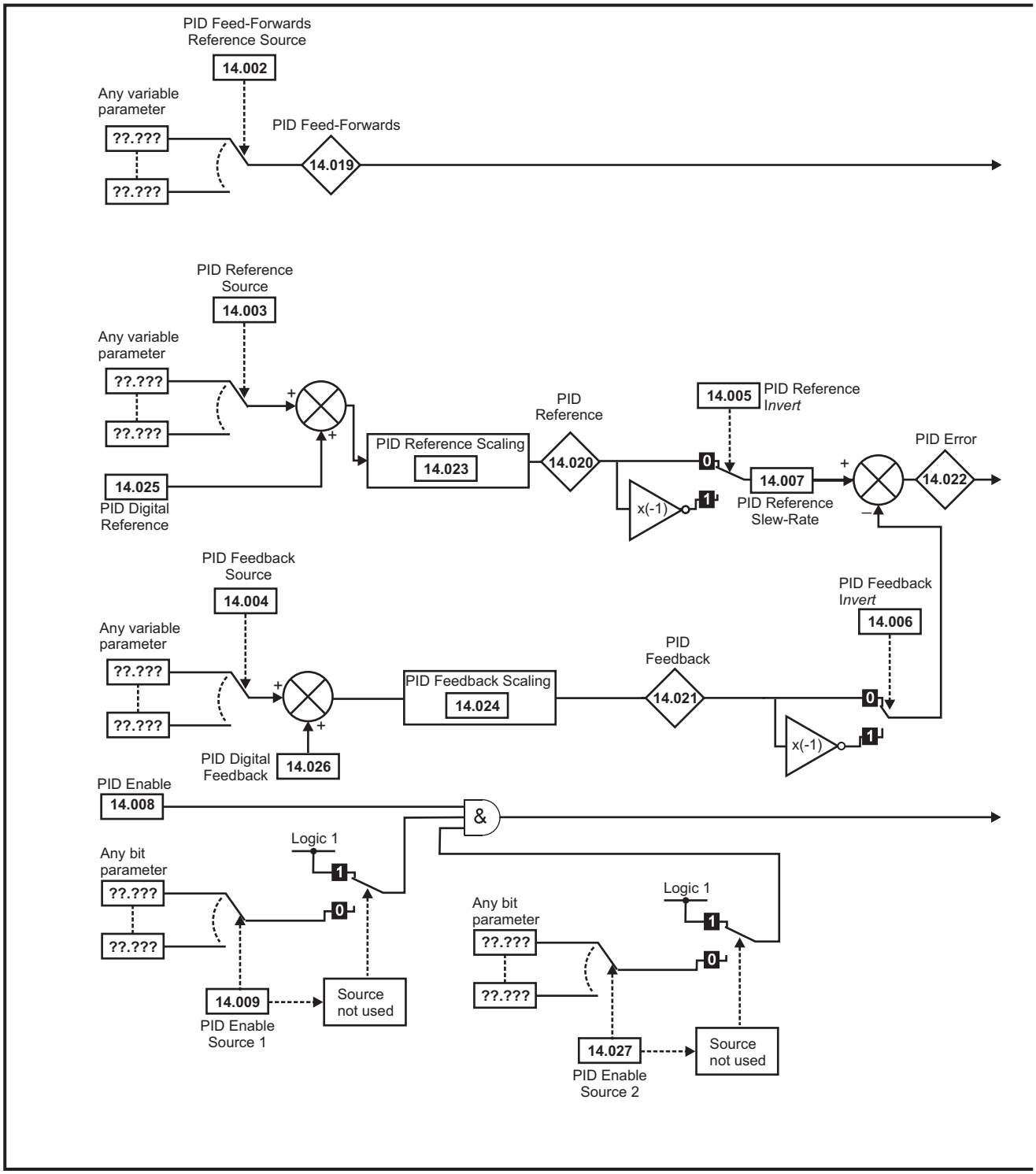
11.13 Menu 12: Threshold detectors and variable selectors

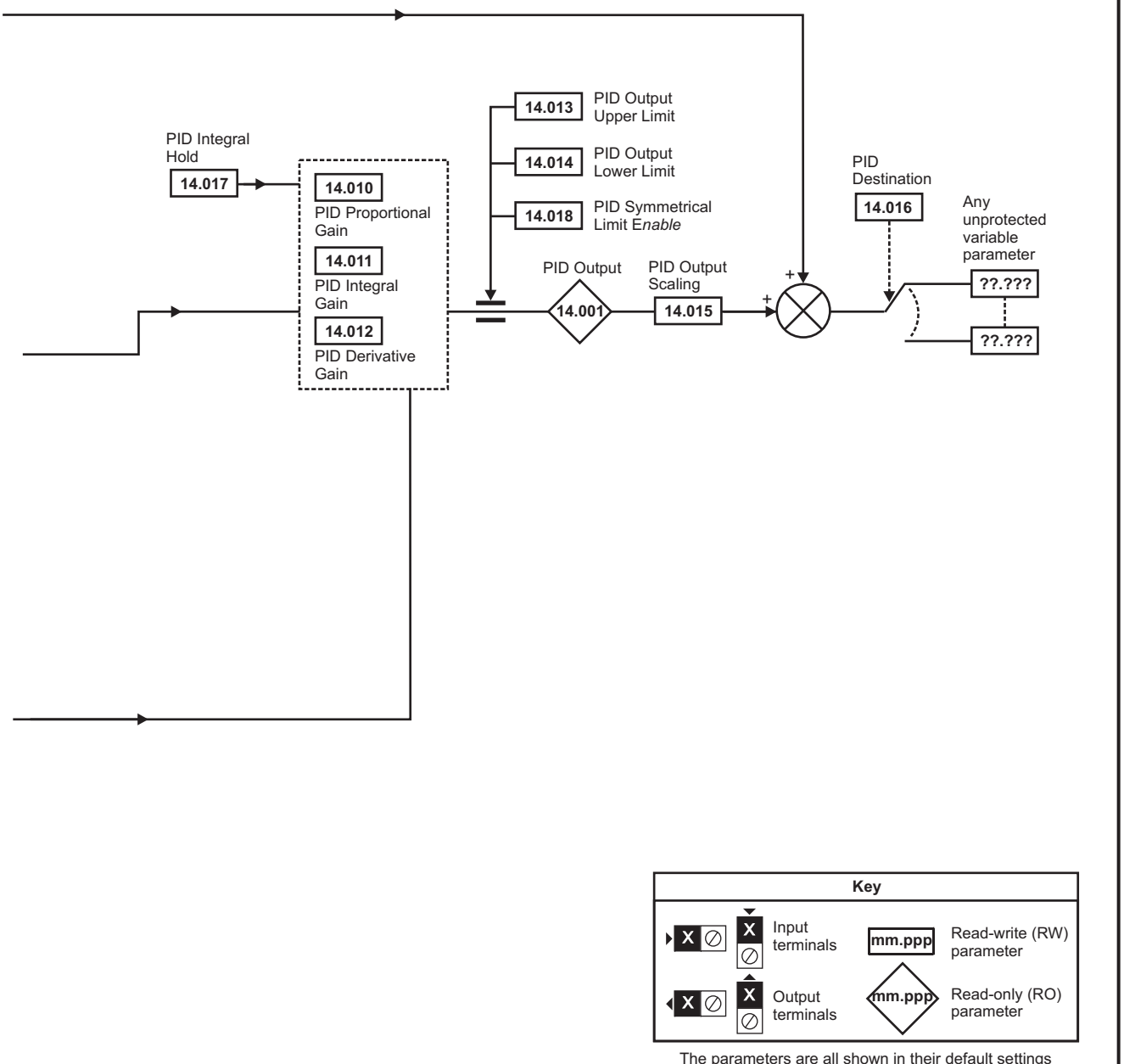
Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC- A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
12.001	Threshold Detector 1 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
12.002	Threshold Detector 2 Output	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
12.003	Threshold Detector 1 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
12.004	Threshold Detector 1 Level	0.00 to 100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
12.005	Threshold Detector 1 Hysteresis	0.00 to 25.00 %					RW	Num				US
12.006	Threshold Detector 1 Output Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
12.007	Threshold Detector 1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
12.008	Variable Selector 1 Source 1						RW	Num			PT	US
12.009	Variable Selector 1 Source 2						RW	Num			PT	US
12.010	Variable Selector 1 Mode	Input 1 (0), Input 2 (1), Add (2), Subtract (3), Multiply (4), Divide (5), Time Const (6), Ramp (7), Modulus (8), Powers (9), Sectional (10)		Input 1 (0)			RW	Txt				US
12.011	Variable Selector 1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
12.012	Variable Selector 1 Output	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
12.013	Variable Selector 1 Source 1 Scaling	±4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
12.014	Variable Selector 1 Source 2 Scaling	±4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
12.015	Variable Selector 1 Control	0.00 to 100.00		0.00			RW	Num				US
12.016	Variable Selector 1 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		On (1)			RW	Bit				US
12.023	Threshold Detector 2 Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
12.024	Threshold Detector 2 Level	0.00 to 100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
12.025	Threshold Detector 2 Hysteresis	0.00 to 25.00 %					RW	Num				US
12.026	Threshold Detector 2 Output Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
12.027	Threshold Detector 2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
12.028	Variable Selector 2 Source 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
12.029	Variable Selector 2 Source 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
12.030	Variable Selector 2 Mode	Input 1 (0), Input 2 (1), Add (2), Subtract (3), Multiply (4), Divide (5), Time Const (6), Ramp (7), Modulus (8), Powers (9), Sectional (10)		Input 1 (0)			RW	Txt				US
12.031	Variable Selector 2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
12.032	Variable Selector 2 Output	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
12.033	Variable Selector 2 Source 1 Scaling	±4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
12.034	Variable Selector 2 Source 2 Scaling	±4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
12.035	Variable Selector 2 Control	0.00 to 100.00		0.00			RW	Num				US
12.036	Variable Selector 2 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		On (1)			RW	Bit				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.14 Menu 14: User PID controller

Figure 11-21 Menu 14 Logic diagram





The parameters are all shown in their default settings

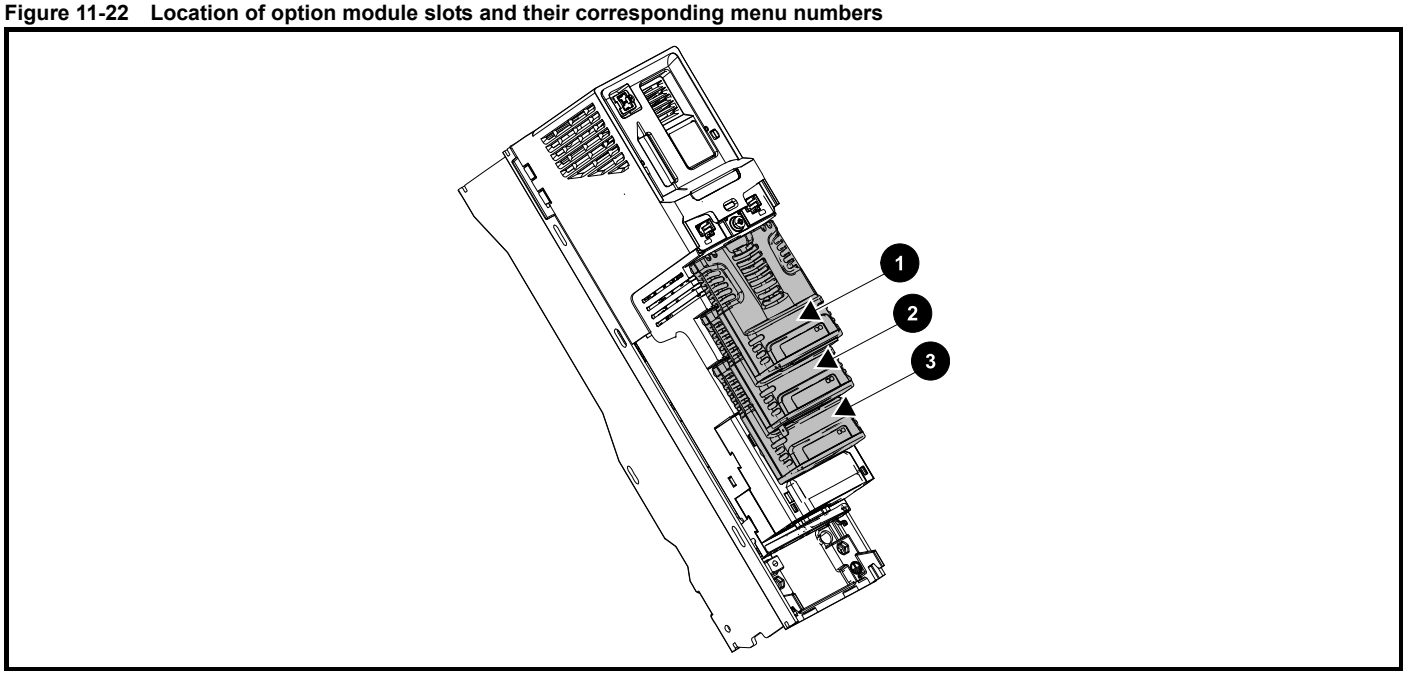
Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		Open-Loop	RFC-A / S	Open-Loop	RFC-A	RFC-S						
14.001	PID1 Output	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.002	PID1 Feed-forwards Reference Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.003	PID1 Reference Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.004	PID1 Feedback Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.005	PID1 Reference Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.006	PID1 Feedback Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.007	PID1 Reference Slew Rate	0.0 to 3200.0 s		0.0 s			RW	Num				US
14.008	PID1 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.009	PID1 Enable Source 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.010	PID1 Proportional Gain	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.011	PID1 Integral Gain	0.000 to 4.000		0.500			RW	Num				US
14.012	PID1 Differential Gain	0.000 to 4.000		0.000			RW	Num				US
14.013	PID1 Output Upper Limit	0.00 to 100.00 %		100.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.014	PID1 Output Lower Limit	±100.00 %		-100.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.015	PID1 Output Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.016	PID1 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
14.017	PID1 Integral Hold	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				
14.018	PID1 Symmetrical Limit Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.019	PID1 Feed-forwards Reference	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.020	PID1 Reference	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.021	PID1 Feedback	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.022	PID1 Error	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.023	PID1 Reference Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.024	PID1 Feedback Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.025	PID1 Digital Reference	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.026	PID1 Digital Feedback	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.027	PID1 Enable Source 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.028	PID1 Pre-sleep Boost Level	0.00 to 100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.029	PID1 Maximum Boost Time	0.0 to 250.0 s		0.0 s			RW	Num				US
14.030	PID1 Pre-sleep Boost Level Enable	Off (0) or On (1)					RO	Bit	ND	NC	PT	
14.031	PID2 Output	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.032	PID2 Feed-forwards Reference Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.033	PID2 Reference Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.034	PID2 Feedback Source	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.035	PID2 Reference Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.036	PID2 Feedback Invert	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.037	PID2 Reference Slew Rate Limit	0.0 to 3200.0 s		0.0 s			RW	Num				US
14.038	PID2 Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.039	PID2 Enable Source 1	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.040	PID2 Proportional Gain	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.041	PID2 Integral Gain	0.000 to 4.000		0.500			RW	Num				US
14.042	PID2 Differential Gain	0.000 to 4.000		0.000			RW	Num				US
14.043	PID2 Output Upper Limit	0.00 to 100.00 %		100.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.044	PID2 Output Lower Limit	±100.00 %		-100.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.045	PID2 Output Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.046	PID2 Destination	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num	DE		PT	US
14.047	PID2 Integral Hold	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				
14.048	PID2 Symmetrical Limit Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.049	PID2 Feed-forwards Reference	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.050	PID2 Reference	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.051	PID2 Feedback	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.052	PID2 Error	±100.00 %					RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
14.053	PID2 Reference Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.054	PID2 Feedback Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US
14.055	PID2 Digital Reference	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.056	PID2 Digital Feedback	±100.00 %		0.00 %			RW	Num				US
14.057	PID2 Enable Source 2	0.000 to 59.999		0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
14.058	PID1 Feedback Output Scaling	0.000 to 4.000		1.000			RW	Num				US

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		Open-Loop	RFC-A / S	Open-Loop	RFC-A	RFC-S						
14.059	PID1 Mode Selector	Fbk1 (0), Fbk2 (1), Fbk1 + Fbk2 (2), Min Fbk (3), Max Fbk (4), Av Fbk (5), Min Error (6), Max Error (7)		Fbk1 (0)			RW	Txt				US
14.060	PID1 Feedback Square Root Enable 1	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.061	PID2 Feedback Square Root Enable	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
14.062	PID1 Feedback Square Root Enable 2	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.15 Menus 15, 16 and 17: Option module set-up

Figure 11-22 Location of option module slots and their corresponding menu numbers



1. Solutions Module Slot 1 - Menu 15
2. Solutions Module Slot 2 - Menu 16
3. Solutions Module Slot 3 - Menu 17

11.15.1 Parameters common to all categories

Parameter		Range(⇳)	Default(⇨)	Type					
mm.001	Module ID	0 to 65535		RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
mm.002	Software Version	00.00.00 to 99.99.99		RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
mm.003	Hardware Version	0.00 to 99.99		RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
mm.004	Serial Number LS	0 to 99999999		RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	
mm.005	Serial Number MS			RO	Num	ND	NC	PT	

The option module ID indicates the type of module that is installed in the corresponding slot. See the relevant option module user guide for more information regarding the module.

Option module ID	Module	Category
0	No module installed	
209	SI-I/O	Automation (I/O Expansion)
443	SI-PROFIBUS	Fieldbus
447	SI-DeviceNet	
448	SI-CANopen	
433	SI-Ethernet	
432	SI-PROFINET RT	

11.16 Menu 18: Application menu 1

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
18.001	Application Menu 1 Power-down Save Integer	-32768 to 32767		0			RW	Num				PS
18.002 to 18.010	Application Menu 1 Read-only Integer	-32768 to 32767					RO	Num	ND	NC		US
18.011 to 18.030	Application Menu 1 Read-write Integer	-32768 to 32767		0			RW	Num				US
18.031 to 18.050	Application Menu 1 Read-write bit	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
18.051 to 18.054	Application Menu 1 Power-down Save long Integer	-2147483648 to 2147483647		0			RW	Num				PS

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.17 Menu 19: Application menu 2

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
19.001	Application Menu 2 Power-down Save Integer	-32768 to 32767		0			RW	Num				PS
19.002 to 19.010	Application Menu 2 Read-only Integer	-32768 to 32767					RO	Num	ND	NC		US
19.011 to 19.030	Application Menu 2 Read-write Integer	-32768 to 32767		0			RW	Num				US
19.031 to 19.050	Application Menu 2 Read-write bit	Off (0) or On (1)		Off (0)			RW	Bit				US
19.051 to 19.054	Application Menu 2 Power-down Save long Integer	-2147483648 to 2147483647		0			RW	Num				PS

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.18 Menu 20: Application menu 3

Parameter		Range(⇳)		Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A / S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
20.001 to 20.020	Application Menu 3 Read-write Integer	-32768 to 32767		0			RW	Num				
20.021 to 20.040	Application Menu 3 Read-write Long Integer	-2147483648 to 2147483647		0			RW	Num				

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.19 Menu 22: Additional Menu 0 set-up

Parameter		Range(⇳)			Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
22.001	Parameter 00.001 Set-up					1.007		RW	Num			PT	US
22.002	Parameter 00.002 Set-up					1.006		RW	Num			PT	US
22.003	Parameter 00.003 Set-up					2.011		RW	Num			PT	US
22.004	Parameter 00.004 Set-up					2.021		RW	Num			PT	US
22.005	Parameter 00.005 Set-up					1.014		RW	Num			PT	US
22.006	Parameter 00.006 Set-up					4.007		RW	Num			PT	US
22.007	Parameter 00.007 Set-up				5.014	3.010		RW	Num			PT	US
22.008	Parameter 00.008 Set-up				5.015	3.011		RW	Num			PT	US
22.009	Parameter 00.009 Set-up				5.013	3.012		RW	Num			PT	US
22.010	Parameter 00.010 Set-up				5.004	3.002		RW	Num			PT	US
22.011	Parameter 00.011 Set-up				5.001		3.029	RW	Num			PT	US
22.012	Parameter 00.012 Set-up					4.001		RW	Num			PT	US
22.013	Parameter 00.013 Set-up					4.002		RW	Num			PT	US
22.014	Parameter 00.014 Set-up					4.011		RW	Num			PT	US
22.015	Parameter 00.015 Set-up					2.004		RW	Num			PT	US
22.016	Parameter 00.016 Set-up				0.000	2.002		RW	Num			PT	US
22.017	Parameter 00.017 Set-up				8.026	4.012		RW	Num			PT	US
22.018	Parameter 00.018 Set-up					0.000		RW	Num			PT	US
22.019	Parameter 00.019 Set-up					7.007		RW	Num			PT	US
22.020	Parameter 00.020 Set-up					7.010		RW	Num			PT	US
22.021	Parameter 00.021 Set-up					7.011		RW	Num			PT	US
22.022	Parameter 00.022 Set-up					1.010		RW	Num			PT	US
22.023	Parameter 00.023 Set-up					1.005		RW	Num			PT	US
22.024	Parameter 00.024 Set-up					1.021		RW	Num			PT	US
22.025	Parameter 00.025 Set-up					1.022		RW	Num			PT	US
22.026	Parameter 00.026 Set-up				1.023	3.008		RW	Num			PT	US
22.027	Parameter 00.027 Set-up				1.024	3.034		RW	Num			PT	US
22.028	Parameter 00.028 Set-up					6.013		RW	Num			PT	US
22.029	Parameter 00.029 Set-up		0.000 to 59.999			11.036		RW	Num			PT	US
22.030	Parameter 00.030 Set-up					11.042		RW	Num			PT	US
22.031	Parameter 00.031 Set-up					11.033		RW	Num			PT	US
22.032	Parameter 00.032 Set-up					11.032		RW	Num			PT	US
22.033	Parameter 00.033 Set-up				6.009	5.016	0.000	RW	Num			PT	US
22.034	Parameter 00.034 Set-up					11.030		RW	Num			PT	US
22.035	Parameter 00.035 Set-up					11.024		RW	Num			PT	US
22.036	Parameter 00.036 Set-up					11.025		RW	Num			PT	US
22.037	Parameter 00.037 Set-up					11.023		RW	Num			PT	US
22.038	Parameter 00.038 Set-up					4.013		RW	Num			PT	US
22.039	Parameter 00.039 Set-up					4.014		RW	Num			PT	US
22.040	Parameter 00.040 Set-up					5.012		RW	Num			PT	US
22.041	Parameter 00.041 Set-up					5.018		RW	Num			PT	US
22.042	Parameter 00.042 Set-up					5.011		RW	Num			PT	US
22.043	Parameter 00.043 Set-up				5.010		0.000	RW	Num			PT	US
22.044	Parameter 00.044 Set-up					5.009		RW	Num			PT	US
22.045	Parameter 00.045 Set-up					5.008		RW	Num			PT	US
22.046	Parameter 00.046 Set-up					5.007		RW	Num			PT	US
22.047	Parameter 00.047 Set-up				5.006		5.033	RW	Num			PT	US
22.048	Parameter 00.048 Set-up					11.031		RW	Num			PT	US
22.049	Parameter 00.049 Set-up					11.044		RW	Num			PT	US
22.050	Parameter 00.050 Set-up					11.029		RW	Num			PT	US
22.051	Parameter 00.051 Set-up					10.037		RW	Num			PT	US
22.052	Parameter 00.052 Set-up					11.020		RW	Num			PT	US
22.053	Parameter 00.053 Set-up					4.015		RW	Num			PT	US
22.054	Parameter 00.054 Set-up				0.000		5.064	RW	Num			PT	US
22.055	Parameter 00.055 Set-up				0.000		5.071	RW	Num			PT	US
22.056	Parameter 00.056 Set-up				0.000		5.072	RW	Num			PT	US
22.057	Parameter 00.057 Set-up				0.000		5.075	RW	Num			PT	US

Parameter		Range(⇳)			Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
22.058	Parameter 00.058 Set-up	0.000 to 59.999			0.000		5.077	RW	Num			PT	US
22.059	Parameter 00.059 Set-up				0.000		5.078	RW	Num			PT	US
22.060	Parameter 00.060 Set-up				0.000		5.082	RW	Num			PT	US
22.061	Parameter 00.061 Set-up				0.000		5.084	RW	Num			PT	US
22.062	Parameter 00.062 Set-up				0.000			RW	Num			PT	US
22.063	Parameter 00.063 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.064	Parameter 00.064 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.065	Parameter 00.065 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.066	Parameter 00.066 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.067	Parameter 00.067 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.068	Parameter 00.068 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.069	Parameter 00.069 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.070	Parameter 00.070 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.071	Parameter 00.071 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.072	Parameter 00.072 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.073	Parameter 00.073 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.074	Parameter 00.074 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.075	Parameter 00.075 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.076	Parameter 00.076 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.077	Parameter 00.077 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.078	Parameter 00.078 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.079	Parameter 00.079 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US
22.080	Parameter 00.080 Set-up							RW	Num			PT	US

RW	Read / Write	RO	Read only	Num	Number parameter	Bit	Bit parameter	Txt	Text string	Bin	Binary parameter	FI	Filtered
ND	No default value	NC	Not copied	PT	Protected parameter	RA	Rating dependent	US	User save	PS	Power-down save	DE	Destination

11.20 Menu 29: Dyneo LSRPM motor configuration

Parameter		Range(⇳)			Default(⇨)			Type					
		OL	RFC-A	RFC-S	OL	RFC-A	RFC-S						
29.199	Low Speed Acceleration Ramp Control Enable			Off (0) or On (1)			Off (0)	RW	Num				
29.200	LSRPM Motor Set-up Enable			Off (0) or On (1)			On (1)	RW	BU				

12 Technical data

12.1 Drive technical data

12.1.1 Power and current ratings (Derating for switching frequency and temperature)

For a full explanation of Normal Duty refer to Chapter 2.3 *Ratings* on page 11.

Table 12-1 Maximum permissible continuous output current @ 40 °C (104 °F) ambient

Model	Normal Duty								
	Nominal rating		Maximum permissible continuous output current (A) for the following switching frequencies						
	kW	hp	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V									
03200066	1.1	1.5	6.6						
03200080	1.5	2.0	8.0						
03200110	2.2	3.0	11						10.2
03200127	3.0	3.0	12.7					12.1	10.2
04200180	4.0	5.0	18						
04200250	5.5	7.5	25					24	22
05200300	7.5	10	30					27.6	23.7
06200500	11	15	50					42.3	24.5
06200580	15	20	58				53	42.3	32.5
07200750	18.5	25	75					74.3	59.7
07200940	22	30	94					74.3	59.7
07201170	30	40	117			114	96	74.3	59.7
08201490	37	50	149				146	125.2	93
08201800	45	60	180			160.2	148.8	126	93
09202160	55	75	216				184	128	93
09202660	75	100	266		258	218	184	128	93
10203250	90	125	325			313	266	194	144
10203600	110	150	360			313	266	194	144
400 V									
03400034	1.1	1.5	3.4						
03400045	1.5	2.0	4.5						
03400062	2.2	3.0	6.2						5.0
03400077	3.0	5.0	7.7					6.2	5.0
03400104	4.0	5.0	10.4					7.6	5.7
03400123	5.5	7.5	12.3				10.5	7.6	5.8
04400185	7.5	10	18.5					14.6	11.1
04400240	11	15	24			21.8	19.2	14.6	11.2
05400300	15	20	30			25.8	22.2	17.1	13.5
06400380	18.5	25	38					31	24.3
06400480	22	30	48				41	31	24.5
06400630	30	40	63		57	48	41	31	24.5
07400790	37	50	79					63	53.6
07400940	45	60	94				80.6	63	53.6
07401120	55	75	112			95.2	80.6	63	53.8
08401550	75	100	155				132	98	77
08401840	90	125	184			169	142	106.7	77

Model	Normal Duty								
	Nominal rating		Maximum permissible continuous output current (A) for the following switching frequencies						
	kW	hp	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
09402210	110	150	221			192	159	108	77
09402660	132	200	266	255	231	192	160	109	77
10403200	160	250	320			285	238	173	124
10403610	200	300	361		339	285	238	173	126
11404370	225	350	437		415	336	272		
11404870	250	400	487	460	415	336	272		
11405070	280	400	507	460	415	336	272		
575 V									
05500039	2.2	3.0	3.9						
05500061	4.0	5.0	6.1						
05500100	5.5	7.5	10						
06500120	7.5	10.0	12						
06500170	11.0	15.0	17						14.8
06500220	15.0	20.0	22					20.5	15
06500270	18.5	25.0	27				26.2	20	16
06500340	22.0	30.0	34			31	26.2	20	16.8
06500430	30.0	40.0	43		39.6	31	26.2	20	16.8
07500530	45	50	53			51.8	40.2	27.7	21.2
07500730	55	60	73		71.5	51.8	40.2	27.7	21.2
08500860	75	75	86				73.1	49.7	37.8
08501080	90	100	108			91.8	73.1	49.7	37.8
09501250	110	125	125				101	71	54
09501500	110	150	150			126	100	70	54
10502000	130	200	200		168	126	100	70	54
11502480	185	250	248		205	TBC	TBC		
11502880	225	300	288	252	209	TBC	TBC		
11503150	250	350	315	252	209	TBC	TBC		
690 V									
07600230	18.5	25	23						21.2
07600300	22	30	30					27.9	21.2
07600360	30	40	36					28.1	21.2
07600460	37	50	46				40.5	28.1	21.2
07600520	45	60	52			51.5	40.6	28.1	21.2
07600730	55	75	73		71.5	51.8	40.6	28.1	21.2
08600860	75	100	86				72.2	49.7	37.8
08601080	90	125	108			91.8	72.4	49.7	37.8
09601250	110	150	125				100	71	54
09601550	132	175	155			126	100	71	54
10601720	160	200	172		169	126	100	71	55
10601970	185	250	197			154	114	75	55
11602250	200	250	225		209	TBC	TBC		
11602750	250	300	275	252	209	TBC	TBC		
11603050	280	400	305	252	209	TBC	TBC		

Table 12-2 Maximum permissible continuous output current @ 40 °C (104 °F) ambient with high IP insert installed

Model	Normal Duty						
	Maximum permissible continuous output current (A) for the following switching frequencies						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V							
03200066	6.6						
03200080	8.0						
03200110	11.0						9.7
03200127	12.3	11.9	11.1	10.0	9.0	6.4	4.7
04200180	14.5			13.5	12.2	10.5	9.6
04200250	14.5			13.5	12.2	10.5	9.6
05200300	25.5	25.2	24.9	24.3	23.7	22.5	21.6
400 V							
03400034	3.4						3.3
03400045	4.5			4.4	4.1	3.6	3.3
03400062	5.1	5.0	4.7	4.4	4.1	3.6	3.3
03400077	7.7		7.4	6.7	6.2	5.7	5.0
03400104	8.3			7.6	6.9	6.0	5.2
03400123	8.3			7.6	6.9	6.0	5.2
04400185	8.6					8.4	6.9
04400240	8.6					8.4	6.9
05400300	17.1	15.6	14.4	12.6	11.4	9.6	8.7
575 V							
05500039	3.9						
05500061	6.1						
05500100	10.0						

Table 12-3 Maximum permissible continuous output current @ 50 °C (122 °F)

Model	Normal Duty						
	Maximum permissible continuous output current (A) for the following switching frequencies						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V							
03200066	6.6						
03200080	8.0						
03200110	11					10.5	9.1
03200127	12.7		12.6	12.2	11.7	10.5	9.1
04200180	18						
04200250	22.2						20.2
05200300	30				29.7	25.2	21.6
06200500	50				49	38	30
06200580	58			56	49	38	30.2
07200750	75					59.7	48.8
07200940	94			92.1	80	59.7	48.9
07201170	117		112	92.4	80	59.7	49.1
08201490	149			147	133	113	84
08201800	180		167	148	133	113	84
09202160	216			197	168	117	84
09202660	253	237	221	197	168	117	85
10203250	325	320	302	266	241	176	130
10203600	346	320	302	266	241	176	130
400 V							
03400034	3.4						
03400045	4.5						
03400062	6.2				5.9	5.4	4.4
03400077	7.6	7.2	6.9	6.4	5.9	5.4	4.4
03400104	10.4			9.3	8.5	6.9	5.1
03400123	11.9	11.2	10.5	9.3	8.5	6.9	5.2
04400185	18	17.5	17	16.3	15.8	12.2	9.3
04400240	18	17.5	17	16.3	15.8	12.2	9.3
05400300	25.5			23.6	20.4	15.6	12.3
06400380	38				37	28	21.4
06400480	48			43	36.5	27.4	21.4
06400630	63	58	52	43	37	28	21.4
07400790	79				73.5	57.7	49
07400940	94			86.5	73.3	58.3	49
07401120	112		109	87.4	72.8	58.3	49.3
08401550	155			146	123	93	69
08401840	184		180	146	123	93.8	69
09402210	221		213	175	144	97	69
09402660	253	237	213	176	144	98	69
10403200	320		300	259	217	154	112
10403610	343	321	300	260	217	155	112

Model	Normal Duty						
	Maximum permissible continuous output current (A) for the following switching frequencies						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
11404370	437	415	374	298	240		
11404870	462	415	374	298	240		
11405070	462	415	374	298	240		
575 V							
05500039	3.9						
05500061	6.1						
05500100	10						
06500120	12						
06500170	17						13.4
06500220	22					17.8	13.4
06500270	27				23.5	17.8	15
06500340	34			28.2	23.5	18	15
06500430	43.0	41.7	36.1	28	23.7	18	15
07500530	53			46.7	35.8	24.8	19
07500730	73		65	46.7	35.8	24.8	19
08500860	86			76.7	64.5	44.3	31.3
08501080	104	97.2	90.7	76.7	64.8	44.3	31.3
09501250	125			114	90	62	48
09501500	150			114	90	62	48
10502000	200	184	154	114	90	62	48
11502480	226		189	TBC	TBC		
11502880	262	229	189	TBC	TBC		
11503150	286	229	189	TBC	TBC		
690 V							
07600230	23						19
07600300	30					24.8	19
07600360	36				35.8	24.8	19
07600460	46				35.8	24.8	19
07600520	52			46.7	35.8	25	19
07600730	73		65	46.7	35.8	25	19
08600860	86			76.7	64.5	44.3	31.3
08601080	104	97.2	90.7	76.7	64.8	44.3	31.3
09601250	125			114	90	62	48
09601550	155		153	113	89	62	48
10601720	172		153	114	89	62	48
10601970	197		195	134	102	67	48
11602250	205		189	TBC	TBC		
11602750	250	229	189	TBC	TBC		
11603050	286	229	189	TBC	TBC		

NOTE

55 ° C ratings are available for frame sizes 3 to 10 on request.

12.1.2 Power dissipation

Table 12-4 Losses @ 40° C (104° F) ambient

Model	Normal Duty								
	Nominal rating		Drive losses (W) taking into account any current derating for the given conditions						
	kW	hp	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V									
03200066	1.1	1.5		93	95	99	104	113	122
03200080	1.5	2		100	102	107	113	122	133
03200110	2.2	3		123	126	133	139	151	146
03200127	3	3		136	141	149	158	168	157
04200180	4	5		180	187	201	216	244	273
04200250	5.5	7.5		239	248	266	284	308	314
05200300	7.5	10		291	302	324	344	356	342
06200500	11	15		394	413	452	490	480	
06200580	15	20		463	484	528	522	481	
07200750	18.5	25		570	597	650	703		
07200940	22	30		718	751	815	881		
07201170	30	40		911	951	1004	911		
08201490	37	50		1433	1536	1765	1943		
08201800	45	60		1753	1894	1914	1985		
09202160	55	75	1889	2031	2174	2458	2348	2112	2006
09202660	75	100	2375	2554	2625	2482	2348	2108	2009
10203250	90	125	2478	2672	2867	3123	2952	2701	2554
10203600	110	150	2802	3016	3230	3126	2957	2706	2554
400 V									
03400034	1.1	1.5		80	84	94	103	123	141
03400045	1.5	2		88	92	104	115	137	160
03400062	2.2	3		104	112	125	139	167	157
03400077	3	5		114	122	137	153	149	147
03400104	4	5		145	158	186	212	201	197
03400123	5	7.5		163	179	209	208	201	200
04400185	7.5	10		225	244	283	322	325	310
04400240	11	15		283	307	325	329	325	315
05400300	15	20		324	353	356	355	359	362
06400380	18.5	25		417	456	532	613	652	645
06400480	22	30		515	561	657	651	646	650
06400630	30	40		656	659	650	646	643	
07400790	37	50		830	907	1062	1218		
07400940	45	60		999	1088	1264	1241		
07401120	55	75		1152	1247	1218	1170		
08401550	75	100		1652	1817	2154	2121		
08401840	90	125		2004	2191	2333	2279		
09402210	110	150	2286	2565	2844	2966	2917	2807	2815
09402660	132	200	2806	2998	2984	2955	2925	2821	2811
10403200	160	250	3210	3582	3954	4148	4034	3939	3843
10406100	200	300	3703	4121	4226	4154	4038	3947	3874

Model	Normal Duty								
	Nominal rating		Drive losses (W) taking into account any current derating for the given conditions						
	kW	hp	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
11404370	225	350	4138	4482	4615	4350	4153		
11404870	250	400	4690	4750	4615	4350	4153		
11405070	280	400	4962	4793	4658	4394	4196		
575 V									
05500039	2.2	3		92	102	121	142		
05500061	4	5		135	150	180	209		
05500100	5.5	7.5		194	215	260	302		
06500120	7.5	10		215	239	287	334		
06500170	11	15		284	315	376	438		
06500220	15	20		362	399	484	569		
06500270	18.5	25		448	505	596	682		
06500340	22	30		623	712	810	822		
06500430	30	40		798	836	813	823		
07500530	45	50		1004	1139	1358	1262		
07500730	55	60		1248	1375	1209	1122		
08500860	75	75		1861	2180	2814	2982		
08501080	90	100		2374	2753	2947	2963		
09501250	110	125	1595	1865	2135	2675	2644	2687	2831
09501500	110	150	1933	2256	2580	2696	2616	2654	2831
10502000	130	200	2692	3137	2923	2696	2616	2654	2831
11502480	185	250	3126	3569	3473	3237	3291		
11502880	225	300	3661	3627	3473	3237	3291		
11503150	250	350	4081	3671	3517	3281	3334		
690 V									
07600230	18.5	25		428	491	617	743		
07600300	22	30		551	631	791	952		
07600360	30	40		660	754	941	1129		
07600460	37	50		854	971	1206	1271		
07600520	45	60		985	1117	1350	1275		
07600730	55	75		1248	1375	1209	1122		
08600860	75	100		1861	2180	2814	2945		
08601080	90	125		2374	2753	2947	2935		
09601250	110	150	1730	2065	2400	3070	3058	3215	3434
09601550	132	175	2160	2573	2986	3083	3058	3216	3443
10601720	160	200	2420	2882	3270	3083	3052	3192	3472
10601970	185	250	2614	3132	3649	3667	3495	3633	3993
11602250	200	250	3012	3520	3843	3778	3881		
11602750	250	300	3704	3941	3843	3778	3881		
11603050	280	400	4184	3985	3886	3821	3925		

Table 12-5 Losses @ 40°C (104° F) ambient with high IP insert installed

Model	Normal Duty						
	Drive losses (W) taking into consideration any current derating for the given conditions						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V							
03200066		93	95	99	104	113	122
03200080		100	102	107	113	122	133
03200110		123	126	133	140	158	157
03200127		128	124	122	118	98	84
04200180		145	151	151	146	142	146
04200250		215	205	194	189	187	199
5200300		244	249	262	274	298	328
400 V							
03400034		80	84	94	103	123	137
03400045		88	92	102	105	110	134
03400062		84	85	89	92	109	134
03400077		114	117	122	135	172	203
03400104		118	134	155	173	221	267
03400123		118	134	155	173	221	267
04400185		105	114	132	153	197	207
04400240		101	111	131	152	197	207
05400300		170	173	182	194	223	268
575 V							
05500039							
05500061							
05500100							

Table 12-6 Losses @ 50° C (122° F) ambient

Model	Normal Duty						
	Drive losses (W) taking into account any current derating for the given conditions						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
200 V							
03200066		93	95	99	104	113	122
03200080		100	102	107	113	122	133
03200110		123	126	133	139	144	139
03200127		136	140	143	147	151	150
04200180		180	187	201	216	253	297
04200250		214	223	244	265	312	334
05200300		292	306	331	357	357	357
06200500		394	413	452	481	434	
06200580		463	484	509	483	437	
07200750		570	597	650	703		
07200940		718	751	799	750		
07201170		898	898	805	751		
08201490		1433	1536	1741	1770		
08201800		1737	1740	1759	1771		
09202160	1889	2031	2174	2240	2172	1970	1889
09202660	2241	2239	2223	2243	2161	1975	1900
10203250	2478	2625	2641	2625	2671	2490	2379
10203600	2666	2629	2643	2629	2678	2495	2374
400 V							
03400034		80	84	118	103	123	141
03400045		88	92	104	115	137	160
03400062		104	112	125	132	146	155
03400077		106	109	114	117	145	155
03400104		145	158	175	194	225	225
03400123		152	160	175	194	225	230
04400185		213	227	262	300	323	325
04400240		212	227	262	300	318	321
05400300		288	323	368	384	417	
06400380		417	456	536	607	609	597
06400480		515	561	597	595	601	614
06400630		613	600	593	601	613	
07400790		830	907	1062	1141		
07400940		999	1087	1163	1138		
07401120		1136	1200	1118	1074		
08401550		1652	1815	2016	1970		
08401840		1957	2114	1998	1979		
09402210	2286	2565	2738	2709	2675	2611	2638
09402660	2648	2760	2735	2723	2675	2632	2651
10403200	3210	3582	3681	3765	3700	3597	3591
10403610	3482	3598	3676	3776	3694	3625	3589

Model	Normal Duty						
	Drive losses (W) taking into account any current derating for the given conditions						
	2 kHz	3 kHz	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
11404370	4138	4236	4134	3834	3749		
11404870	4413	4236	4134	3834	3749		
11405070	4456	4276	4178	3938	3793		
575 V							
0550039		92	102	121	142		
05500061		135	150	180	209		
05500100		194	215	260	302		
06500120		215	239	287	334		
06500170		284	315	376	443		
06500220		362	399	482	575		
06500270		445	490	592	614		
06500340		623	712	739	751		
06500430		774	758	734	757		
07500530		988	1115	1225	1144		
07500730		1225	1228	1098	1030		
08500860		1850	2172	2540	2672		
08501080		2090	2291	2540	2684		
09501250	1595	1865	2135	2443	2392	2460	2674
95015000	1933	2256	2580	2448	2392	2447	2652
10502000	2692	2841	2654	2448	2392	2447	2652
11502480	3126	3297	3172	3076	3113		
11502880	3627	3297	3172	3076	3113		
11503150	3671	3341	3216	3120	3156		
690 V							
07600230		428	491	617	743		
07600300		551	631	791	958		
07600360		660	754	944	1144		
07600460		854	965	1206	1144		
07600520		969	1094	1225	1144		
07600730		1225	1228	1098	1030		
08600860		1850	2172	2540	2672		
08601080		2090	2291	2540	2684		
09601250	1730	2065	2400	2810	2803	2934	3223
09601550	2160	2573	2955	2796	2778	2934	3225
10601720	2420	2882	2947	2805	2789	2932	3229
10601970	2614	3132	3610	3243	3221	3420	3771
11602250	3012	3520	3512	3517	3647		
11602750	3704	3582	3512	3517	3647		
11603050	3899	3625	3556	3560	3691		

Table 12-7 Power losses from the front of the drive when through-panel mounted

Frame size	Power loss
3	≤ 50 W
4	≤ 75 W
5	≤ 100 W
6	≤ 100 W
7	≤ 204 W
8	≤ 347 W
9A/9E	≤ 480 W
10E/11E	≤ 480 W

12.1.3 Supply requirements

AC supply voltage:

200 V drive: 200 V to 240 V ±10 %
400 V drive: 380 V to 480 V ±10 %
575 V drive: 500 V to 575 V ±10 %
690 V drive: 500 V to 690 V ±10 %

Number of phases: 3

Maximum supply imbalance: 2 % negative phase sequence (equivalent to 3 % voltage imbalance between phases).

Frequency range: 45 to 66 Hz

For UL compliance only, the maximum supply symmetrical fault current must be limited to 100 kA.

12.1.4 Line reactors

Input line reactors reduce the risk of damage to the drive resulting from poor phase balance or severe disturbances on the supply network.

Where line reactors are to be used, reactance values of approximately 2 % are recommended. Higher values may be used if necessary, but may result in a loss of drive output (reduced torque at high speed) because of the voltage drop.

For all drive ratings, 2 % line reactors permit drives to be used with a supply unbalance of up to 3.5 % negative phase sequence (equivalent to 5 % voltage imbalance between phases).

Severe disturbances may be caused by the following factors, for example:

- Power factor correction equipment connected close to the drive.
- Large DC drives having no or inadequate line reactors connected to the supply.
- Across the line (DOL) started motor(s) connected to the supply such that when any of these motors are started, the voltage dip exceeds 20 %

Such disturbances may cause excessive peak currents to flow in the input power circuit of the drive. This may cause nuisance tripping, or in extreme cases, failure of the drive.

Drives of low power rating may also be susceptible to disturbance when connected to supplies with a high rated capacity.

Line reactors are particularly recommended for use with the following drive models when one of the above factors exists, or when the supply capacity exceeds 175 kVA:

03200066, 03200080, 03200110, 03200127

03400034, 03400045, 03400062, 03400077

Model sizes 03400104 to 07600730 have an internal DC choke and model sizes 08201490 to 0801080 and frame 9A have internal AC line chokes so they do not require AC line reactors except for cases of excessive phase unbalance or extreme supply conditions. Drive sizes 9E,10E and 11E do not have internal input line reactors hence an external input line reactor must be used. For more information refer to section 4.2.3 *Input line reactor specification for size 9E, 10E and 11E* on page 78.

When required, each drive must have its own reactor(s). Three individual reactors or a single three-phase reactor should be used.

When required each drive must have its own reactor(s). Three individual reactors or a single three-phase reactor should be used.

Reactor current ratings

The current rating of the line reactors should be as follows:

Continuous current rating:

Not less than the continuous input current rating of the drive

Repetitive peak current rating:

Not less than twice the continuous input current rating of the drive

12.1.5 Motor requirements

No. of phases: 3

Maximum voltage:

200 V drive: 240 V
400 V drive: 480 V
575 V drive: 575 V
690 V drive: 690 V

12.1.6 Temperature, humidity and cooling method

Ambient temperature operating range:

- 20 °C to 50 °C (- 4 °F to 122 °F).
Output current derating must be applied at ambient temperatures >40 °C (104 °F).

Cooling method: Forced convection

Maximum humidity: 95 % non-condensing at 40 °C (104 °F)

12.1.7 Storage

-40 °C (-40 °F) to +55 °C (131 °F) for long term storage, or to +70 °C (158 °F) for short term storage.

Storage time is 2 years.

Electrolytic capacitors in any electronic product have a storage period after which they require reforming or replacing.

The DC bus capacitors have a storage period of 10 years.

The low voltage capacitors on the control supplies typically have a storage period of 2 years and are thus the limiting factor.

Low voltage capacitors cannot be reformed due to their location in the circuit and thus may require replacing if the drive is stored for a period of 2 years or greater without power being applied.

It is therefore recommended that drives are powered up for a minimum of 1 hour after every 2 years of storage.

This process allows the drive to be stored for a further 2 years.

12.1.8 Altitude

Altitude range: 0 to 3,000 m (9,900 ft), subject to the following conditions:

1,000 m to 3,000 m (3,300 ft to 9,900 ft) above sea level: de-rate the maximum output current from the specified figure by 1% per 100 m (330 ft) above 1,000 m (3,300 ft)

For example at 3,000 m (9,900 ft) the output current of the drive would have to be de-rated by 20 %.

12.1.9 IP / UL Rating

The drive is rated to IP21 pollution degree 2 (dry, non-conductive contamination only) (NEMA 1). However, it is possible to configure the drive to achieve IP65 rating (sizes 3 to 8) or IP54 rating (size 9, 10 and 11) (NEMA 12) at the rear of the heatsink for through-panel mounting (some current derating is required).

In order to achieve the high IP rating at the rear of the heatsink with drive sizes 3,4 and 5 it is necessary to seal a heatsink vent by installing the high IP insert.

The IP rating of a product is a measure of protection against ingress and contact to foreign bodies and water. It is stated as IP XX, where the two digits (XX) indicate the degree of protection provided as shown in Table 12-8 *IP Rating degrees of protection* on page 243.

Table 12-8 IP Rating degrees of protection

First digit		Second digit	
Protection against contact and ingress of foreign bodies		Protection against ingress of water	
0	No protection	0	No protection
1	Protection against large foreign bodies ϕ > 50 mm (large area contact with the hand)	1	Protection against vertically falling drops of water
2	Protection against medium size foreign bodies ϕ > 12 mm (finger)	2	Protection against spraywater (up to 15 ° from the vertical)
3	Protection against small foreign bodies ϕ > 2.5 mm (tools, wires)	3	Protection against spraywater (up to 60 ° from the vertical)
4	Protection against granular foreign bodies ϕ > 1mm (tools, wires)	4	Protection against splashwater (from all directions)
5	Protection against dust deposit, complete protection against accidental contact.	5	Protection against heavy splash water (from all directions, at high pressure)
6	Protection against dust ingress, complete protection against accidental contact.	6	Protection against deckwater (e.g. in heavy seas)
7	-	7	Protection against immersion
8	-	8	Protection against submersion

Table 12-9 UL enclosure ratings

UL rating	Description
Type 1	Enclosures are intended for indoor use, primarily to provide a degree of protection against limited amounts of falling dirt.
Type 12	Enclosures are intended for indoor use, primarily to provide a degree of protection against dust, falling dirt and dripping non-corrosive liquids.

12.1.10 Corrosive gasses

Concentrations of corrosive gases must not exceed the levels given in:

- Table A2 of EN 50178:1998
- Class 3C2 of IEC 60721-3-3

This corresponds to the levels typical of urban areas with industrial activities and/or heavy traffic, but not in the immediate neighborhood of industrial sources with chemical emissions.

12.1.11 RoHS compliance

The drive meets EU directive 2002-95-EC for RoHS compliance.

12.1.12 Vibration

Maximum recommended continuous vibration level 0.14 g r.m.s. broad-band 5 to 200 Hz.

NOTE

This is the limit for broad-band (random) vibration. Narrow-band vibration at this level which coincides with a structural resonance could result in premature failure.

Bump Test

Testing in each of three mutually perpendicular axes in turn.
Referenced standard:IEC 60068-2-29: Test Eb:
Severity: 18 g, 6 ms, half sine
No. of Bumps: 600 (100 in each direction of each axis)

Random Vibration Test

Testing in each of three mutually perpendicular axes in turn.
Referenced standard:IEC 60068-2-64: Test Fh:
Severity: 1.0 m^2/s^3 (0.01 g^2/Hz) ASD from 5 to 20 Hz
-3 dB/octave from 20 to 200 Hz
Duration: 30 minutes in each of 3 mutually perpendicular axes.

Sinusoidal Vibration Test

Testing in each of three mutually perpendicular axes in turn.
Referenced standard: IEC 60068-2-6: Test Fc:
Frequency range: 5 to 500 Hz
Severity: 3.5 mm peak displacement from 5 to 9 Hz
10 m/s^2 peak acceleration from 9 to 200 Hz
15 m/s^2 peak acceleration from 200 to 500 Hz
Sweep rate: 1 octave/minute
Duration: 15 minutes in each of 3 mutually perpendicular axes.

EN 61800-5-1:2007, Section 5.2.6.4. referring to IEC 60068-2-6

Frequency range: 10 to 150 Hz
Amplitude: 10 to 57 Hz at 0.075 mm pk
57 to 150 Hz at 1g p
Sweep rate: 1 octave/minute
Duration: 10 sweep cycles per axis in each of 3 mutually perpendicular axes

12.1.13 Starts per hour

By electronic control: unlimited

By interrupting the AC supply: ≤20 (equally spaced)

12.1.14 Start up time

This is the time taken from the moment of applying power to the drive, to the drive being ready to run the motor:

Sizes 3:

12.1.15 Output frequency / speed range

In all operating modes (Open loop, RFC-A, RFC-S) the maximum output frequency is limited to 550 Hz.

12.1.16 Accuracy and resolution

Speed:

The absolute frequency and speed accuracy depends on the accuracy of the crystal used with the drive microprocessor. The accuracy of the crystal is 100 ppm, and so the absolute frequency/speed accuracy is 100 ppm (0.01 %) of the reference, when a preset speed is used. If an analog input is used the absolute accuracy is further limited by the absolute accuracy of the analog input.

The following data applies to the drive only; it does not include the performance of the source of the control signals.

Open loop resolution:
Preset frequency reference: 0.1 Hz
Precision frequency reference: 0.001 Hz

Closed loop resolution
Preset speed reference: 0.1 rpm
Precision speed reference: 0.001 rpm
Analog input 1: 11 bit plus sign
Analog input 2: 11 bit plus sign

Current:

The resolution of the current feedback is 10 bit plus sign.

Accuracy: typical 2 %
worst case 5 %

12.1.17 Acoustic noise

The heatsink fan generates the majority of the sound pressure level at 1 m produced by the drive. The heatsink fan on all drive sizes are a variable speed fan. The drive controls the speed at which the fan runs based on the temperature of the heatsink and the drive's thermal model system.

Table 12-10 gives the sound pressure level at 1 m produced by the drive for the heatsink fan running at the maximum and minimum speeds.

Table 12-10 Acoustic noise data

Size	Max speed dBA	Min speed dBA
3	56	20
4	58	35
5	61	25
6	58	47
7	65	52
8	68	51
9	75	56
10	77	55
11	TBC	TBC

12.1.18 Overall dimensions

H Height including surface mounting brackets
W Width
D Projection forward of panel when surface mounted
F Projection forward of panel when through-panel mounted
R Projection rear of panel when through-panel mounted

Table 12-11 Overall drive dimensions

Size	Dimension				
	H	W	D	F	R
3	382 mm (15.04 in)	83 mm (3.27 in)	200 mm (7.87 in)	134 mm (5.28 in)	67 mm (2.64 in)
4	391 mm (15.39 in)	124 mm (4.88 in)			66 mm (2.59 in)
5	391 mm (15.39 in)	143 mm (5.63 in)	202 mm (7.95 in)	135 mm (5.32 in)	67 mm (2.64 in)
6	391 mm (15.39 in)	210 mm (8.27 in)	227 mm (8.94 in)	131 mm (5.16 in)	96 mm (3.78 in)
7	557 mm (21.93 in)	270 mm (10.63 in)	279 mm (10.98 in)	187 mm (7.36 in)	92 mm (3.62 in)
8	803 mm (31.61 in)	310 mm (12.21 in)	290 mm (11.42 in)	190 mm (7.48 in)	100 mm (3.94 in)
9A	1108 mm (43.61 in)	310 mm (12.21 in)	290 mm (11.42 in)	190 mm (7.48 in)	100 mm (3.94 in)
9E and 10E	1069 mm (42.09 in)	310 mm (12.21 in)	289 mm (11.38 in)	190 mm (7.48 in)	99 mm (3.90 in)
11E	1242 mm (48.9 in)	310 mm (12.21 in)	312 mm (12.28 in)	190 mm (7.48 in)	122 mm (4.8 in)

12.1.19 Weights

Table 12-12 Overall drive weights

Size	Model	kg	lb
3	03400104, 03400123	4.5	9.9
	All other variants	4.0	8.8
4	All variants	6.5	14.30
5		7.4	16.30
6		14	30.90
7		28	61.70
8		52	114.64
9A		66.5	146.6
9E/10E		46	101.40
11E		63	138.9

12.1.20 Safe Torque Off data

Data as verified by TÜV Rheinland:

According to EN ISO 13849-1:

PL = e

Category = 4

$MTTF_D$ = High

DC_{av} = High

Mission Time and Proof Test Interval = 20 years

The calculated $MTTF_D$ for the complete STO function is:

STO1 2574 yr

According to EN 61800-5-2:

SIL = 3

PFH = 4.21 x 10^{-11} h^{-1}

Logic levels comply with IEC 61131-2:2007 for type 1 digital inputs rated at 24 V. Maximum level for logic low to achieve SIL3 and PL e 5 V and 0.5 mA.

12.1.21 Input current, fuse and cable size ratings

The input current is affected by the supply voltage and impedance.

Typical input current

The values of typical input current are given to aid calculations for power flow and power loss.

The values of typical input current are stated for a balanced supply.

Maximum continuous input current

The values of maximum continuous input current are given to aid the selection of cables and fuses. These values are stated for the worst case condition with the unusual combination of stiff supply with bad balance. The value stated for the maximum continuous input current would only be seen in one of the input phases. The current in the other two phases would be significantly lower.

The values of maximum input current are stated for a supply with a 2 % negative phase-sequence imbalance and rated at the maximum supply fault current given in Table 12-13.

Table 12-13 Supply fault current used to calculate maximum input currents

Model	Symmetrical fault level (kA)
All	100

Fuses

The AC supply to the drive must be installed with suitable protection against overload and short-circuits. Table 12-14 to Table 12-17 shows the recommended fuse ratings. Failure to observe this requirement will cause risk of fire.

WARNING

Table 12-14 AC Input current and fuse ratings (200 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
03200066	8.2	10.4	15.8	16	25	gG	20	25	CC, J or T**
03200080	9.9	12.6	20.9	20					
03200110	14	17	25				25		
03200127	16	20	34	25					
04200180	17	20	30	25	25	gG	25	25	CC, J or T**
04200250	23	28	41	32	32		30	30	
05200300	24	31	52	40	40	gG	40	40	CC, J or T**
06200500	42	48	64	63	63	gG	60	60	CC, J or T**
06200580	49	56	85				60		
07200750	58	67	109	80	80	gG	80	80	CC, J or T**
07200940	73	84	135	100	100		100	100	
07201170	91	105	149	125	125		125	125	
08201490	123	137	213	200	200	gR	200	200	HSJ
08201800	149	166	243				225	225	
09202160	172	205	270	250	250	gR	250	250	HSJ
09202660	228	260	319	315	315		300	300	
10203250	277	305	421	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
10203600	333	361	494	450	450		450	450	

Table 12-15 AC Input current and fuse ratings (400 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
03400034	5	5	7	10	10	gG	10	10	CC, J or T**
03400045	6	7	9						
03400062	8	9	13						
03400077	11	13	21	20	20		20	20	
03400104	12		20						
03400123	14	16	25						
04400185	17	19	30	25	25	gG	25	25	CC, J or T**
04400240	22	24	35	32	32		30	30	
05400300	26	29	52	40	40	gG	35	35	CC, J or T**
06400380	32	36	67	63	63	gG	40	60	CC, J or T**
06400480	41	46	80				50		
06400630	54	60	90				60		
07400790	67	74	124	100	100	gG	80	80	CC, J or T**
07400940	80	88	145				100	100	
07401120	96	105	188	125	125		125	125	
08401550	137	155	267	250	250	gR	225	225	HSJ
08401840	164	177	303						
09402210	211	232	306	315	315	gR	300	300	HSJ
09402660	245	267	359				350	350	
10403200	306	332	445	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
10403610	370	397	523	450	450		450	450	
11404370	424	499	579	500	500	gR	600	600	HSJ
11404870	455	492	613						
11405070	502	539	752						

Table 12-16 AC Input current and fuse ratings (575 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
05500039	4	4	7	10	20	gG	10	10	CC, J or T**
05500061	6	7	9						
05500100	9	11	15	20			20	20	
06500120	12	13	22	20	40	gG	20	30	CC, J or T**
06500170	17	19	33	32			25		
06500220	22	24	41	40			30		
06500270	26	29	50	50	63		35	50	
06500340	33	37	63				40		
06500430	41	47	76	63			50		
07500530	41	45	75	50	50	gG	50	50	CC, J or T**
07500730	57	62	94	80	80		80	80	
08500860	74	83	121	125	125	gR	100	100	HSJ
08501080	92	104	165	160	160		150	150	
09501250	145	166	190	150	150	gR	150	150	HSJ
09501500	145	166	221	200	200		175	175	
10502000	177	197	266	250	250	gR	250	250	HSJ
11502480	240	265	327	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
11502880	285	310	395						
11503150	313	338	473						

Table 12-17 AC Input current and fuse ratings (690 V)

Model	Typical input current	Maximum continuous input current	Maximum overload input current	Fuse rating					
				IEC			UL / USA		
				Nominal	Maximum	Class	Nominal	Maximum	Class
	A	A	A	A	A		A	A	
07600230	18	20	32	25	50	gG	25	50	CC, J or T**
07600300	23	26	41	32			30		
07600360	28	31	49	40			35		
07600460	36	39	65	50	80		50	80	
07600520	40	44	75						
07600730	57	62	92	80			80		
08600860	74	83	121	125	125	gR	100	100	HSJ
08601080	92	104	165	160	160		150	150	
09601250	124	149	194	150	150	gR	150	150	HSJ
09601550	145	171	226	200	200		200	200	
10601720	180	202	268	225	225	gR	250	250	HSJ
10601970	202	225	313	250	250	aR*	250	250	
11602250	225	256	379	400	400	gR	400	400	HSJ
11602750	217	302	425						
11603050	298	329	465						

* Class aR fuses do not provide branch circuit protection. Ensure that the input cables are suitably protected using HRC fuses or breaker.

** These fuses are fast acting.

NOTE

Ensure cables used suit local wiring regulations.

CAUTION

The nominal cable sizes below are only a guide. The mounting and grouping of cables affects their current-carrying capacity, in some cases smaller cables may be acceptable but in other cases a larger cable is required to avoid excessive temperature or voltage drop. Refer to local wiring regulations for the correct size of cables.

Table 12-18 Cable ratings (200V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
03200066	1.5	4	B2	1.5	4	B2	14	10	14	10
03200080										
03200110	4			4			12		12	
03200127										
04200180	6	8	B2	6	8	B2	10	8	10	8
04200250	8			8			8		8	
05200300	10	10	B2	10	10	B2	8	8	8	8
06200500	16	25	B2	16	25	B2	4	3	4	3
06200580	25			25			3		3	
07200750	35	70	B2	35	70	B2	2	1/0	2	1/0
07200940							1		1	
07201170	70			70			1/0		1/0	
08201490	95	2 x 70	B2	95	2 x 70	B2	3/0	2 x 1	3/0	2 x 1
08201800	2 x 70			2 x 70			2 x 1		2 x 1	
09202160	2 x 70		B1	2 x 95		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 2/0	
09202660	2 x 95			2 x 120			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
10203250	2 x 120		B1	2 x 120		C	2 x 250		2 x 250	
10203600	2 x 150		C	2 x 120			2 x 300		2 x 250	

Table 12-19 Cable ratings (400 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
03400034	1.5	4	B2	1.5	4	B2	18	10	18	10
03400045							16		16	
03400062							14		14	
03400077	2.5			2.5						
03400104										
03400123							12		12	
04400185	4	6	B2	4	6	B2	10	8	10	8
04400240	6			6			8		8	
05400300	6	6	B2	6	6	B2	8	8	8	8
06400380	10	25	B2	10	25	B2	6	3	6	3
06400480	16			16			4		4	
06400630	25			25			3		3	
07400790	35	70	B2	35	70	B2	1	1/0	1	1/0
07400940	50			50			2		2	
07401120	70			70			1/0		1/0	
08401550	2 x 50	2 x 70	B2	2 x 50	2 x 70	B2	2 x 1	2 x 1/0	2 x 1	2 x 1/0
08401840	2 x 70			2 x 70			2 x 1/0		2 x 1/0	
09402210	2 x 70		B1	2 x 95		B2	2 x 3/0		2 x 2/0	
09402660	2 x 95			2 x 120			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
10403200	2 x 120		C	2 x 120		B2	2 x 300		2 x 250	
10403610	2 x 150			2 x 150			2 x 350		2 x 300	
11404370	4 x 95		C	2 x 185		C	4 x 3/0		2 x 400	
11404870				2 x 240			4 x 4/0			
11405070										

Table 12-20 Cable ratings (575 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
05500039	0.75	1.5	B2	0.75	1.5	B2	16	16	16	16
05500061	1			1			14		14	
05500100	1.5			1.5			14		14	
06500120	2.5	25	B2	2.5	25	B2	14	3	14	3
06500170	4			4			10		10	
06500220	6			6			10		10	
06500270	10			10			8		8	
06500340							6		6	
06500430	16						6		6	
07500530	16	25	B2	16	25	B2	4	3	4	3
07500730	25			25			3		3	
08500860	35	50	B2	35	50	B2	1	1	1	1
08501080	50			50						
09501250	2 x 70		B2	2 x 35		B2	2 x 1		2 x 3	
09501500				2 x 50					2 x 1	
10502000	2 x 70		B2	2 x 70		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 2/0	
11502480	2 x 70		C	2 x 70		C	2 x 3/0		2 x 3/0	
11502880	2 x 95			2 x 95			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
11503150	2 x 120			2 x 120			2 x 250		2 x 250	

Table 12-21 Cable ratings (690 V)

Model	Cable size (IEC) mm²						Cable size (UL) AWG			
	Input			Output			Input		Output	
	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Installation method	Nominal	Maximum	Nominal	Maximum
07600230	10	25	B2	10	25	B2	8	3	8	3
07600300							6		6	
07600360							6		6	
07600460	16			16			4		4	
07600520	16			16			4		4	
07600730	25			25			3		3	
08600860	50	70	B2	50	70	B2	2	1/0	2	1/0
08601080	70			70			1/0		1/0	
09601250	2 x 50		B2	2 x 35		B2	2 x 1		2 x 3	
09601550	2 x 70			2 x 50			2 x 1/0		2 x 1	
10601720	2 x 70		B2	2 x 70		B2	2 x 2/0		2 x 1/0	
10601970	2 x 95						2 x 3/0		2 x 2/0	
11602250	2 x 70		C	2 x 70		C	2 x 3/0		2 x 3/0	
11602750	2 x 95			2 x 95			2 x 4/0		2 x 4/0	
11603050				2 x 95			2 x 250		2 x 250	

12.1.22 Protective ground cable ratings

Table 12-22 Protective ground cable ratings

Input phase conductor size	Minimum ground conductor size
≤ 10 mm^2	Either 10 mm^2 or two conductors of the same cross-sectional area as the input phase conductor.
> 10 mm^2 and ≤ 16 mm^2	The same cross-sectional area as the input phase conductor
> 16 mm^2 and ≤ 35 mm^2	16 mm^2
> 35 mm^2	Half of the cross-sectional area of the input phase conductor

12.1.23 Input line reactor specification for size 9E, 10E and 11E

CAUTION

A separate line reactor (INLXXX) of at least the value shown in Table 12-24 and Table 12-23 must be used with size 9E, 10E and 11E. Failure to provide sufficient reactance could damage or reduce the service life of the drive.

Table 12-23 Size 9E and10 Model and Line reactor part number

Size	Drive model	Inductor model	Line reactor part number
9E	09202160, 09202660, 09402210, 09402660	INL 401	4401-0181
		INL 401W**	4401-0208
	09501250, 09501500, 09601720, 09601970	INL 601	4401-0183
10E	10203250, 10203600, 10403200, 10403610	INL 402	4401-0182
		INL 402W**	4401-0209
	10502000, 10601720, 10601970	INL 602	4401-0184
11E	11404370	INL 403L***	4401-0274
	11404370, 11404870, 11405070	INL 403*	4401-0259
	11502480, 11502880, 11503150, 11602250, 11602750, 11603050	INL 603*	4401-0261

* Natural cooling.

** May represent a more economic solution where operating temperature and cooling requirements are observed.

*** May represent a more economic solution when operating below 420 A.

Figure 12-1 Input line reactor dimensions

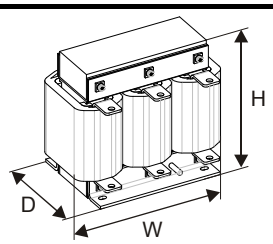


Table 12-24 Input line reactor ratings

Part number	Model	Current	Inductance	Overall width (W)	Overall depth (D)	Overall height (H)	Weight	Max ambient temp	Min airflow	Maximum losses	Quantity required
		A	µH	mm	mm	mm	kg	°C	m/s	W	
4401-0181	INL 401	245	63	240	190	225	32	50	1	148	1
4401-0182	INL 402	339	44	276	200	225	36	50	1	205	1
4401-0208	INL 401W**	245	63	255	235	200	27	40	3		1
4401-0209	INL 402W**	339	44	255	235	200	27	40	3		1
4401-0274	INL 403L*	420	30	300	216	264	57	40	0		1
4401-0259	INL403*	557	30	300	216	264	57	40	0		1
4401-0183	INL 601	145	178	240	190	225	33	50	1	88	1
4401-0184	INL 602	192	133	276	200	225	36	50	1	116	1
4401-0261	INL 603*	331	93	300	216	264	58	40	0		1

* Natural cooling.

** May represent a more economic solution where operating temperature and cooling requirements are observed.

NOTE

If symmetrical fault current exceeds 38 kA then a line reactor with a higher inductance must be used, consult the supplier of the drive.

12.1.24 Maximum motor cable lengths

Table 12-25 Maximum motor cable lengths (200 V drives)

200 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
03200066	65 m (210 ft)					50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
03200080	100 m (330 ft)				75 m (245 ft)		
03200110	130 m (425 ft)			100 m (330 ft)			
03200127	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)				
04200180	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
04200250							
05200300	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
06200500	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06200580							
07200750	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07200940							
07201170							
08201490	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08201800							
09202160	250 m (820 ft)						
09202660							
10203250	250 m (820 ft)						
10203600							

Table 12-26 Maximum motor cable lengths (400 V drives)

400 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
03400034	65 m (210 ft)					50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
03400045	100 m (330 ft)				75 m (245 ft)		
03400062	130 m (425 ft)			100 m (330 ft)			
03400077	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)				
03400104							
03400123							
04400185	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
04400240							
05400300	200 m (660 ft)		150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	37 m (120 ft)
06400380	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06400480							
06400630							
07400790	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07400940							
07401120							
08401550	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08401840							
09402210	250 m (820 ft)						
09402660							
10403200	250 m (820 ft)						
10403610							
11404370	250 m (820 ft)						
11404870							
11405070							

Table 12-27 Maximum motor cable lengths (575 V drives)

575 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
05500039	200 m (660 ft)						
05500061							
05500100							
06500120	300 m (984 ft)	200 m (660 ft)	150 m (490 ft)	100 m (330 ft)	75 m (245 ft)	50 m (165 ft)	
06500170							
06500220							
06500270							
06500340							
06500430							
07500530	200 m (660 ft)						
07500730							
08500860	250 m (820 ft)						
08501080							
09501250	250 m (820 ft)						
09501500							
10502000	250 m (820 ft)						
11502480	250 m (820 ft)						
11502880							
11503150							

Table 12-28 Maximum motor cable lengths (690 V drives)

690 V Nominal AC supply voltage							
Model	**Maximum permissible motor cable length for each of the following switching frequencies**						
	2 kHz	**3 kHz**	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**16 kHz**
07600230	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
07600300							
07600360							
07600460							
07600520							
07600730							
08600860	250 m (820 ft)		185 m (607 ft)	125 m (410 ft)	90 m (295 ft)		
08601080							
09601250	250 m (820 ft)						
09601550							
10601720	250 m (820 ft)						
10601970							
11602250	250 m (820 ft)						
11602750							
11603050							

- Cable lengths in excess of the specified values may be used only when special techniques are adopted; refer to the supplier of the drive.
- The default switching frequency is 3 kHz for Open-loop and RFC-A and 6 kHz for RFC-S mode.

The maximum cable length is reduced from that shown in section 4.8.1 *Cable types and lengths* on page 86 if high capacitance or reduced diameter motor cables are used. For further information, refer to section 4.8.2 *High-capacitance / reduced diameter cables* on page 87.

12.1.25 Torque settings

Table 12-29 Drive control and relay terminal data

Model	Connection type	Torque setting
All	Plug-in terminal block	0.5 N m (0.4 lb ft)

Table 12-30 Drive power terminal data

Powerdrive F300 frame size	AC and motor terminals		DC terminals		Ground terminals	
	Recommended	Maximum	Recommended	Maximum	Recommended	Maximum
3 and 4	Plug-in terminal block		T20 Torx (M4)		T20 Torx (M4) / M4 Nut (7 mm AF)	
	0.7 N m (0.5 lb ft)	0.8 N m (0.6 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)
5	Plug-in terminal block		T20 Torx (M4) / M4 Nut (7 mm AF)		M5 Nut (8 mm AF)	
	1.5 N m (1.1 lb ft)	1.8 N m (1.3 lb ft)	1.5 N m (1.1 lb ft)	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)	2.0 N m (1.4 lb ft)	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
6	M6 Nut (10 mm AF)		M6 Nut (10 mm AF)		M6 Nut (10 mm AF)	
	6.0 N m (4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)	6.0 N m (4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)	6.0 N m (4.4 lb ft)	8.0 N m (6.0 lb ft)
7	M8 Nut (13 mm AF)		M8 Nut (13 mm AF)		M8 Nut (13 mm AF)	
	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)	12 N m (8.8 lb ft)	14 N m (10.0 lb ft)
8 to 11	M10 Nut (17 mm AF)		M10 Nut (17 mm AF)		M10 Nut (17 mm AF)	
	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)	15 N m (11.1 lb ft)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)

Table 12-31 Plug-in terminal block maximum cable sizes

Model size	Terminal block description	Max cable size
All	11 way control connectors	1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
	2 way relay connector	2.5 mm^2 (12 AWG)
3	6 way AC power connector	6 mm^2 (10 AWG)
4		
5	3 way AC power connector 3 way motor connector	8 mm^2 (8 AWG)
6	2 way low voltage power 24 V supply connector	1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
7		
8		
9A/9E		
10E/11E		

Table 12-32 External EMC filter terminal data

CT part number	Power connections		Ground connections	
	Max cable size	Max torque	Ground stud size	Max torque
4200-1132	50 mm^2 (1/0 AWG)	8.0 N m (6.0lb ft)	M10	18 N m (13.3 lb ft)
4200-0672				
4200-1972	95 mm^2 (3/0 AWG)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)		
4200-1662				
4200-0122	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.7 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-0252		1.8 N m (1.4 lb ft)		
4200-0272				
4200-0312				
4200-0402				
4200-3230	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)
4200-3480	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	
4200-2300	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.70 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-4800				
4200-3690				
4200-3021	TBC	TBC	M10	TBC
4200-4460	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-1660	TBC	TBC		TBC
4200-2210	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-0400	TBC	TBC	M12	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)
4200-0690	TBC	TBC		

12.1.26 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)

This is a summary of the EMC performance of the drive. For full details, refer to the *EMC Data Sheet* which can be obtained from the supplier of the drive.

Table 12-33 Immunity compliance

Standard	Type of immunity	Test specification	Application	Level
IEC61000-4-2 EN61000-4-2	Electrostatic discharge	6 kV contact discharge 8 kV air discharge	Module enclosure	Level 3 (industrial)
IEC61000-4-3 EN61000-4-3	Radio frequency radiated field	10 V/m prior to modulation 80 - 1000 MHz 80 % AM (1 kHz) modulation	Module enclosure	Level 3 (industrial)
IEC61000-4-4 EN61000-4-4	Fast transient burst	5/50 ns 2 kV transient at 5 kHz repetition frequency via coupling clamp	Control lines	Level 4 (industrial harsh)
		5/50 ns 2 kV transient at 5 kHz repetition frequency by direct injection	Power lines	Level 3 (industrial)
IEC61000-4-5 EN61000-4-5	Surges	Common mode 4 kV 1.2/50 µs waveshape	AC supply lines: line to ground	Level 4
		Differential mode 2 kV 1.2/50 µs waveshape	AC supply lines: line to line	Level 3
		Lines to ground	Signal ports to ground [1]	Level 2
IEC61000-4-6 EN61000-4-6	Conducted radio frequency	10V prior to modulation 0.15 - 80 MHz 80 % AM (1 kHz) modulation	Control and power lines	Level 3 (industrial)
IEC61000-4-11 EN61000-4-11	Voltage dips and interruptions	-30 % 10 ms +60 % 100 ms -60 % 1 s <-95 % 5 s	AC power ports	
IEC61000-6-1 EN61000-6-1:2007	Generic immunity standard for the residential, commercial and light - industrial environment			Complies
IEC61000-6-2 EN61000-6-2:2005	Generic immunity standard for the industrial environment			Complies
IEC61800-3 EN61800-3:2004	Product standard for adjustable speed power drive systems (immunity requirements)		Meets immunity requirements for first and second environments	

[1] See section *Surge immunity of control circuits - long cables and connections outside a building* on page 96 for control ports for possible requirements regarding grounding and external surge protection

Emission

The drive contains an in-built filter for basic emission control. An additional optional external filter provides further reduction of emission. The requirements of the following standards are met, depending on the motor cable length and switching frequency.

Table 12-34 Size 3 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 2	C3			C4			
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 10	C3				C4		
10-20	C3			C4			
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-35 Size 3 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 5	C3			C4			
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 10	C3					C4	
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-36 Size 4 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 2	C3				C4		
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 4	C3		C4				
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-37 Size 4 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 4	C3			C4			
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 10	C3		C4				
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-38 Size 5 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 2	C3		C4				
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (1 turn – no advantage to 2 turns):							
0 – 2	C3					C4	
0 – 5	C3			C4			
0 – 7	C3		C4				
0 – 10	C3	C4					
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-39 Size 5 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 4	C3			C4			
0 – 10	C3	C4					
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-40 Size 5 emission compliance (575 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
-	C4						
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 4	C3			C4			
0 – 2	C3					C4	
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-41 Size 6 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 2	C3		C4				
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (1 turn – no advantage to 2 turns):							
0 – 2	C3					C4	
0 – 5	C3			C4			
0 – 7	C3		C4				
0 – 10	C3	C4					
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-42 Size 6 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
0 – 4	C3			C4			
0 – 10	C3	C4					
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-43 Size 6 emission compliance (575 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
-	C4						
Using internal filter and ferrite ring (2 turns):							
0 – 4	C3			C4			
0 – 2	C3					C4	
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	C3	C3	C3	C3	C3

Table 12-44 Size 7 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)					
	2	3	4	6	8	12
Using internal filter:						
2 – 10	C4					
Using external filter:						
0 – 20	R (C1)					
20 – 40	R (C1)					
40 – 100	R (C1)					I (C2)

Table 12-45 Size 7 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
2 – 10	C4						
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 50	I (C2)						
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	–	–	–	–

Table 12-46 Size 7 emission compliance (575 and 690 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
2 – 10	C4						
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 50	R (C1)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)	I (C2)
20 – 100	I (C2)	I (C2)	–	–	–	–	–

Table 12-47 Size 8 emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
2 – 10	C3						
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R(C1)	R(C1)	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 50	R(C1)	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
50 – 100	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	–	–	I(C2)

Table 12-48 Size 8 emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
2 – 10	C3						
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 50	R(C1)	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
50 – 100	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	–	–	–	–

Table 12-49 Size 8 emission compliance (575 V and 690 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)						
	2	3	4	6	8	12	16
Using internal filter:							
2 – 10	C4						
No advantage to using ferrite ring							
Using external filter:							
0 – 20	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 50	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
50 – 100	R(C1)	R(C1)	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)

Table 12-50 Size 9E and 10E emission compliance (200 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)					
	2	3	4	6	8	12
Using internal filter:						
2 – 10	C3					
No advantage to using ferrite ring						
Using external filter:						
0 – 20	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 100	I(C2)	I(C2)	–	–	–	–

Table 12-51 Size 9E and 10E emission compliance (400 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)					
	2	3	4	6	8	12
Using internal filter:						
2 – 10	C3					
No advantage to using ferrite ring						
Using external filter:						
0 – 20	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 100	I(C2)	I(C2)	–	–	–	–

Table 12-52 Size 9E and 10E emission compliance (575 V and 690 V drives)

Motor cable length (m)	Switching Frequency (kHz)					
	2	3	4	6	8	12
Using internal filter:						
2 – 10	C3					
No advantage to using ferrite ring						
Using external filter:						
0 – 20	R(C1)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)	I(C2)
20 – 100	I(C2)	I(C2)	–	–	–	–

Key (shown in decreasing order of permitted emission level):

E2R EN 61800-3:2004 second environment, restricted distribution (Additional measures may be required to prevent interference)

E2U EN 61800-3:2004 second environment, unrestricted distribution

I Industrial generic standard EN 61000-6-4:2007

EN 61800-3:2004 first environment restricted distribution (The following caution is required by EN 61800-3:2004)

This is a product of the restricted distribution class according to IEC 61800-3. In a residential environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

R Residential generic standard EN 61000-6-3:2007
EN 61800-3:2004 first environment unrestricted distribution

EN 61800-3:2004 defines the following:

- The first environment is one that includes residential premises. It also includes establishments directly connected without intermediate transformers to a low-voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for residential purposes.
- The second environment is one that includes all establishments other than those directly connected to a low-voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for residential purposes.
- Restricted distribution is defined as a mode of sales distribution in which the manufacturer restricts the supply of equipment to suppliers, customers or users who separately or jointly have technical competence in the EMC requirements of the application of drives.

IEC 61800-3:2004 and EN 61800-3:2004

The 2004 revision of the standard uses different terminology to align the requirements of the standard better with the EC EMC Directive.

Power drive systems are categorized C1 to C4:

Category	Definition	Corresponding code used above
C1	Intended for use in the first or second environments	R
C2	Not a plug-in or movable device, and intended for use in the first environment only when installed by a professional, or in the second environment	I
C3	Intended for use in the second environment, not the first environment	E2U
C4	Rated at over 1000 V or over 400 A , intended for use in complex systems in the second environment	E2R

Note that category 4 is more restrictive than E2R, since the rated current of the PDS must exceed 400 A or the supply voltage exceed 1000 V, for the complete PDS.

12.2 Optional external EMC filters

Table 12-53 EMC filter cross reference

Model	CT part number
200 V	
09202160 to 09202660 (9A)	4200-3021
09202160 to 09202660 (9E)	4200-4460
10203250 to 10203600	4200-4460
400 V	
09402210 to 09402660 (9A)	4200-3021
09402210 to 09402660 (9E)	4200-4460
10403200 to 10403610	4200-4460
11404370 to 11405070	4200-0400
575 V	
09501250 to 09501500 (9A)	4200-1660
09501250 to 09501500 (9E)	4200-2210
10502000	4200-2210
11502480 to 11503150	4200-0690
690 V	
09601250 to 09601550 (9A)	4200-1660
09601250 to 09601550 (9E)	4200-2210
10601720 to 10601970	4200-2210
11602250 to 11603050	4200-0690

12.2.1 EMC filter ratings

Table 12-54 Optional external EMC filter details

CT part number	Maximum continuous current		Voltage rating		IP rating	Power dissipation at rated current		Ground leakage		Discharge resistors
	@ 40 °C (104 °F)	@ 50 °C (122 °F)	IEC	UL		@ 40 °C (104 °F)	@ 50 °C (122 °F)	Balanced supply phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground	Worst case	
	A	A	V	V		W	W	mA	mA	MΩ
4200-3230	20	18.5	250	300	20	20	17	2.4	60	1.68
4200-0272	27	24.8	250	300		33	28	6.8	137	
4200-0312	31	28.5	250	300		20	17	2.0	80	
4200-2300	55	51	250	300		41	35	4.2	69	
4200-3480	16	15	528	600		13	11	10.7	151	
4200-0252	25	23	528	600		28	24	11.1	182	
4200-0402	40	36.8	528	600		47	40	18.7	197	
4200-4800	63	58	528	600		54	46	11.2	183	
4200-0122	12	11	760	600						
4200-3690	42	39	760	600		45	39	12	234	

12.2.2 Overall EMC filter dimensions

Table 12-55 Optional external EMC filter dimensions

CT part number	Dimension (mm)						Weight	
	H		W		D			
	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	kg	lb
4200-3230	426	16.77	83	3.27	41	1.61	1.9	4.20
4200-0272	437	17.20	123	4.84	60	2.36	4.0	8.82
4200-0312	437	17.20	143	5.63	60	2.36	5.5	12.13
4200-2300	434	17.09	210	8.27	60	2.36	6.5	14.30
4200-3480	426	16.77	83	3.27	41	1.61	2.0	4.40
4200-0252	437	17.20	123	4.84	60	2.36	4.1	9.04
4200-0402	437	17.20	143	5.63	60	2.36	5.5	12.13
4200-4800	434	17.09	210	8.27	60	2.36	6.7	14.80
4200-0122	437	17.20	143	5.63	60	2.36	5.5	12.13
4200-3690	434	17.09	210	8.27	60	2.36	7.0	15.40
4200-1132	270	10.63	90	3.54	205	8.07	6.9	15.20
4200-0672	270	10.63	90	3.54	205	8.07		
4200-1972	270	10.63	90	3.54	205	8.07	6.9	15.20
4200-1662	270	10.63	90	3.54	205	8.07		
4200-3021	339	13.34	230	9.06	120	4.72	5.2	11.5
4200-4460	320	12.6	245	9.65	102	4.02	12	26.5
4200-0400	386	15.2	260	10.2	135	5.32	TBC	TBC
4200-1660	339	13.34	230	9.06	120	4.72	5.2	11.5
4200-2210	360	14.7	245	9.65	105	4.13	TBC	TBC
4200-0690	386	15.2	260	10.2	135	5.32	TBC	TBC

12.2.3 EMC filter torque settings

Table 12-56 Optional external EMC Filter terminal data

CT part number	Power connections		Ground connections	
	Max cable size	Max torque	Ground stud size	Max torque
4200-1132	50 mm^2 (1/0 AWG)	8.0 N m (6.0lb ft)	M10	18 N m (13.3 lb ft)
4200-0672				
4200-1972	95 mm^2 (3/0 AWG)	20 N m (14.8 lb ft)		
4200-1662				
4200-0122	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.7 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-0252		1.8 N m (1.4 lb ft)		
4200-0272				
4200-0312				
4200-0402				
4200-3230	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	2.5 N m (1.8 lb ft)
4200-3480	4 mm^2 (12 AWG)	0.8 N m (0.59 lb ft)	M5	
4200-2300	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	2.3 N m (1.70 lb ft)	M6	5.0 N m (3.7 lb ft)
4200-4800				
4200-3690				
4200-3021	TBC	TBC	M10	TBC
4200-4460	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-1660	TBC	TBC		TBC
4200-2210	TBC	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)		TBC
4200-0400	TBC	TBC	M12	25 N m (18.4 lb ft)
4200-0690	TBC	TBC		

13 Diagnostics

The keypad display on the drive gives various information about the status of the drive. The keypad display provides information on the following categories:

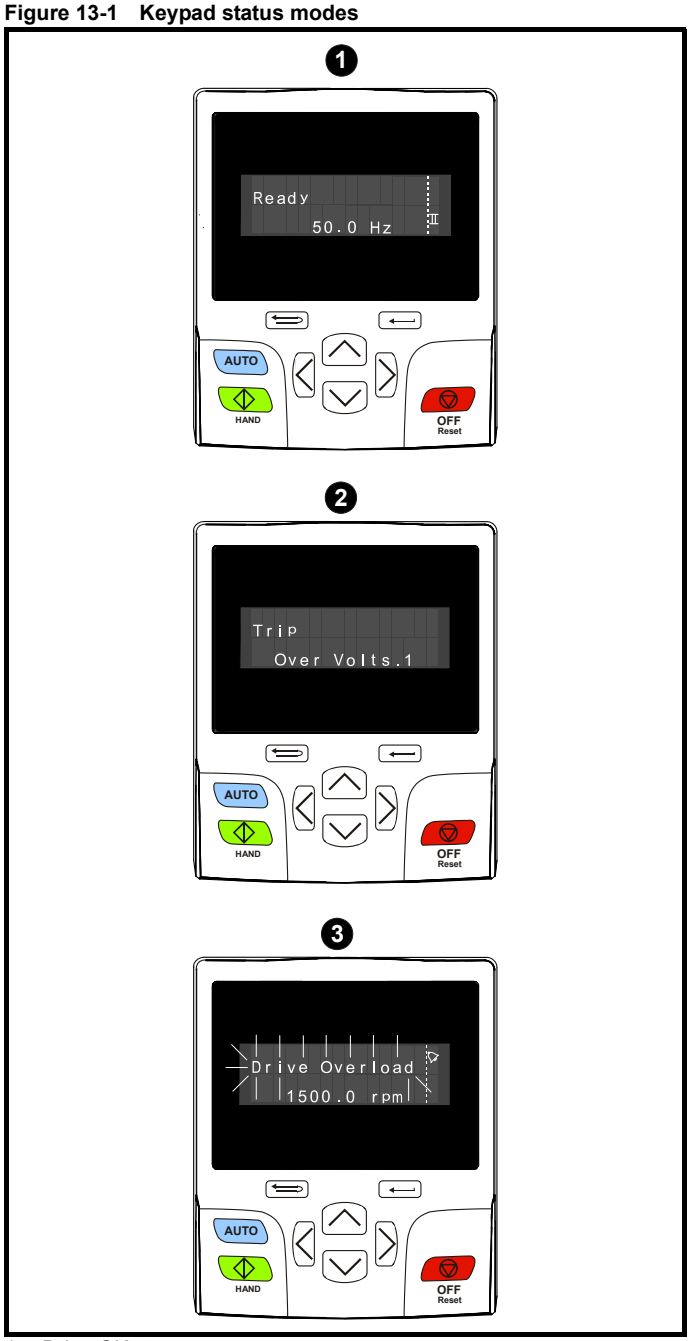
- Trip indications
- Alarm indications
- Status indications

WARNING

Users must not attempt to repair a drive if it is faulty, nor carry out fault diagnosis other than through the use of the diagnostic features described in this chapter.
If a drive is faulty, it must be returned to an authorized Control Techniques distributor for repair.

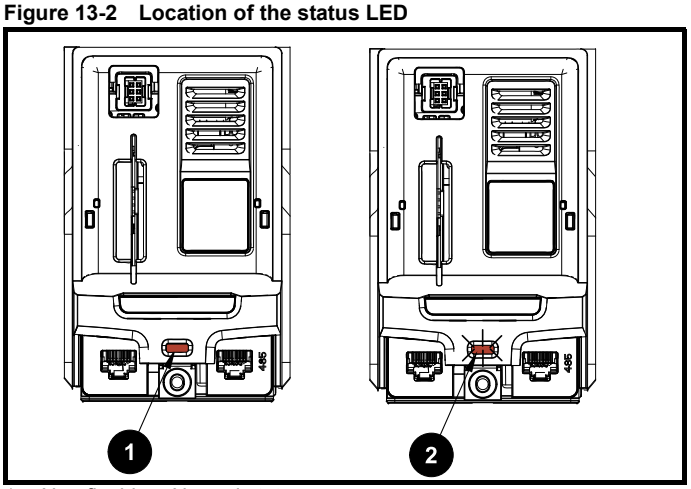
13.1 Status modes (Keypad and LED status)

Figure 13-1 Keypad status modes



1. Drive OK status
2. Trip status
3. Alarm status

Figure 13-2 Location of the status LED



1. Non flashing: Normal status
2. Flashing: Trip status

13.2 Trip indications

The output of the drive is disabled under any trip condition so that the drive stops controlling the motor. If the motor is running when the trip occurs it will coast to a stop.

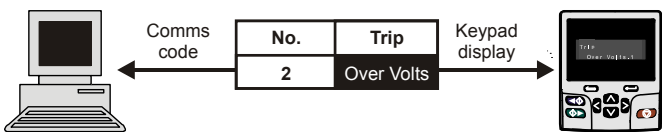
During a trip condition, where a KI-Keypad is being used, the upper row of the display indicates that a trip has occurred and the lower row of the keypad display will display the trip string. Some trips have a sub-trip number to provide additional information about the trip. If a trip has a sub-trip number, the sub-trip number is flashed alternately with the trip string unless there is space on the second row for both the trip string and the sub-trip number in which case both the trip string and sub-trip information is displayed separated by a decimal place.

The back-light of the KI-Keypad display will also flash during a trip condition. If a display is not being used, the drive LED Status indicator will flash with 0.5 s duty cycle if the drive has tripped. Refer to Figure 13-2.

Trips are listed alphabetically in Table 13-3 based on the trip indication shown on the drive display. Alternatively, the drive status can be read in Pr **10.001** 'Drive OK' using communication protocols. The most recent trip can be read in Pr **10.020** providing a trip number. It must be noted that the hardware trips (HF01 to HF20) do not have trip numbers. The trip number must be checked in Table 13-4 to identify the specific trip.

Example

1. Trip code 2 is read from Pr **10.020** via serial communications.
2. Checking Table 13-3 shows Trip 2 is an Over Volts trip.



3. Look up Over Volts in Table 13-3.
4. Perform checks detailed under *Diagnosis*.

13.3 Identifying a trip / trip source

Some trips only contain a trip string whereas some other trips have a trip string along with a sub-trip number which provides the user with additional information about the trip.

A trip can be generated from a control system or from a power system. The sub-trip number associated with the trips listed in Table 13-1 is in the form xxyzz and used to identify the source of the trip.

Table 13-1 Trips associated with xxyzz sub-trip number

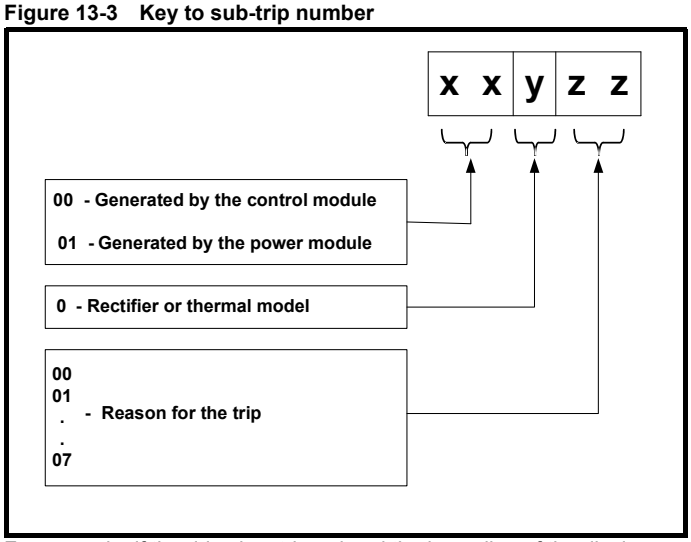
Over Volts	OHt dc bus
OI ac	Phase Loss
PSU	OI Snubber
OHt Inverter	OHt Rectifier
OHt Power	Temp Feedback
OHt Control	Power Data

The digits xx are 00 for a trip generated by the control system. For a single drive (not part of a multi-power module drive), if the trip is related to the power system then xx will have a value of 01, when displayed the leading zeros are suppressed.

The y digit is used to identify the location of a trip which is generated by a rectifier module connected to a power module (if xx is non zero). For a control system trip (xx is zero), the y digit, where relevant is defined for each trip. If not relevant, the y digit will have a value of zero.

The zz digits give the reason for the trip and are defined in each trip description.

Figure 13-3 Key to sub-trip number



For example, if the drive has tripped and the lower line of the display shows 'OHt Control.2', with the help Table 13-2 below the trip can be interpreted as; an over temperature has been detected; the trip was generated by fault in the control module, the control board thermistor 2 over temperature.

Table 13-2 Sub-trip identification

Source	xx	y	zz	Description
Control system	00	0	01	Control board thermistor 1 over temperature
Control system	00	0	02	Control board thermistor 2 over temperature
Control system	00	0	03	Control board thermistor 3 over temperature

13.4 Trips, Sub-trip numbers

Table 13-3 Trip indications

Trip	Diagnosis
An Input 1 Loss	**Analog input 1 current loss**
28	*An Input 1 Loss* trip indicates that a current loss was detected in current mode on Analog input 1 (Terminal 5). In 4-20 mA and 20-4 mA modes loss of input is detected if the current falls below 3 mA. **Recommended actions:** • Check control wiring is correct • Check control wiring is undamaged • Check the *Analog Input 1 Mode* (07.007) • Current signal is present and greater than 3 mA
An Input 2 Loss	**Analog input 2 current loss**
29	*An Input 2 Loss* indicates that a current loss was detected in current mode on Analog input 2 (Terminal 6). In 4-20 mA and 20-4 mA modes loss of input is detected if the current falls below 3 mA. **Recommended actions:** • Check control wiring is correct • Check control wiring is undamaged • Check the *Analog Input 2 Mode* (07.011) • Current signal is present and greater than 3 mA
An Output Calib	**Analog output calibration failed**
219	The *An output Calib* trip indicates that one or both of the Analog outputs have failed during the zero offset calibration**.** The failed output can be identified by the sub-trip number. **Sub-trip** / **Reason** 1 – Output 1 failed (Terminal 7) 2 – Output 2 failed (Terminal 8) **Recommended actions:** • Check the wiring associated with analog outputs • Remove all the wiring that is connected to analog outputs and perform the calibration • If trip persists replace the drive
App Menu Changed	**Customization table for an application module has changed**
217	The *App Menu Changed* trip indicates that the customization table for an application menu has changed. The menu that has been changed can be identified by the sub-trip number. **Sub-trip** / **Reason** 1 – Menu 18 2 – Menu 19 3 – Menu 20 **Recommended actions:** • Reset the trip and perform a parameter save to accept the new settings
Autotune 1	**Position feedback did not change or required speed could not be reached**
11	The drive has tripped during an autotune. The cause of the trip can be identified from the sub-trip number. **Sub-trip** / **Reason** 1 – The position feedback did not change when position feedback is being used during rotating autotune. 2 – The motor did not reach the required speed during rotating autotune or mechanical load measurement. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure the motor is free to turn
Autotune 3	**Measured inertia has exceeded the parameter range or commutation signals changed in wrong direction**
13	The drive has tripped during a rotating autotune or mechanical load measurement test. The cause of the trip can be identified from the associated sub-trip number. **Sub-trip** / **Reason** 1 – Measured inertia has exceeded the parameter range during a mechanical load measurement 2 – The commutation signals changed in the wrong direction during a rotating autotune **Recommended actions:** • Check motor cable wiring is correct • Check feedback device U,V and W commutation signal wiring is correct

Trip	Diagnosis
Autotune 7	**Motor number of poles / position feedback resolution set incorrectly**
17	An *Autotune 7* trip is initiated during a rotating autotune, if the motor poles or the position feedback resolution have been set up incorrectly where position feedback is being used. **Recommended actions:** • Check line per revolution for feedback device • Check the number of poles in Pr **05.011**
Autotune Stopped	**Autotune test stopped before completion**
18	The drive was prevented from completing an autotune test, because either the drive enable or the drive run were removed. **Recommended actions:** • Check the drive enable signal (Terminal 29) was active during the autotune • Check the run command was active in Pr **08.005** during autotune
Card Access	**NV Media Card Write fail**
185	The *Card Access* trip indicates that the drive was unable to access the NV Media Card. If the trip occurs during the data transfer to the card then the file being written may be corrupted. If the trip occurs when the data being transferred to the drive then the data transfer may be incomplete. If a parameter file is transferred to the drive and this trip occurs during the transfer, the parameters are not saved to non-volatile memory, and so the original parameters can be restored by powering the drive down and up again. **Recommended actions:** • Check NV Media Card is installed / located correctly • Replace the NV Media Card
Card Boot	**The Menu 0 parameter modification cannot be saved to the NV Media Card**
177	Menu 0 changes are automatically saved on exiting edit mode. The *Card Boot* trip will occur if a write to a Menu 0 parameter has been initiated via the keypad by exiting edit mode and Pr **11.042** is set for auto or boot mode, but the necessary boot file has not been created on the NV Media Card to take the new parameter value. This occurs when Pr **11.042** is changed to Auto (3) or Boot (4) mode, but the drive is not subsequently reset. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure that Pr **11.042** is correctly set, and then reset the drive to create the necessary file on the NV Media Card • Re-attempt the parameter write to the Menu 0 parameter
Card Busy	**NV Media Card cannot be accessed as it is being accessed by an option module**
178	The *Card Busy* trip indicates that an attempt has been made to access a file on NV Media Card, but the NV Media Card is already being accessed by an option module, such as one of the Applications modules. No data is transferred. **Recommended actions:** • Wait for the option module to finish accessing the NV Media Card and re-attempt the required function
Card Data Exists	**NV Media Card data location already contains data**
179	The *Card Data Exists* trip indicates that an attempt has been made to store data on a NV Media Card in a data block which already contains data. **Recommended actions:** • Erase the data in data location • Write data to an alternative data location
Card Compare	**NV Media Card file/data is different to the one in the drive**
188	A compare has been carried out between a file on the NV Media Card, a Card Compare trip is initiated if the parameters on the NV Media Card are different to the drive. **Recommended actions:** • Set Pr **mm.000** to 0 and reset the trip • Check to ensure the correct data block on the NV Media Card has been used for the compare**.**
Card Drive Mode	**NV Media Card parameter set not compatible with current drive mode**
187	The *Card Drive Mode* trip is produced during a compare if the drive mode in the data block on the NV Media Card is different from the current drive mode. This trip is also produced if an attempt is made to transfer parameters from a NV Media Card to the drive if the operating mode in the data block is outside the allowed range of operating modes. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure the destination drive supports the drive operating mode in the parameter file. • Clear the value in Pr **mm.000** and reset the drive • Ensure destination drive operating mode is the same as the source parameter file

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>Card Error</td><td>NV Media Card data structure error</td></tr>
<tr><td>182</td><td>The Card Error trip indicates that an attempt has been made to access a NV Media Card but an error has been detected in the data structure on the card. Resetting the trip will cause the drive to erase and create the correct folder structure. The cause of the trip can be identified by the sub-trip.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>The required folder and file structure is not present</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>The HEADER.DAT file is corrupted</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Two or more files in the GT8DATA\DRIVE folder have the same file identification number</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Erase all the data block and re-attempt the process
• Ensure the card is located correctly
• Replace the NV Media Card</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card Full</td><td>NV Media Card full</td></tr>
<tr><td>184</td><td>The Card Full trip indicates that an attempt has been made to create a data block on a NV Media Card, but there is not enough space left on the card.
Recommended actions:
• Delete a data block or the entire NV Media Card to create space
• Use a different NV Media Card</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card No Data</td><td>NV Media Card data not found</td></tr>
<tr><td>183</td><td>The Card No Data trip indicates that an attempt has been made to access non-existent file or block on a NV Media Card.
Recommended actions:
• Ensure data block number is correct</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card Option</td><td>NV Media Card trip; option modules installed are different between source drive and destination drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>180</td><td>The Card Option trip indicates that parameter data or default difference data is being transferred from a NV Media Card to the drive, but the option module categories are different between source and destination drives. This trip does not stop the data transfer, but is a warning that the data for the option modules that are different will be set to the default values and not the values from the card. This trip also applies if a compare is attempted between the data block and the drive.
Recommended actions:
• Ensure the correct option modules are installed.
• Ensure the option modules are in the same option module slot as the parameter set stored.
• Press the red reset button to acknowledge that the parameters for one or more of the option modules installed will be at their default values
• This trip can be suppressed by setting Pr mm.000 to 9666 and resetting the drive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card Product</td><td>NV Media Card data blocks are not compatible with the drive derivative</td></tr>
<tr><td>175</td><td>The Card Product trip is initiated either at power-up or when the card is accessed, If Drive Derivative (11.028) is different between the source and target drives. This trip can be reset and data can be transferred in either direction between the drive and the card.
Recommended actions:
• Use a different NV Media Card
• This trip can be suppressed by setting Pr mm.000 to 9666 and resetting the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card Rating</td><td>NV Media Card Trip; The voltage and / or current rating of the source and destination drives are different</td></tr>
<tr><td>186</td><td>The Card Rating trip indicates that parameter data is being transferred from a NV Media Card to the drive, but the current and / or voltage ratings are different between source and destination drives. This trip also applies if a compare (using Pr mm.000 set to 8yyy) is attempted between the data block on a NV Media Card and the drive. The Card Rating trip does not stop the data transfer but is a warning that rating specific parameters with the RA attribute may not be transferred to the destination drive.
Recommended actions:
• Reset the drive to clear the trip
• Ensure that the drive rating dependent parameters have transferred correctly</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card Read Only</td><td>NV Media Card has the Read Only bit set</td></tr>
<tr><td>181</td><td>The Card Read Only trip indicates that an attempt has been made to modify a read-only NV Media Card or a read-only data block. A NV Media Card is read-only if the read-only flag has been set.
Recommended actions:
• Clear the read only flag by setting Pr mm.000 to 9777 and reset the drive. This will clear the read-only flag for all data blocks in the NV Media Card</td></tr>
</table>

Trip	Diagnosis
Card Slot	**NV Media Card Trip; Option module application program transfer has failed**
174	The *Card Slot* trip is initiated, if the transfer of an option module application program to or from an application module failed because the option module does not respond correctly. If this happens this trip is produced with the sub-trip indicating the option module slot number. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure the source / destination option module is installed on the correct slot
Configuration	**The number of power modules installed is different from the modules expected**
111	The *Configuration* trip indicates that the *Number Of Power Modules Detected* (11.071) does not match the previous value stored. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure that all the power modules are correctly connected / simultaneously • Ensure all the power modules have powered up correctly • Ensure that the value in Pr **11.071** is set to the number of power modules connected • Set Pr **11.035** to 0 to disable the trip if it is not required
Control Word	**Trip initiated from the *Control Word* (06.042)**
35	The Control Word trip is initiated by setting bit 12 on the control word in Pr **06.042** when the control word is enabled (Pr **06.043** = On). **Recommended actions:** • Check the value of Pr **06.042.** • Disable the control word in *Control Word Enable* (Pr **06.043**) Bit 12 of the control word set to a one causes the drive to trip on Control Word When the control word is enabled, the trip can only be cleared by setting bit 12 to zero
Current Offset	**Current feedback offset error**
225	The *Current Offset* trip indicates that the current offset is too larger to be trimmed. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure that there is no possibility of current flowing in the output phases of the drive when the drive is not enabled • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
Data Changing	**Drive parameters are being changed**
97	A user action or a file system write is active that is changing the drive parameters and the drive has been commanded to enable, i.e. *Drive Active* (10.002) = 1. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure the drive is not enabled when one of he following is being carried out Loading defaults Changing drive mode Transferring data from NV Media Card or position feedback device Transferring user programs
Destination	**Two or more parameters are writing to the same destination parameter**
199	The Destination trip indicates that destination output parameters of two or more logic functions (Menus 3, 7, 8, 9, 12 or 14) within the drive are writing to the same parameter. **Recommended actions:** • Set Pr **mm.000** to 'Destinations' or 12001 and check all visible parameters in all menus for parameter write conflicts
Drive Size	**Power stage recognition: Unrecognized drive size**
224	The *Drive Size* trip indicates that the control PCB has not recognized the drive size of the power circuit to which it is connected. **Recommended action:** • Ensure the drive is programmed to the latest firmware version • Hardware fault - return drive to supplier
Derivative Image	**Derivative Image error**
248	The *Derivative Image* trip indicates that an error has been detected in the derivative image. **Recommended action:** Contact the supplier of the drive

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>EEPROM Fail</td><td>Default parameters have been loaded</td></tr>
<tr><td>31</td><td>The EEPROM Fail trip indicates that default parameters have been loaded. The exact cause/reason of the trip can be identified from the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>The most significant digit of the internal parameter database version number has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>The CRC's applied to the parameter data stored in internal non-volatile memory indicate that a valid set of parameters cannot be loaded</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>The drive mode restored from internal non-volatile memory is outside the allowed range for the product or the derivative image does not allow the previous drive mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>The drive derivative image has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>The power stage hardware has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>The internal I/O hardware has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>The position feedback interface hardware has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>The control board hardware has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>The checksum on the non-parameter area of the EEPROM has failed</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Default the drive and perform a reset
• Allow sufficient time to perform a save before the supply to the drive is removed
• If the trip persists - return drive to supplier</td></tr>
<tr><td>External Trip</td><td>An External trip is initiated</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>An External Trip has occurred. The cause of the trip can be identified from the sub trip number displayed after the trip string. See table below. An external trip can also be initiated by writing a value of 6 in Pr 10.038.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>External Trip Mode (08.010) = 1 or 3 and Safe Torque Off input 1 is low</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>External Trip Mode (08.010) = 2 or 3 and Safe Torque Off input 2 is low</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>External Trip (10.032) = 1</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Check the Safe Torque Off signal voltage on terminal 29 equals to 24 V
• Check the value of Pr 08.009 which indicates the digital state of terminal 29, equates to ‘on’.
• If external trip detection of the Safe Torque Off input is not required, set Pr 08.010 to OFF (0).
• Check the value of Pr 10.032.
• Select ‘Destinations’ (or enter 12001) in Pr mm.000 and check for a parameter controlling Pr 10.032.
• Ensure Pr 10.032 or Pr 10.038 (= 6) is not being controlled by serial comms</td></tr>
<tr><td>HF01</td><td>Data processing error: CPU address error</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>The HF01 trip indicates that a CPU address error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>HF02</td><td>Data processing error: DMAC address error</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>The HF02 trip indicates that a DMAC address error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>HF03</td><td>Data processing error: Illegal instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>The HF03 trip indicates that an illegal instruction has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>HF04</td><td>Data processing error: Illegal slot instruction</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>The HF04 trip indicates that an illegal slot instruction has occurred.This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
</table>

Trip	Diagnosis
HF05	**Data processing error: Undefined exception**
	The *HF05* trip indicates that an undefined exception error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF06	**Data processing error: Reserved exception**
	The *HF06* trip indicates that a reserved exception error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF07	**Data processing error: Watchdog failure**
	The *HF07* trip indicates that a watchdog failure has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF08	**Data processing error: CPU Interrupt crash**
	The *HF08* trip indicates that a CPU interrupt crash has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF09	**Data processing error: Free store overflow**
	The *HF09* trip indicates that a free store overflow has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF10	**Data processing error: Parameter routing system error**
	The *HF10* trip indicates that a Parameter routing system error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF11	**Data processing error: Access to EEPROM failed**
	The *HF11* trip indicates that access to the drive EEPROM has failed. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF12	**Data processing error: Main program stack overflow**
	The *HF12* trip indicates that the main program stack over flow has occurred. The stack can be identified by the sub-trip number. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Sub-trip** / **Stack** 1 – Freewheeling tasks 2 – Clock tasks 3 – Main system interrupts **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF13	**Data processing error: Firmware incompatible with hardware**
	The *HF13* trip indicates that the drive firmware is not compatible with the hardware. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Re-program the drive with the latest version of the drive firmware • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF14	**Data processing error: CPU register bank error**
	The *HF14* trip indicates that a CPU register bank error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive

Trip	Diagnosis
HF15	**Data processing error: CPU divide error**
	The *HF15* trip indicates that a CPU divide error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF16	**Data processing error: RTOS error**
	The *HF16* trip indicates that a RTOS error has occurred. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF17	**Data processing error: Clock supplied to the control board is out of specification**
	The *HF17* trip indicates that the clock supplied to the control board logic is out of specification. This trip indicates that the control PCB on the drive has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive
HF18	**Data processing error: Internal flash memory has failed**
	The *HF18* trip indicates that the internal flash memory has failed when writing option module parameter data. The reason for the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number. **Sub-trip / Reason** 1 – Option module initialization timed out 2 – Programming error while writing menu in flash 3 – Erase flash block containing setup menus failed 4 – Erase flash block containing application menus failed 5 – Incorrect setup menu CRC contained in flash 6 – Incorrect application menu CRC contained in flash 7 – Incorrect common application menu 18 CRC contained in flash 8 – Incorrect common application menu 19 CRC contained in flash 9 – Incorrect common application menu 20 CRC contained in flash **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault - Contact the supplier of the drive.
HF19	**Data processing error: CRC check on the firmware has failed**
	The *HF19* trip indicates that the CRC check on the drive firmware has failed. **Recommended actions:** • Re-program the drive • Hardware fault - Contact the supplier of the drive
HF20	**Data processing error: ASIC is not compatible with the hardware**
	The *HF20* trip indicates that the ASIC version is not compatible with the drive firmware. The ASIC version can be identified from the sub-trip number. **Recommended actions:** • Hardware fault - Contact the supplier of the drive
I/O Overload	**Digital output overload**
26	The *I/O Overload* trip indicates that the total current drawn from 24 V user supply or from the digital output has exceeded the limit. A trip is initiated if one or more of the following conditions: • Maximum output current from one digital output is 100 mA. • The combined maximum output current from outputs 1 and 2 is 100 mA • The combined maximum output current from output 3 and +24 V output is 100 mA **Recommended actions:** • Check total loads on digital outputs • Check control wiring is correct • Check output wiring is undamaged
Keypad Mode	**Keypad has been removed when the drive is receiving the speed reference from the keypad**
34	The *Keypad Mode* trip indicates that the drive is in keypad mode [*Reference Selector* (01.014) = 4 or 6] and the keypad has been removed or disconnected from the drive. **Recommended actions:** • Re-install keypad and reset • Change *Reference Selector* (01.014) to select the reference from another source

Trip	Diagnosis
Low Load	**The load on the drive has fallen below the low load detection level**
38	When the low load detector is active, the low load condition is detected when the *Percentage Load* (Pr **04.020**) falls below the threshold defined by the *Low Load Detection Level* (Pr **04.027**). *Enable Trip On Low Load* (Pr **04.029**) defines the action taken when low load is detected. If *Enable Trip On Low Load* (Pr **04.029**) = 0, a Low Load warning is displayed and *Low Load Detected Alarm* (Pr **10.062**) = 1. If *Enable Trip On Low Load* (Pr **04.029**) = 1 no warning is given, but a Low Load trip is initiated. **Recommended actions:** • Check the load on the motor has not changed
Motor Too Hot	**Output current overload timed out (I^2t)**
20	The *Motor Too Hot* trip indicates a motor thermal overload based on the output current (Pr **05.007**) and motor thermal time constant (Pr **04.015**). Pr **04.019** displays the motor temperature as a percentage of the maximum value. The drive will trip on *Motor Too Hot* when Pr **04.019** gets to 100 %. **Recommended actions:** • Ensure the load is not jammed / sticking • Check the load on the motor has not changed • Tune the rated speed parameter (RFC-A mode only) • Check feedback signal for noise • Ensure the motor rated current is not zero
OHt Control	**Control stage over temperature**
23	This *OHt Control* trip indicates that a control stage over-temperature has been detected. From the sub-trip 'xxyzz', the Thermistor location is identified by 'zz'. **Source** | **xx** | **y** | **zz** | **Description** Control system | 00 | 0 | 01 | Control board thermistor 1 over temperature Control system | 00 | 0 | 02 | Control board thermistor 2 over temperature Control system | 00 | 0 | 03 | I/O board thermistor over temperature **Recommended actions:** • Check enclosure / drive fans are still functioning correctly • Check enclosure ventilation paths • Check enclosure door filters • Increase ventilation • Reduce the drive switching frequency • Check ambient temperature
OHt dc bus	**DC bus over temperature**
27	The *OHt dc bus* trip indicates a DC bus component over temperature based on a software thermal model. The drive includes a thermal protection system to protect the DC bus components within the drive. This includes the effects of the output current and DC bus ripple. The estimated temperature is displayed as a percentage of the trip level in Pr **07.035**. If this parameter reaches 100 % then an *OHt dc bus* trip is initiated. The drive will attempt to stop the motor before tripping. If the motor does not stop in 10 seconds the drive trips immediately. **Source** | **xx** | **y** | **zz** | **Description** Control system | 00 | 2 | 00 | DC bus thermal model gives trip with sub-trip 0 **Recommended actions:** • Check the AC supply voltage balance and levels • Check DC bus ripple level • Reduce duty cycle • Reduce motor load • Check the output current stability. If unstable; Check the motor map settings with motor nameplate (Pr **05.006**, Pr **05.007**, Pr **05.008**, Pr **05.009**, Pr **05.010**, Pr **05.011**) – (All Modes) Disable slip compensation (Pr **05.027** = 0) – (Open loop) Disable dynamic V to F operation (Pr **05.013** = 0) - (Open loop) Select fixed boost (Pr **05.014** = Fixed) – (Open loop) Select high stability space vector modulation (Pr **05.020** = 1) – (Open loop) Disconnect the load and complete a rotating autotune (Pr **05.012**) – (RFC-A, RFC-S) Auto-tune the rated speed value (Pr **05.016** = 1) – (RFC-A, RFC-S) Reduce speed loop gains (Pr **03.010**, Pr **03.011**, Pr **03.012**) – (RFC-A, RFC-S) Add a speed feedback filter value (Pr **03.042)** – (RFC-A, RFC-S) Add a current demand filter (Pr **04.012**) – (RFC-A, RFC-S)

Trip	Diagnosis
OHt Inverter	**Inverter over temperature based on thermal model**
21	This trip indicates that an IGBT junction over-temperature has been detected based on a software thermal model. **Source** / **xx** / **y** / **zz** / **Description** Control system / 00 / 1 / 00 / Inverter thermal model gives {OHt Inverter} trip with sub-trip 0 **Recommended actions:** • Reduce the selected drive switching frequency • Ensure *Auto-switching Frequency Change Disable* (05.035) is set to OFF • Reduce duty cycle • Decrease acceleration / deceleration rates • Reduce motor load • Check DC bus ripple • Ensure all three input phases are present and balanced
OHt Power	**Power stage over temperature**
22	This trip indicates that a power stage over-temperature has been detected. From the sub-trip 'xxyzz', the Thermistor location is identified by 'zz'. **Source** / **xx** / **y** / **zz** / **Description** Power system / 01 / 0 / zz / Thermistor location in the drive defined by zz **Recommended actions:** • Check enclosure / drive fans are still functioning correctly • Force the heatsink fans to run at maximum speed • Check enclosure ventilation paths • Check enclosure door filters • Increase ventilation • Reduce the drive switching frequency • Reduce duty cycle • Decrease acceleration / deceleration rates • Reduce motor load • Check the derating tables and confirm the drive is correctly sized for the application. • Use a drive with larger current / power rating
OHt Rectifier	**Rectifier over temperature**
102	The *OHt Rectifier* indicates that a rectifier over-temperature has been detected. The thermistor location can be identified from the sub-trip number. **Source** / **xx** / **y** / **zz** / **Description** Power system / Power module number / Rectifier number / zz / Thermistor location defined by zz **Recommend actions:** • Check the motor and motor cable insulation with an insulation tester • Fit an output line reactor or sinusoidal filter • Force the heatsink fans to run at maximum speeds by setting Pr **06.045** = 11 • Check enclosure / drive fans are still functioning correctly • Check enclosure ventilation paths • Check enclosure door filters • Increase ventilation • Decrease acceleration / deceleration rates • Reduce duty cycle • Reduce motor load

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>OI ac</td><td>Instantaneous output over current detected</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>The instantaneous drive output current has exceeded above VM_DRIVE_CURRENT_MAX.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>Rectifier number</td><td rowspan="2">00</td><td rowspan="2">Instantaneous over-current trip when the measured a.c. current exceeds VM_DRIVE_CURRENT[MAX].</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Acceleration/deceleration rate is too short
• If seen during auto-tune reduce the voltage boost
• Check for short circuit on the output cabling
• Check integrity of the motor insulation using an insulation tester
• Check feedback device wiring
• Check feedback device mechanical coupling
• Check feedback signals are free from noise
• Is motor cable length within limits for the frame size
• Reduce the values in the speed loop gain parameters - (Pr 03.010, 03.011, 03.012) or (Pr 03.013, 03.014, 03.015)
• Has the phase angle autotune been completed? (RFC-S mode only)
• Reduce the values in current loop gain parameters (RFC-A, RFC-S modes only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>OI dc</td><td>Power module over current detected from IGBT on state voltage monitoring</td></tr>
<tr><td>109</td><td>The OI dc trip indicates that the short circuit protection for the drive output stage has been activated.
Recommended actions:
• Disconnect the motor cable at the drive end and check the motor and cable insulation with an insulation tester
• Replace the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>OI Snubber</td><td>Snubber over-current detected</td></tr>
<tr><td>92</td><td>The OI Snubber trip indicates that an over-current condition has been detected in the rectifier snubber circuit. The reason for the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>Rectifier number</td><td>00</td><td>Rectifier snubber over-current trip detected.</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Ensure the internal EMC Filter is installed
• Ensure the motor cable length does not exceed the maximum for selected switching frequency
• Check for supply voltage imbalance
• Check for supply disturbance such as notching from a DC drive
• Check the motor and motor cable insulation with an insulation tester
• Fit an output line reactor or sinusoidal filter</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option Disable</td><td>Option module does not acknowledge during drive mode changeover</td></tr>
<tr><td>215</td><td>The Option Disable trip indicates that the option module did not acknowledge notifying the drive that communications with the drive has been stopped during the drive mode changeover with in the allocated time.
Recommended trip:
• Reset the trip
• If the trip persists replace the option module</td></tr>
<tr><td>Out Phase Loss</td><td>Output phase loss detected</td></tr>
<tr><td>98</td><td>The Out Phase Loss trip indicates that a phase loss has been detected at the drive output. If Output Phase Loss Detection Enable (06.059) = 1 then output phase loss is detected as follows:
1. When the drive is enabled short pulses are applied to make sure each output phase is connected.
2. During running the output current is monitored and the output phase loss condition is detected if the current contains more than TBD % negative phase sequence current for TBDs.
Recommended action:
• Check motor and drive connections
• To disable the trip set Output Phase Loss Detection Enable (06.059) = 0</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>Over Frequency</td><td>Output frequency has exceeded the maximum frequency threshold</td></tr>
<tr><td>222</td><td>The Over Frequency trip indicates that the output frequency has exceeded 560 Hz for more than 4 ms.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Over Speed</td><td>Motor speed has exceeded the over speed threshold</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>In open loop mode, if the Output Frequency (05.001) exceeds the threshold set in Over Speed Threshold (03.008) in either direction an Over Speed trip is produced. In RFC-A and RFC-S mode, if the Speed Feedback (03.002) exceeds the Over Speed Threshold in Pr 03.008 in either direction an Over Speed trip is produced. If Pr 03.008 is set to 0.0 the threshold is then equal to 1.2 x the value set in Pr 01.006.
Recommended actions:
• Reduce the Speed Controller Proportional Gain (03.010) to reduce the speed overshoot (RFC-A, RFC-S modes only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Over Volts</td><td>DC bus voltage has exceeded the peak level or maximum continuous level for 15 seconds</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>The Over Volts trip indicates that the DC bus voltage has exceeded the VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX] or VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MAX] for 15 s. The trip threshold varies depending on voltage rating of the drive as shown below.
<table>
<tr><th>Voltage rating</th><th>VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX]</th><th>VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MAX]</th></tr>
<tr><td>200</td><td>415</td><td>410</td></tr>
<tr><td>400</td><td>830</td><td>815</td></tr>
<tr><td>575</td><td>990</td><td>970</td></tr>
<tr><td>690</td><td>1190</td><td>1175</td></tr>
</table>
Sub-trip Identification
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>01: Instantaneous trip when the DC bus voltage exceeds VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX].</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>02: Time delayed trip indicating that the DC bus voltage is above VM_DC_VOLTAGE_SET[MAX].</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td><td>00: Instantaneous trip when the DC bus voltage exceeds VM_DC_VOLTAGE[MAX].</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Increase deceleration ramp (Pr 00.004)
• Decrease the braking resistor value (staying above the minimum value)
• Check nominal AC supply level
• Check for supply disturbances which could cause the DC bus to rise
• Check motor insulation using a insulation tester</td></tr>
<tr><td>Phase Loss</td><td>Supply phase loss</td></tr>
<tr><td>32</td><td>The Phase Loss trip indicates that the drive has detected an input phase loss or large supply imbalance. The drive will attempt to stop the motor before this trip is initiated. If the motor cannot be stopped in 10 seconds the trip occurs immediately. The Phase Loss trip works by monitoring the ripple voltage on the DC bus of the drive, if the DC bus ripple exceeds the threshold, the drive will trip on Phase Loss. Potential causes of the DC bus ripple are input phase loss, Large supply impedance and severe output current instability.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>00: Phase loss detected based on control system feedback. The drive attempts to stop the drive before tripping unless bit 2 of Action On Trip Detection (10.037) is set to one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td rowspan="2">Power module number</td><td rowspan="2">Rectifier number</td><td>00: Phase loss has been detected by the rectifier module. Ensure that on a single phase supply, the unused supply terminal is connected to one of the other supply terminals.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>01: Mains loss has been detected by the rectifier module in a multi-power module system, where this must be treated as a phase loss condition to prevent damage to the drive.</td></tr>
</table>
Input phase loss detection can be disabled when the drive is required to operate from the DC supply or from a single phase supply in Input Phase Loss Detection Mode (06.047).
Recommended actions:
• Check the AC supply voltage balance and level at full load
• Check the DC bus ripple level with an isolated oscilloscope
• Check the output current stability
• Reduce the duty cycle
• Reduce the motor load
• Disable the phase loss detection, set Pr 06.047 to 2.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>Power Comms</td><td>Communication has been lost / errors detected between power, control and rectifier modules</td></tr>
<tr><td>90</td><td>The Power Comms trip is initiated if there is no communications between power, control or the rectifier module or if excessive communication errors have been detected. The reason for the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Control system</td><td rowspan="2">00</td><td rowspan="2">0</td><td>01: No communications between the control system and the power system</td></tr>
<tr><td>02: Excessive communication errors between the control system and power system</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power module number</td><td>Rectifier number</td><td>00: Excessive communications errors detected by the rectifier module</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Data</td><td>Power system configuration data error</td></tr>
<tr><td>220</td><td>The Power Data trip indicates that there is an error in the configuration data stored in the power system.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>01</td><td>No data was obtained from the power board.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>02</td><td>There is no data table in node 1.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>03</td><td>The power system data table is bigger than the space available in the control pod to store it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>04</td><td>The size of the table given in the table is incorrect.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>05</td><td>Table CRC error.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td>06</td><td>The version number of the generator software that produced the table is too low.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td><td>00</td><td>The power data table used internally by the power module has an error.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td><td>01</td><td>The power data table that is uploaded to the control system on power up has an error.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td><td>02</td><td>The power data table used internally by the power module does not match the hardware identification of the power module.</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Down Save</td><td>Power down save error</td></tr>
<tr><td>37</td><td>The Power Down Save trip indicates that an error has been detected in the power down save parameters saved in non-volatile memory.
Recommended actions:
• Perform a 1001 save in Pr mm.000 to ensure that the trip doesn’t occur the next time the drive is powered up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>PSU</td><td>Internal power supply fault</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>The PSU trip indicates that one or more internal power supply rails are outside limits or overloaded.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control system</td><td>00</td><td>0</td><td rowspan="2">00</td><td rowspan="2">Internal power supply overload.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>Rectifier number</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Remove any option modules and perform a reset
• Remove encoder connection and perform a reset
• Hardware fault within the drive – return the drive to the supplier</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>PSU 24V</td><td>24V internal power supply overload</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>The total user load of the drive and option modules has exceeded the internal 24 V power supply limit. The user load consists of the drive digital outputs and main encoder supply.
Recommended actions:
• Reduce the load and reset
• Provide an external 24 V power supply on control terminal 2
• Remove all option modules</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rating Mismatch</td><td>Power stage recognition: Multi module voltage or current rating mismatch</td></tr>
<tr><td>223</td><td>The Rating Mismatch trip indicates that there is a voltage rating or current rating mismatch in a multi-module drive system. This trip is only applicable to modular drives that are connected in parallel. A mixture of power modules with different voltage or current ratings within the same multi-module drive system is not allowed and will cause a Rating Mismatch trip.
Recommended action:
• Ensure that all modules in a multi-modular drive system are of the same frame size and rating (voltage and current)
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reserved</td><td>Reserved trips</td></tr>
<tr><td>01
94 -95
103 – 108
161
164 – 197
170 – 173
228 - 247</td><td>These trip numbers are reserved trip numbers for future use. These trips should not be used by the user application programs.
<table>
<tr><th>Trip Number</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>94 -95</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>103 - 108</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>161</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>164 – 197</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>170 - 173</td><td>Reserved resettable trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>228 - 247</td><td>Reserved non-resettable trip</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Resistance</td><td>Measured resistance has exceeded the parameter range</td></tr>
<tr><td>33</td><td>The Resistance trip indicates that the measured stator resistance during an auto-tune test has exceeded the maximum possible value of Stator Resistance (05.017).
The stationary auto-tune is initiated using the auto-tune function (Pr 05.012) or in open loop vector mode (Pr 05.014) on the first run command after power up in mode 4 (Ur_I) or on every run command in modes 0 (Ur_S) or 3 (Ur_Auto). This trip can occur if the motor is very small in comparison to the rating of the drive.
Recommended actions:
• Check the motor cable / connections
• Check the integrity of the motor stator winding using a insulation tester
• Check the motor phase to phase resistance at the drive terminals
• Check the motor phase to phase resistance at the motor terminals
• Ensure the stator resistance of the motor falls within the range of the drive model
• Select fixed boost mode (Pr 05.014 = Fixed) and verify the output current waveforms with an oscilloscope
• Replace the motor</td></tr>
<tr><td>Slot4 Not Fitted</td><td>Interface in slot 4 has been removed</td></tr>
<tr><td>253</td><td>The Slot4 Not Fitted trip indicates that the interface in slot 4 on the drive has been removed since the last power-up.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault - Contact the supplier of the drive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Slot App Menu</td><td>Application menu Customization conflict error</td></tr>
<tr><td>216</td><td>The Slot App Menu trip indicates that more than one option slot has requested to customize the application menus 18, 19 and 20. The sub-trip number indicates which option slot has been allowed to customize the menus.
Recommended actions:
• Ensure that only one of the Application modules is configured to customize the application menus 18, 19 and 20</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>SlotX Different</td><td>Option module in option slot X has changed</td></tr>
<tr><td>204
209
214</td><td>The SlotX Different trip indicates that the option module in option slot X on the drive is a different type to that installed when parameters were last saved on the drive. The reason for the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>No module was installed previously</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>A module with the same identifier is installed, but the set-up menu for this option slot has been changed, and so default parameters have been loaded for this menu.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>A module with the same identifier is installed, but the applications menu for this option slot has been changed, and so default parameters have been loaded for this menu.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>A module with the same identifier is installed, but the set-up and applications menu for this option slot have been changed, and so default parameters have been loaded for these menus.</td></tr>
<tr><td>>99</td><td>Shows the identifier of the module previously installed.</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Turn off the power, ensure the correct option modules are installed in the correct option slots and re-apply the power.
• Confirm that the currently installed option module is correct, ensure option module parameters are set correctly and perform a user save in Pr mm.000.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SlotX Error</td><td>Option module in option slot X has detected a fault</td></tr>
<tr><td>202
207
212</td><td>The SlotX Error trip indicates that the option module in option slot X on the drive has detected an error. The reason for the error can be identified by the sub-trip number.
Recommended actions:
• See relevant Option Module User Guide for details of the trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>SlotX HF</td><td>Option module X hardware fault</td></tr>
<tr><td>200
205
210</td><td>The SlotX HF trip indicates that the option module in option slot X on the drive has indicated a hardware fault. The possible causes of the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>The module category cannot be identified</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>All the required customized menu table information has not been supplied or the tables supplied are corrupt</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>There is insufficient memory available to allocate the comms buffers for this module</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>The module has not indicated that it is running correctly during drive power-up</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Module has been removed after power-up or it has stopped working</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>The module has not indicated that it has stopped accessing drive parameters during a drive mode change</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>The module has failed to acknowledge that a request has been made to reset the drive processor</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>The drive failed to correctly read the menu table from the module during drive power up</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>The drive failed to upload menu tables from the module and timed out (5 s)</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Ensure the option module is installed correctly
• Replace the option module
• Replace the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>SlotX Not installed</td><td>Option module in option slot X has been removed</td></tr>
<tr><td>203
208
213</td><td>The SlotX Not installed trip indicates that the option module in option slot X on the drive has been removed since the last power up.
Recommended actions:
• Ensure the option module is installed correctly.
• Re-install the option module.
• To confirm that the removed option module is no longer required perform a save function in Pr mm.000.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SlotX Watchdog</td><td>Option module watchdog function service error</td></tr>
<tr><td>201
206
211</td><td>The SlotX Watchdog trip indicates that the option module installed in Slot X has started the option watchdog function and then failed to service the watchdog correctly.
Recommended actions:
• Replace the option module</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>Soft Start</td><td>Soft start relay failed to close, soft start monitor failed</td></tr>
<tr><td>226</td><td>The Soft Start trip indicates that the soft start relay in the drive failed to close or the soft start monitoring circuit has failed.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stored HF</td><td>Hardware trip has occurred during last power down</td></tr>
<tr><td>221</td><td>The Stored HF trip indicates that a hardware trip (HF01 –HF17) has occurred and the drive has been power cycled. The sub-trip number identifies the HF trip i.e. stored HF.17.
Recommended actions:
• Enter 1299 in Pr mm.000 and press reset to clear the trip</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sub-array RAM</td><td>RAM allocation error</td></tr>
<tr><td>227</td><td>The Sub-array RAM indicates that an option module, derivative image or user program image has requested more parameter RAM than is allowed. The RAM allocation is checked in order of resulting sub-trip numbers, and so the failure with the highest sub-trip number is given. The sub-trip is calculated as (parameter size) + (parameter type) + sub-array number.
<table>
<tr><th>Parameter size</th><th>Value</th></tr>
<tr><td>1 bit</td><td>1000</td></tr>
<tr><td>8 bit</td><td>2000</td></tr>
<tr><td>16 bit</td><td>3000</td></tr>
<tr><td>32 bit</td><td>4000</td></tr>
<tr><td>64 bit</td><td>5000</td></tr>
</table>
<table>
<tr><th>Parameter type</th><th>Value</th></tr>
<tr><td>Volatile</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>User save</td><td>100</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power-down save</td><td>200</td></tr>
</table>
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-array</th><th>Menus</th><th>Value</th></tr>
<tr><td>Applications menus</td><td>18-20</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Derivative image</td><td>29</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>User program image</td><td>30</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 1 set-up</td><td>15</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 1 applications</td><td>25</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 2 set-up</td><td>16</td><td>6</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 2 applications</td><td>26</td><td>7</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 3 set-up</td><td>17</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 3 applications</td><td>27</td><td>9</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 4 set-up</td><td>24</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option slot 4 applications</td><td>28</td><td>11</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Temp Feedback</td><td>Internal thermistor has failed</td></tr>
<tr><td>218</td><td>The Temp Feedback trip indicates that an internal thermistor has failed. The thermistor location can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>xx</th><th>y</th><th>zz</th></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>0</td><td>Always zero</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power system</td><td>Power module number</td><td>Rectifier number</td><td>Always zero</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – Contact the supplier of the drive</td></tr>
<tr><td>Th Short Circuit</td><td>Motor thermistor short circuit</td></tr>
<tr><td>25</td><td>The Th Short Circuit trip indicates that the motor thermistor connected to an analog input is short circuit or low impedance. The cause of the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Analog input 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Analog input 2</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Check thermistor continuity
• Replace motor / motor thermistor</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Trip</th><th>Diagnosis</th></tr>
<tr><td>Thermistor</td><td>Motor thermistor over-temperature</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td>The Thermistor trip indicates that the motor thermistor connected to an analog input has indicated a motor over temperature. The cause of the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number
<table>
<tr><th>Sub-trip</th><th>Reason</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Analog input 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Analog input 2</td></tr>
</table>
Recommended actions:
• Check motor temperature
• Check thermistor continuity</td></tr>
<tr><td>Undefined</td><td>Drive has tripped and the cause of the trip is Undefined</td></tr>
<tr><td>110</td><td>The Undefined trip indicates that the power system has generated but did not identify the trip the power system. The cause of the trip is unknown.
Recommended actions:
• Hardware fault – return the drive to the supplier</td></tr>
<tr><td>User 24V</td><td>User 24 V supply is not present on control terminals (1,2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>91</td><td>A User 24 V trip is initiated, if User Supply Select (Pr 06.072) is set to 1 or Low Under Voltage Threshold Select (06.067) = 1 and no user 24 V supply is present on control terminals 1 and 2.
Recommended actions:
• Ensure the user 24 V supply is present on control terminals 1 (0 V) and 2 (24 V)</td></tr>
</table>

Trip	Diagnosis
User Program	**On board user program error**
249	The *User Program* trip indicates that an error has been detected in the onboard user program image. The reason for the trip can be identified by the sub-trip number.

Sub-trip	Reason	Comments
1	Divide by zero	
2	Undefined trip	
3	Attempted fast parameter access set-up with non-existent parameter	
4	Attempted access to non-existent parameter	
5	Attempted write to read-only parameter	
6	Attempted and over-range write	
7	Attempted read from write-only parameter	
30	The image has failed because either its CRC is incorrect, or there are less than 6 bytes in	Occurs when the drive powers-up or the image is programmed. The image tasks will not run
31	The image requires more RAM for heap and stack than can be provided by the drive.	As 30
32	The image requires an OS function call that is higher than the maximum allowed	As 30
33	The ID code within the image is not valid	As 30
34	The derivative image has been changed for an image with a different derivative number.	As 30
40	The timed task has not completed in time and has been suspended	
41	Undefined function called, i.e. a function in the host system vector table that has not been	As 40
51	Core menu customization table CRC check failed	As 30
52	Customized menu table CRC check failed	As 30
53	Customized menu table changed	Occurs when the drive powers-up or the image is programmed and the table has changed. Defaults are loaded for the derivative menu and the trip will keep occurring until drive parameters are saved.
61	The option module installed in slot 1 is not allowed with the derivative image	As 30
62	The option module installed in slot 2 is not allowed with the derivative image	As 30
63	The option module installed in slot 3 is not allowed with the derivative image	As 30
64	The option module installed in slot 4 is not allowed with the derivative image	As 30
70	An option module that is required by the derivative image is not installed in any slot.	As 30
71	An option module specifically required to be installed in slot 1 not present	As 30
72	An option module specifically required to be installed in slot 2 not present	As 30
73	An option module specifically required to be installed in slot 3 not present	As 30
74	An option module specifically required to be installed in slot 4 not present	As 30
80	Image is not compatible with the control board	Initiated from within the image code
81	Image is not compatible with the control board serial number	As 80

Trip	Diagnosis
User Prog Trip	**Trip generated by an onboard user program**
96	This trip can be initiated from within an onboard user program using a function call which defines the sub-trip number. **Recommended actions:** • Check the user program
User Save	**User Save error / not completed**
36	The *User Save* trip indicates that an error has been detected in the user save parameters saved in non-volatile memory. For example, following a user save command, If the power to the drive was removed when the user parameters were being saved. **Recommended actions:** • Perform a user save in Pr **mm.000** to ensure that the trip doesn't occur the next time the drive is powered up. • Ensure that the drive has enough time to complete the save before removing the power to the drive.
User Trip	**Motor Rated Current Pr 05.007 or Motor Rated Speed Pr 05.008 not recognized as valid for an LSRPM motor**
40	A 'User Trip 40' is generated if the Motor Rated Current Pr **05.007**or the Motor Rated Speed Pr **05.008** is not recognized as being a valid value for a Dyneo LSRPM motor. **Recommended actions:** • Check the user program
User Trip	**User generated trip**
41 -89 **112 -159**	These trips are not generated by the drive and are to be used by the user to trip the drive through an application program. **Recommended actions:** • Check the Motor Rated Current Pr **05.007**and the Motor Rated Speed Pr **05.008** entered into the drive against the Dyneo LSRPM motors listed in Table 7-3 and Table 7-9 *Dyneo LSRPM 5500 rpm motors* on page 145.
Watchdog	**Control word watchdog has timed out**
30	The *Watchdog* trip indicates that the control word has been enabled and has timed out **Recommended actions:**

Table 13-4 Serial communications look up table

No	Trip	No	Trip	No	Trip
1	Reserved 001	92	OI Snubber	198	Encoder 10
2	Over Volts	93	Inductor Too Hot	199	Destination
3	OI ac	94 - 95	Reserved 94 -95	200	Slot1 HF
4	Not Used	96	User Prog Trip	201	Slot1 Watchdog
5	PSU	97	Data Changing	202	Slot1 Error
6	External Trip	98	Out Phase Loss	203	Slot1 Not installed
7	Over Speed	99	CAM	204	Slot1 Different
8	Reserved 008	100	Reset	205	Slot2 HF
9	PSU24	101	Not Used	206	Slot2 Watchdog
10	Not Used	102	OHt Rectifier	207	Slot2 Error
11	Autotune 1	103 - 108	Reserved 103 - 108	208	Slot2 Not installed
12	Autotune 2	109	OI dc	209	Slot2 Different
13	Autotune 3	110	Undefined	210	Slot3 HF
14	Autotune 4	111	Configuration	211	Slot3 Watchdog
15	Autotune 5	112 - 167	User Trip 112 - 167	212	Slot3 Error
16	Autotune 6	168	Frequency Range	213	Slot3 Not installed
17	Autotune 7	169	Voltage Range	214	Slot3 Different
18	Autotune Stopped	170 - 173	Reserved 170 - 173	215	Option Disable
19	Not Used	174	Card Slot	216	Slot App Menu
20	Motor Too Hot	175	Card Product	217	App Menu Changed
21	OHt Inverter	176	Name Plate	218	Temp Feedback
22	OHt Power	177	Card Boot	219	An Output Calib
23	OHt Control	178	Card Busy	220	Power Data
24	Thermistor	179	Card Data Exists	221	Stored HF
25	Th Short Circuit	180	Card Option	222	Over Frequency
26	I/O Overload	181	Card Read Only	223	Rating Mismatch
27	OHt dc bus	182	Card Error	224	Drive Size
28	An Input Loss 1	183	Card No Data	225	Current Offset
29	An Input Loss 2	184	Card Full	226	Soft Start
30	Watchdog	185	Card Access	227	Sub-array RAM
31	EEPROM Fail	186	Card Rating	228 - 247	Reserved 228 - 247
32	Phase Loss	187	Card Drive Mode	248	Derivative Image
33	Resistance	188	Card Compare	249	User Program
34	Keypad Mode	189	Not Used	250	Slot4 HF
35	Control Word	190	Not Used	251	Slot4 Watchdog
36	User Save	191	Not Used	252	Slot4 Error
37	Power Down Save	192	Not Used	253	Slot4 Not installed
38	Low Load	193	Not Used	254	Slot4 Different
39	Line Sync	194	Not Used	255	Reset Logs
40-89	User Trip 40 - 89	195	Not Used		
90	Power Comms	196	Not Used		
91	User 24V	197	Not Used		

The trips can be grouped into the following categories. It should be noted that a trip can only occur when the drive is not tripped or is already tripped but with a trip with a lower priority number.

Table 13-5 Trip categories

Priority	Category	Trips	Comments
1	Internal faults	HF01, HF02, HF03, HF04, HF05, HF06, HF07, HF08, HF09, HF10, HF11, HF12, HF13, HF14, HF15, HF16, HF17, HF18, HF19, HF20	These indicate internal problems and cannot be reset. All drive features are inactive after any of these trips occur. If a KI-Keypad is installed it will show the trip, but the keypad will not function.
1	Stored HF trip	{Stored HF}	This trip cannot be cleared unless 1299 is entered into *Parameter* (**mm.000**) and a reset is initiated.
2	Non-resettable trips	Trip numbers 218 to 247, {Slot1 HF}, {Slot2 HF}, {Slot3 HF} or {Slot4 HF}	These trips cannot be reset.
3	Volatile memory failure	{EEPROM Fail}	This can only be reset if Parameter **mm.000** is set to 1233 or 1244, or if *Load Defaults* (11.043) is set to a non-zero value.
3	Internal 24 V power supply	{PSU 24}	
4	NV Media Card trips	Trip numbers 174, 175 and 177 to 188	These trips are priority 5 during power-up.
5	Trips with extended reset times	{OI ac} and OI dc}	These trips cannot be reset until 10 s after the trip was initiated.
5	Phase loss and d.c. link power circuit protection	{Phase Loss} and {Oht dc bus}	The drive will attempt to stop the motor before tripping if a {Phase Loss}. 000 trip occurs unless this feature has been disabled (see *Action On Trip Detection* (10.037). The drive will always attempt to stop the motor before tripping if an {Oht dc bus} occurs.
5	Standard trips	All other trips	

13.5 Internal / Hardware trips

Trips {HF01} to {HF20} are internal faults that do not have trip numbers. If one of these trips occurs, the main drive processor has detected an irrecoverable error. All drive functions are stopped and the trip message will be displayed on the drive keypad. If a non permanent trip occurs this may be reset by power cycling the drive. On power up after it has been power cycled the drive will trip on Stored HF. Enter 1299 in **mm.000** to clear the Stored HF trip.

13.6 Alarm indications

In any mode, an alarm is an indication given on the display by alternating the alarm string with the drive status string on the first row and showing the alarm symbol in the last character in the first row. If an action is not taken to eliminate any alarm except "Auto Tune and Limit Switch" the drive may eventually trip. Alarms are not displayed when a parameter is being edited, but the user will still see the alarm character on the upper row.

Table 13-6 Alarm indications

Alarm string	Description
Motor Overload	*Motor Protection Accumulator* (04.019) in the drive has reached 75.0 % of the value at which the drive will trip and the load on the drive is >100 %.
Drive Overload	Drive over temperature. *Percentage Of Drive Thermal Trip Level* (07.036) in the drive is greater than 90 %.
Auto Tune	The autotune procedure has been initialized and an autotune in progress.

13.7 Status indications

Table 13-7 Status indications

Upper row string	Description	Drive output stage
Inhibit	The drive is inhibited and cannot be run. The Safe Torque Off signal is not applied to Safe Torque Off terminals or Pr **06.015** is set to 0	Disabled
Ready	The drive is ready to run. The drive enable is active, but the drive inverter is not active because the final drive run is not active	Disabled
Stop	The drive is stopped / holding zero speed.	Enabled
Run	The drive is active and running	Enabled
Supply Loss	Supply loss condition has been detected	Enabled
Deceleration	The motor is being decelerated to zero speed / frequency because the final drive run has been deactivated.	Enabled
dc injection	The drive is applying dc injection braking	Enabled
Trip	The drive has tripped and no longer controlling the motor. The trip code appears in the lower display	Disabled
Under Voltage	The drive is in the under voltage state either in low voltage or high voltage mode	Disabled
Heat	The motor pre-heat functions inactive	Enabled
Phasing	The drive is performing a ‘phasing test on enable’.	Enabled

Table 13-8 Option module and NV Media Card and other status indications at power-up

First row string	Second row string	Status
Booting	**Parameters**	Parameters are being loaded
Drive parameters are being loaded from a NV Media Card		
Booting	**User Program**	User program being loaded
User program is being loaded from a NV Media Card to the drive		
Booting	**Option Program**	User program being loaded
User program is being loaded from a NV Media Card to the option module in slot X		
Writing To	**NV Card**	Data being written to NV Media Card
Data is being written to a NV Media Card to ensure that its copy of the drive parameters is correct because the drive is in Auto or Boot mode		
Waiting For	**Power System**	Waiting for power stage
The drive is waiting for the processor in the power stage to respond after power-up		
Waiting For	**Options**	Waiting for an option module
The drive is waiting for the Options Modules to respond after power-up		
Uploading From	**Options**	Loading parameter database
At power-up it may be necessary to update the parameter database held by the drive because an option module has changed or because an applications module has requested changes to the parameter structure. This may involve data transfer between the drive an option modules. During this period ‘Uploading From Options’ is displayed		

13.8 Programming error indications

Following are the error message displayed on the drive keypad when an error occurs during programming of drive firmware.

Table 13-9 Programming error indications

Error String	Reason	Solution
Error 1	There is not enough drive memory requested by all the option modules.	Power down drive and remove some of the option modules until the message disappears.
Error 2	At least one option module did not acknowledge the reset request.	Power cycle drive
Error 3	The boot loader failed to erase the processor flash	Power cycle drive and try again. If problem persists, return drive
Error 4	The boot loader failed to program the processor flash	Power cycle drive and try again. If problem persists, return drive
Error 5	One option module did not initialize correctly. Option module did not set Ready to Run flag.	Remove faulty option module.

13.9 Displaying the trip history

The drive retains a log of the last ten trips that have occurred. *Trip 0* (10.020) to *Trip 9* (10.029) store the most recent 10 trips that have occurred where *Trip 0* (10.020) is the most recent and *Trip 9* (10.029) is the oldest. When a new trip occurs it is written to *Trip 0* (10.020) and all the other trips move down the log, with oldest being lost. The date and time when each trip occurs are also stored in the date and time log, i.e. *Trip 0 Date* (10.041) to *Trip 9 Time* (10.060). The date and time are taken from *Date* (06.016) and *Time* (06.017). The date / time source can be selected with *Date / Time Selector* (06.019). Some trips have sub-trip numbers which give more detail about the reason for the trip. If a trip has a sub-trip number its value is stored in the sub-trip log, i.e. *Trip 0 Sub-trip Number* (10.070) to *Trip 9 Sub-trip Number* (10.079). If the trip does not have a sub-trip number then zero is stored in the sub-trip log.

If any parameter between Pr **10.020** and Pr **10.029** inclusive is read by serial communication, then the trip number in Table 13-3 is the value transmitted.

NOTE

The trip logs can be reset by writing a vale of 255 in Pr **10.038**.

13.10 Behaviour of the drive when tripped

If the drive trips, the output of the drive is disabled so the load coasts to a stop. If any trip occurs the following read only parameters are frozen until the trip is cleared. This is to help in diagnose the cause of the trip.

Parameter	Description
01.001	Frequency / speed reference
01.002	Pre-skip filter reference
01.003	Pre-ramp reference
02.001	Post-ramp reference
03.001	Frequency slaving demand / Final speed ref
03.002	Speed feedback
03.003	Speed error
03.004	Speed controller output
04.001	Current magnitude
04.002	Active current
04.017	Reactive current
05.001	Output frequency
05.002	Output voltage
05.003	Power
05.005	DC bus voltage
07.001	Analog input 1
07.002	Analog input 2

If the parameters are not required to be frozen then this can be disabled by setting bit 4 of Pr **10.037**.

14 UL listing information

14.1 General

14.1.1 Scope of approvals

All models with the exception of Frame 9A, Frame 9 and 10 690 V and Frame 11 are listed to both US and Canadian safety requirements.

The UL file number is: E171230.

The Manufacturing Location Code is: 8D14.

14.1.2 Manufacturers name

The manufacturer is Control Techniques Ltd

14.1.3 Electrical ratings

The electrical ratings are tabulated in section 2.3 *Ratings* on page 11.

14.1.4 Multiple wiring arrangements

The drives are not intended for use in applications that require different wiring arrangements. The drives are not multiple rated.

14.1.5 Model numbers

Model numbers are shown in Chapter 2 *Product information* on page 10.

14.1.6 Plenum rating

The drives are suitable for installation in a compartment (duct) handling conditioned air when installed as enclosed types with the intended Type 1 terminal kit.

14.1.7 Operating temperature

The drives are rated for use at 40 °C ambient temperature.

Operation at 50 °C is permitted with derated output. Refer to Table 12-3 on page 235.

14.1.8 Installation warnings, cautions and notes

The appropriate installation warnings, cautions and notes are located in section 1 *Safety information* on page 8, and in the Getting Started Guide provided with the drive.

14.2 Overload, overcurrent and overspeed protection

14.2.1 Degree of protection level

The devices incorporate solid state overload protection for the motor load. The protection levels, expressed as a percentage of full-load current, are shown in section 2.3.1 *Typical short term overload limits* on page 14.

In order for the motor protection to work properly, the motor rated current must be entered into Pr **00.046** or Pr **05.007**.

The protection level may be adjusted below 150 % if required. Refer to section 8.2 *Motor thermal protection* on page 159.

The drive incorporates solid state motor overspeed protection. However, this feature does not provide the level of protection provided by an independent, high-integrity overspeed protection device.

14.2.2 Thermal memory protection

The drives are provided with motor load and speed sensitive overload protection with thermal memory retention.

The thermal memory protection complies with UL requirements for shutdown, loss of power and speed sensitivity.

For a full explanation of the thermal protection system, refer tosection 8.2 *Motor thermal protection* .

In order to comply with UL requirements for thermal memory retention it is necessary to set the *Thermal Protection Mode* (Pr **04.016**) to zero; and the *Low Speed Protection Mode* (Pr **04.025**) must be set to 1.

14.2.3 Use with motors with thermal protectors

The drive is provided with a means to accept and act upon a signal from a thermal sensor or switch imbedded in the motor or from an external protective relay This is described in section 4.8 *Output circuit and motor protection* on page 86 and section 7.3 *Quick start commissioning / start-up* on page 139.

14.2.4 Specific overcurrent protective device

The drive is not required to be connected to a supply source with a specific overcurrent protective device other than those specified in section 4.7 *Ratings* on page 81.

14.3 Short-circuit protection for branch circuits

14.3.1 Short-circuit rating

The drive is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100,000 RMS symmetrical amperes, 600 Vac maximum, when protected by the overcurrent protective devices as described in section 4.7 *Ratings* on page 81.

Unless otherwise indicated in the rating tables in section 4.7 *Ratings* on page 81, branch fuses may be any UL listed Class CC, J or T rated 600 Vac.

Unless otherwise indicated in the rating tables in section 4.7 *Ratings* on page 81, circuit breakers may be any UL listed type with category control number DIVQ or DIVQ7, rated 600 Vac.

14.3.2 Solid state short-circuit protection

The drive is provided with solid state short-circuit protection. Integral solid state protection does not provide branch circuit protection. Branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with the National Electrical Code and any additional local codes.

14.3.3 Common DC bus systems

Frame sizes 3, 4, 5 and 6 are approved for use in modular drive systems using a common DC bus.

For permitted combinations of converter and inverter, along with the required branch circuit protection, contact Control Techniques.

14.4 Control circuit protection

14.4.1 Control circuit wiring

All control circuits are located in limited voltage, limited current isolated secondary circuits. Additional wiring protection is not required.

14.4.2 Supplemental fuse

When the control circuits are supplied with an external 24 V supply, a supplemental fuse is required as described in section 4.5 *24 Vdc supply* on page 80.

14.4.3 Accessory kits boxes

All drives are supplied with an accessory kit box, described in section 2.8 *Items supplied with the drive* on page 20.

14.5 Wiring terminal markings

14.5.1 Marking for proper connection

All main terminals are plainly marked. There are no multiple circuit arrangements.

14.5.2 Terminal connection of ground supply conductor

The terminals for the connection of the grounded supply circuit conductor are identified by means of an earth symbol (IEC 60417, symbol No. 5019)

Ground connections must use UL listed closed loop (ring) terminals.

14.5.3 User relay contact

An isolated user relay contact is provided that may be wired in the field to become part of a class 1 or class 2 circuit. This is described in section 4.12 *Control connections* on page 98.

14.5.4 Type of conductors

Use copper conductors only.

14.5.5 Temperature rating of conductors

Use 75 °C rated conductors only.

14.5.6 Torque values

Torque values for field wiring terminals are provided in section 3.12.2 *Terminal sizes and torque settings* on page 65.

14.6 Environment

14.6.1 Environment

Drives are intended for operation in pollution degree 2 environments.

Drives are supplied as Open type.

Drives are classed as Enclosed Type 1 when installed with the intended Type 1 terminal kit.

Devices are classed as Type 12 when installed in a Type 12 enclosure.

14.7 Mounting

14.7.1 Surface mounting

All drives are suitable for Surface mounting. Mounting instructions are given in section 3.5.1 *Surface mounting* on page 32.

14.7.2 Bookcase mounting

In order to minimise the width of the installation, devices may be mounted side by side with or without airspace between them.

14.7.3 Tile mounting

Frame sizes 3, 4 and 5 are suitable for tile mounting. The drive is mounted sideways with the side panel against the mounting surface. Tile mounting kits are available.

14.7.4 Through-hole mounting

All models may be through hole mounted. When through-hole mounted, inside a Type 12 enclosure, the high-IP insert (where provided) and the Type 12 sealing kit must be used in order to prevent ingress of dust and water. Refer to section 3.5.2 *Through-panel mounting* on page 39.

14.8 Listed Accessories

14.8.1 Option modules

The following option modules and accessories are UL listed:

Open Type:

SI-PROFINET RT	SI-I/O
SI-Ethernet	SD-Card Adaptor
SI-DeviceNet	KI-485 Adaptor
SI-CANopen	KI-HOA keypad RTC
SI-PROFIBUS	

NOTE

Not all option modules are compatible with all drive models.

14.9 cUL Marking requirements

14.9.1 External transient suppression

Model numbers 07500530, 07500730, 8500860, 8501080 rated 575 V require external transient suppression in order to comply with cUL approval requirements:

Transient surge suppression shall be installed on the line side of this equipment and shall be rated 575 Vac (phase to ground), 575 Vac (phase to phase), suitable for overvoltage protection category III, and shall provide protection for a rated impulse withstand voltage peak of 6 kV and a clamping voltage of maximum 2400 V.

14.9.2 Opening of branch-circuit protection

The opening of the branch-circuit protective device may be an indication that a fault has been interrupted. To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, current-carrying parts, and other components of the controller should be examined and replaced if damaged.

Index

T

U

V

W

SCIENCE GATE
Your Automation Partner

SCIGATE AUTOMATION (S) PTE LTD
No.1 Bukit Batok Street 22 #01-01 Singapore 659592
Tel: (65) 6561 0488 **Fax: (65) 6562 0588**
Email: sales@scigate.com.sg Web: www.scigate.com.sg
Business Hours: Monday - Friday 8.30am - 6.15pm

0479-0003-02